XC40 Recharge Pure Electric 2022 (21w46) User Manual

Version 2025-08-28

Disclaimer

Due to the dynamic nature of our software-based product, the content of this PDF represents the most up-to-date version of the user manual as of the time of printing. As we continuously update and improve our product, certain content may not reflect the most up-to-date information in a future instance. Therefore, we strongly recommend utilising the digital user manual app in your car's centre display for the most accurate and up-to-date information. You can also access information in the Volvo Cars mobile app.

Please note that if you choose to print the manual, we cannot guarantee the validity of the information in future instances, as updates may have occurred since the time of printing. To ensure the highest level of safety and optimal product usage, we strongly advise relying on the digital user manual, which can be easily accessed through your car's centre display.

This printable version is generic and does not correspond to your car. If there are discrepancies between this printable manual and the manual you see in your car's centre display, the latter takes precedence.

Contents

1. Owner information
   - 1.1 Owner information
   - 1.2 Reading the owner's manual
   - 1.3 Complete owner's manual in centre display
   - 1.4 Navigate in the owner's manual in the centre display
2. Your Volvo
   - 2.1 Volvo's areas of innovation
     - 2.1.1 Online connectivity and entertainment
   - 2.2 Volvo ID
     - 2.2.1 Volvo ID
     - 2.2.2 Creating a Volvo ID
     - 2.2.3 Problems logging in with Volvo ID
   - 2.3 Type approvals and licences
     - 2.3.1 License agreement for driver display
     - 2.3.2 Type approval for HomeLink®
     - 2.3.3 Type approval Radio Equipment Directive
     - 2.3.4 Certificate for wireless charger
     - 2.3.5 Type approval for the remote control key system
     - 2.3.6 Approval of terms and conditions and data collection
     - 2.3.7 Candidate List Substance Information (CL) in accordance with the Reach Regulation, Article 33.1
   - 2.4 Displays and controls by the driver in a left-hand drive car
   - 2.5 Displays and controls by the driver in a right-hand drive car
   - 2.6 Connection of equipment to the car's diagnostic socket
   - 2.7 Driver distraction
   - 2.8 Getting started with Google services
   - 2.9 Change of market when importing or relocating
   - 2.10 Showing the car's identification number
   - 2.11 Recording data
   - 2.12 Installation of accessories
   - 2.13 Important information on accessories and auxiliary equipment
3. Safety

3.1 Seatbelts
3.1.1 Seatbelts
3.1.2 Putting on and taking off seatbelts
3.1.3 Seatbelt tensioner
3.1.4 Resetting the electric seatbelt tensioner
3.1.5 Door and seatbelt reminder
3.2 Airbags
3.2.1 Airbags
3.2.2 Driver airbags
3.2.3 Passenger airbag
3.2.4 Activating and deactivating passenger airbag
3.2.5 Inflatable curtains
3.2.6 Near-side airbags
3.3 Child safety
3.3.1 Mounting points for child seats
3.3.1.1 Lower mounting points for child seats
3.3.1.2 i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats
3.3.1.3 Upper mounting points for child seats
3.3.2 Child seat location
3.3.2.1 Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts
3.3.2.2 Child seat positioning
3.3.2.3 Child seat mounting
3.3.2.4 Overview table for location of child seats
3.3.2.5 Detail information for child seat manufacturers
3.3.2.6 Table for location of ISOFIX child seats
3.3.2.7 Table for location of i-Size child seats
3.3.3 Activating and deactivating child safety locks
3.3.4 Child safety
3.3.5 Child seats
3.3.6 Activating and deactivating passenger airbag
3.4 Safety mode
3.4.1 Traffic accident
3.4.2 Safety mode
3.4.3 Starting and moving the car after safety mode
3.5 Safety
3.6 Safety during pregnancy
3.7 Whiplash Protection System
4. Displays and voice control
4.1 Driver display
4.1.1 Gauges and indicators in driver display
4.1.1.1 Battery gauge
4.1.1.2 Power meter
4.1.1.3 Outside temperature gauge
4.1.2 Trip computer
4.1.2.1 Trip computer
4.1.2.2 Resetting the trip meter
4.1.3 Driver display
4.1.4 Driver display settings
4.1.5 License agreement for driver display
4.1.6 Messages in the driver display
4.2 Centre display
4.2.1 Settings

4.2.1.1 Resetting user data
4.2.1.2 Changing system units
4.2.1.3 Changing system language
4.2.1.4 Settings for unlocking
4.2.1.5 Setting the speed limit for Care Key
4.2.1.6 Lock indication setting
4.2.1.7 Settings for Keyless entry
4.2.2 User profiles
4.2.2.1 User profiles
4.2.2.2 Link key to user profile
4.2.2.3 Managing user profiles
4.2.2.4 Profile settings
4.2.2.5 Link account to user profile
4.2.3 Overview of centre display
4.2.4 Managing the centre display
4.2.5 Charging in the car's centre display
4.2.6 Centre display views
4.2.7 Managing subviews in centre display
4.2.8 Symbols in the centre display's status bar
4.2.9 Moving apps in the centre display
4.2.10 Message in the centre display
4.2.11 Keyboard in the centre display
4.2.12 Enter the characters, letters and words manually in the centre display
4.2.13 Changing keyboard language in centre display
4.2.14 Date and time
4.2.15 Navigate in the owner's manual in the centre display
4.3 Symbols and messages
4.3.1 Messages for BLIS
4.3.2 Symbols and messages for electronic stability control
4.3.3 Symbols and messages for Pilot Assist
4.3.4 Symbols and messages for lane assistance
4.3.5 Display mode for lane assistance
4.3.6 Symbols and messages for park assist system and park assist camera
4.3.7 Symbols in the centre display's status bar
4.3.8 Indicator and warning symbols
4.3.9 Symbols and messages for parking climate control
4.3.10 Symbols and messages for the transmission
4.4 Voice control
4.4.1 Voice control with Google Assistant
4.4.2 Using voice control
4.5 Displays and controls by the driver in a left-hand drive car
4.6 Displays and controls by the driver in a right-hand drive car
5. Lighting
5.1 Exterior lighting
5.1.1 Active bending lights
5.1.2 Active main beam
5.1.3 Using direction indicators
5.1.4 Brake lights
5.1.5 Rear fog lamp
5.1.6 Front fog lamps/cornering lights
5.1.7 Dipped beam
5.1.8 Using main beam

5.1.9 Using home safe lighting
5.1.10 Adapting the headlamp pattern from the headlamps
5.1.11 Emergency brake lights
5.1.12 Position lamps
5.1.13 Guidance light
5.1.14 Hazard warning flashers
5.1.15 Daytime running lights
5.1.16 Exterior lamp positions
5.1.17 Bulb specifications
5.1.18 Checking trailer lamps
5.2 Interior lighting
5.2.1 Interior lighting
5.2.2 Adjusting interior lighting
5.3 Adjusting light functions via the centre display
5.4 Lighting control
6. Windows, glass and mirrors
6.1 Rearview mirrors
6.1.1 HomeLink®
6.1.2 Rearview and door mirrors
6.1.3 Angling adjustment of the door mirrors
6.1.4 Adjusting rearview mirror dimming
6.1.5 Using a stored position for seat and door mirrors
6.1.6 Storing a position for seat and door mirrors
6.1.7 Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors
6.1.8 Activating and deactivating automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors
6.2 Windscreen and rear window
6.2.1 Damaged windscreen
6.2.2 Wiper blades and washer fluid
6.2.3 Using the rear window wiper and rear window washer
6.2.4 Using the rain sensor
6.2.5 Using windscreen and headlamp washers
6.2.6 Using windscreen wipers
6.2.7 Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors
6.2.8 Activating and deactivating automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors
6.2.9 Activating and deactivating the heated windscreen
6.2.10 Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated windscreen
6.3 Side windows and panoramic roof
6.3.1 Power windows
6.3.2 Operating power windows
6.3.3 Panoramic roof
6.3.4 Automatic closing of the panoramic roof's sun blind
6.4 Windows, glass and mirrors
6.5 Pinch protection for windows and sun blinds
6.6 Reset sequence for pinch protection
6.7 Activating and deactivating max defroster
7. Seats and steering wheel
7.1 Front seat
7.1.1 Climate controls for front seat
7.1.1.1 Activating and deactivating heated front seat
7.1.1.2 Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated front seat
7.1.1.3 Regulating fan level for front seat
7.1.1.4 Regulating temperature for front seat

7.1.1.5 Synchronising temperature
7.1.2 Memory function for front seat
7.1.2.1 Using a stored position for seat and door mirrors
7.1.2.2 Storing a position for seat and door mirrors
7.1.3 Front seats
7.1.4 Power front seat
7.1.5 Adjusting the power front seat
7.1.6 Manual front seat
7.1.7 Adjusting the length of the seat cushion in the front seat
7.1.8 Adjusting the lumbar support in the front seat
7.2 Rear seat
7.2.1 Climate controls for rear seat
7.2.1.1 Activating and deactivating heated rear seat
7.2.2 Rear seat
7.2.3 Adjusting the head restraints in the rear seat
7.2.4 Lowering the backrests in the rear seat
7.2.5 Through-load hatch in the rear seat
7.3 Steering wheel
7.3.1 Speed-dependent steering force
7.3.2 Steering wheel controls and horn
7.3.3 Adjusting the steering wheel
7.3.4 Steering lock
7.3.5 Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel
7.3.6 Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated steering wheel

8. Climate control
8.1 Climate system controls
8.1.1 Climate controls for passenger compartment
8.1.1.1 Activating auto climate control
8.1.1.2 Regulating fan level for front seat
8.1.1.3 Activating and deactivating air conditioning
8.1.1.4 Activating and deactivating air recirculation
8.1.1.5 Activating and deactivating time setting for air recirculation
8.1.1.6 Regulating temperature for front seat
8.1.1.7 Synchronising temperature
8.1.1.8 Changing air distribution
8.1.2 Climate controls for seat and steering wheel
8.1.2.1 Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel
8.1.2.2 Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated steering wheel
8.1.2.3 Activating and deactivating heated rear seat
8.1.2.4 Activating and deactivating heated front seat
8.1.2.5 Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated front seat
8.1.3 Climate controls for windows and mirrors
8.1.3.1 Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors
8.1.3.2 Activating and deactivating automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors
8.1.3.3 Activating and deactivating the heated windscreen
8.1.3.4 Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated windscreen
8.1.3.5 Activating and deactivating max defroster
8.1.4 Climate controls
8.2 Air distribution
8.2.1 Activating and deactivating air recirculation
8.2.2 Activating and deactivating time setting for air recirculation
8.2.3 Activating and deactivating max defroster

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

8.2.4 Air distribution
8.2.5 Changing air distribution
8.2.6 Opening, closing and aiming the air vents
8.3 Air quality
8.3.1 Air quality
8.3.2 CleanZone
8.3.3 Clean Zone Interior Package
8.3.4 Interior Air Quality System
8.3.5 Activating and deactivating the air quality sensor
8.3.6 Passenger compartment filter
8.4 Parking climate
8.4.1 Preconditioning
8.4.1.1 Preconditioning
8.4.1.2 Start and switch off preconditioning
8.4.1.3 Preconditioning time setting
8.4.1.4 Activating and deactivating time setting for preconditioning
8.4.1.5 Removing time setting for preconditioning
8.4.1.6 Adding and editing time setting for preconditioning
8.4.2 Parking climate
8.4.3 Symbols and messages for parking climate control
8.4.4 Parking heater
8.5 Heater
8.5.1 Parking heater
8.6 Climate
8.7 Servicing the climate control system
8.8 Climate control - sensors
8.9 Climate zones
8.10 Perceived temperature
9. Key, locks and alarm
9.1 Remote control key
9.1.1 User profiles
9.1.1.1 User profiles
9.1.1.2 Link key to user profile
9.1.1.3 Managing user profiles
9.1.1.4 Profile settings
9.1.1.5 Link account to user profile
9.1.2 Immobiliser
9.1.3 Keys
9.1.4 Ordering additional keys
9.1.5 Replacing the battery in the key
9.1.6 Locking and unlocking using the key's buttons
9.1.7 Care Key – speed limit key
9.1.8 Setting the speed limit for Care Key
9.1.9 Unlocking the tailgate with a key button
9.1.10 Detachable key blade
9.1.11 Locking and unlocking with the detachable key blade
9.1.12 The key's range
9.1.13 Type approval for the remote control key system
9.1.14 Antenna locations for the start and lock systems
9.2 Locking and unlocking
9.2.1 Keyless locking and unlocking
9.2.1.1 Operating the tailgate with foot movement

9.2.1.2 Antenna locations for the start and lock systems
9.2.1.3 Keyless locking and unlocking with touch-sensitive surfaces
9.2.1.4 Keyless locking and unlocking
9.2.1.5 Settings for Keyless entry
9.2.1.6 Closing and locking tailgate with button
9.2.1.7 Keyless unlocking of the tailgate
9.2.2 Keys
9.2.3 Locking and unlocking using the key's buttons
9.2.4 Settings for unlocking
9.2.5 Unlocking the tailgate with a key button
9.2.6 Locking and unlocking with the detachable key blade
9.2.7 Automatic locking when driving
9.2.8 Double lock
9.2.9 Setting the max. opening for electrically operated tailgate
9.2.10 Locking and unlocking from inside the car
9.2.11 Unlocking the tailgate from the inside of the car
9.2.12 Locking and unlocking
9.2.13 Activating and deactivating child safety locks
9.2.14 Lock confirmation
9.2.15 Lock indication setting
9.3 Alarm
9.3.1 Alarm
9.3.2 Activating and deactivating alarms
9.3.3 Reduced alarm level
10. Driver support
10.1 Cruise control functions
10.1.1 Cruise control
10.1.1.1 Cruise control
10.1.1.2 Standby mode for cruise control
10.1.1.3 Setting the stored speed for cruise control functions
10.1.2 Pilot Assist
10.1.2.1 Automatic braking with cruise control functions
10.1.2.2 Setting the stored speed for cruise control functions
10.1.2.3 Change of target with cruise control functions
10.1.2.4 Pilot Assist
10.1.2.5 Display mode for Pilot Assist
10.1.2.6 Symbols and messages for Pilot Assist
10.1.2.7 Standby mode for Pilot Assist
10.1.2.8 Setting time interval to vehicle ahead
10.1.2.9 Difference between Pilot Assist and lane assistance
10.1.2.10 Warning from cruise control functions in the event of a collision risk
10.1.3 Overtaking assistance
10.1.3.1 Overtaking Assistance
10.1.3.2 Using Overtaking Assistance
10.1.4 Cruise control functions
10.1.5 Steering wheel buttons for the cruise control functions
10.1.6 Selecting and activating cruise control functions
10.1.7 Deactivating cruise control functions
10.2 Speed limiter functions
10.2.1 Speed limiter
10.2.1.1 Speed limiter
10.2.2 Automatic speed limiter

10.2.2.1 Automatic speed limiter
10.3 Distance Warning
10.3.1 Setting time interval to vehicle ahead
10.3.2 Warning from cruise control functions in the event of a collision risk
10.4 Blind Spot Information
10.4.1 BLIS
10.4.2 Messages for BLIS
10.4.3 Limitations of BLIS
10.5 Cross Traffic Alert
10.5.1 Warning and auto-brake when reversing
10.5.2 Activating and deactivating warning and auto-brake when reversing
10.6 Rear Collision Warning
10.6.1 Rear Collision Warning
10.6.2 Limitations of Rear Collision Warning
10.7 Connected Safety
10.7.1 Connected Safety
10.7.2 Activating and deactivating Connected Safety
10.7.3 Limitations of Connected Safety
10.8 Assistance at risk of collision
10.8.1 Assistance at risk of collision
10.8.2 Detection of obstacles with assistance at risk of collision
10.8.3 Speed reduction option with assistance at risk of collision
10.8.4 Symbols and messages for assistance at risk of collision
10.8.5 Limitations for assistance at risk of collision
10.8.6 Assistance at risk of collision in crossing traffic
10.8.7 Assistance at risk of collision in oncoming traffic
10.8.8 Assistance at risk of rear-end collision
10.8.9 Assistance at risk of run-off
10.9 Driver Alert Control
10.9.1 Driver Alert
10.9.2 Limitations of Driver Alert
10.10 Lane assistance
10.10.1 Lane assistance
10.10.2 Activating and deactivating lane assistance
10.10.3 Difference between Pilot Assist and lane assistance
10.10.4 Symbols and messages for lane assistance
10.10.5 Display mode for lane assistance
10.10.6 Limitations of Lane assistance
10.11 Electronic stability control
10.11.1 Electronic stability control
10.11.2 Symbols and messages for electronic stability control
10.12 Road Sign Information
10.12.1 Road Sign Information
10.12.2 Limitations of Road Sign Information
10.12.3 Warning for speed limitation and speed camera from road sign information
10.12.4 Activating and deactivating warnings from road sign information
10.12.5 Display mode for road sign information
10.13 Parking functions
10.13.1 Parking assistance
10.13.1.1 Park Assist
10.13.1.2 Park Assist System front, rear and along the sides
10.13.1.3 Activating and deactivating Parking Assistance System

10.13.1.4 Limitations of park assist system
10.13.1.5 Symbols and messages for park assist system and park assist camera
10.13.2 Park assist camera
10.13.2.1 Park assist camera
10.13.2.2 Activating park assist camera
10.13.2.3 Symbols and messages for park assist system and park assist camera
10.13.2.4 Park assist lines for park assist camera
10.13.2.5 Park assist camera locations and surveillance areas
10.13.2.6 Sensor fields for park assist system
10.14 Camera and radar unit
10.14.1 Recommended maintenance for camera units, detector units and radar units
10.14.2 Symbols and messages for camera and radar units
10.14.3 Limitations for camera and radar units
10.14.4 Camera unit
10.14.5 Radar units
10.14.6 Type approval for radar device
10.15 Driving support systems
10.16 Warnings from various driver support systems
10.17 Speed-dependent steering force
10.18 Ready to drive notification
10.19 Auto braking after a collision
11. Electric operation and charging
11.1 Charging the high voltage battery
11.1.1 Charging status in the car's driver display
11.1.2 Charging status in the car's charging input socket
11.1.3 General information on the charging cable
11.1.4 Ground fault breaker in charging cable
11.1.5 Charging status in the charging cable's control unit
11.1.6 Charging cable temperature monitoring
11.1.7 Charging an electric car via a wall socket
11.1.8 Charging an electric car
11.1.9 Ending charging of an electric car
11.1.10 Charging time
11.2 Charging in the car's centre display
11.3 Drive systems
11.4 General information on charging
11.5 Problems unplugging the charging cable
11.6 Symbols and messages relating to electric drive in the driver display
11.7 Long-term storage of cars with high voltage battery
11.8 Range
11.9 Range assistant
11.10 Recycling the batteries
12. Starting and driving
12.1 Starting and switching off the car
12.1.1 Immobiliser
12.1.2 Starting the car
12.1.3 Using jump starting with another battery
12.1.4 Switching off the car
12.1.5 Usage modes
12.2 Alcohol lock
12.2.1 Alcohol lock
12.3 Gearbox

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

12.3.1 Gear positions
12.3.2 Symbols and messages for the transmission
12.3.3 Gear selector inhibitor
12.4 Brakes
12.4.1 Foot brake
12.4.1.1 Brake assistance
12.4.1.2 Braking on gritted roads
12.4.1.3 Braking on wet roads
12.4.1.4 Foot brake
12.4.1.5 Brake system maintenance
12.4.2 Parking brake
12.4.2.1 Parking brake
12.4.2.2 Activating and deactivating the parking brake
12.4.2.3 Parking on a hill
12.4.2.4 In the event of a fault in the parking brake
12.4.3 Brake fluid – specifications
12.4.4 Brake functions
12.4.5 Auto braking after a collision
12.4.6 Brake assistance when stationary
12.4.7 Brake when stationary
12.5 Drive system
12.5.1 Drive systems
12.6 Drive modes
12.6.1 Regenerative braking
12.6.2 One Pedal Drive
12.6.3 Creep mode
12.6.4 Off road mode
12.6.5 Range
12.6.6 Range assistant
12.6.7 All-wheel drive
12.7 Recommendations for driving
12.7.1 Brake assistance when stationary
12.7.2 Braking on gritted roads
12.7.3 Braking on wet roads
12.7.4 Parking on a hill
12.7.5 Range
12.7.6 Economical driving
12.7.7 Range assistant
12.7.8 Preparations for a long trip
12.7.9 Driving in water
12.7.10 Winter driving
12.8 Towbar and trailer
12.8.1 Towing capacity and towball load
12.8.2 Towbar
12.8.3 Specifications for towbar
12.8.4 Towbar-mounted bicycle rack
12.8.5 Extendable and retractable towbar
12.8.6 Driving with a trailer
12.8.7 Trailer stability assist
12.8.8 Checking trailer lamps
12.9 Electric operation and charging
12.9.1 Charging the high voltage battery

12.9.1.1 Charging status in the car's driver display
12.9.1.2 Charging status in the car's charging input socket
12.9.1.3 General information on the charging cable
12.9.1.4 Ground fault breaker in charging cable
12.9.1.5 Charging status in the charging cable's control unit
12.9.1.6 Charging cable temperature monitoring
12.9.1.7 Charging an electric car via a wall socket
12.9.1.8 Charging an electric car
12.9.1.9 Ending charging of an electric car
12.9.1.10 Charging time
12.9.2 Charging in the car's centre display
12.9.3 Drive systems
12.9.4 General information on charging
12.9.5 Problems unplugging the charging cable
12.9.6 Symbols and messages relating to electric drive in the driver display
12.9.7 Long-term storage of cars with high voltage battery
12.9.8 Range
12.9.9 Range assistant
12.9.10 Recycling the batteries
12.10 HomeLink
12.10.1 HomeLink®
12.10.2 Using HomeLink®
12.10.3 Programming HomeLink®
12.10.4 Type approval for HomeLink®
12.11 Towing and recovery
12.11.1 Towing
12.11.2 Fitting and removing the towing eye
12.11.3 Activating and deactivating towing mode
12.11.4 Recovery
12.11.5 Safety mode
12.11.6 Starting and moving the car after safety mode
12.12 Operational disruption
12.13 Traffic accident
13. Sound, media and Internet
13.1 Radio
13.1.1 Radio
13.1.2 Start radio
13.1.3 RDS radio
13.1.4 Setting radio favourites
13.2 Media player
13.2.1 Bluetooth Media Player
13.3 Phone
13.3.1 Phone connection
13.3.1.1 Connecting a phone to the car
13.3.1.2 Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone
13.3.1.3 Switch between Bluetooth-connected phones
13.3.1.4 Removing devices connected to Bluetooth
13.3.2 Apple CarPlay
13.3.2.1 Apple® CarPlay®
13.3.2.2 Using Apple® CarPlay®
13.3.2.3 Tips for using Apple® CarPlay®
13.3.3 Connecting to the Internet via Bluetooth

13.3.4 Phone
13.3.5 Managing contacts
13.3.6 Managing phone calls
13.3.7 Managing text messages
13.3.8 Wireless phone charger
13.3.9 Using the wireless phone charger
13.3.10 Certificate for wireless charger
13.4 Apps
13.4.1 Apps
13.4.2 Downloading apps
13.4.3 Deleting apps
13.4.4 Volvo ID
13.4.5 Creating a Volvo ID
13.5 Internet connection
13.5.1 Online services
13.5.1.1 Connected Safety
13.5.1.2 Apps
13.5.1.3 Volvo ID
13.5.1.4 Creating a Volvo ID
13.5.2 Connecting to the Internet via Bluetooth
13.5.3 Internet connection
13.5.4 Problems with Internet connection
13.5.5 Connecting to the Internet via Wi-Fi
13.5.6 Markets with Car Modem Internet
13.6 Audio and media
13.7 Storage space on hard disk
13.8 Sound settings
13.9 Media playback
13.10 Online connectivity and entertainment
13.11 Approval of terms and conditions and data collection

14. The Volvo Cars app and assistance
14.1 Assistance
14.1.1 Volvo Assistance
14.1.2 Emergency assistance with Volvo Assistance
14.1.3 Automatic collision alarm with Volvo Assistance
14.1.4 Prioritising between Volvo Assistance and the emergency call centre
14.1.5 Stolen Vehicle Tracking with Volvo Assistance
14.1.6 Roadside assistance with Volvo Assistance
14.1.7 Customer Service
14.1.8 Standby battery for Volvo Assistance
14.1.9 Volvo Assistance abroad
14.2 Volvo Cars app
14.2.1 Getting started with the Volvo Cars app
14.2.2 Devices compatible with the Volvo Cars app
14.2.3 Contact between the Volvo Cars app and the car
14.2.4 Volvo Cars app
14.2.5 Connecting the Volvo Cars app to the car
14.2.6 Booking a service with the Volvo Cars app
14.2.7 Lock function in the Volvo Cars app
14.2.8 Shortcuts to the Volvo Cars app
14.2.9 Battery and charging functions in the Volvo Cars app
14.2.10 Remote starting climate control using the Volvo Cars app

14.2.11 Using the Volvo Cars app with Apple Watch
14.2.12 Disconnecting the link between the Volvo Cars app and the car
14.2.13 Change of ownership when the Volvo Cars app is linked to the car

15. eCall
15.1 eCall
15.2 Emergency assistance with eCall
15.3 Automatic collision alarm with eCall
15.4 Roadside assistance

16. Navigation
16.1 Map update
16.1.1 Downloading maps
16.2 Google Maps
16.3 Using Google Maps
16.4 Updating Google Maps
16.5 Settings in Google Maps
16.6 Electric car functions with Google Maps
16.7 Google Maps in the driver display
16.8 Destination in Google Maps
16.9 Online functions with Google Maps
16.10 Getting directions with Google Maps

17. Wheels and tyres
17.1 Changing wheels
17.1.1 Changing wheel
17.1.2 Jack
17.1.3 Wheel bolts
17.1.4 Spare wheel
17.1.5 Handling the spare wheel
17.1.6 Snow chains
17.1.7 Winter tyres
17.1.8 Punctures
17.1.9 Tool kit
17.2 Tyres
17.2.1 Dimension designation for tyre
17.2.2 Approved tyre pressures
17.2.3 Tyres' rotation direction
17.2.4 Tread wear indicators on the tyres
17.2.5 Dimension designation for wheel rim
17.2.6 Minimum permitted tyre load index and speed rating for tyres
17.3 Tyre pressure
17.3.1 Tyre pressure monitoring
17.3.1.1 Tyre pressure monitoring system
17.3.1.2 See tyre pressure status in the centre display
17.3.1.3 Action in the event of warning for low tyre pressure
17.3.1.4 Saving a new reference value for tyre pressure monitoring
17.3.1.5 Messages for tyre pressure monitoring
17.3.2 Checking tyre pressure
17.3.3 Adjusting tyre pressure
17.3.4 Location of tyre pressure label
17.4 Emergency puncture repair
17.4.1 Emergency puncture repair kit
17.4.2 Inflating tyres with the compressor from the puncture repair kit

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

17.4.3 Using a puncture repair kit
17.5 Winter driving
17.5.1 Snow chains
17.5.2 Winter tyres
17.5.3 Preparations for a long trip
17.5.4 Winter driving
17.6 Tyres
17.7 Approved wheel and tyre sizes
18. Loading, storage and passenger compartment
18.1 Loading
18.1.1 Recommendations for loading
18.1.2 Bag hooks
18.1.3 Load retaining eyelets
18.1.4 Fitting and removing the safety net
18.1.5 Roof load and loading on load carriers
18.1.6 Towbar-mounted bicycle rack
18.2 Cargo area
18.2.1 Safety net, safety grille and cargo cover
18.2.1.1 Fitting and removing the safety net
18.2.2 Cargo area
18.2.3 Bag hooks
18.2.4 First aid kit
18.2.5 Remove and store the parcel shelf
18.2.6 Folding up the cargo area floor
18.2.7 Load retaining eyelets
18.2.8 Warning triangle
18.2.9 Release folding cargo area floor
18.2.10 Unlocking the tailgate with a key button
18.2.11 Setting the max. opening for electrically operated tailgate
18.2.12 Operating the tailgate with foot movement
18.2.13 Unlocking the tailgate from the inside of the car
18.2.14 Keyless unlocking of the tailgate
18.3 Storage and passenger compartment
18.3.1 Passenger compartment interior
18.3.2 Emptying the ashtray
18.3.3 Electrical sockets
18.3.4 Using electrical sockets
18.3.5 Using the glovebox
18.3.6 Sun visors
18.3.7 Tunnel console
18.3.8 USB ports
18.3.9 Use USB ports to charge devices
18.4 Through-load hatch in the rear seat
19. Maintenance and service
19.1 Car care
19.1.1 Interior cleaning
19.1.1.1 Cleaning the centre display
19.1.1.2 Cleaning the driver display
19.1.1.3 Cleaning the leather steering wheel
19.1.1.4 Cleaning the seatbelts
19.1.1.5 Cleaning the interior
19.1.1.6 Cleaning textile floor and entrance mats

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

19.1.1.7 Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood parts
19.1.1.8 Cleaning leather upholstery
19.1.1.9 Cleaning the Microtech upholstery
19.1.1.10 Cleaning fabric upholstery and headlining
19.1.2 Exterior cleaning
19.1.2.1 Cleaning the exterior lamps
19.1.2.2 Cleaning the wiper blades
19.1.2.3 Car paintwork
19.1.2.4 Colour codes
19.1.2.5 Touching up minor paintwork damage
19.1.2.6 Cleaning the exterior
19.1.2.7 Rustproofing
19.1.2.8 Automatic car wash
19.1.2.9 Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components
19.1.2.10 Cleaning wheel rims
19.1.2.11 Handwashing
19.1.2.12 High-pressure washing
19.1.2.13 Polishing and waxing
19.2 Wiper blades and washer fluid
19.2.1 Wiper blades and washer fluid
19.2.2 Setting the wiper blades in service position
19.2.3 Topping up washer fluid
19.2.4 Replacing the wiper blade, rear window
19.2.5 Replacing windscreen wiper blades
19.3 Bulb replacement
19.3.1 Replacing the rear direction indicator bulb
19.3.2 Changing brake light bulb
19.3.3 Replacing the rear fog lamp bulb
19.3.4 Bulb replacement
19.3.5 Exterior lamp positions
19.3.6 Bulb specifications
19.3.7 Checking trailer lamps
19.4 Space under the bonnet
19.4.1 Topping up washer fluid
19.4.2 Brake fluid – specifications
19.4.3 Opening and closing the bonnet
19.4.4 Coolant
19.5 Tools and accessories
19.5.1 Jack
19.5.2 Emergency puncture repair kit
19.5.3 First aid kit
19.5.4 Warning triangle
19.5.5 Tool kit
19.6 Fuses
19.6.1 Fuses and central electrical units
19.6.2 Replacing a fuse
19.6.3 Fuses under glovebox
19.6.4 Fuses under the bonnet
19.7 Battery
19.7.1 Replacing the battery in the key
19.7.2 Using jump starting with another battery
19.7.3 Batteries and power supply

19.7.4 Recycling the batteries
19.7.5 Symbols on the batteries
19.7.6 12V battery
19.7.7 High voltage battery
19.8 Service
19.8.1 Servicing the climate control system
19.8.2 Volvo service programme
19.9 Recommended maintenance for camera units, detector units and radar units
19.10 Software updates
19.11 Brake system maintenance
19.12 Operational disruption
19.13 Data transfer between car and workshop via Wi-Fi
19.14 Raise the car
19.15 Removing the panels under the bonnet
20. Specifications
20.1 Dimensions and weights
20.1.1 Towing capacity and towball load
20.1.2 Dimensions
20.1.3 Weights
20.1.4 Specifications for towbar
20.2 Specifications for engine
20.2.1 Electric motor specifications
20.3 Specifications for fluids and lubricants
20.3.1 Topping up washer fluid
20.3.2 Air conditioning – specifications
20.3.3 Brake fluid – specifications
20.4 Specifications for wheels and tyres
20.4.1 Approved tyre pressures
20.4.2 Approved wheel and tyre sizes
20.4.3 Minimum permitted tyre load index and speed rating for tyres
20.5 Bulb specifications
20.6 The car's certified values for range and electric consumption
20.7 Type designations

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

1. Owner information

1.1. Owner information

Owner's information is available in several different product formats, both digital and printed. The owner's manual is available in the car's centre display and on the Volvo Cars support site. There is also a digital Quick Guide that can be accessed from the owner's manual in the centre display. There is a supplement to the owner's manual in the glovebox that contains a selection of practical information that can be useful to keep handy in case it is not possible or practical to read in the car's centre display,e.g. if you need to change a wheel.

The car's centre display

To access the owner's manual, tap on ⊞ followed by tapping on 🕮. Available here are options for visual navigation with exterior and interior images of the car. The information is searchable and is also divided into categories.

Volvo Cars support site

More information on your car is available on the Volvo Cars website and support site.

Go to volvocars.com/intl/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support] and select your country. The page is available for most markets.

The support site contains contact details to customer support and your nearest Volvo retailer.

Printed information

There is a supplement to the owner's manual in the glovebox that contains a summary of important and practical information.

Depending on equipment level selected, market, etc. additional information may also be available in printed format in the car.

> **Important**
>
> The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven safely in traffic and that applicable laws and regulations are followed. It is also important that the car is maintained and handled in accordance with Volvo's recommendations in the owner's information.
>
> If the information in the centre display and other sources differs, the information in the centre display applies.

> **Note**
>
> Changing the language in the centre display may mean that some owner's information is not compliant with national or local laws and regulations. Do not switch to a language that is difficult to understand as this may make it difficult to find your way back through the screen structure.

1.2. Reading the owner's manual

To help you get to know your new car, read the Owner's Manual before you drive it for the first time.

Reading the owner's manual is a way to become familiar with new functions, get advice on how to handle the car in different situations and learn how to make use of all the car's features. Please pay attention to the safety instructions contained in the owner's manual.

Development work is constantly underway in order to improve our product. Modifications may mean that information, descriptions and illustrations in the owner's manual differ from the equipment in the car. We reserve the right to make modifications without prior notice.

© Volvo Car Corporation

Options/accessories

In addition to standard equipment, the owner's manual also describes options (factory fitted equipment) and certain accessories (retrofitted extra equipment).

All, at the time of publication known, options and accessories are marked with an asterisk: *.

The equipment described in the owner's manual is not available in all cars - they have different equipment depending on adaptations for the needs of different markets and national or local laws and regulations.

The intention of this owner's information is to explain all possible functions, options and accessories included in a Volvo vehicle. It is not intended as an indication or guarantee that all of these features, functions and options are included in every vehicle. Some terminology used may not exactly match terminology used in sales, marketing and advertising materials.

In the event of uncertainty over what is standard or an option/accessory, contact a Volvo dealer.

Special texts

Warning

Warning texts appear if there is a risk of injury.

Important

Important texts appear if there is a risk of damage.

Note

Note texts give advice or tips that facilitate the use of e.g. features and functions.

Decals

The car contains different types of decal which are designed to convey important information in a clear manner. The decals in the car have the following descending degree of importance for the warning/information.

Warning of personal injury

Black ISO symbols on yellow warning field, white text/image on black message field. Used to indicate the presence of danger which, if the warning is ignored, may result in serious personal injury or fatality.

Risk of property damage

White ISO symbols and white text/image on black or blue warning field and message field. Used to indicate the presence of danger which, if the warning is ignored, may result in damage to property.

Information

White ISO symbols and white text/image on black message field.

Note

It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and location in the car. The information that applies to your particular car is available on the respective decals for your car.

Illustrations and video clips

Illustrations and video clips used in the owner's manual are sometimes schematic and are intended to provide an overall picture or example of a certain function. They may deviate from the car's appearance depending on equipment level and market.

* Option/accessory.

1.3. Complete owner's manual in centre display

The printed supplement only contains a selection of information. The complete and latest update of the information can be found in the car's centre display.

Important

To learn about important safety instructions, and for as good an experience as possible, Volvo recommends that you read throughout all of the owner's information under each category in the centre display before driving for the first time.

Important

The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven safely in traffic and that applicable laws and regulations are followed. It is also important that the car is maintained and handled in accordance with Volvo's recommendations in the owner's information.

Finding information in the car's centre display

Complete and up-to-date information for your car can always be found in the centre display. To access the owner's manual, tap on ⊞ followed by 🕮.

Find information by:

- using the search function
- navigating visually using exterior and interior images

- clicking through categories.

> **Note**
>
> The digital owner's manual is not available while driving.

Changing the language in the centre display may mean that some owner information does not match national or local laws and regulations. Do not switch to a language that is difficult to understand, as this may make it difficult to find your way back through the structure on screen.

Printed information and support site

Depending on equipment level selected, market, etc. additional owner's information may also be available in printed format in the car.

The associated supplement can be ordered. Contact a Volvo dealer to order.

The owner's manual is also available at volvocars.com/intl/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support] .

> **Note**
>
> If the information in the centre display and other sources differs, the information in the centre display applies.

1.4. Navigate in the owner's manual in the centre display

The digital owner's manual can be accessed from the centre display.

To access the owner's manual, tap on ⊞ followed by 🕮.

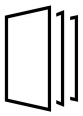
There is a range of different options for finding information in the owner's manual.

Contents of the Owner's Manual

Homepage

Tap on the symbol to go back to the start page in the owner's manual.

Categories



The articles in the owner's manual are structured into main categories and subcategories. The same article can be found in several appropriate categories so that it can be found more easily.

Visual navigation

Exterior and interior overview images of the car. Different parts are designated with hotspots that lead to articles about those parts of the car.

1 Press **Exterior** or **Interior**.

> Exterior or interior images are shown with so-called hotspots in place. The hotspot leads to articles about the corresponding part of the car. Swipe horizontally over the screen to browse among the images.

2 Tap on a hotspot.

> The title of the article about the area is shown.

3 Tap on the title to open the article.

To go back, press the back arrow.

Quick guide

Information to help you get started with the most commonly used functions in the car.

Video

Press the symbol to view brief instruction videos for various functions in the car.

Release notes

Read more about the current version and updates implemented.

Search function

Tap on the search field at the top of the owner's manual to access the search function from the homepage.

Use Q at the top in the owner's manual to access the search function from other pages.

---

2. Your Volvo

2.1. Volvo's areas of innovation

2.1.1. Online connectivity and entertainment

The car has an intelligent interface and offers online connectivity with the digital world. An intuitive navigation structure makes it possible to receive relevant support, information and entertainment when it is necessary.

It covers all solutions in the car that are connected with entertainment, online connectivity, navigation and the user interface between driver and car.

Fair Use Policy

Your use of connectivity services that is part of your vehicle is subject to this Fair Use Policy.

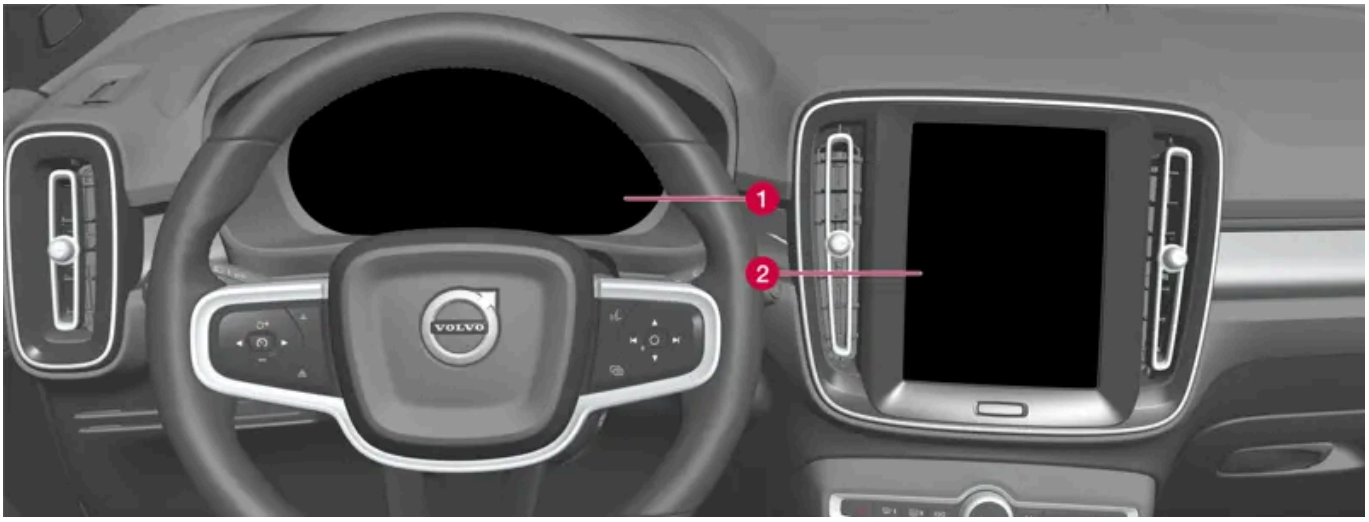
When using this Service you agree not to

- submit content that is unlawful, obscene, libellous, threatening, harassing, hateful, racially or ethnically offensive or otherwise inappropriate
- use the Service in breach of any applicable law
- use the Service for commercial purposes.

Your access to the Service is part of a shared access. Volvo reserves the right to suspend your access to or use of the Service if your use involves very high volumes of data, disproportionate to other users. Volvo may also suspend your access for technical reasons or to protect other functions of your vehicle. Your access to connectivity services is covered by third party terms and conditions from the mobile network service provider.

Information when it is needed, where it is needed

The different displays in the car provide information at the right time. The information is shown in different locations based on how it should be prioritised by the driver.



Different types of information are shown in different displays depending on how the information should be prioritised.

1. The driver display shows information on speed, road sign information, warning and indicator symbols, and information on the battery, for example. The driver display can also show incoming calls or information on what song tracks are being played back. The display is operated via the two steering wheel keypads.
2. Many of the car's primary functions are controlled from the centre display, e.g. the climate control system, the entertainment system and the seat position. The centre display also shows information on navigation and road sign information, for example. The information that is shown in the centre display can be acted on by the driver or someone else in the car when the opportunity arises.

> **Note**
>
> Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touch screen response.

Voice control system

The voice control system can be used without the driver needing to take his/her hands off the steering wheel. The system can understand natural speech. Use voice control to, for example, play back a song, call someone, increase the temperature or read out a text message.

2.2. Volvo ID

2.2.1. Volvo ID

Volvo ID is a personal ID that gives access to a wide range of services via a single username and password.

One example of a service when Volvo ID is needed is when checking the car on your phone using the Volvo Cars app.

Volvo ID is created from the car, volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/] or the Volvo Cars app.

> **Note**
>
> The services available may vary over time and depend on equipment level and market.

2.2.2. Creating a Volvo ID

A Volvo ID needs to created in order to use the Volvo services connected to the car, e.g. via the Volvo Cars app.

Create a Volvo ID with the Volvo Cars app

1. Download the latest version of the Volvo Cars app to the phone[1].
2. Select to create Volvo ID.
3. The web page for creating a Volvo ID is shown.
4. Enter a personal email address or mobile number.
5. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address/mobile number.

> A Volvo ID has now been created and is ready for use.

Create a Volvo ID via the Volvo Cars website

1. Go to volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/]. Select to create a Volvo ID.
2. Enter a personal email address or mobile number.
3. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address/mobile number.

> A Volvo ID has now been created and is ready for use.

[1] Available to download via e.g. Apple App Store or Google Play.

2.2.3. Problems logging in with Volvo ID

This article describes problems that may arise when logging in with Volvo ID. For example, if you have forgotten your password or your Volvo ID username.

Forgotten your password

To reset your password, follow the instructions below:

In the Volvo Cars app[1]

1. Open the Volvo Cars app.
2. Select "Log in".
3. Press "Forgotten password?" and follow the instructions.

You can also change your password at volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/] .

Login failure after creation of a new account

Sometimes there may be a delay in the process which can result in an account not being available directly after it has been created. Try again after 24 hours and if the problem remains, contact your local Volvo dealer or Volvo Cars customer service for further assistance.

What is my Volvo ID (username)?

Your Volvo ID is identical to the registered email address/mobile number.

Unlock your Volvo ID

Your account will be locked after 5 failed attempts to log in to the Volvo Cars app[1]. You can easily unlock the account by clicking on **Forgotten password?** in the login screen.

Change of email address

If you change your email address and still have access to the old address you can log in with the old details and change your username yourself. If you no longer have access to the old address then you should create a new Volvo ID using the new address.

Login failure after changing Volvo ID (username)

Check that you have received a confirmation message in which your new username is confirmed. Once this has been done, you should be able to login with the new user name. If you did not receive the confirmation e-mail, your old username is probably still in place. Log in and try to change the username again.

Login failure after changed password

Try to login with your previous password. If this is not successful, try to reset the password.

Account registered to a different market

An account is registered to a specific market and cannot be moved to a different market. To be able to re-use the same email address/mobile number, we advise you to first delete your account for the old market and then create a new account for the new market.

E-mail failure

If you entered an email address as username and did not receive a confirmation email after registering, make sure that you entered a valid email address and that the email was not stopped by a spam filter. Try to register your e-mail address again.

More help

If you have not found a solution to a problem relating to Volvo ID and need more help, contact your local Volvo dealer or Volvo Cars Customer Service.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

2.3. Type approvals and licences

2.3.1. License agreement for driver display

A license is an agreement for the right to operate a certain activity or the right to use someone else's entitlement according to the terms and conditions in the agreement. The following text is Volvo's agreement with the manufacturer or developer.

1.1 List of used Open Source Components

This table contains a list of open source software (OSS) components used within the product under the terms of the respective licenses. The source code corresponding to the open source components is also provided along with the product wherever mandated by the respective OSS license

Sl No.	Name of OSS Component	Version of OSS Component	Name and Version of License (License text can be found in Appendix below)	Home Page	More Information
1	BidiReferenceCpp	26	Unicode Terms of Use	http://www.unicode.org/Public/PROGRAMS/BidiReferenceCpp/	(C) Socionext Embedded Software Austria GmbH (SESA) Copyright (C) 1999-2009, ASMUS, Inc

Sl No.	Name of OSS Component	Version of OSS Component	Name and Version of License (License text can be found in Appendix below)	Home Page	More Information
2	FASTCRC32	1.2.8	License of Stephan brumme/ Zlib style License	http://stephan-brumme.com/	Copyright © 2011-2013 Stephan Brumme. All rights reserved, Copyright (C) 1995-2006, 2010, 2011, 2012 Mark Adler
3	Freescale IMX6 HDMI	5.0.11	BSD 3-clause "New" or "Revised" License	https://www.nxp.com/ [https://www.nxp.com/]	Copyright © 2009-2012, Freescale Semiconductor, Inc, Copyright © 2010-2012, Freescale Semiconductor, Inc.
4	FreeType Hashing	2.6.3	MIT License	https://sourceforge.net/p/canvasdraw/cd/642/tree/trunk/freetype/include/freetype/internal/fthash.h [https://sourceforge.net/p/canvasdraw/cd/642/tree/trunk/freetype/include/freetype/internal/fthash.h]	Copyright 2000 Computing Research Labs, New Mexico State University Copyright 2001-2015 Francesco Zappa Nardelli
5	Freetype Project - BDF	2.6.3	MIT License	https://sourceforge.net/projects/freetype/files/freetype2/2.6.3/ [https://www.freetype.org/]	Copyright (C) 2001-2014 by Francesco Zappa Nardelli. Copyright 2000 Computing Research Labs, New Mexico State University
6	Freetype Project -PCF	2.6.3	MIT License	https://sourceforge.net/projects/freetype/files/freetype2/2.6.3/ [https://www.freetype.org/]	Copyright 2000-2001, 2003 by Francesco Zappa Nardelli Copyright (C) 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2006, 2010 by Francesco Zappa Nardelli Copyright (C) 2000-2004, 2006-2011, 2013, 2014 by Francesco Zappa Nardelli Copyright 2000-2010, 2012-2014 by Francesco Zappa Nardelli Copyright 2003 by Francesco Zappa Nardelli
7	Freetype Project - Pcfutil	2.6.3	Open Group License	https://sourceforge.net/projects/freetype/files/freetype2/2.6.3/ [https://www.freetype.org/]	Copyright 1990, 1994, 1998 The Open Group
8	HarfBuzz	1.3.1	MIT License	http://freedesktop.org/wiki/Software/HarfBuzz	Copyright © 2007 Chris Wilson Copyright © 2009,2010 Red Hat, Inc. Copyright © 2011, 2012 Google, Inc.
9	Integrity Libnet	1.16	Internet Software Consortium-IBM License ISC License	https://github.com/lattera/glibc/blob/master/resolv/inet_pton.c [https://github.com/lattera/glibc/blob/master/resolv/inet_pton.c]	Copyright © 1996 by Internet Software Consortium. Consortium, Copyright © 1995 by International Business Machines, Inc.
10	Khronos EGL Headers	1.4	MIT License	http://www.khronos.org/registry/egl/	Copyright © 2007-2013 The Khronos Group Inc. Copyright 2008 VMware, Inc. Copyright © 2013-2014 The Khronos Group Inc.
11	Khronos Group - OpenGL ES	2.0	SGI Free Software License B v2.0	http://www.khronos.org/opengles/	

Sl No.	Name of OSS Component	Version of OSS Component	Name and Version of License (License text can be found in Appendix below)	Home Page	More Information
12	libjpeg	6b	Independent JPEG Group License	http://www.ijg.org/	Copyright (C) 1991-1998, Thomas G. Lane.
13	libpng	1.4.22	libpng License	http://github.com/coapp-packages/libpng/	Copyright © 1998-2010 Glenn Randers-Pehrson Copyright © 2007, 2009 Glenn Randers-Pehrson Version 0.96 Copyright © 1996, 1997 Andreas Dilger Version 0.88 Copyright © 1995, 1996 Guy Eric Schalnat, Group 42, Inc.
14	Libunibreak	1.2.8	zlib License	https://github.com/adah1972/libunibreak [https://github.com/adah1972/libunibreak]	Copyright (C) 2008-2011 Wu Yongwei Copyright (C) 2012 Tom Hacohen tom@stosb.com
15	lz4 Compression algorithm	1.4.0	BSD 2-clause "Simplified" License	http://github.com/Cyan4973/lz4/	Copyright (C) 2011-2014, Yann Collet
16	md5	1.6	Public Domain	https://doxygen.reactos.org/d7/d04/sdk_2lib_23rdparty_2freetype_2src_2base_2md5_8c_source.html [https://doxygen.reactos.org/d7/d04/sdk_2lib_23rdparty_2freetype_2src_2base_2md5_8c_source.html]	
17	NetBSD	1.9	HPND like license IBM License BSD-4-Clause (University of California-Specific) BSD 3-clause "New" or "Revised" License BSD One Clause License	http://www.netbsd.org/	Copyright © 1998 Manuel Bouyer Copyright © 1996 Matt Thomas. Copyright 1997 Marshall Kirk McKusick. All Rights Reserved, Copyright © 1985, 1988, 1989, 1991, 1993, 1995 The Regents of the University of California Copyright © 1989, 1993 The Regents of the University of California Copyright © 1983, 1993 The Regents of the University of California Copyright 2000-2011 Green Hills Software Copyright (c) 1996 by Internet Software Consortium. Copyright (C) 1998 WIDE Project, Portions Copyright © 1995 by International Business Machines, Inc, Copyright (C) 1994, 1995, 1997 TooLs GmbH Copyright (C) 1994, 1995, 1997 Wolfgang Solfrank Copyright © 1995, 1999 Berkeley Software Design, Inc Portions Copyright © 1993 by Digital Equipment Corporation Copyright © 1992 Henry Spencer Copyright © 1997, 1998, 1999 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc Copyright © 1996 by Internet Software Consortium.Copyright (c) 1994 James A. Jegers(c) © UNIX System Laboratories, Inc.
18	NetBSD_BSD4	1.9	BSD 4-clause "Original" or "Old" License	http://www.netbsd.org/	Copyright 2000-2011, 2000-2013 Green Hills Software, Copyright © 1994, 1998 Christopher G. Demetriou, Copyright © 1982, 1986, 1990, 1993, 1994 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved. © UNIX System Laboratories, Inc.
19	The FreeType Project - freetype2	2.6.3	Freetype Project License	http://sourceforge.net/projects/freetype/	Copyright 1996-2016 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg, Copyright 2007-2016 by Rahul Bhalerao,Copyright 2009-2016 by Oran Agra and Mickey Gabel, Copyright 2008-2016 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, Werner Lemberg, and suzuki toshiya. Copyright 2000 Computing Research Labs, New Mexico State University, Copyright 2001-2015 Francesco Zappa Nardelli, Copyright 2004-2016 by Masatake YAMATO and Redhat K.K,Copyright 2007-2016 by Derek Clegg and Michael Toftdal,Copyright 2010-2016 by Joel Klinghed,Copyright 2007-2013 Adobe Systems Incorporated,Copyright 2007-2014 Adobe Systems Incorporated,Copyright 2004-2016 by Albert Chin-A-Young,Copyright 2013-2016 by Google, Inc,Copyright 2002-2016 by Roberto Alameda,Copyright 2003 Huw D M Davies for Codeweavers,Copyright 2007 Dmitry Timoshkov for Codeweavers

Sl No.	Name of OSS Component	Version of OSS Component	Name and Version of License (License text can be found in Appendix below)	Home Page	More Information
20	Vivante Driver software	viv5.0.11p7.4.i3	MIT License	http://www.vivantecorp.com/	Copyright 2012 - 2016 Vivante Corporation, Santa Clara, California Copyright © 2007 The Khronos Group Inc Copyright © 2014 - 2016 Vivante Corporation Copyright 2012 Vivante Corporation, Sunnyvale, California Copyright © 2011 Intel Corporation Copyright (C) 1999-2001 Brian Paul
21	zlib	1.2.8	zlib License	http://www.zlib.net/	Copyright (C) 1995-2007 Mark Adler Copyright (C) 1995-2005 Jean-loup Gailly Copyright (C) 1995-2012 Mark Adler Copyright (C) 2003 Chris Anderson Copyright (C) 1998 Brian Raiter
22	RBTree.cpp	3.4.2	Public Domain	https://www.eu.socionext.com/	(C) Socionext Embedded Software Austria GmbH (SESA)

2. APPENDIX - LICENSE TEXT

2.1 HPND Like license

Portions Copyright (c) 1993 by Digital Equipment Corporation.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies, and that the name of Digital Equipment Corporation not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the document or software without specific, written prior permission.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORP. DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORPORATION BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

2.2 BSD 2-clause "Simplified" License

BSD Two Clause License

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

2.3 IBM License

Portions Copyright (c) 1995 by International Business Machines, Inc.

International Business Machines, Inc. (hereinafter called IBM) grants permission under its copyrights to use, copy, modify, and distribute this Software with or without fee, provided that the above copyright notice and all paragraphs of this notice appear in all copies, and that the name of IBM not be used in connection with the marketing of any product incorporating the Software or modifications thereof, without specific, written prior permission.

To the extent it has a right to do so, IBM grants an immunity from suit under its patents, if any, for the use, sale or manufacture of products to the extent that such products are used for performing Domain Name System dynamic updates in TCP/IP networks by means of the Software. No immunity is granted for any product per se or for any other function of any product.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", AND IBM DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL IBM BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF IBM IS APPRISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

2.4 BSD 3-clause "New" or "Revised" License

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. Neither the name of the [ORGANIZATION] nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

2.5 BSD 4-clause "Original" or "Old" License

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by the organization.
4. Neither the name of the organization nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY COPYRIGHT HOLDER ''AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL {{COPYRIGHT HOLDER}} BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

2.6 BSD-4-Clause (University of California-Specific)

BSD-4-Clause (University of California-Specific)

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

2.7 Freetype Project License

The FreeType Project LICENSE

2006-Jan-27

Copyright 1996-2002, 2006 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg

Introduction

The FreeType Project is distributed in several archive packages; some of them may contain, in addition to the FreeType font engine, various tools and contributions which rely on, or relate to, the FreeType Project. This license applies to all files found in

such packages, and which do not fall under their own explicit license. The license affects thus the FreeType font engine, the test programs, documentation and makefiles, at the very least. This license was inspired by the BSD, Artistic, and IJG (Independent JPEG Group) licenses, which all encourage inclusion and use of free software in commercial and freeware products alike. As a consequence, its main points are that:

We don't promise that this software works. However, we will be interested in any kind of bug reports. (`as is' distribution)

You can use this software for whatever you want, in parts or full form, without having to pay us. (`royalty-free' usage)

You may not pretend that you wrote this software. If you use it, or only parts of it, in a program, you must acknowledge somewhere in your documentation that you have used the FreeType code. (`credits')

We specifically permit and encourage the inclusion of this software, with or without modifications, in commercial products. We disclaim all warranties covering The FreeType Project and assume no liability related to The FreeType Project. Finally, many people asked us for a preferred form for a credit/disclaimer to use in compliance with this license. We thus encourage you to use the following text: "Portions of this software are copyright © 1996-2002, 2006 The FreeType Project (www.freetype.org). All rights reserved."

Definitions

Throughout this license, the terms `package', `FreeType Project', and `FreeType archive' refer to the set of files originally distributed by the authors (David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg) as the `FreeType Project', be they named as alpha, beta or final release. `You' refers to the licensee, or person using the project, where `using' is a generic term including compiling the project's source code as well as linking it to form a `program' or `executable'. This program is referred to as `a program using the FreeType engine'. This license applies to all files distributed in the original FreeType Project, including all source code, binaries and documentation, unless otherwise stated in the file in its original, unmodified form as distributed in the original archive. If you are unsure whether or not a particular file is covered by this license, you must contact us to verify this.

No Warranty

THE FREETYPE PROJECT IS PROVIDED `AS IS' WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT WILL ANY OF THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES CAUSED BY THE USE OR THE INABILITY TO USE, OF THE FREETYPE PROJECT. Redistribution

Redistribution

This license grants a worldwide, royalty-free, perpetual and irrevocable right and license to use, execute, perform, compile, display, copy, create derivative works of, distribute and sublicense the FreeType Project (in both source and object code forms) and derivative works thereof for any purpose; and to authorize others to exercise some or all of the rights granted herein, subject to the following conditions:

Redistribution of source code must retain this license file (`FTL.TXT') unaltered; any additions, deletions or changes to the original files must be clearly indicated in accompanying documentation. The copyright notices of the unaltered, original files must be preserved in all copies of source files. Redistribution in binary form must provide a disclaimer that states that the software is based in part of the work of the FreeType Team, in the distribution documentation. We also encourage you to put an URL to the FreeType web page in your documentation, though this isn't mandatory. These conditions apply to any software derived from or based on the FreeType Project, not just the unmodified files. If you use our work, you must acknowledge us. However, no fee need be paid to us.

Advertising

Neither the FreeType authors and contributors nor you shall use the name of the other for commercial, advertising, or promotional purposes without specific prior written permission. We suggest, but do not require, that you use one or more of the fol-

lowing phrases to refer to this software in your documentation or advertising materials: `FreeType Project', `FreeType Engine', `FreeType library', or `FreeType Distribution'. As you have not signed this license, you are not required to accept it. However, as the FreeType Project is copyrighted material, only this license, or another one contracted with the authors, grants you the right to use, distribute, and modify it. Therefore, by using, distributing, or modifying the FreeType Project, you indicate that you understand and accept all the terms of this license.

Contacts

There are two mailing lists related to FreeType:

freetype@nongnu.org

Discusses general use and applications of FreeType, as well as future and wanted additions to the library and distribution. If you are looking for support, start in this list if you haven't found anything to help you in the documentation.

devel@nongnu.org

Discusses bugs, as well as engine internals, design issues, specific licenses, porting, etc.

Our home page can be found at: http://www.freetype.org

2.8 Independent JPEG Group License

The Independent JPEG Group's JPEG software README for release 6b of 27-Mar-1998

This distribution contains the sixth public release of the Independent JPEG Group's free JPEG software. You are welcome to redistribute this software and to use it for any purpose, subject to the conditions under LEGAL ISSUES, below. Serious users of this software (particularly those incorporating it into larger programs) should contact IJG at jpeg-info@uunet.uu.net to be added to our electronic mailing list. Mailing list members are notified of updates and have a chance to participate in technical discussions, etc. This software is the work of Tom Lane, Philip Gladstone, Jim Boucher, Lee Crocker, Julian Minguillon, Luis Ortiz, George Phillips, Davide Rossi, Guido Vollbeding, Ge' Weijers, and other members of the Independent JPEG Group. IJG is not affiliated with the official ISO JPEG standards committee.

LEGAL ISSUES

In plain English:

We don't promise that this software works. (But if you find any bugs, please let us know!) You can use this software for whatever you want. You don't have to pay us. You may not pretend that you wrote this software. If you use it in a program, you must acknowledge somewhere in your documentation that you've used the IJG code.

In legalese:

The authors make NO WARRANTY or representation, either express or implied, with respect to this software, its quality, accuracy, merchantability, or fitness for a particular purpose. This software is provided "AS IS", and you, its user, assume the entire risk as to its quality and accuracy. This software is copyright (C) 1991-1998, Thomas G. Lane. All Rights Reserved except as specified below.

Permission is hereby granted to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software (or portions thereof) for any purpose, without fee, subject to these conditions:

1. If any part of the source code for this software is distributed, then this README file must be included, with this copyright and no-warranty notice unaltered; and any additions, deletions, or changes to the original files must be clearly indicated in accompanying documentation.

2. If only executable code is distributed, then the accompanying documentation must state that "this software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group".
3. Permission for use of this software is granted only if the user accepts full responsibility for any undesirable consequences; the authors accept NO LIABILITY for damages of any kind.

These conditions apply to any software derived from or based on the IJG code, not just to the unmodified library. If you use our work, you ought to acknowledge us.

Permission is NOT granted for the use of any IJG author's name or company name in advertising or publicity relating to this software or products derived from it. This software may be referred to only as "the Independent JPEG Group's software".

We specifically permit and encourage the use of this software as the basis of commercial products, provided that all warranty or liability claims are assumed by the product vendor. ansi2knr.c is included in this distribution by permission of L. Peter Deutsch, sole proprietor of its copyright holder, Aladdin Enterprises of Menlo Park, CA. ansi2knr.c is NOT covered by the above copyright and conditions, but instead by the usual distribution terms of the Free Software Foundation; principally, that you must include source code if you redistribute it. (See the file ansi2knr.c for full details.)

However, since ansi2knr.c is not needed as part of any program generated from the IJG code, this does not limit you more than the foregoing paragraphs do. The Unix configuration script "configure" was produced with GNU Autoconf. It is copyright by the Free Software Foundation but is freely distributable. The same holds for its supporting scripts (config.guess, config.sub, ltconfig, ltmain.sh). Another support script, install-sh, is copyright by M.I.T. but is also freely distributable.

It appears that the arithmetic coding option of the JPEG spec is covered by patents owned by IBM, AT&T, and Mitsubishi. Hence arithmetic coding cannot legally be used without obtaining one or more licenses. For this reason, support for arithmetic coding has been removed from the free JPEG software. (Since arithmetic coding provides only a marginal gain over the unpatented Huffman mode, it is unlikely that very many implementations will support it.) So far as we are aware, there are no patent restrictions on the remaining code.

The IJG distribution formerly included code to read and write GIF files. To avoid entanglement with the Unisys LZW patent, GIF reading support has been removed altogether, and the GIF writer has been simplified to produce "uncompressed GIFs". This technique does not use the LZW algorithm; the resulting GIF files are larger than usual, but are readable by all standard GIF decoders. We are required to state that:

"The Graphics Interchange Format(c) is the Copyright property of CompuServe Incorporated. GIF(sm) is a Service Mark property of CompuServe Incorporated."

2.9 Internet Software Consortium-IBM License

Copyright (c) 1996 by Internet Software Consortium.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND INTERNET SOFTWARE CONSORTIUM DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL INTERNET SOFTWARE CONSORTIUM BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Portions Copyright (c) 1995 by International Business Machines, Inc.

International Business Machines, Inc. (hereinafter called IBM) grants permission under its copyrights to use, copy, modify, and distribute this Software with or without fee, provided that the above copyright notice and all paragraphs of this notice appear in

all copies, and that the name of IBM not be used in connection with the marketing of any product incorporating the Software or modifications thereof, without specific, written prior permission.

To the extent it has a right to do so, IBM grants an immunity from suit under its patents, if any, for the use, sale or manufacture of products to the extent that such products are used for performing Domain Name System dynamic updates in TCP/IP networks by means of the Software. No immunity is granted for any product per se or for any other function of any product.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", AND IBM DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL IBM BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF IBM IS APPRISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

2.10 Khronos License

Copyright (c) 2013 The Khronos Group Inc.

** ** Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a ** copy of this software and/or associated documentation files (the ** "Materials"), to deal in the Materials without restriction, including ** without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, ** distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Materials, and to ** permit persons to whom the Materials are furnished to do so, subject to ** the following conditions: ** ** The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included ** in all copies or substantial portions of the Materials. **

** THE MATERIALS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, ** EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF ** MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. ** IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY ** CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, ** TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE ** MATERIALS OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE MATERIALS.

2.11 License of Stephan Brumme/ Zlib style License

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the author be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software. Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions: The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.

2.12 MIT License

The MIT License

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM,

DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

2.13 Open Group License

Copyright 1996, 1998 The Open Group.

Permission to use, copy, modify, distribute, and sell this software and its documentation for any purpose is hereby granted without fee, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation. The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OPEN GROUP BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of The Open Group shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from The Open Group.

2.14 Public Domain

Public domain code is not subject to any license.

2.15 BSD One Clause License

BSD One Clause License

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

2.16 ISC License

ISC License (ISCL)

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

Permission to use, copy, modify, and/or distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND THE AUTHOR DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

2.17 SGI Free Software License B v2.0

ISC License (ISCL)

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice including the dates of first publication and either this permission notice or a reference to http://oss.sgi.com/projects/FreeB/ shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND THE AUTHOR DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of Silicon Graphics, Inc. shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from Silicon Graphics, Inc.

2.18 Unicode Terms of Use

For the general privacy policy governing access to this site, see the Unicode Privacy Policy. For trademark usage, see the Unicode® Consortium Name and Trademark Usage Policy.

A. Unicode Copyright.

1. Copyright © 1991-2014 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved.
2. Certain documents and files on this website contain a legend indicating that "Modification is permitted." Any person is hereby authorized, without fee, to modify such documents and files to create derivative works conforming to the Unicode® Standard, subject to Terms and Conditions herein.
3. Any person is hereby authorized, without fee, to view, use, reproduce, and distribute all documents and files solely for informational purposes in the creation of products supporting the Unicode Standard, subject to the Terms and Conditions herein.
4. Further specifications of rights and restrictions pertaining to the use of the particular set of data files known as the "Unicode Character Database" can be found in Exhibit 1.
5. Each version of the Unicode Standard has further specifications of rights and restrictions of use. For the book editions (Unicode 5.0 and earlier), these are found on the back of the title page. The online code charts carry specific restrictions. All other files, including online documentation of the core specification for Unicode 6.0 and later, are covered under these general Terms of Use.
6. No license is granted to "mirror" the Unicode website where a fee is charged for access to the "mirror" site.

7. Modification is not permitted with respect to this document. All copies of this document must be verbatim.

B. Restricted Rights Legend.

Any technical data or software which is licensed to the United States of America, its agencies and/or instrumentalities under this Agreement is commercial technical data or commercial computer software developed exclusively at private expense as defined in FAR 2.101, or DFARS 252.227-7014 (June 1995), as applicable. For technical data, use, duplication, or disclosure by the Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in DFARS 202.227-7015 Technical Data, Commercial and Items (Nov 1995) and this Agreement. For Software, in accordance with FAR 12-212 or DFARS 227-7202, as applicable, use, duplication or disclosure by the Government is subject to the restrictions set forth in this Agreement.

C. Warranties and Disclaimers.

1. This publication and/or website may include technical or typographical errors or other inaccuracies . Changes are periodically added to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication and/or website. Unicode may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or program(s) described in this publication and/or website at any time.
2. If this file has been purchased on magnetic or optical media from Unicode, Inc. the sole and exclusive remedy for any claim will be exchange of the defective media within ninety (90) days of original purchase.
3. EXCEPT AS PROVIDED IN SECTION C.2, THIS PUBLICATION AND/OR SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED, OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ANY WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. UNICODE AND ITS LICENSORS ASSUME NO RESPONSIBILITY FOR ERRORS OR OMISSIONS IN THIS PUBLICATION AND/OR SOFTWARE OR OTHER DOCUMENTS WHICH ARE REFERENCED BY OR LINKED TO THIS PUBLICATION OR THE UNICODE WEBSITE.

D. Waiver of Damages.

In no event shall Unicode or its licensors be liable for any special, incidental, indirect or consequential damages of any kind, or any damages whatsoever, whether or not Unicode was advised of the possibility of the damage, including, without limitation, those resulting from the following: loss of use, data or profits, in connection with the use, modification or distribution of this information or its derivatives.

E. Trademarks & Logos.

1. The Unicode Word Mark and the Unicode Logo are trademarks of Unicode, Inc. "The Unicode Consortium" and "Unicode, Inc." are trade names of Unicode, Inc. Use of the information and materials found on this website indicates your acknowledgement of Unicode, Inc.'s exclusive worldwide rights in the Unicode Word Mark, the Unicode Logo, and the Unicode trade names.
2. The Unicode Consortium Name and Trademark Usage Policy ("Trademark Policy") are incorporated herein by reference and you agree to abide by the provisions of the Trademark Policy, which may be changed from time to time in the sole discretion of Unicode, Inc.
3. All third party trademarks referenced herein are the property of their respective owners.

F. Miscellaneous.

1. Jurisdiction and Venue. This server is operated from a location in the State of California, United States of America. Unicode makes no representation that the materials are appropriate for use in other locations. If you access this server from other locations, you are responsible for compliance with local laws. This Agreement, all use of this site and any claims and damages resulting from use of this site are governed solely by the laws of the State of California without regard to any principles which would apply the laws of a different jurisdiction. The user agrees that any disputes regarding this site shall

be resolved solely in the courts located in Santa Clara County, California. The user agrees said courts have personal jurisdiction and agree to waive any right to transfer the dispute to any other forum.

2. Modification by Unicode. Unicode shall have the right to modify this Agreement at any time by posting it to this site. The user may not assign any part of this Agreement without Unicode's prior written consent.
3. Taxes. The user agrees to pay any taxes arising from access to this website or use of the information herein, except for those based on Unicode's net income.
4. Severability. If any provision of this Agreement is declared invalid or unenforceable, the remaining provisions of this Agreement shall remain in effect.
5. Entire Agreement. This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between the parties.

2.19 libpng License

This copy of the libpng notices is provided for your convenience. In case of any discrepancy between this copy and the notices in the file png.h that is included in the libpng distribution, the latter shall prevail.

COPYRIGHT NOTICE, DISCLAIMER, and LICENSE:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

If you modify libpng you may insert additional notices immediately following this sentence. libpng versions 1.0.7, July 1, 2000, through 1.0.13, April 15, 2002, are Copyright (c) 2000-2002 Glenn Randers-Pehrson and are distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-1.0.6 with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors:

Simon-Pierre Cadieux, Eric S. Raymond, Gilles Vollant

and with the following additions to the disclaimer:

There is no warranty against interference with your enjoyment of the library or against infringement. There is no warranty that our efforts or the library will fulfill any of your particular purposes or needs. This library is provided with all faults, and the entire risk of satisfactory quality, performance, accuracy, and effort is with the user.

libpng versions 0.97, January 1998, through 1.0.6, March 20, 2000, are Copyright (c) 1998, 1999 Glenn Randers-Pehrson, and are distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-0.96, with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors:

Tom Lane, Glenn Randers-Pehrson, Willem van Schaik.

libpng versions 0.89, June 1996, through 0.96, May 1997, are Copyright (c) 1996, 1997 Andreas Dilger Distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-0.88, with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors:

John Bowler, Kevin Bracey, Sam Bushe, Magnus Holmgren, Greg Roelofs, Tom Tanner.

libpng versions 0.5, May 1995, through 0.88, January 1996, are Copyright (c) 1995, 1996 Guy Eric Schalnat, Group 42, Inc. For the purposes of this copyright and license, "Contributing Authors" is defined as the following set of individuals:

Andreas Dilger, Dave Martindale, Guy Eric Schalnat, Paul Schmidt, Tim Wegner.

The PNG Reference Library is supplied "AS IS". The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. disclaim all warranties, expressed or implied, including, without limitation, the warranties of merchantability and of fitness for any purpose. The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. assume no liability for direct, indirect, incidental, special, exemplary, or consequential damages, which may result from the use of the PNG Reference Library, even if advised of the possibility of such damage. Permission is hereby granted to use, copy, modify, and distribute this source code, or portions hereof, for any purpose, without fee, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this source code must not be misrepresented.

2. Altered versions must be plainly marked as such and must not be misrepresented as being the original source.
3. This Copyright notice may not be removed or altered from any source or altered source distribution.

The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. specifically permit, without fee, and encourage the use of this source code as a component to supporting the PNG file format in commercial products. If you use this source code in a product, acknowledgment is not required but would be appreciated. A "png_get_copyright" function is available, for convenient use in "about" boxes and the like:

printf("%s",png_get_copyright(NULL));

Also, the PNG logo (in PNG format, of course) is supplied in the files "pngbar.png" and "pngbar.jpg (88x31) and "pngnow.png" (98x31).

Libpng is OSI Certified Open Source Software. OSI Certified Open Source is a certification mark of the Open Source Initiative.

Glenn Randers-Pehrson

randeg@alum.rpi.edu

April 15, 2002

2.20 zlib License

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

2.3.2. Type approval for HomeLink® * [1]

The type approval for HomeLink® can be read below.

Country/Area	Type approval
USA and Canada	This device complies with FCC rules part 15 and Industry Canada RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Country/Area	Type approval
Europe	Gentex Corporation hereby declares that HomeLink® Model UAHL5 complies with the Radio equipment directive 2014/53/EU. Wavelength within which the radio equipment functions: • 433.05MHz-434.79MHz <10mW E.R.P. • 868.00MHz-868.60MHz <25mW E.R.P. • 868.70MHz-868.20MHz <25mW E.R.P. • 869.40MHz-869.65MHz <25mW E.R.P. • 869.70MHz-870.00MHz <25mW E.R.P. Certificate holder address: Gentex Corporation, 600 North Centennial Street, Zeeland MI 49464, USA

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

2.3.3. Type approval Radio Equipment Directive

Information on the Radio Equipment Directive is available at volvocars.com/intl/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support] .

2.3.4. Certificate for wireless charger

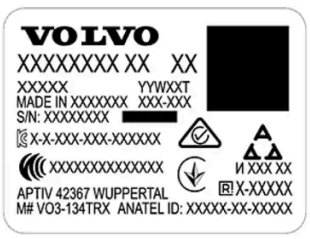
Country/Area	
China:	（一）符合“微功率短距离无线电发射设备目录和技术要求”的具体条款和使用场景，采用的天线类型和性能，控制、调整及开关等使用方法； （二）不得擅自改变使用场景或使用条件、扩大发射频率范围、加大发射功率（包括额外加装射频功率放大器），不得擅自更改发射天线； （三）不得对其他合法的无线电台（站）产生有害干扰，也不得提出免受有害干扰保护； （四）应当承受辐射射频能量的工业、科学及医疗（ISM）应用设备的干扰或其他合法的无线电台（站）干扰； （五）如对其他合法的无线电台（站）产生有害干扰时，应立即停止使用，并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续使用； （六）在航空器内和依据法律法规、国家有关规定、标准划设的射电天文台、气象雷达站、卫星地球站（含测控、测距、接收、导航站）等军民用无线电台（站）、机场等的电磁环境保护区域内使用微功率设备，应当遵守电磁环境保护及相关行业主管部门的规定； （七）禁止在以机场跑道中心点为圆心、半径5000米的区域内使用各类模型遥控器； （八）微功率设备使用时温度和电压的环境条件。
Mexico:	RCPVAPVO 18-1919 [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/VOLVO_Mexico_57442C.pdf]
Paraguay:	 2018-11-1-000541 [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/Volvo_Paraguay_57442C.pdf]
Taiwan:	根據NCC低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 規定: 第十二條 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。 第十四條 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。 前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。 低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

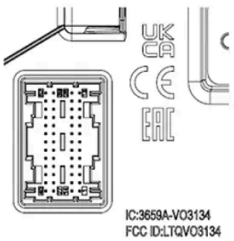
Country/Area	
Ukraine:	Ци Діапазон частот: 107 кГц - 115 кГц Максимальна потужність радіосигналу: 5 Вт (сполучена), 63 Вт наномасштабів (випромінюється) Коефіцієнт викидів: N / A Модуляції: 2 кГц NFC Діапазон частот: 13,56 МГц, у межах +/- 0,01% Максимальна вихідна потужність РФ: 10 мВт – виробник: Ел-Джі Електронікс Інк.(LG Electronics Inc) 10, Магок'юнганг 10-ро, Гангсео-гу, Сеул, 07796, Корея Frequency range 111 кГц / Максимальна потужність РЧ: 42 дБмк А / м справжнім Ел-Джі Електронікс Інкзаявляє, що тип радіообладнання WC510MVV20 відповідає Технічному регламенту радіообладнання; повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою:https://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc. імпортер : Віннер Імпортс Україна Вул. Дачна, 5-А, с.Капітанівка, Київська область, 08112, Україна Тел.: +38(044) 585 63 00 Контактна особа : Alla Haidai (ahaidai@winner.ua)
USA/Canada	FCC ID : BEJWC510MVV20 IC : 2703H-WC510MVV20 This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-Gen,RSS-216 rules of Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. Any changed or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment. FCC RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 15cm between the radiator and your body. – IDéclaration d'avertissement ISED Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) Cet appareil ne doit pas provoquerd'interferences nuisibles, et (2) Cet appareil doit accepter toute interference recue, y compris les interferences pouvant entrainerun fonctionnement indesirable. Les changements ou modifications non expressement approuves par LG Vehicle Components Company pourraient annuler l'autorite de l'utilisateura utilizer l'equipement. Déclaration d'exposition aux radiations RF de l'ISED: Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements RF de l'ISED définies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet appareil et son antenne ne doivent pas être situés ou fonctionner conjointement avec une autre antenne ou un autre émetteur. Cet équipement doit être installé pour fonctionner avec une distance minimale de 10cm entre le radiateuret le corps de l'utilisateur final.

2.3.5. Type approval for the remote control key system

Type approval for the car's remote key system can be seen in the following tables.

Lock system keyless start (Passive Start) and keyless locking/unlocking (Passive Entry*)





CEM marking for the remote control key system. For supplementary type approval numbers, see following tables.

Country/Area	Type approval	
Argentina		See the illustration below the table.
Brazil	MT-3245/2015	ANATEL 0589-15-6830 (01) 0 7897843840961
Europe	Delphi Deutschland GmbH, 42367 Wuppertal hereby declares that this VO3-134TRX conforms to the essential property requirements and other relevant provisions contained in directive 2014/53/EU (RED).	
The United Arab Emirates	ER37847/15 DA0062437/11	
Indonesia	Nomor: 38301/SDPPI/2015	
Jordan	TRC/LPD/2014/250	
Malaysia	RAAT/37A/1215/S(15-5198)	
Mexico	IFETEL: RLVDEVO15-0396	
Namibia	TA-2016-02	CRAN Communications Regulatory Authority of Namibia
Russia		EAC
Serbia	P1614120100	
South Africa	TA-2014-1868	ICASA

Argentina

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES

H-25867

Remote control key

Country/Area	Type approval	
Europe	Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG hereby declares that this type of radio equipment HUF8423MS conforms to directive 2014/53/EU. Wavelength: 433.92 MHz Maximum radiated transmission power: 10 mW Manufacturer: Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG, Steeger Str. 17, 42551 Velbert, Germany	

Country/Area	Type approval	
Argentina		See the illustration below the table.
Brazil	Anatel: 06768-19-06643 Modelo: HUF8423MS Este equipomento opera em caráter secundário isto é não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.	ANATEL
Philippines	ESD-1919938C	NTC Type Approved No.: ESD-1919938C
The United Arab Emirates		TRA REGISTERED No: ER72465/19 DEALER No: DA36976/14
Ghana	NCA Approved: ZRO-M8-7E3-138	
Indonesia [1]	Sertifikat Nomor: 65073/SDPPI/2019 PLG ID: 8093	
CU (Customs Union) Kazakhstan, Russia		EAC
Morocco	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément: MR 20402 ANRT 2019 Date d'agrément: 10/07/2019	
Moldova		024
Nigeria	Connection and use of this communication equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission	
Oman		OMAN - TRA R/7757/19 D172249
Paraguay	HUF8423MS	HUF8423MS CONATEL NR:2019-08-I-0447
Serbia		005 19
Singapore	Complies with IMDA Standards DA103787	
South Africa	TA-2019/772	ICASA
Taiwan	本產品符合低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 第十二條、第十四條等條文規定 .1 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不 • 得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能 .2 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾 • 現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用 • 前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信 低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設 • 備之干擾	

Country/Area	Type approval	
Ukraine	Справжнім Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co KG заявляє, що тип радіообладнання відповідає Технічному[HUF8423MS] регламенту радіообладнання; повний текст -декларації про відповідність доступний на веб :сайті за такою адресою Робоча частота: 433,92 ГГц	
Vietnam		ICT
Belarus		
Zambia		ZICTA ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2019/7/105

Argentina

COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES

H-23694

Key Tag

Country/Area	Type approval	
Europe	Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG hereby declares that this type of radio equipment HUF8432MS conforms to directive 2014/53/EU. Wavelength: 433.92 MHz Maximum radiated transmission power: 10 mW Manufacturer: Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG, Steeger Str. 17, 42551 Velbert, Germany	
Argentina		See the illustration below the table.
Brazil	Anatel: 04362-16-06643 Modelo: HUF8432MS Este equipo opera em caráter secundário isto é não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.	ANATEL

Country/Area	Type approval	
Ghana	NCA Approved: ZRO-M8-7E3-139	
Philippines	ESD-1919939C	NTC Type Approved No.: ESD-1919939C
The United Arab Emirates		TRA REGISTERED No: ER72467/19 DEALER No: DA36976/14
CU (Customs Union) Kazakhstan, Russia		EAC
Indonesia [1]	Sertifikat Nomor: 65072/SDPPI/2019 PLG ID: 8093	
Morocco	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément: MR 20403 ANRT 2019 Date d'agrément: 10/07/2019	
Moldova		024
Nigeria	Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission	
Oman		OMAN - TRA R/7758/19 D172249
Paraguay	HUF8432MS	HUF8432MS CONATEL NR:2019-08-I-0448
Serbia		005 19
Singapore	Complies with IMDA Standards DA103787	
South Africa	TA-2019-773	ICASA
Taiwan	本產品符合低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 第十二條、第十四條等條文規定 .1 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不 • 得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能 .2 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾 • 現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用 • 前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信 低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設 • 備之干擾	

Country/Area	Type approval	
Ukraine	Справжнім Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co KG заявляє, що тип радіообладнання відповідає Технічному[HUF8432MS] регламенту радіообладнання; повний текст -декларації про відповідність доступний на веб :сайті за такою адресою Робоча частота: 433,92 ГГц	
Vietnam		ICT
Belarus		
Zambia		ZICTA ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2019/7/121

Argentina

COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES

H-23695

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only applies to Indonesia.

2.3.6. Approval of terms and conditions and data collection

Messages about different terms and conditions and data collection can be shown in the centre display. Collection of data takes place to provide better car, safety and app functions, for example.

The first time you use your car, a guide opens in the centre display to assist you to make various settings. In connection with the guide, you are also prompted to give your agreement to different types of terms and conditions and the collection of information.

Prompts to give consent can also be shown in the event of, for example:

- First-time use of apps and services
- New user profiles
- Logging out from and deleting user profiles

- Change of ownership
- Resetting the settings

To access privacy settings:

1. Press ⚙ in the centre display.
2. Then press on **Privacy**.
3. Then select **Volvo privacy settings**, **Data sharing with Google** or **Legal information from Google**.

Some settings can only be made from a profile with administrative privileges.

Accept the internet terms of use [1]

1. Press ⚙.
2. Select **Privacy**.
3. Select **Internet terms of service** and follow the instructions.

The terms of use must be accepted once per car in order to use the internet.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

2.3.7. Candidate List Substance Information (CL) in accordance with the Reach Regulation, Article 33.1

In accordance with Article 33.1 of the REACH Regulation (Reg. EC 1907/2006), [1] professional customers must be informed of Substances of Very High Concern (SVHC [2]) in products supplied by Volvo Cars. The intention is to facilitate the safe handling of the constituent components affected in order to protect people and the environment.
Volvo Cars supports the underlying goals of the REACH regulation in general, and Article 33 in particular, which are consistent with our own commitment to promote the responsible manufacturing, handling and use of our products.

Presence of Candidate List Substances

The articles in the "Candidate List Substances Table" below contain substances at greater than 0.1% w/w in the candidate list (CL) for the specific car. The information on substances in the candidate list (CL) is based on the data obtained from our suppli-

ers and our own product data.

General Safe Use Information for Articles

Every car from Volvo Cars is provided with an owner's manual, which includes safe use information for owners/drivers/users of the car. Volvo Cars information on repair and servicing of cars and genuine parts also includes safe use information for service personnel.

Where present in parts of this car, the Candidate List substances shown on the relevant "Candidate List Substances Table" for the specific car are incorporated in such a way that potential exposure to customers as well as risks for people or the environment can be minimised as long as the car and its parts are used as intended, and any repairs, servicing and maintenance are carried out following technical instructions for those activities, and industry standard good practices.

An end-of-life vehicle may only be disposed of legally in the European Union at an Authorised Treatment Facility (ATF). Vehicle parts should be disposed in accordance with locally applicable laws and local authority guidance.

Candidate List Substances Table

More details are available in a pdf file, Support / Information about the car / Rules and regulations.

We hereby inform that almost all product areas contain lead (CAS No 7439-92-1), primarily as alloying elements in steel, aluminium and copper.

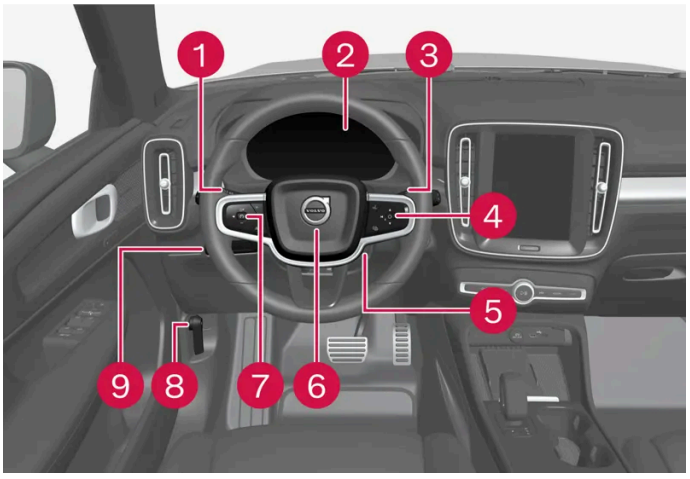
[1] REACH - The European Union's chemicals legislation, which entered into force on 1 June 2007, Regulation (EC) No. 1907/2006 concerning the Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation and Restriction of Chemicals (REACH).

[2] SVHC - Substances of Very High Concern, which are included in the current candidate list (CL).

2.4. Displays and controls by the driver in a left-hand drive car

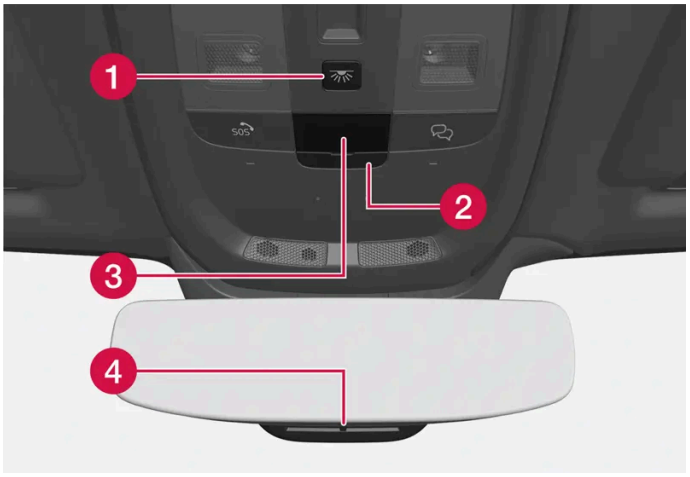
The overviews show where the displays and controls near the driver are located.

Steering wheel and instrument panel



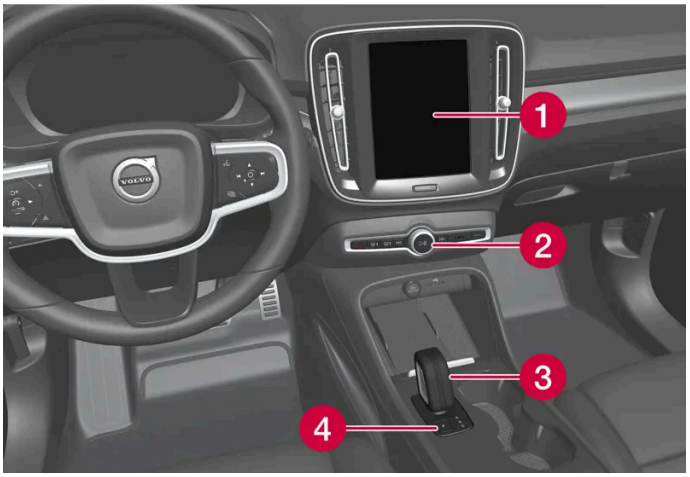
1. Position lamps, daytime running lights, dipped beam, main beam, direction indicators, front fog lamps/cornering lights*, rear fog lamp, resetting the trip meter
2. Driver display
3. Wipers and washing, rain sensor*
4. Right-hand steering wheel keypad
5. Steering wheel adjustment
6. Horn
7. Left-hand steering wheel keypad
8. Bonnet opening
9. Display lighting, unlocking/opening*/closing* of tailgate

Roof console



1. Front reading lamps and interior lighting
2. Flap for SIM card
3. Display in roof console, button
4. Manual dimming of interior rearview mirror [1]

Centre and tunnel console



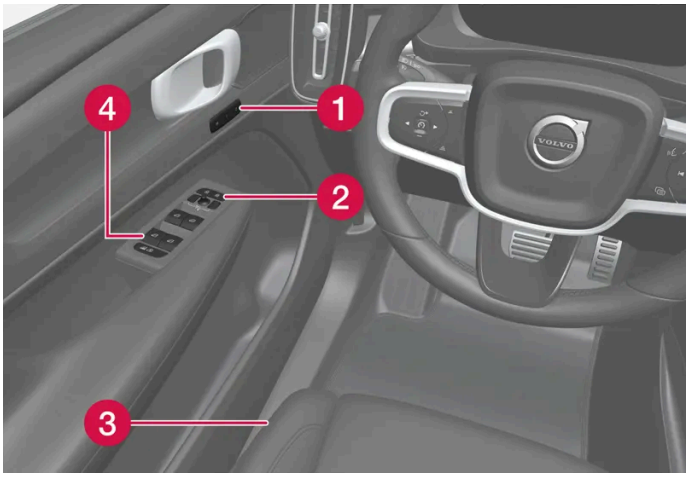
1. Centre display

2 Hazard warning flashers, defrosting, media

3 Gear selector

4 Parking brake

Driver's door



1 Memory for settings for power front seat

2 Central locking and door mirrors

3 Adjusting front seat

4 Power windows and child lock*

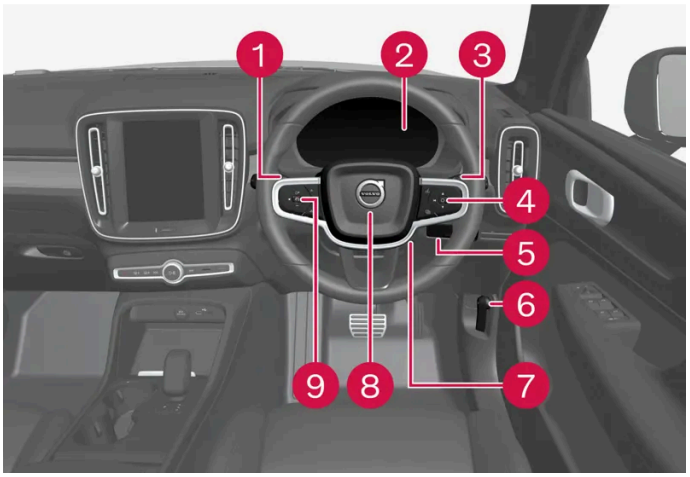
* Option/accessory.

[1] There are no controls for manual dimming for cars with automatic dimming.

2.5. Displays and controls by the driver in a right-hand drive car

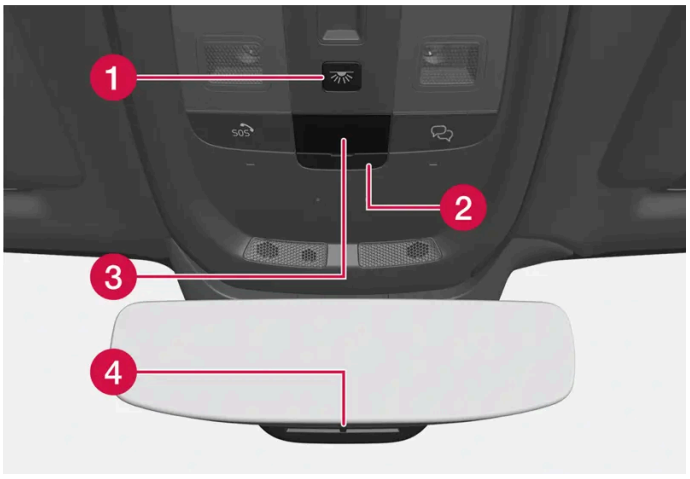
The overviews show where the displays and controls near the driver are located.

Steering wheel and instrument panel



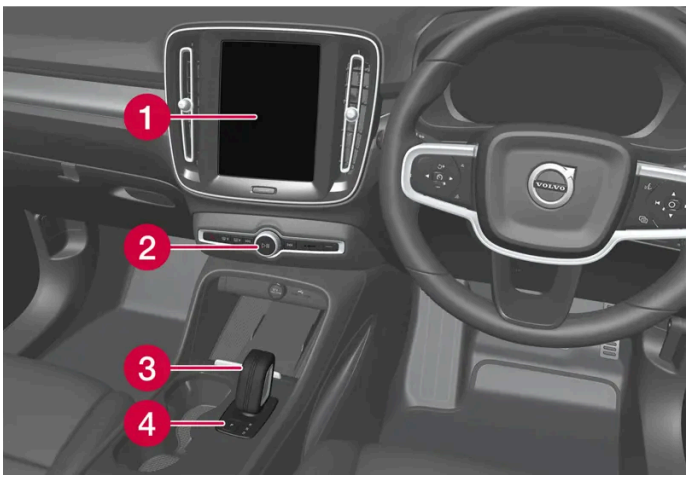
1. Position lamps, daytime running lights, dipped beam, main beam, direction indicators, front fog lamps/cornering lights*, rear fog lamp, resetting the trip meter
2. Driver display
3. Wipers and washing, rain sensor*
4. Right-hand steering wheel keypad
5. Unlocking/opening*/closing* of tailgate
6. Bonnet opening
7. Steering wheel adjustment
8. Horn
9. Left-hand steering wheel keypad

Roof console



1. Front reading lamps and interior lighting
2. Flap for SIM card
3. Display in roof console, 🗨 button
4. Manual dimming of interior rearview mirror [1]

Centre and tunnel console



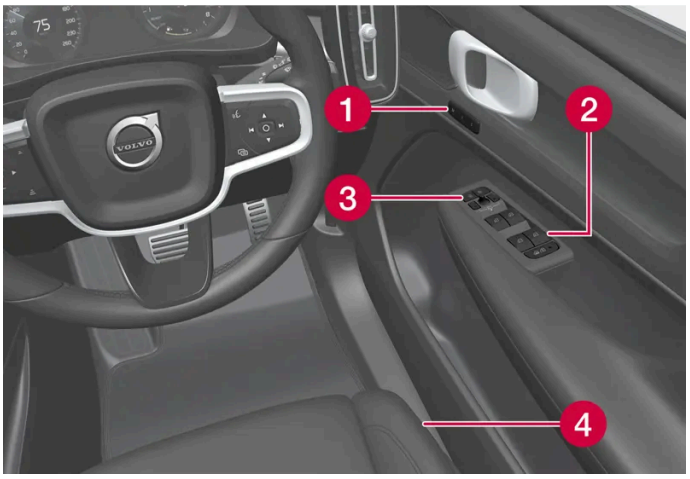
1 Centre display

2 Hazard warning flashers, defrosting, media

3 Gear selector

4 Parking brake

Driver's door



1 Memory for settings for power front seat

2 Central locking and door mirrors

3 Power windows and electric child lock*

4 Adjusting front seat

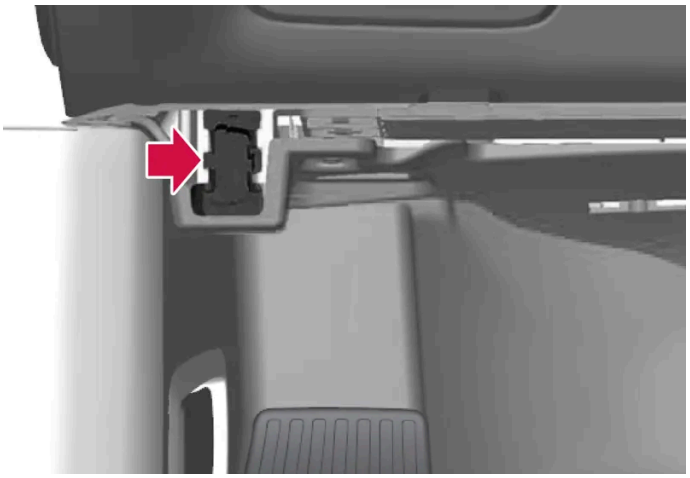
* Option/accessory.

[1] There are no controls for manual dimming for cars with automatic dimming.

2.6. Connection of equipment to the car's diagnostic socket

Incorrect connection and installation of software or diagnostic tools may have a negative effect on the car's electronic system.

Volvo strongly recommends that Volvo owners only install Volvo approved original accessories, and that installation of accessories is only carried out by trained and qualified Volvo service technicians. Certain accessories only function when associated software is installed in the car's computer system.



Data link connector (On-board Diagnostic, OBDII) is under the instrument panel on the driver's side.

Note

Volvo Cars accepts no liability for the consequences if unauthorised equipment is connected to the On-board Diagnostic socket (OBDII). This socket should only be used by trained and qualified Volvo service technicians.

2.7. Driver distraction

The driver is responsible for doing everything possible to ensure the safety of themselves, their passengers and other road users. Part of this responsibility is avoiding distractions such as carrying out an activity that is not related to operating the car in a driving environment.

Your new Volvo is equipped with content-rich entertainment and communications systems. You may also have other portable electronic devices for your own convenience. Use these systems and devices in a safe manner in order to avoid distraction.

We wish to give the following warnings regarding such systems, to indicate Volvo's concern for your safety. Never use a device or function in the car in such a way that it will distract you from the task of driving safely. Distractions can lead to serious accidents. Apart from these general warnings, we offer the following advice regarding the new functions that may be in the car:

Warning

- Never use a hand-held mobile phone while driving. In some areas it is forbidden for the driver to use a mobile phone while the car is moving.
- If the car is equipped with a navigation system you must only set and change the itinerary when the car is parked.
- Never program the audio system while the car is moving. Program the radio's presets when the car is parked and then use the programmed presets for faster and simpler use of the radio.
- Never use laptops or hand-held computers while the car is moving.

2.8. Getting started with Google services

Connect your Google account to your user profile to get started with Google services.

Being logged in with a Google account enables Google services like Google Assistant and Google Maps to be more personalised. To open Google Play, a Google account must be connected to the user profile in question.

Creating a Google account

Go to accounts.google.com/signup [https://accounts.google.com/signup] . Enter name, and create or use an existing email and password. Enter your phone number and verify the account using the code sent to the phone.

Logging into the Google account in the centre display

1. Tap on ⚙, then tap on **Google**, and then **Google Assistant**. Tap on the profile symbol to log in.
2. Enter the email address linked to your Google account. Then tap on **Next**.
3. Enter the password linked to your Google account. Then tap on **Next**.

If there is a problem logging in, make sure the car is connected to the internet.

2.9. Change of market when importing or relocating

When you import a car or relocate a car to another country, it is important that you register the car in the new market in order, for example, for the online services to work correctly, as well as to ensure that the car complies with local requirements and laws.

Visit an authorised Volvo dealer

To get help to register the car, visit an authorised Volvo dealer.

If you do not do this then you may experience that apps, Volvo Assistance[1], software downloads and other online services are affected and do not work correctly.

Creating a new Volvo ID in your new home market

When you relocate to another country you should create a Volvo ID in the new country.

If you have already created a Volvo ID in another country and want to use the same email address, you must first delete your Volvo ID in the region you originally created it. Alternatively, you can create a new Volvo ID using another e-mail address.

For cars with Volvo Assistance

Download the Volvo Cars app from the country where the car will be used and link the app to your car.

> ⓘ **Note**
>
> Visit an authorised Volvo dealer if you have imported or relocated with your car to a new country.
>
> Available services may vary depending on market and car model.

> ⓘ **Note**
>
> If the car is exported to another market, Volvo is not responsible for any adaptations to the car in order to comply with requirements or laws that apply in the importing market. Read more in Service and Warranty or contact your Volvo workshop for more information.

[1] Applicable only to markets that have access to Volvo Assistance.

2.10. Showing the car's identification number

All cars have a unique identification number, VIN [1].

1. Tap on Settings at the bottom of the centre display.
2. Continue to **System** and then **About**.

Another way of finding VIN is:

- on the first page of the Service and warranty booklet
- in the car's registration document
- look on the dashboard through the car's windscreen.

VIN is positioned in a similar place on all models.

[1] Vehicle Identification Number

2.11. Recording data

As part of Volvo's safety and quality assurance, certain information about the vehicle's operation, functionality and incidents are recorded in the car.

Event Data Recorder (EDR)

This vehicle is equipped with an "Event Data Recorder" (EDR). Its primary purpose is to register and record data related to traffic accidents or collision-like situations, such as times when the airbag deploys or the vehicle strikes an obstacle in the road.

The data is recorded in order to increase understanding of how vehicle systems work in these types of situations. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short time, usually 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record data related to the following in the event of traffic accidents or collision-like situations:

- how the various systems in the car worked
- whether the driver and passenger seatbelts were fastened/tensioned
- the driver's use of the accelerator or brake pedal
- the travel speed of the vehicle.

This information can help us understand the circumstances in which traffic accidents, injuries and damage occur. The EDR only records data when a non-trivial collision situation occurs. The EDR does not record any data during normal driving conditions. Similarly, the system never registers who is driving the vehicle or the geographic location of the accident or near-miss situation. However, other parties, such as the police, could use the recorded data in combination with the type of personally identifiable information routinely collected after a traffic accident. Special equipment and access to either the vehicle or the EDR is required to be able to interpret the registered data.

In addition to the EDR, the car is equipped with a number of computers designed to continually check and monitor the function of the car. They can record data during normal driving conditions, but in particular register faults affecting the vehicle's operation and functionality, or upon activation of the vehicle's driver support function (e.g.City Safety and the auto brake function).

Some of the recorded data is required to enable service and maintenance technicians to diagnose and remedy any faults that occurred in the vehicle. The registered information is also needed to enable Volvo to satisfy legal requirements laid out in laws and by government authorities. Information registered in the vehicle is stored in its computers until the vehicle is serviced or repaired.

In addition to the above, the registered information can be used in aggregate form for research and product development with the aim of continuously improving the safety and quality of Volvo cars.

Volvo will not contribute to the above-described information being disclosed to third parties without the vehicle owner's consent. To comply with national legislation and regulations, Volvo may be forced to disclose information of this nature to the police or other authorities who may assert a legal right to access such. Special technical equipment which Volvo and workshops that have entered into agreements with Volvo have access to is required to be able to read and interpret the recorded data. Volvo is responsible that the information, which is transferred to Volvo during servicing and maintenance, is securely stored and managed and that its management complies with relevant legal requirements. For further information - contact a Volvo retailer.

TCAM

Vehicles equipped with TCAM can collect data on the vehicle's safety functions as well as other functions in the vehicle. Data are collected for product development, quality follow-up and safety work, as well as to improve and monitor the vehicle's quality and its safety functions. The purpose of data collection is also to manage Volvo Car Corporation's warranty undertakings.

2.12. Installation of accessories

We strongly recommend that Volvo owners only install Volvo approved original accessories, and that installation of accessories is only carried out by trained and qualified Volvo service technicians. Certain accessories only function when associated software is installed in the car's computer system.

- Volvo original accessories are tested to ensure that they function with the car systems for performance, safety and emissions control. In addition, a trained and qualified Volvo service technician knows where accessories may or may not be safely installed in your Volvo. Always seek the advice of a trained and qualified Volvo service technician before installing any accessories in or on your car.
- Accessories that are not approved by Volvo may not have been specifically tested for use with your car.
- Some of the car's performance or safety systems can be negatively affected if you install accessories that have not been tested by Volvo, or if you permit someone without experience of the car to install accessories.
- Damage that is caused by accessories installed in a non-approved or incorrect way is not covered by any new car warranty. More warranty information can be found in the Service and Warranty Booklet. Volvo does not accept any liability for deaths, personal injury or costs arising as a result of the installation of non-original accessories.

2.13. Important information on accessories and auxiliary equipment

The incorrect connection and installation of accessories and extra equipment can negatively affect the car's electronic system.

Volvo strongly recommends that Volvo owners only install Volvo approved original accessories, and that installation of accessories is only carried out by trained and qualified Volvo service technicians. Certain accessories only function when associated software is installed in the car's computer system.

The equipment described in the owner's manual is not available in all cars - they have different equipment depending on adaptations for the needs of different markets and national or local laws and regulations.

Options or accessories described in this manual are marked with an asterisk. In the event of uncertainty over what is standard or an option/accessory, contact a Volvo dealer.

Warning

The driver always bears the ultimate responsibility that the car is used safely and that laws and regulations in force are followed.

It is also important that the car has maintenance and service according to Volvo's recommendations, the owner's information and the Service and Warranty Booklet.

If there should be a difference between the information in the centre display and the information in other sources, it is always the information in the centre display that applies.

---

3. Safety

3.1. Seatbelts

3.1.1. Seatbelts

Heavy braking can have serious consequences if the seatbelts are not used.

It is important that the seatbelt lies against the body so it can provide good protection. Do not lean the backrest too far back. The seatbelt is designed to protect in a normal seating position.

> **Warning**
>
> Remember not to clip or hook the seatbelt to hooks or other interior fittings, as this prevents the belt from tightening properly.

> **Warning**
>
> The seatbelts and airbags interact. If a seatbelt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

> **Warning**
>
> Never modify or repair the seatbelts yourself. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.
>
> If the seatbelt has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire seatbelt must be replaced. Some of the seatbelt's protective properties may have been lost even if the seatbelt does not appear damaged. The seatbelt must also be replaced if it shows signs of wear or damage. The new seatbelt must be type-approved and designed for installation at the same location as the replaced seatbelt.

3.1.2. Putting on and taking off seatbelts

Make sure that all passengers have fastened their seatbelts before starting to drive.

Putting on seatbelts

1 Pull out the seatbelt slowly and make sure it is not twisted or damaged.

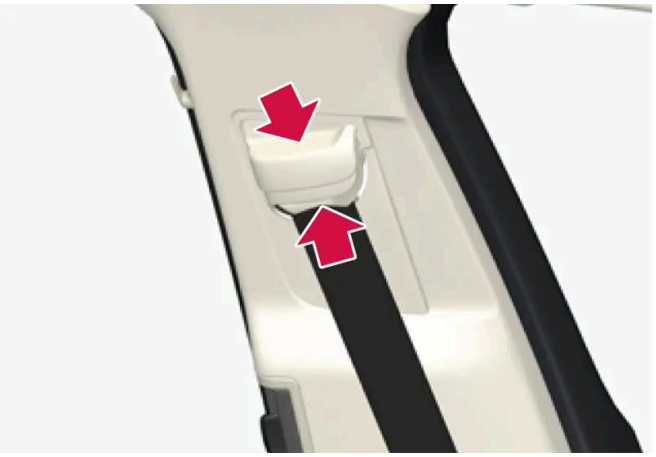
> **Note**
>
> The seatbelt is equipped with an inertia reel that is locked in the following situations:
>
> - if the belt is extended too quickly.
> - during braking and acceleration.
> - if the car leans heavily.
> - when driving in sharper bends.

2 Lock the belt by inserting the locking tab in the intended buckle.

> A loud "click" indicates that the belt has locked.

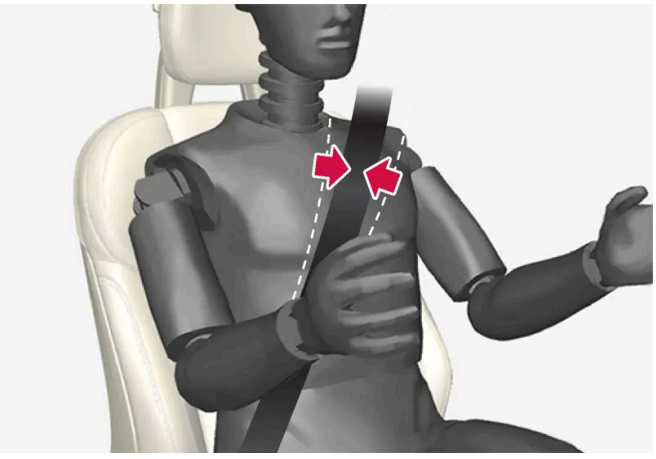
> **Warning**
>
> Always insert the tongue of the seatbelt into the buckle on the correct side. The seatbelts and buckles would otherwise possibly not function as intended in the event of a collision. There is a risk of serious injury.

3 In the front seats the seatbelt can be adjusted for height.



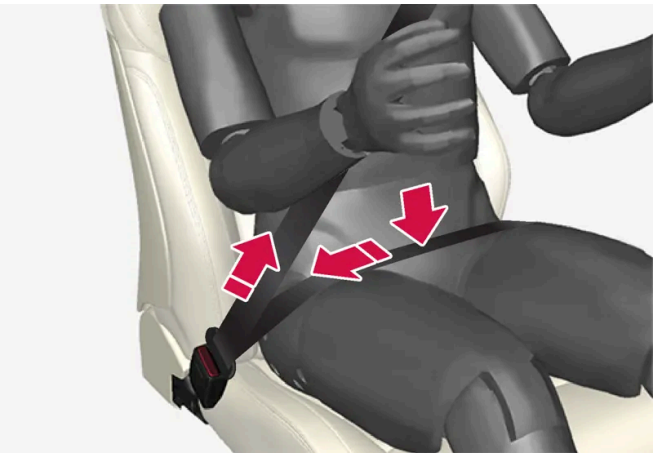
Press together the seat mounting and move the seatbelt up or down.

Position the belt as high as possible without it chafing against your throat.



The seatbelt must pass over the shoulder (not down over the arm).

4 Tension the hip strap over the lap by pulling the diagonal shoulder belt up towards the shoulder.



The hip strap must be positioned low down (not over the abdomen).

> **Warning**
>
> Each seatbelt is designed for only one person.

> **Warning**
>
> Remember not to clip or hook the seatbelt to hooks or other interior fittings, as this prevents the belt from tightening properly.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not make any damages on seatbelts nor insert any foreign objects into a buckle. The seatbelts and buckles would then possibly not function as intended in the event of a collision. There is a risk of serous injury.

Taking off seatbelts

1 Press the red button on the seatbelt buckle and then let the belt retract.

2 If the seatbelt does not retract fully, feed it in by hand so that it does not hang loose.

3.1.3. Seatbelt tensioner

The car is fitted with standard seatbelt tensioners and electric* seatbelt tensioners that can tension the seatbelts in critical situations and collisions.

Standard seatbelt tensioner

The seatbelts in the front seat and at the outer seats in the rear are equipped with a standard belt pretensioner.

The seatbelt tensioner tensions the seatbelt in the event of a collision with sufficient force in order to more effectively restrain the occupant.

Electric seatbelt tensioner*

The driver and front passenger seatbelts are equipped with an electric seatbelt tensioner.

The seatbelt pretensioner works together and can be activated together with the driver support systems for assistance at risk of collision and Rear Collision Warning*. In critical situations, such as panic braking, driving off the road (e.g. the car rolls into a ditch, lifts off the ground or hits something in the terrain), skidding, or risk of collision, the seatbelt can be tensioned by the seatbelt tensioner's electric motor.

The electric seatbelt tensioner helps to adjust the occupant to a better position, reducing the risk of striking the car's interior and improving the effect of safety systems, such as the car's airbags.

When the critical situation has come to an end, the seatbelt and the electric seatbelt pretensioner are restored automatically, but they can also be restored manually.

Important

If the passenger airbag is deactivated, the electric seatbelt tensioner on the passenger side will also be deactivated.

Warning

Never modify or repair the seatbelts yourself. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.

If the seatbelt has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire seatbelt must be replaced. Some of the seatbelt's protective properties may have been lost even if the seatbelt does not appear damaged. The seatbelt must also be replaced if it shows signs of wear or damage. The new seatbelt must be type-approved and designed for installation at the same location as the replaced seatbelt.

* Option/accessory.

3.1.4. Resetting the electric seatbelt tensioner*

The electric seatbelt tensioner is designed to be reset automatically, but the seatbelt tensioner can be reset manually if the belt remains extended.

1 Stop the car at a safe place.

2 Unfasten the seatbelt and then refasten it.

> The seatbelt and electric seatbelt tensioner are reset.

Warning

Never modify or repair the seatbelts yourself. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.

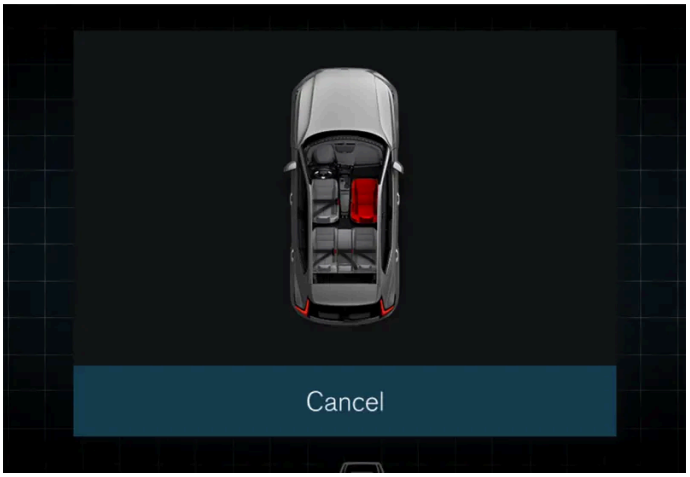
If the seatbelt has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire seatbelt must be replaced. Some of the seatbelt's protective properties may have been lost even if the seatbelt does not appear damaged. The seatbelt must also be replaced if it shows signs of wear or damage. The new seatbelt must be type-approved and designed for installation at the same location as the replaced seatbelt.

* Option/accessory.

3.1.5. Door and seatbelt reminder

The system reminds unbelted occupants to wear a seatbelt, and also warns about an open door, bonnet or tailgate.

Information in the driver display



Graphic in the driver display.

The graphics in the driver display show the status of the seatbelts, bonnet, tailgate and doors.

The graphic can be acknowledged by pressing the O button on the right-hand steering wheel keypad.

As soon as the graphic has been acknowledged, or after a while if the graphic is not acknowledged, it can switch to a smaller format that appears at the top edge of the driver display.

Seatbelt reminder

Visual reminder in the roof console.

A visual reminder is given in the roof console and by means of the warning symbol in the driver display.

The type of visual reminder (fixed or flashing) and audible reminder (various signals) is dependent on the speed, driving time and distance.

> **Note**
>
> The seatbelts built into child restraint systems are not included in the seatbelt reminder system.

Reminders or information are provided by graphics in different ways depending on the belt position.

For the front seat:

- a reminder is given when the driver or passenger is not wearing a seatbelt while the car is in motion
- a reminder is given when a seatbelt is removed while the car is in motion
- information is given on which seat belts are in use (or not).

For the rear seat:

- a reminder is given when a seatbelt is removed while the car is in motion
- information is given on which seat belts are in use (or not).

Reminders for doors, bonnet and tailgate

If the bonnet, tailgate or a door is not closed properly, the driver display's graphics show what is open. Stop the car in a safe place as soon as possible and close the source of the warning.

If the car is driven at a speed lower than approx. 10 km/h (6 mph) then the driver display's information symbol illuminates.

If the car is driven at a speed higher than approx. 10 km/h (6 mph) then the driver display's warning symbol illuminates.

3.2. Airbags

3.2.1. Airbags

The car is equipped with a number of different airbags in order to assist in protecting driver and passengers.

Note

The detectors react differently depending on the nature of the collision and whether or not the seatbelts are fastened. Applies to all belt positions.

It is therefore possible that only one (or none) of the airbags may inflate in a collision. The detectors sense the force of the collision on the vehicle and the action is adapted accordingly so that none, one or more airbags are deployed.

Warning

The airbag system's control module is located in the centre console. If the centre console is drenched with water or other liquid, disconnect the cables to the starter battery. Do not attempt to start the car since the airbags may deploy. Recovering the car. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.

Deployed airbags

If any of the airbags have deployed, the following is recommended:

- Recovering the car. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop. Do not drive with deployed airbags.
- Volvo recommends engaging an authorised Volvo workshop to handle the replacement of components in the car's safety systems.
- Seek medical attention if necessary.

Warning

Never drive with deployed airbags. They can make steering difficult. Other safety systems may also be damaged. The smoke and dust created when the airbags are deployed can cause skin and eye irritation/injury after intensive exposure. In case of irritation, wash with cold water. The rapid deployment sequence and airbag fabric may cause friction and skin burns.

3.2.2. Driver airbags

As a supplement to the seatbelts, the car is equipped with steering wheel airbag and knee airbag[1] on the driver's side.

Steering wheel airbag and knee airbag[1] on the driver's side in the front seat.

In the event of a frontal collision, the airbags help to protect the head, neck, face and chest of the driver as well as the knees and legs.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the airbag/airbags is inflated. The airbag cushions the initial collision impact for the occupant. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. When this occurs, smoke escapes into the car. This is completely normal. The entire process, including inflation and deflation of the airbag, occurs within tenths of a second.

Warning

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If the belt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

To minimise the risk of injury if the airbag deploys, passengers must sit as upright as possible with their feet on the floor and backs against the backrest.

Warning

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair. Defective work in the airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

Steering wheel airbag location

This airbag is fitted into the centre of the steering wheel. The steering wheel is marked AIRBAG.

Knee airbag[1] location

The airbag is folded up in the lower part of the instrument panel on the driver's side. Its cover panel is marked AIRBAG.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not place or attach any object on the top or front of the panel where the knee airbag is stowed.

[1] The car is only equipped with knee airbag in certain markets.

3.2.3. Passenger airbag

As a supplement to the seatbelts, the vehicle is equipped with an airbag on the passenger side in the front seat.

Passenger side front airbag.

In the event of a frontal collision, the airbag helps to protect the head, neck, face and chest of the passenger as well as the knees and legs.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the airbag is inflated. The airbag cushions the initial collision impact for the occupant. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. When this occurs, smoke escapes into the car. This is completely normal. The entire process, including inflation and deflation of the airbag, occurs within tenths of a second.

> **Warning**
>
> The seatbelts and airbags interact. If the belt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.
>
> To minimise the risk of injury if the airbag deploys, passengers must sit as upright as possible with their feet on the floor and backs against the backrest.

Warning

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair. Defective work in the airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

Passenger airbag location

The airbag is folded up into a compartment above the glovebox. Its cover panel is marked AIRBAG.

Warning

Do not put objects in front of or above the dashboard where the passenger airbag is located.

Label for passenger airbag

Label on the passenger side's sun visor.

The warning label for the passenger airbag is positioned as shown above.

Warning

If the car is not equipped with a switch to activate/deactivate the passenger airbag, the airbag will always be activated.

Warning

Never allow anybody to stand or sit in front of the front passenger seat.

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the airbag is activated.

Front-facing passengers (children and adults) must never sit on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is deactivated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

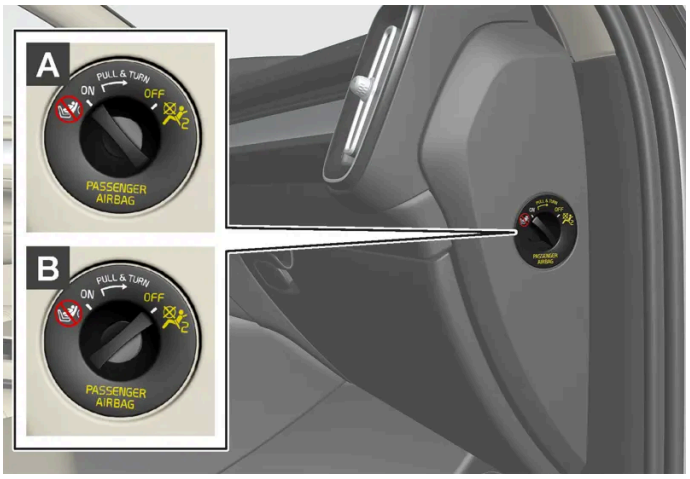
> **Warning**
>
> NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

3.2.4. Activating and deactivating passenger airbag*

The passenger airbag can be deactivated if the car is equipped with a switch, Passenger Airbag Cut Off Switch (PACOS).

The switch for the passenger airbag is located on the passenger end of the instrument panel and is accessible when the passenger door is open.

Check that the switch is in the required position.



A ON - The airbag is activated and all front-facing passengers (children and adults) can sit safely on the passenger seat.

B OFF - The airbag is deactivated and children in rear-facing child seats can sit safely on the passenger seat.

> **Warning**
>
> If the car is not equipped with a switch to activate/deactivate the passenger airbag, the airbag will always be activated.

Activating passenger airbag

1

1

Pull the switch outward and turn from OFF to ON.

> The driver display shows the message **Passenger airbag on**.

> **Note**
>
> If the passenger airbag has been activated/deactivated before the car has been started, the message in the driver display is shown and the following indication is given in the roof console approx. 6 seconds after the car has been started.

2 Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's O button.

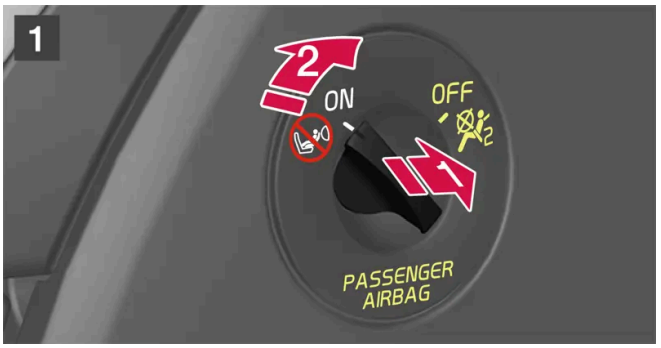
> A text message and a warning symbol in the roof console indicate that the airbag for the front passenger seat is activated.

> **Warning**
>
> Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat when the airbag is activated.
>
> The passenger airbag must always be activated when front-facing passengers (children and adults) are sitting in the front passenger seat.
>
> Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Deactivating passenger airbag

1



1

Pull the switch outward and turn from ON to OFF.

> The driver display shows the message **Passenger airbag off**.

> **Note**
>
> If the passenger airbag has been activated/deactivated before the car has been started, the message in the driver display is shown and the following indication is given in the roof console approx. 6 seconds after the car has been started.

2 Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's O button.

> A text message and a symbol in the roof console indicate that the airbag for the front passenger seat is deactivated.

> **Warning**
>
> Front-facing passengers (children and adults) must never sit on the passenger seat when the airbag is deactivated.
>
> Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

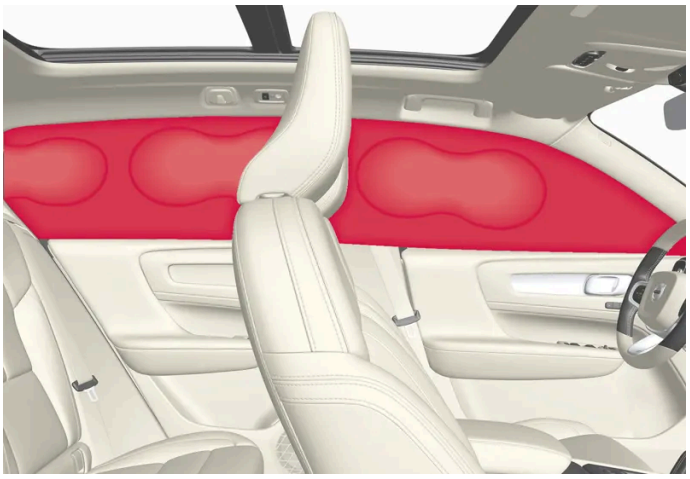
Important

If the passenger airbag is deactivated, the electric seatbelt tensioner on the passenger side will also be deactivated.

* Option/accessory.

3.2.5. Inflatable curtains

The inflatable curtain, Inflatable Curtain (IC), helps to prevent the driver and passengers from striking their heads on the inside of the car during a collision.



The inflatable curtain is mounted along both sides of the headlining and helps protect the driver and outer seat passengers of the car. The panels are labelled with IC AIRBAG.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the inflatable curtain is inflated.

Warning

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair. Defective work in the inflatable curtain system can cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

Warning

Never hang or attach heavy items onto the handles in the roof. The hooks are only designed for light coats and jackets (not for solid objects such as umbrellas).

Do not screw or install anything onto the car's headlining, door pillars or side panels. This could compromise the intended protection. Volvo recommends only using Volvo genuine parts that are approved for fitting within these areas.

Warning

Leave 10 cm (4 inches) space between the load and the side windows if the car is loaded to above the top edge of the door windows. Otherwise, the intended protection of the inflatable curtain, which is concealed in the headlining, may be compromised.

Warning

The inflatable curtain is a supplement to the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

3.2.6. Near-side airbags

The near-side airbags on the driver's and passenger seats act to protect the chest and hips in the event of a collision.

The near-side airbags are fitted in the outer backrest frames of the front seats and help to protect the driver and passengers in the front seat.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the near-side airbag is inflated. The airbag inflates between the occupant and the door panel and thereby cushions the initial impact. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. The near-side airbag is normally only deployed on the side of the collision.

Warning

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair. Defective work in the side airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

Warning

Do not put objects in the area between the outside of the seat and the door panel, since this area is required by the side airbag.

Volvo recommends the use only of car seat covers approved by Volvo. Other seat covers may impede the operation of the side airbags.

Warning

Side airbags are a supplement the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

Side airbags and child seats

The protection provided by the car to children seated in a child seat or on a booster cushion is not diminished by the side airbag.

3.3. Child safety

3.3.1. Mounting points for child seats

3.3.1.1. Lower mounting points for child seats

The car is equipped with lower mounting points for child seats in the front seat* and the rear seat.

The lower mounting points are designed to be used in conjunction with certain rear-facing child seats.

Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when connecting a child seat to the lower mounting points.

The location of the mounting points

Mounting point locations in the front seat.

The mounting points in the front seat* are located on the sides of the passenger seat's legroom.

The mounting points in the front seat may only be mounted if the vehicle is equipped with a switch to activate/deactivate the passenger airbag*.

Mounting point locations in the rear seat.

The mounting points in the rear seat are located on the rear section of the front seat's floor rails.

> **Note**
>
> Never store loose objects around a child restrain system's support leg. Make sure that loose parts of the child restrain system (e.g. fastening straps) are anchored as specified in the child restrain system's mounting instructions.

* Option/accessory.

3.3.1.2. i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats

The car is equipped with i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats in the front seat* and rear seat.

i-Size/ISOFIX[1] is a fixture system for car child seats that is based on an international standard.

Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when connecting a child seat to the i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points.

The location of the mounting points

Mounting point locations for the front seat are indicated by symbols on the upholstery of the backrest.

The mounting points for i-Size/ISOFIX for the front seat* are hidden behind the lower section of the passenger seat backrest.

Press the seat cushion down to access the mounting points.

Mounting point locations for the rear seat are indicated by symbols[1] on the covers that conceal the mounting points.

The mounting points for i-Size/ISOFIX for the rear seat are located behind covers in the lower section of the rear seat's backrest, in the outer seats.

Lift the covers in order to access the mounting points. Locate the mounting points that may be positioned some way in behind the covers.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Names and symbols change depending on market.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

3.3.1.3. Upper mounting points for child seats

The car is equipped with upper mounting points for child seats in the front seat* and the rear seat's outer seats.

The upper mounting points are primarily intended for use with front-facing child seats.

Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when connecting a child seat to the upper mounting points.

The location of the mounting points

Mounting point location for the front seat is indicated by a symbol on the rear of the front seat.

The mounting point for the front seat* is located on the lower part of the rear of the front seat.

> **Note**
>
> Adjust the seat's head restraint in order to facilitate the installation of child restraint systems.

Mounting point locations for the rear seat are indicated by symbols on the rear of the backrest.

The mounting points for the rear seat are located on the rear of the rear seat's outer seats.

Warning

The child seat's upper straps must be routed through the hole in the head restraint leg before they are tensioned at the mounting point. If this is not possible, follow the recommendations from the child seat manufacturer.

Note

Fold the head restraints in order to facilitate fitting this type of child seat in cars with folding head restraints on the outer seats, raise the head restraint after fitting.

The head restraint must always be raised when the child restraint system is used.

Note

The parcel shelf must be removed before child restraint systems can be installed in the mounting points.

* Option/accessory.

3.3.2. Child seat location

3.3.2.1. Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts

The table gives a recommendation for which child seats suit which locations, and for what size of child.

Note

Always read the owner's manual section on installing a child seat before installing one in the car.

Weight	Front seat (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats)[1]	Front seat (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats)[1]	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 0 max 10 kg	U[2], [3]	X	U[3]	U[3]
Group 0+ max 13 kg	U[2], [3]	X	U[3]	U[3]
Group 1 9-18 kg	L[4]	UF[2], [5]	U[5], L[4]	U[5]

Weight	Front seat (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats)[1]	Front seat (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats)[1]	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 2 15-25 kg	L[4]	UF[2], [6]	U[6], L[4]	U[6]
Group 3 22-36 kg	X	UF[2], [7]	U[7]	U[7]

U: Suitable for universal category restraints approved for use in this mass group.
UF: Suitable for front-facing universally approved child seats.
L: Suitable for particular child restraints. These restraints may be of the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories.
X: The seat is not suitable for children in this mass group.

Warning

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated.

[1] The seat cushion extension must always be retracted for the installation of child seats.

[2] Adjust the seat to a more raised position and, if necessary, seat cushion inclination. Adjust backrest inclination.

[3] Volvo recommends: Volvo infant seat i-Size (type approval E1 000008).

[4] Volvo recommends: Volvo rear-facing child seat (type approval E5 04212).

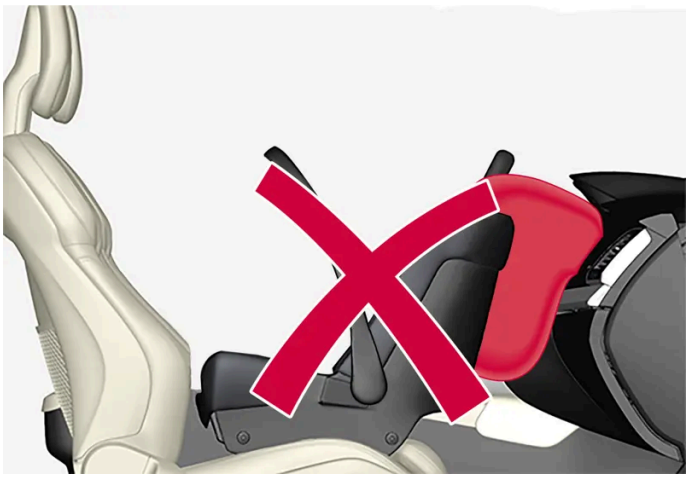
[5] Volvo recommends rear-facing child seat for children in this mass group.

[6] Volvo recommends: Volvo booster cushion with and without back (type approval E5 04216); Volvo booster seat/Römer KidFix SL (type approval E1 04301312).

[7] Volvo recommends: Volvo booster cushion with and without back (type approval E5 04216); Volvo booster seat/Römer KidFix SL (type approval E1 04301312); Nania/OSANN Junior (type approval ECE R44: E24 – 040148).

3.3.2.2. Child seat positioning

It is important to position the child seat in the right place in the car. The choice of location depends, amongst other things, on the type of child seat and whether the passenger airbag is activated.



Rear-facing child seat and airbag are not compatible.

Always fit rear-facing child seats in the rear seat if the passenger airbag is activated. If a child is sitting on the front passenger seat then he/she could suffer serious injury if the airbag deploys.

If the passenger airbag is deactivated then rear-facing child seats can be fitted on the front passenger seat.

Note

Regulations regarding the placement of children in cars vary from country to country. Check what does apply.

Warning

Never allow anybody to stand or sit in front of the front passenger seat.

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the airbag is activated.

Front-facing passengers (children and adults) must never sit on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is deactivated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

Warning

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Label for passenger airbag

Label on the passenger side's sun visor.

The warning label for the passenger airbag is positioned as shown above.

3.3.2.3. Child seat mounting

It is important to remember a number of things when a child restraint system is mounted and used, which depend on where the child restraint system is positioned.

Warning

Booster cushions/child seats with steel braces or some other design that could rest on the seatbelt buckle's opening button must not be used, as they could cause the seatbelt buckle to open accidentally.

Do not secure the straps for the child seat into the seat's horizontal adjustment bar or in springs, rails or beams under the seat. Sharp edges may damage the straps.

Do not allow the upper section of the child seat to rest against the windscreen.

Note

When using child safety equipment, it is important to read the installation instructions included.

In the event of questions when fitting child safety equipment, contact the manufacturer for clearer instructions.

Note

Never leave a child seat loose in the car. Always secure it according to the instructions for the child seat, even when it is not in use.

Note

Observe caution when fitting child restraint systems so that sharp edges or protruding parts of the child restraint system do not scratch the interior of the car.

Long-term installation and use of child seats may cause wear and tear on the car's fittings. Volvo recommends using the kick guard accessory to protect the car's fittings.

Regardless of location

- Only use child seats that are recommended by Volvo, are universally approved or are semi-universal, and where the car is included on the manufacturer's vehicle list.
- If the child seat is equipped with support legs, always fit the support leg/support legs directly to the floor. Never fit a support leg to a footrest or other object.
- When fitting adjustable, rear-facing child seats, the child seat must be adjusted so that the older the child is, the more upright the position is.

Installation in the front seat

- When using front-facing booster seats and loose booster cushions where the child uses the car's seatbelt, raise the front seat if necessary so that the seatbelt strap can be tensioned around the child's hips.
- When fitting rear-facing child seats, check that the passenger airbag is deactivated.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

- When fitting front-facing child seats, check that the passenger airbag is activated.
- When fitting rear-facing child restraint systems, lower the front seat to its lowest position unless otherwise specified in the relevant table for the location of child restraint systems.
- When fitting rear-facing child restraint systems, slide the front seat forward so that the child restraint system is in contact with or comes as close as possible to the instrument panel.
- ISOFIX child seats can only be fitted when the car is equipped with the ISOFIX console[1] accessory.
- The passenger seat is equipped with the ISOFIX fixture system and is approved for i-Size[1].
- The passenger seat is equipped with upper mounting point[1]. Volvo recommends that child seat's upper straps should be pulled through the hole in the head restraint before being tensioned at the mounting point. If this is not possible, follow the recommendations from the child seat manufacturer.
- If the child seat is equipped with lower straps, Volvo recommends that the lower mounting points are used with these[1].
- The ISOFIX guide can be used in order to facilitate installation of an ISOFIX-anchored child restraint system.

Installation in the rear seat

- A child seat with support legs must not be fitted in the centre seat.
- The outer seats are equipped with the ISOFIX fixture system and are approved for i-Size[1].
- The outer seats are equipped with upper mounting points. Volvo recommends that child seat's upper straps should be pulled through the hole in the head restraint before being tensioned at the mounting point. If this is not possible, follow the recommendations from the child seat manufacturer.
- If the child seat is equipped with lower straps, never adjust the position of the seat in front after the straps have been fitted in the lower mounting points. Always remember to remove the lower straps when the child seat is not installed.

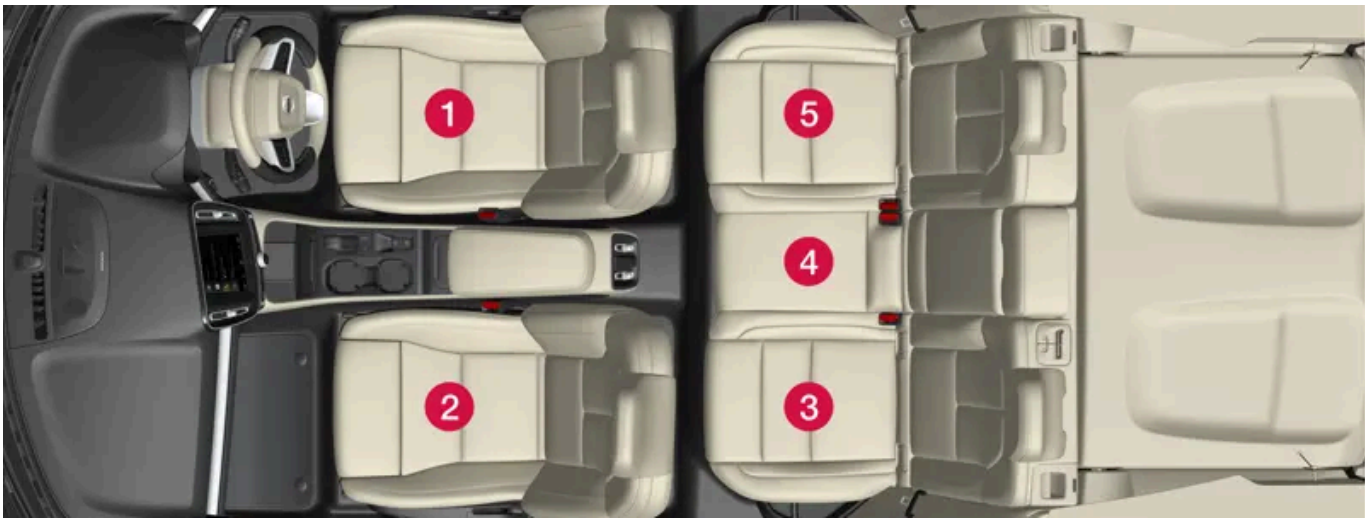
With the installation of an infant seat in the rear seat, Volvo recommends a distance of at least 50 mm (2 tum) from the front part of the infant seat to the rearmost part of the seat in front.

[1] Varies depending on market.

3.3.2.4. Overview table for location of child seats

The table gives an overview of the types of child seats suitable for the car's seats.

Seat positions in left-hand drive cars.



Seat positions in right-hand drive cars.

> **Warning**
>
> When front-facing child seats are fitted on the front passenger seat (seat position 2), the passenger airbag must be activated.
>
> When rear-facing child seats are fitted on the front passenger seat (seat position 2), the passenger airbag must be deactivated.

	i-Size child seats	Universally approved child seats secured using the car's seatbelt	Other child seat categories [1]
Seat position [2]	2 [3], [4], 3, 5	2 [3], 3, 4, 5	2 [3], 3, 5

[1] For more information, contact the child seat manufacturer.

[2] According to the numbering above.

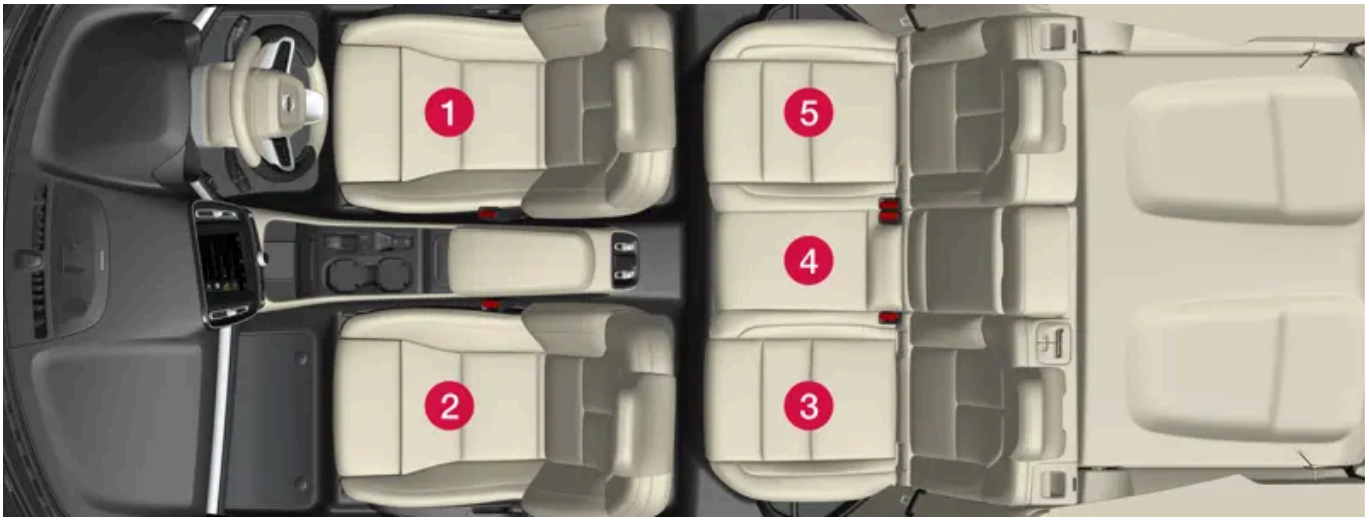
[3] Activated airbag for front-facing child seats. Deactivated airbag for rear-facing child seats.

[4] Varies depending on market.

3.3.2.5. Detail information for child seat manufacturers

The table provides detailed information for child seat manufacturers on which locations in the car are appropriate for which types of child seat.

Seat positions in left-hand drive cars.



Seat positions in right-hand drive cars.

Seat position[1]	1	2 (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats)[2], [3]	2 (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats)[2], [3]	3[3]	4[4]	5[3]
Seat position suitable for universal category restraints which are attached using the car's seatbelt (Yes/No).	No	Yes[5]	Yes[5]	Yes	Yes	Yes
Seat position for i-Size (Yes/No)	No	Yes[6], [7]	Yes[6], [7]	Yes	No	Yes
Seat position lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2/R3/No)	No	R3[8], [9]	No	R3	No	R3
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F1/F2/F2x/F3/No)	No	No	F3[5], [8], [9]	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	No	B3	B3	No	B3

[1] In accordance with illustration.

[2] The seat cushion extension must always be retracted for the installation of child restraint systems.

[3] A child seat with support legs can be used on this seat.

[4] A child seat with support legs cannot be used on this seat.

[5] Adjust the seat to a more raised position and, if necessary, seat cushion inclination. Adjust backrest inclination.

[6] Varies depending on market.

[7] For child restraint systems with support legs, adjust the seat to a more upright position.

[8] Works for the installation of i-Size child restraint systems and ISOFIX child restraint systems (IL) if the passenger seat is equipped with ISOFIX mountings (varies depending on market) and is i-Size-marked. The upper mounting point for child restraint systems is only available for an i-Size-marked position.

[9] Adjust the backrest so that the head restraint does not interfere with the child seat

---

3.3.2.6. Table for location of ISOFIX child seats

The table gives a recommendation for which ISOFIX child seats suit which locations, and for what size of child.

The child seat must be approved in accordance with UN Reg R44 and the car model must be included in the manufacturer's vehicle list.

> **Note**
>
> Always read the owner's manual section on installing a child seat before installing one in the car.

Weight	Size class [1]	Type of child seat	Front seat (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats) [2], [3], [4]	Front seat (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats) [2], [3], [4]	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 0 max 10 kg	E	Rear-facing infant seat	IL [2], [5], X [6]	X	IL	X
Group 0+ max 13 kg	E	Rear-facing infant seat	IL [2], [7], X [6]	X	IL	X
	C	Rear-facing child seat				
	D	Rear-facing child seat				
Group 1 9-18 kg	A	Front-facing child seat	X	IL [2], [7], [8], X [6]	IL [8], IUF [8]	X
	B	Front-facing child seat				
	B1	Front-facing child seat				
	C	Rear-facing child seat	IL [2], [7], [9], X [6]	X	IL [9]	X
	D	Rear-facing child seat				

Weight	Size class [1]	Type of child seat	Front seat (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats) [2], [3], [4]	Front seat (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats) [2], [3], [4]	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 2/3 15-36 kg	–	Front-facing child seat	X	IL	IL	X

IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems. These child restraint systems are those of the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories.
IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in the mass group.
X: Not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems.

Warning

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated.

Note

If an i-Size/ISOFIX child seat has no size classification, the car model must be included on the vehicle list for the child seat.

Note

Volvo recommends contacting an authorised Volvo dealer for information about which i-Size/ISOFIX child seats Volvo recommends.

[1] For child restraint systems with the ISOFIX fixture system there is a size classification to help users choose the right type of child restraint system. The size class can be read on the label for the child restraint system.

[2] Works for the installation of i-Size child restraint systems and ISOFIX child restraint systems (IL) if the passenger seat is equipped with ISOFIX mountings (varies depending on market) and is i-Size-marked. The upper mounting point for child restraint systems is only available for an i-Size-marked position.

[3] The seat cushion extension must always be retracted for the installation of child restraint systems.

[4] For child restraint systems with support legs, adjust the seat to a more upright position.

[5] Volvo recommends: Volvo infant seat i-Size which is secured using the ISOFIX fixture system (type approval E1 000008).

[6] Applicable if the car is not fitted with an ISOFIX bracket.

[7] Adjust the backrest so that the head restraint does not interfere with the child seat.

[8] Volvo recommends rear-facing child seat for children in this mass group.

[9] Volvo recommends: Volvo Easy access rear-facing child seat i-Size (type approval E1-010016) and BeSafe iZi Kid X2 i-Size (type approval E4-129R-000002).

3.3.2.7. Table for location of i-Size child seats

The table gives a recommendation for which i-Size child seats suit which locations, and for what size of child.

The child seat must be approved in accordance with UN Reg R129.

> **Note**
>
> Always read the owner's manual section on installing a child seat before installing one in the car.

Type of child seat	Front seat (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats)[1]	Front seat (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats)[1]	Rear seat, outer seat[1]	Centre rear seat
i-Size child seats	Yes[2], [3], [4], [5]	Yes[3], [4], [5]	Yes[2]	No

[1] Volvo recommends that children travel in a rear-facing child seat until as late an age as possible, at least until 4 years of age.

[2] Volvo recommends: Volvo Easy access rear-facing child seat i-Size (type approval E1-010016) and BeSafe iZi Kid X2 i-Size (type approval E4-129R-000002).

[3] Adjust the backrest so that the head restraint does not interfere with the child seat.

[4] For child restraint systems with support legs, adjust the seat to a more upright position.

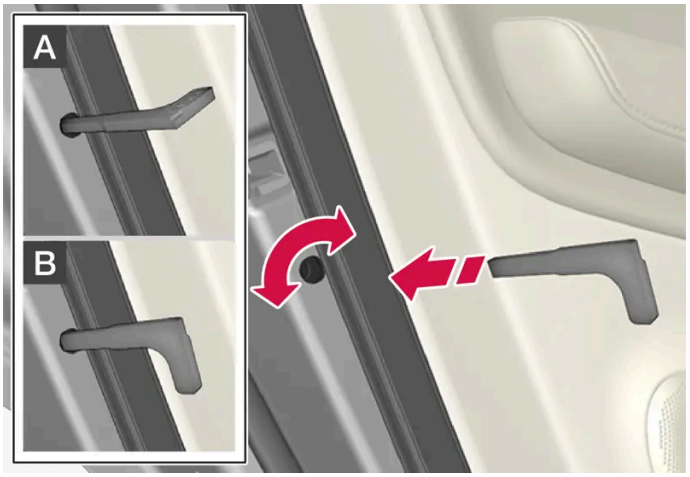
[5] Varies depending on market.

3.3.3. Activating and deactivating child safety locks

The child safety lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from inside. With electric child safety locks, power window operation from the rear seat is also prevented.

The child lock can be either manual or electrical*.

Manual child lock



Manual child lock. Not to be confused with manual door locks.

1 Use the key's detachable key blade to turn the knob.

A The door is blocked against opening from the inside.

B The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.

> **Note**
>
> - A door's knob control only blocks that particular door - not both rear doors simultaneously.
> - Cars with an electric child safety lock do not have a manual child lock.

Electric child lock*

The electric child lock can be activated and deactivated in all ignition positions above **0**. Activation and deactivation can be performed up to 2 minutes after switching off the car, provided that no door is opened.

Activation and deactivation button.

Rear child safety lock enabled

When the lamp in the button is illuminated, the child safety lock is enabled.

If the child lock is activated when the car is switched off, it will remain activated the next time the car is started.

- Rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.
- Rear power windows can only be operated from the driver's door.

Rear child safety lock disabled

When the lamp in the button is extinguished, the child safety lock is inactivated.

- Rear doors can be opened from the inside and power windows operated from the rear seat.

Symbols and messages

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Rear child lock activated	The child lock is activated.
	Rear child lock deactivated	The child lock is deactivated.

* Option/accessory.

3.3.4. Child safety

Children must always sit secure while travelling in the car.

Volvo has child safety equipment (child seats and attachment devices) which is designed for fitting in this particular car. Using Volvo's child safety equipment, you obtain good conditions for a child to travel safely in the car. In addition, the child safety equipment fits in well and is simple to use.

The equipment that should be used is selected taking account of the weight and size of the child.

Volvo recommends that children travel in a rear-facing child seat until as late an age as possible, at least until 4 years of age, and then in a front-facing child seat until the child is 140 cm (4 feet 7 inches) tall.

Note

Legal provisions about the type of child seat that must be used for children of different ages and heights vary from country to country. Check what does apply.

Note

When using child safety equipment, it is important to read the installation instructions included.

In the event of questions when fitting child safety equipment, contact the manufacturer for clearer instructions.

Children of all ages and sizes must always sit correctly secured in the car. Never allow a child to sit on the knee of a passenger.

3.3.5. Child seats

Suitable child seats should always be used when children are travelling in the car.

Children should sit comfortably and safely. Make sure that the child seat is positioned, mounted and used correctly.

Look in the installation instructions for the child seat for the correct fitting.

Note

When using child safety equipment, it is important to read the installation instructions included.

In the event of questions when fitting child safety equipment, contact the manufacturer for clearer instructions.

Note

Never leave a child seat loose in the car. Always secure it according to the instructions for the child seat, even when it is not in use.

Note

Observe caution when fitting child restraint systems so that sharp edges or protruding parts of the child restraint system do not scratch the interior of the car.

Long-term installation and use of child seats may cause wear and tear on the car's fittings. Volvo recommends using the kick guard accessory to protect the car's fittings.

Note

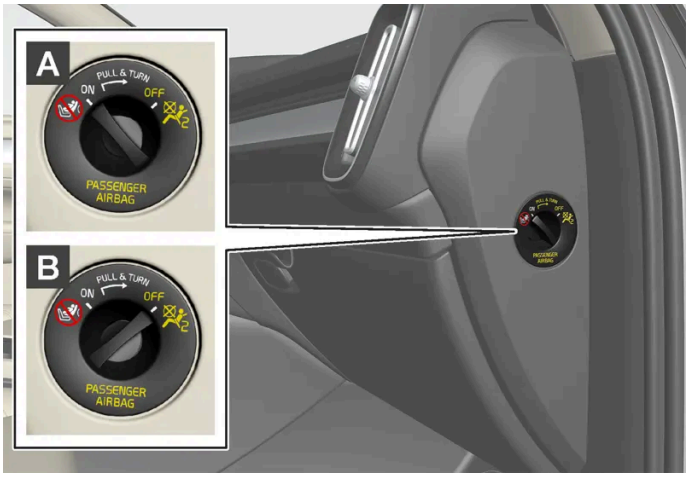
For child restraint systems where the child uses the car's integrated seatbelt, read the owner's manual's recommendations about seatbelts.

3.3.6. Activating and deactivating passenger airbag*

The passenger airbag can be deactivated if the car is equipped with a switch, Passenger Airbag Cut Off Switch (PACOS).

The switch for the passenger airbag is located on the passenger end of the instrument panel and is accessible when the passenger door is open.

Check that the switch is in the required position.



A ON - The airbag is activated and all front-facing passengers (children and adults) can sit safely on the passenger seat.

B OFF - The airbag is deactivated and children in rear-facing child seats can sit safely on the passenger seat.

> **Warning**
>
> If the car is not equipped with a switch to activate/deactivate the passenger airbag, the airbag will always be activated.

Activating passenger airbag

1

1

Pull the switch outward and turn from OFF to ON.

> The driver display shows the message **Passenger airbag on**.

> **Note**
>
> If the passenger airbag has been activated/deactivated before the car has been started, the message in the driver display is shown and the following indication is given in the roof console approx. 6 seconds after the car has been started.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

2 Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's O button.

> A text message and a warning symbol in the roof console indicate that the airbag for the front passenger seat is activated.

Warning

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat when the airbag is activated.

The passenger airbag must always be activated when front-facing passengers (children and adults) are sitting in the front passenger seat.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

Deactivating passenger airbag

1

1

Pull the switch outward and turn from ON to OFF.

> The driver display shows the message **Passenger airbag off**.

Note

If the passenger airbag has been activated/deactivated before the car has been started, the message in the driver display is shown and the following indication is given in the roof console approx. 6 seconds after the car has been started.

2 Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's O button.

> A text message and a symbol in the roof console indicate that the airbag for the front passenger seat is deactivated.

Warning

Front-facing passengers (children and adults) must never sit on the passenger seat when the airbag is deactivated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

Important

If the passenger airbag is deactivated, the electric seatbelt tensioner on the passenger side will also be deactivated.

* Option/accessory.

3.4. Safety mode

3.4.1. Traffic accident

If your car is involved in a traffic accident, activate the hazard warning flashers and move the car into a safer position if possible.

Call the emergency services or roadside assistance as necessary.

Depending on the car's equipment, the car itself can detect an accident and contact the nearest emergency call centre. If the car does not have Volvo Assistance*, there is a European legal requirement, Pan-European eCall, that provides access to an automatic collision alarm and urgent assistance in emergency situations [1].

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

- Think about safety when exiting the car!
- Use a reflective vest and position the warning triangle so that other road users are warned.

If you collide with a wild animal

Be careful, injured animals can feel trapped and then defend themselves.

Call the police to get help with humane killing if the animal is seriously injured, or move a dead animal away from the road so that it is not a danger to other road users.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

3.4.2. Safety mode

Safety mode is a protective state that is triggered when a collision may have damaged any of the car's vital functions, such as the high voltage system, sensors for any of the safety systems, or the brake system.

If the car has been in a collision, the message **Safety mode See Owner's manual** may be shown on the driver display with a warning symbol as long as the display is not damaged and the car's electrical system is still in working order. This message means that the car has reduced functionality.

If the car is in safety mode, it is possible to attempt to reset the system in order to start and move the car for a short distance, if in a dangerous traffic situation for example.

Warning

Never attempt to repair your car or reset the electronics yourself if the car has been in safety mode. This could result in personal injury or the car not functioning as normal. Volvo recommends engaging an authorised Volvo workshop to check and restore the car to normal status after **Safety mode See Owner's manual** has been shown.

Warning

If the car is in safety mode it must not be towed. It must be transported from its location. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.

3.4.3. Starting and moving the car after safety mode

If the car is in safety mode, it is possible to attempt to reset the system in order to start and move the car for a short distance, if in a dangerous traffic situation for example.

Reset and start the car after safety mode

1. Check the general damage situation of the car.

   If there is only minor damage, starting can be attempted.

2. Switch off the car manually.

3. Then try to start the car.

> The car's electronics carry out a systems check and then try to resume normal status. The driver display shows the message **Car start System check, wait** during this time. This can take up to one minute.

4. Then try to start the car again when the message **Car start System check, wait** is no longer shown in the driver's display.

> **Important**
>
> If the message **Safety mode See Owner's manual** is still shown on the display the car must not be driven or towed but a vehicle recovery service must then be used instead. Even if the car appears to be driveable, hidden damage may make the car impossible to control once moving.

Moving the car after safety mode

1. If the driver display shows the message **The car is now in normal mode** after a start attempt, the car can be carefully moved if standing in a dangerous position.

2. Do not move the car further than necessary.

> **Warning**
>
> If the car is in safety mode it must not be towed. It must be transported from its location. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.

3.5. Safety

The vehicle is equipped with several safety systems that work together to protect the vehicle's driver and passengers in the event of an accident.

The car is equipped with a number of sensors that react in the event of an accident and activate different safety systems, such as different types of airbags and seatbelt tensioners. Depending on the specific accident situation, such as collisions at different angles, roll-over or driving off the road, the systems react in different ways to provide good protection.

There are also mechanical safety systems such as Whiplash Protection System. The car is also constructed so that a large part of the force of a collision is distributed to beams, pillars, floor, roof and other parts of the body.

The car's safety mode may be activated after a collision if an important function in the car has been damaged.

Warning symbol in driver display

The warning symbol is illuminated in the driver display when the car is started. The symbol is extinguished after approx. 6 seconds if the car's safety system is fault-free.

Warning

If the warning symbol remains illuminated or is switched on during driving and the message **Drive to workshop SRS airbag Service urgent** is shown in the driver display, it means that part of one of the safety systems does not have full functionality. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted as soon as possible.

Warning

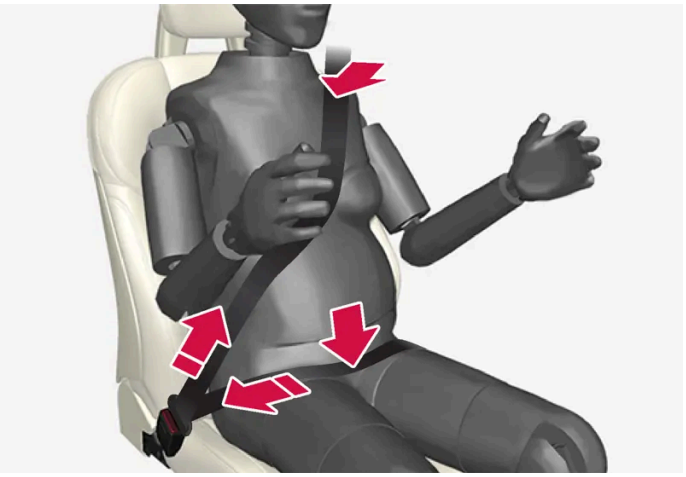
Never modify or repair the car's various safety systems yourself. Defective work in one of the systems can cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.

If the specific warning symbol is broken then the general warning symbol is illuminated instead and the driver display shows the same message.

3.6. Safety during pregnancy

It is important that the seatbelt is used correctly during pregnancy, and that pregnant drivers adjust their seating position.

Seatbelt



The diagonal section should wrap over the shoulder then be routed between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen.

The lap section should lay flat over the thighs and as low as possible under the abdomen. – It must never be allowed to ride upward. Remove the slack from the seatbelt and ensure that it fits as close to the body as possible. In addition, check that there are no twists in the seatbelt.

Seating position

As the pregnancy progresses, pregnant drivers must adjust the seat and steering wheel such that they can easily maintain control of the vehicle as they drive (which means that they must be able to easily operate the foot pedals and steering wheel). The aim should be to position the seat with as large a distance as possible between abdomen and steering wheel.

3.7. Whiplash Protection System

Whiplash Protection System (WHIPS) reduces the risk of whiplash injuries. The system consists of energy absorbing backrests and seat cushion, as well as a specially designed head restraint in the front seats.

WHIPS is deployed in the event of a rear-end collision, where the angle and speed of the collision and the nature of the colliding vehicle all have an influence.

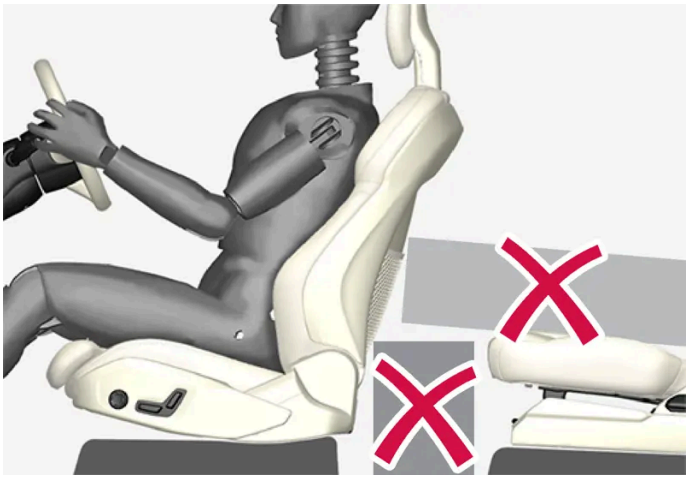
When WHIPS is deployed, the front seat backrests are lowered backward and the seat cushions move downward to change the seating position of the driver and front seat passenger. Its movement helps to absorb some of the forces that can arise and cause whiplash.

> **Warning**
>
> WHIPS is a supplement to the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

Warning

Never modify or repair the seat or WHIPS yourself. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.

If the front seats have been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the seats must be replaced. Some of the seats' protective properties may have been lost even if they do not appear damaged.



Do not leave any objects on the floor behind or under the front seats or in the rear seat that may prevent WHIPS from functioning.

Warning

Do not squeeze rigid objects between the rear seat cushion and the front seat's backrest.

If a backrest in the rear seat is lowered then any load must be secured to prevent it from sliding up to the front seat backrest in the event of a collision.

Warning

If a backrest in the rear seat is lowered or a rear-facing child seat is used in the rear seat, the corresponding front seat must be moved forward so that it does not make contact with the lowered backrest or child seat.

Seating position

For good protection from WHIPS the driver and passenger must have the correct seating position and make sure that the system's function is not obstructed.

Set the correct seating position in the front seat before driving starts.

Driver and front seat passenger should sit in the centre of the seat with as little space as possible between the head and the head restraint.

WHIPS and child seats

The protection provided by the car to children seated in a child seat or on a booster cushion is not diminished by WHIPS.

4. Displays and voice control

4.1. Driver display

4.1.1. Gauges and indicators in driver display

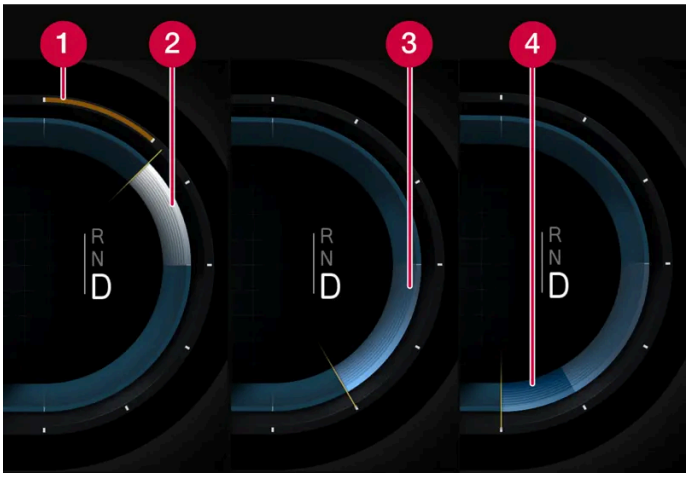
4.1.1.1. Battery gauge

The battery gauge shows how much energy there is in the battery. The remaining energy is shown both as a percentage share of the total energy level and as an approximate range. The range is affected by factors such as driving style, driving settings, speed, outside temperature and weather.

The battery gauge in the lower part of the driver display shows the State of Charge (SoC) for the high-voltage battery. This is shown next to the battery gauge when the remaining range is less than 50 km (30 miles). The range may be affected by factors such as driving style and temperature, for example.

4.1.1.2. Power meter

The power meter indicates when the car is in electric mode, when it is recovering energy to the battery, or when the regeneration is limited.



The power meter is located on the right in the driver display.

1 Available battery power is limited.

2 The car is consuming energy.

3 Regeneration with the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.

4 Heavy braking exceeds the capacity for regenerative braking and the friction brake is applied to brake the car.

4.1.1.3. Outside temperature gauge

The temperature outside of the car is shown in the driver display. If the car has been stationary for a long time, the temperature value shown by the gauge may be too high.

When the temperature outside of the car is between –5 °C (23 °F) and +2 °C (36 °F) a snowflake symbol illuminates to warn of potentially slippery conditions.

Settings for the temperature gauge

1 Press ⚙.

2 Select **System**.

3 Press **Units**.

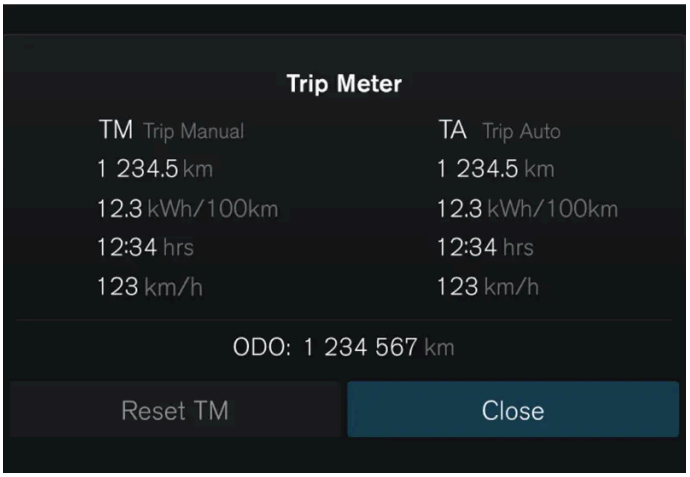
4 Change the settings you want.

4.1.2. Trip computer

4.1.2.1. Trip computer

The car's trip computer records values such as mileage, average consumption and average speed.

Information in the trip computer



The values shown in the trip computer are as follows:

- Mileage
- Average consumption
- Driving time
- Average speed

Open trip computer

1 Press the O button on the steering wheel.

> Trip computer is opened.

Trip meter

There are two trip meters, TM and TA.

TM can be reset manually and TA is reset automatically if the car is not used for at least four hours.

Odometer

The odometer records the car's total mileage. This value cannot be reset to zero.

Trip computer settings

Trip computer settings are made via the centre display.

1 Press ⚙.

2 Select **Controls**.

3 Change the settings you want.

4.1.2.2. Resetting the trip meter

The trip meter can be reset to zero in the driver display or by using the left-hand stalk switch.

Reset all information in the trip meter TM to zero (mileage, average consumption, average speed and driving time).

Resetting to zero in the driver display

1 Press the O button on the steering wheel.

2 Select **Reset TM** using the steering wheel buttons.

3 Confirm with the O button to reset.

> The trip meter is reset.

Resetting using the stalk switch

1 A long press on the RESET button on the stalk switch.

> The trip meter is reset.

4.1.3. Driver display

The driver display shows information about the car and driving.

The driver display contains gauges, driver support functions, and indicator and warning symbols, among other things. The content of the driver display depends on the car's equipment, settings and which functions are active at that time.

The driver display is activated as soon as a door is opened. The driver display extinguishes after a while if it is not used but is reactivated if one of the doors is opened or the car is started.

Warning

If the driver display should extinguish, not illuminate on activation/start or be fully or partially illegible, the car must not be used. You should visit a workshop immediately. Volvo recommends an authorised Volvo workshop.

Warning

In the event of a fault in the driver display the information on e.g. brakes, airbags or other safety systems may not be shown. In which case, the driver cannot check the status of the car's systems or receive current warnings and information.

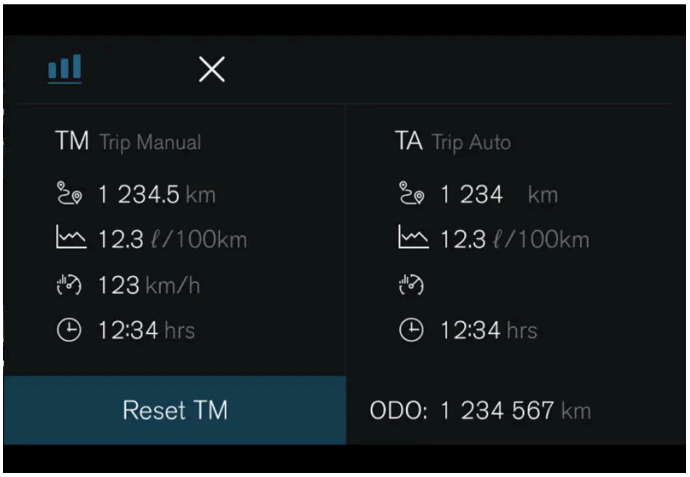
Location in the driver display:		
On the left	**In the middle**	**On the right**

On the left	In the middle	On the right
Indicator and warning symbols	Indicator and warning symbols	Indicator and warning symbols
Speedometer	Temperature	Power meter
Cruise control and speed limiter information	Messages, in some cases with graphics	Driving direction selected
Trip meter	Door and seatbelt information	Battery gauge
–	Driver support functions	–
–	App menu (activated via steering wheel keypad)	–

4.1.4. Driver display settings

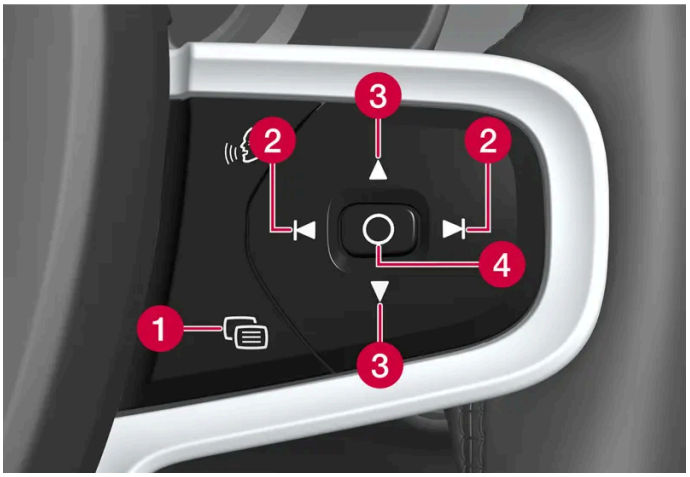
Change display mode or set what should be shown in the driver display.

App menu



– Information on trip meter and odometer, among other things.

Managing the app menu



1 Close menu/change display mode

2 Left/right

3 Up/down

4 Open menu/confirm

The app menu closes after a period of inactivity or after certain options have been selected.

Display modes

The driver display has two different display modes that are changed via the button on the right-hand side of the steering wheel.

- Calm - the middle section of the driver display is empty.
- Navigation* - a map is shown of the entire driver display.

Settings in the centre display

Driver display settings are made via the centre display.

1. Press .
2. Select **Controls**.
3. Change the settings you want.

These settings are personal and are saved to the active user profile.

* Option/accessory.

4.1.5. License agreement for driver display

A license is an agreement for the right to operate a certain activity or the right to use someone else's entitlement according to the terms and conditions in the agreement. The following text is Volvo's agreement with the manufacturer or developer.

1.1 List of used Open Source Components

This table contains a list of open source software (OSS) components used within the product under the terms of the respective licenses. The source code corresponding to the open source components is also provided along with the product wherever mandated by the respective OSS license

Sl No.	Name of OSS Component	Version of OSS Component	Name and Version of License (License text can be found in Appendix below)	Home Page	More Information
1	BidiReferenceCpp	26	Unicode Terms of Use	http://www.unicode.org/Public/PROGRAMS/BidiReferenceCpp/	(C) Socionext Embedded Software Austria GmbH (SESA) Copyright (C) 1999-2009, ASMUS, Inc
2	FASTCRC32	1.2.8	License of Stephan brumme/ Zlib style License	http://stephan-brumme.com/	Copyright © 2011-2013 Stephan Brumme. All rights reserved, Copyright (C) 1995-2006, 2010, 2011, 2012 Mark Adler
3	Freescale IMX6 HDMI	5.0.11	BSD 3-clause "New" or "Revised" License	https://www.nxp.com/ [https://www.nxp.com/]	Copyright © 2009-2012, Freescale Semiconductor, Inc, Copyright © 2010-2012, Freescale Semiconductor, Inc.
4	FreeType Hashing	2.6.3	MIT License	https://sourceforge.net/p/canvasdraw/cd/642/tree/trunk/freetype/include/freetype/internal/fthash.h [https://sourceforge.net/p/canvasdraw/cd/642/tree/trunk/freetype/include/freetype/internal/fthash.h]	Copyright 2000 Computing Research Labs, New Mexico State University Copyright 2001-2015 Francesco Zappa Nardelli
5	Freetype Project - BDF	2.6.3	MIT License	https://sourceforge.net/projects/freetype/files/freetype2/2.6.3/ [https://www.freetype.org/]	Copyright (C) 2001-2014 by Francesco Zappa Nardelli. Copyright 2000 Computing Research Labs, New Mexico State University
6	Freetype Project -PCF	2.6.3	MIT License	https://sourceforge.net/projects/freetype/files/freetype2/2.6.3/ [https://www.freetype.org/]	Copyright 2000-2001, 2003 by Francesco Zappa Nardelli Copyright (C) 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2006, 2010 by Francesco Zappa Nardelli Copyright (C) 2000-2004, 2006-2011, 2013, 2014 by Francesco Zappa Nardelli Copyright 2000-2010, 2012-2014 by Francesco Zappa Nardelli Copyright 2003 by Francesco Zappa Nardelli
7	Freetype Project - Pcfutil	2.6.3	Open Group License	https://sourceforge.net/projects/freetype/files/freetype2/2.6.3/ [https://www.freetype.org/]	Copyright 1990, 1994, 1998 The Open Group
8	HarfBuzz	1.3.1	MIT License	http://freedesktop.org/wiki/Software/HarfBuzz	Copyright © 2007 Chris Wilson Copyright © 2009,2010 Red Hat, Inc. Copyright © 2011, 2012 Google, Inc.
9	Integrity Libnet	1.16	Internet Software Consortium-IBM License ISC License	https://github.com/lattera/glibc/blob/master/resolv/inet_pton.c [https://github.com/lattera/glibc/blob/master/resolv/inet_pton.c]	Copyright © 1996 by Internet Software Consortium. Consortium, Copyright © 1995 by International Business Machines, Inc.

Sl No.	Name of OSS Component	Version of OSS Component	Name and Version of License (License text can be found in Appendix below)	Home Page	More Information
10	Khronos EGL Headers	1.4	MIT License	http://www.khronos.org/registry/egl/	Copyright © 2007-2013 The Khronos Group Inc. Copyright 2008 VMware, Inc. Copyright © 2013-2014 The Khronos Group Inc.
11	Khronos Group - OpenGL ES	2.0	SGI Free Software License B v2.0	http://www.khronos.org/opengles/	
12	libjpeg	6b	Independent JPEG Group License	http://www.ijg.org/	Copyright (C) 1991-1998, Thomas G. Lane.
13	libpng	1.4.22	libpng License	http://github.com/coapp-packages/libpng/	Copyright © 1998-2010 Glenn Randers-Pehrson Copyright © 2007, 2009 Glenn Randers-Pehrson Version 0.96 Copyright © 1996, 1997 Andreas Dilger Version 0.88 Copyright © 1995, 1996 Guy Eric Schalnat, Group 42, Inc.
14	Libunibreak	1.2.8	zlib License	https://github.com/adah1972/libunibreak [https://github.com/adah1972/libunibreak]	Copyright (C) 2008-2011 Wu Yongwei Copyright (C) 2012 Tom Hacohen tom@stosb.com
15	lz4 Compression algorithm	1.4.0	BSD 2-clause "Simplified" License	http://github.com/Cyan4973/lz4/	Copyright (C) 2011-2014, Yann Collet
16	md5	1.6	Public Domain	https://doxygen.reactos.org/d7/d04/sdk_2lib_23rdparty_2freetype_2src_2base_2md5_8c_source.html [https://doxygen.reactos.org/d7/d04/sdk_2lib_23rdparty_2freetype_2src_2base_2md5_8c_source.html]	
17	NetBSD	1.9	HPND like license IBM License BSD-4-Clause (University of California-Specific) BSD 3-clause "New" or "Revised" License BSD One Clause License	http://www.netbsd.org/	Copyright © 1998 Manuel Bouyer Copyright © 1996 Matt Thomas. Copyright 1997 Marshall Kirk McKusick. All Rights Reserved, Copyright © 1985, 1988, 1989, 1991, 1993, 1995 The Regents of the University of California Copyright © 1989, 1993 The Regents of the University of California Copyright © 1983, 1993 The Regents of the University of California Copyright 2000-2011 Green Hills Software Copyright (c) 1996 by Internet Software Consortium. Copyright (C) 1998 WIDE Project, Portions Copyright © 1995 by International Business Machines, Inc, Copyright (C) 1994, 1995, 1997 TooLs GmbH Copyright (C) 1994, 1995, 1997 Wolfgang Solfrank Copyright © 1995, 1999 Berkeley Software Design, Inc Portions Copyright © 1993 by Digital Equipment Corporation Copyright © 1992 Henry Spencer Copyright © 1997, 1998, 1999 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc Copyright © 1996 by Internet Software Consortium.Copyright (c) 1994 James A. Jegers(c) © UNIX System Laboratories, Inc.
18	NetBSD_BSD4	1.9	BSD 4-clause "Original" or "Old" License	http://www.netbsd.org/	Copyright 2000-2011, 2000-2013 Green Hills Software, Copyright © 1994, 1998 Christopher G. Demetriou, Copyright © 1982, 1986, 1990, 1993, 1994 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved. © UNIX System Laboratories, Inc.

Sl No.	Name of OSS Component	Version of OSS Component	Name and Version of License (License text can be found in Appendix below)	Home Page	More Information
19	The FreeType Project - freetype2	2.6.3	Freetype Project License	http://sourceforge.net/projects/freetype/	Copyright 1996-2016 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg, Copyright 2007-2016 by Rahul Bhalerao,Copyright 2009-2016 by Oran Agra and Mickey Gabel, Copyright 2008-2016 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, Werner Lemberg, and suzuki toshiya. Copyright 2000 Computing Research Labs, New Mexico State University, Copyright 2001-2015 Francesco Zappa Nardelli, Copyright 2004-2016 by Masatake YAMATO and Redhat K.K,Copyright 2007-2016 by Derek Clegg and Michael Toftdal,Copyright 2010-2016 by Joel Klinghed,Copyright 2007-2013 Adobe Systems Incorporated,Copyright 2007-2014 Adobe Systems Incorporated,Copyright 2004-2016 by Albert Chin-A-Young,Copyright 2013-2016 by Google, Inc,Copyright 2002-2016 by Roberto Alameda,Copyright 2003 Huw D M Davies for Codeweavers,Copyright 2007 Dmitry Timoshkov for Codeweavers
20	Vivante Driver software	viv5.0.11p7.4.i3	MIT License	http://www.vivantecorp.com/	Copyright 2012 - 2016 Vivante Corporation, Santa Clara, California Copyright © 2007 The Khronos Group Inc Copyright © 2014 - 2016 Vivante Corporation Copyright 2012 Vivante Corporation, Sunnyvale, California Copyright © 2011 Intel Corporation Copyright (C) 1999-2001 Brian Paul
21	zlib	1.2.8	zlib License	http://www.zlib.net/	Copyright (C) 1995-2007 Mark Adler Copyright (C) 1995-2005 Jean-loup Gailly Copyright (C) 1995-2012 Mark Adler Copyright (C) 2003 Chris Anderson Copyright (C) 1998 Brian Raiter
22	RBTree.cpp	3.4.2	Public Domain	https://www.eu.socionext.com/	(C) Socionext Embedded Software Austria GmbH (SESA)

2. APPENDIX - LICENSE TEXT

2.1 HPND Like license

Portions Copyright (c) 1993 by Digital Equipment Corporation.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies, and that the name of Digital Equipment Corporation not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the document or software without specific, written prior permission.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORP. DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORPORATION BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

2.2 BSD 2-clause "Simplified" License

BSD Two Clause License

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE

ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

2.3 IBM License

Portions Copyright (c) 1995 by International Business Machines, Inc.

International Business Machines, Inc. (hereinafter called IBM) grants permission under its copyrights to use, copy, modify, and distribute this Software with or without fee, provided that the above copyright notice and all paragraphs of this notice appear in all copies, and that the name of IBM not be used in connection with the marketing of any product incorporating the Software or modifications thereof, without specific, written prior permission.

To the extent it has a right to do so, IBM grants an immunity from suit under its patents, if any, for the use, sale or manufacture of products to the extent that such products are used for performing Domain Name System dynamic updates in TCP/IP networks by means of the Software. No immunity is granted for any product per se or for any other function of any product.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", AND IBM DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL IBM BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF IBM IS APPRISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

2.4 BSD 3-clause "New" or "Revised" License

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. Neither the name of the [ORGANIZATION] nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

2.5 BSD 4-clause "Original" or "Old" License

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by the organization.
4. Neither the name of the organization nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY COPYRIGHT HOLDER ''AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL {{COPYRIGHT HOLDER}} BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

2.6 BSD-4-Clause (University of California-Specific)

BSD-4-Clause (University of California-Specific)

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

2.7 Freetype Project License

The FreeType Project LICENSE

2006-Jan-27

Copyright 1996-2002, 2006 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg

Introduction

The FreeType Project is distributed in several archive packages; some of them may contain, in addition to the FreeType font engine, various tools and contributions which rely on, or relate to, the FreeType Project. This license applies to all files found in such packages, and which do not fall under their own explicit license. The license affects thus the FreeType font engine, the test programs, documentation and makefiles, at the very least. This license was inspired by the BSD, Artistic, and IJG (Independent JPEG Group) licenses, which all encourage inclusion and use of free software in commercial and freeware products alike. As a consequence, its main points are that:

We don't promise that this software works. However, we will be interested in any kind of bug reports. (`as is' distribution)

You can use this software for whatever you want, in parts or full form, without having to pay us. (`royalty-free' usage)

You may not pretend that you wrote this software. If you use it, or only parts of it, in a program, you must acknowledge somewhere in your documentation that you have used the FreeType code. (`credits')

We specifically permit and encourage the inclusion of this software, with or without modifications, in commercial products. We disclaim all warranties covering The FreeType Project and assume no liability related to The FreeType Project. Finally, many people asked us for a preferred form for a credit/disclaimer to use in compliance with this license. We thus encourage you to use the following text: "Portions of this software are copyright © 1996-2002, 2006 The FreeType Project (www.freetype.org). All rights reserved."

Definitions

Throughout this license, the terms `package', `FreeType Project', and `FreeType archive' refer to the set of files originally distributed by the authors (David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg) as the `FreeType Project', be they named as alpha, beta or final release. `You' refers to the licensee, or person using the project, where `using' is a generic term including compiling the project's source code as well as linking it to form a `program' or `executable'. This program is referred to as `a program using the FreeType engine'. This license applies to all files distributed in the original FreeType Project, including all source code, binaries and documentation, unless otherwise stated in the file in its original, unmodified form as distributed in the original archive. If you are unsure whether or not a particular file is covered by this license, you must contact us to verify this.

No Warranty

THE FREETYPE PROJECT IS PROVIDED `AS IS' WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT WILL ANY OF THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES CAUSED BY THE USE OR THE INABILITY TO USE, OF THE FREETYPE PROJECT. Redistribution

Redistribution

This license grants a worldwide, royalty-free, perpetual and irrevocable right and license to use, execute, perform, compile, display, copy, create derivative works of, distribute and sublicense the FreeType Project (in both source and object code forms) and derivative works thereof for any purpose; and to authorize others to exercise some or all of the rights granted herein, subject to the following conditions:

Redistribution of source code must retain this license file (`FTL.TXT') unaltered; any additions, deletions or changes to the original files must be clearly indicated in accompanying documentation. The copyright notices of the unaltered, original files must be preserved in all copies of source files. Redistribution in binary form must provide a disclaimer that states that the software is based in part of the work of the FreeType Team, in the distribution documentation. We also encourage you to put an URL to the FreeType web page in your documentation, though this isn't mandatory. These conditions apply to any software derived from or

based on the FreeType Project, not just the unmodified files. If you use our work, you must acknowledge us. However, no fee need be paid to us.

Advertising

Neither the FreeType authors and contributors nor you shall use the name of the other for commercial, advertising, or promotional purposes without specific prior written permission. We suggest, but do not require, that you use one or more of the following phrases to refer to this software in your documentation or advertising materials: `FreeType Project', `FreeType Engine', `FreeType library', or `FreeType Distribution'. As you have not signed this license, you are not required to accept it. However, as the FreeType Project is copyrighted material, only this license, or another one contracted with the authors, grants you the right to use, distribute, and modify it. Therefore, by using, distributing, or modifying the FreeType Project, you indicate that you understand and accept all the terms of this license.

Contacts

There are two mailing lists related to FreeType:

freetype@nongnu.org

Discusses general use and applications of FreeType, as well as future and wanted additions to the library and distribution. If you are looking for support, start in this list if you haven't found anything to help you in the documentation.

devel@nongnu.org

Discusses bugs, as well as engine internals, design issues, specific licenses, porting, etc.

Our home page can be found at: http://www.freetype.org

2.8 Independent JPEG Group License

The Independent JPEG Group's JPEG software README for release 6b of 27-Mar-1998

This distribution contains the sixth public release of the Independent JPEG Group's free JPEG software. You are welcome to redistribute this software and to use it for any purpose, subject to the conditions under LEGAL ISSUES, below. Serious users of this software (particularly those incorporating it into larger programs) should contact IJG at jpeg-info@uunet.uu.net to be added to our electronic mailing list. Mailing list members are notified of updates and have a chance to participate in technical discussions, etc. This software is the work of Tom Lane, Philip Gladstone, Jim Boucher, Lee Crocker, Julian Minguillon, Luis Ortiz, George Phillips, Davide Rossi, Guido Vollbeding, Ge' Weijers, and other members of the Independent JPEG Group. IJG is not affiliated with the official ISO JPEG standards committee.

LEGAL ISSUES

In plain English:

We don't promise that this software works. (But if you find any bugs, please let us know!) You can use this software for whatever you want. You don't have to pay us. You may not pretend that you wrote this software. If you use it in a program, you must acknowledge somewhere in your documentation that you've used the IJG code.

In legalese:

The authors make NO WARRANTY or representation, either express or implied, with respect to this software, its quality, accuracy, merchantability, or fitness for a particular purpose. This software is provided "AS IS", and you, its user, assume the entire risk as to its quality and accuracy. This software is copyright (C) 1991-1998, Thomas G. Lane. All Rights Reserved except as specified below.

Permission is hereby granted to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software (or portions thereof) for any purpose, without fee, subject to these conditions:

1. If any part of the source code for this software is distributed, then this README file must be included, with this copyright and no-warranty notice unaltered; and any additions, deletions, or changes to the original files must be clearly indicated in accompanying documentation.
2. If only executable code is distributed, then the accompanying documentation must state that "this software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group".
3. Permission for use of this software is granted only if the user accepts full responsibility for any undesirable consequences; the authors accept NO LIABILITY for damages of any kind.

These conditions apply to any software derived from or based on the IJG code, not just to the unmodified library. If you use our work, you ought to acknowledge us.

Permission is NOT granted for the use of any IJG author's name or company name in advertising or publicity relating to this software or products derived from it. This software may be referred to only as "the Independent JPEG Group's software".

We specifically permit and encourage the use of this software as the basis of commercial products, provided that all warranty or liability claims are assumed by the product vendor. ansi2knr.c is included in this distribution by permission of L. Peter Deutsch, sole proprietor of its copyright holder, Aladdin Enterprises of Menlo Park, CA. ansi2knr.c is NOT covered by the above copyright and conditions, but instead by the usual distribution terms of the Free Software Foundation; principally, that you must include source code if you redistribute it. (See the file ansi2knr.c for full details.)

However, since ansi2knr.c is not needed as part of any program generated from the IJG code, this does not limit you more than the foregoing paragraphs do. The Unix configuration script "configure" was produced with GNU Autoconf. It is copyright by the Free Software Foundation but is freely distributable. The same holds for its supporting scripts (config.guess, config.sub, ltconfig, ltmain.sh). Another support script, install-sh, is copyright by M.I.T. but is also freely distributable.

It appears that the arithmetic coding option of the JPEG spec is covered by patents owned by IBM, AT&T, and Mitsubishi. Hence arithmetic coding cannot legally be used without obtaining one or more licenses. For this reason, support for arithmetic coding has been removed from the free JPEG software. (Since arithmetic coding provides only a marginal gain over the unpatented Huffman mode, it is unlikely that very many implementations will support it.) So far as we are aware, there are no patent restrictions on the remaining code.

The IJG distribution formerly included code to read and write GIF files. To avoid entanglement with the Unisys LZW patent, GIF reading support has been removed altogether, and the GIF writer has been simplified to produce "uncompressed GIFs". This technique does not use the LZW algorithm; the resulting GIF files are larger than usual, but are readable by all standard GIF decoders. We are required to state that:

"The Graphics Interchange Format(c) is the Copyright property of CompuServe Incorporated. GIF(sm) is a Service Mark property of CompuServe Incorporated."

2.9 Internet Software Consortium-IBM License

Copyright (c) 1996 by Internet Software Consortium.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND INTERNET SOFTWARE CONSORTIUM DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL INTERNET SOFTWARE CONSORTIUM BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS,

WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Portions Copyright (c) 1995 by International Business Machines, Inc.

International Business Machines, Inc. (hereinafter called IBM) grants permission under its copyrights to use, copy, modify, and distribute this Software with or without fee, provided that the above copyright notice and all paragraphs of this notice appear in all copies, and that the name of IBM not be used in connection with the marketing of any product incorporating the Software or modifications thereof, without specific, written prior permission.

To the extent it has a right to do so, IBM grants an immunity from suit under its patents, if any, for the use, sale or manufacture of products to the extent that such products are used for performing Domain Name System dynamic updates in TCP/IP networks by means of the Software. No immunity is granted for any product per se or for any other function of any product.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", AND IBM DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL IBM BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF IBM IS APPRISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

2.10 Khronos License

Copyright (c) 2013 The Khronos Group Inc.

** ** Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a ** copy of this software and/or associated documentation files (the ** "Materials"), to deal in the Materials without restriction, including ** without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, ** distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Materials, and to ** permit persons to whom the Materials are furnished to do so, subject to ** the following conditions: ** ** The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included ** in all copies or substantial portions of the Materials. **

** THE MATERIALS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, ** EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF ** MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. ** IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY ** CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, ** TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE ** MATERIALS OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE MATERIALS.

2.11 License of Stephan Brumme/ Zlib style License

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the author be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software. Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions: The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.

2.12 MIT License

The MIT License

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

2.13 Open Group License

Copyright 1996, 1998 The Open Group.

Permission to use, copy, modify, distribute, and sell this software and its documentation for any purpose is hereby granted without fee, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation. The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OPEN GROUP BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of The Open Group shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from The Open Group.

2.14 Public Domain

Public domain code is not subject to any license.

2.15 BSD One Clause License

BSD One Clause License

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

2.16 ISC License

ISC License (ISCL)

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

Permission to use, copy, modify, and/or distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND THE AUTHOR DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

2.17 SGI Free Software License B v2.0

ISC License (ISCL)

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice including the dates of first publication and either this permission notice or a reference to http://oss.sgi.com/projects/FreeB/ shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND THE AUTHOR DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of Silicon Graphics, Inc. shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from Silicon Graphics, Inc.

2.18 Unicode Terms of Use

For the general privacy policy governing access to this site, see the Unicode Privacy Policy. For trademark usage, see the Unicode® Consortium Name and Trademark Usage Policy.

A. Unicode Copyright.

1. Copyright © 1991-2014 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved.
2. Certain documents and files on this website contain a legend indicating that "Modification is permitted." Any person is hereby authorized, without fee, to modify such documents and files to create derivative works conforming to the Unicode® Standard, subject to Terms and Conditions herein.
3. Any person is hereby authorized, without fee, to view, use, reproduce, and distribute all documents and files solely for informational purposes in the creation of products supporting the Unicode Standard, subject to the Terms and Conditions herein.
4. Further specifications of rights and restrictions pertaining to the use of the particular set of data files known as the "Unicode Character Database" can be found in Exhibit 1.

5. Each version of the Unicode Standard has further specifications of rights and restrictions of use. For the book editions (Unicode 5.0 and earlier), these are found on the back of the title page. The online code charts carry specific restrictions. All other files, including online documentation of the core specification for Unicode 6.0 and later, are covered under these general Terms of Use.
6. No license is granted to "mirror" the Unicode website where a fee is charged for access to the "mirror" site.
7. Modification is not permitted with respect to this document. All copies of this document must be verbatim.

B. Restricted Rights Legend.

Any technical data or software which is licensed to the United States of America, its agencies and/or instrumentalities under this Agreement is commercial technical data or commercial computer software developed exclusively at private expense as defined in FAR 2.101, or DFARS 252.227-7014 (June 1995), as applicable. For technical data, use, duplication, or disclosure by the Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in DFARS 202.227-7015 Technical Data, Commercial and Items (Nov 1995) and this Agreement. For Software, in accordance with FAR 12-212 or DFARS 227-7202, as applicable, use, duplication or disclosure by the Government is subject to the restrictions set forth in this Agreement.

C. Warranties and Disclaimers.

1. This publication and/or website may include technical or typographical errors or other inaccuracies . Changes are periodically added to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication and/or website. Unicode may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or program(s) described in this publication and/or website at any time.
2. If this file has been purchased on magnetic or optical media from Unicode, Inc. the sole and exclusive remedy for any claim will be exchange of the defective media within ninety (90) days of original purchase.
3. EXCEPT AS PROVIDED IN SECTION C.2, THIS PUBLICATION AND/OR SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED, OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ANY WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. UNICODE AND ITS LICENSORS ASSUME NO RESPONSIBILITY FOR ERRORS OR OMISSIONS IN THIS PUBLICATION AND/OR SOFTWARE OR OTHER DOCUMENTS WHICH ARE REFERENCED BY OR LINKED TO THIS PUBLICATION OR THE UNICODE WEBSITE.

D. Waiver of Damages.

In no event shall Unicode or its licensors be liable for any special, incidental, indirect or consequential damages of any kind, or any damages whatsoever, whether or not Unicode was advised of the possibility of the damage, including, without limitation, those resulting from the following: loss of use, data or profits, in connection with the use, modification or distribution of this information or its derivatives.

E. Trademarks & Logos.

1. The Unicode Word Mark and the Unicode Logo are trademarks of Unicode, Inc. "The Unicode Consortium" and "Unicode, Inc." are trade names of Unicode, Inc. Use of the information and materials found on this website indicates your acknowledgement of Unicode, Inc.'s exclusive worldwide rights in the Unicode Word Mark, the Unicode Logo, and the Unicode trade names.
2. The Unicode Consortium Name and Trademark Usage Policy ("Trademark Policy") are incorporated herein by reference and you agree to abide by the provisions of the Trademark Policy, which may be changed from time to time in the sole discretion of Unicode, Inc.
3. All third party trademarks referenced herein are the property of their respective owners.

F. Miscellaneous.

1. Jurisdiction and Venue. This server is operated from a location in the State of California, United States of America. Unicode makes no representation that the materials are appropriate for use in other locations. If you access this server from other locations, you are responsible for compliance with local laws. This Agreement, all use of this site and any claims and damages resulting from use of this site are governed solely by the laws of the State of California without regard to any principles which would apply the laws of a different jurisdiction. The user agrees that any disputes regarding this site shall be resolved solely in the courts located in Santa Clara County, California. The user agrees said courts have personal jurisdiction and agree to waive any right to transfer the dispute to any other forum.
2. Modification by Unicode. Unicode shall have the right to modify this Agreement at any time by posting it to this site. The user may not assign any part of this Agreement without Unicode's prior written consent.
3. Taxes. The user agrees to pay any taxes arising from access to this website or use of the information herein, except for those based on Unicode's net income.
4. Severability. If any provision of this Agreement is declared invalid or unenforceable, the remaining provisions of this Agreement shall remain in effect.
5. Entire Agreement. This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between the parties.

2.19 libpng License

This copy of the libpng notices is provided for your convenience. In case of any discrepancy between this copy and the notices in the file png.h that is included in the libpng distribution, the latter shall prevail.

COPYRIGHT NOTICE, DISCLAIMER, and LICENSE:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

If you modify libpng you may insert additional notices immediately following this sentence. libpng versions 1.0.7, July 1, 2000, through 1.0.13, April 15, 2002, are Copyright (c) 2000-2002 Glenn Randers-Pehrson and are distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-1.0.6 with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors:

Simon-Pierre Cadieux, Eric S. Raymond, Gilles Vollant

and with the following additions to the disclaimer:

There is no warranty against interference with your enjoyment of the library or against infringement. There is no warranty that our efforts or the library will fulfill any of your particular purposes or needs. This library is provided with all faults, and the entire risk of satisfactory quality, performance, accuracy, and effort is with the user.

libpng versions 0.97, January 1998, through 1.0.6, March 20, 2000, are Copyright (c) 1998, 1999 Glenn Randers-Pehrson, and are distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-0.96, with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors:

Tom Lane, Glenn Randers-Pehrson, Willem van Schaik.

libpng versions 0.89, June 1996, through 0.96, May 1997, are Copyright (c) 1996, 1997 Andreas Dilger Distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-0.88, with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors:

John Bowler, Kevin Bracey, Sam Bushe, Magnus Holmgren, Greg Roelofs, Tom Tanner.

libpng versions 0.5, May 1995, through 0.88, January 1996, are Copyright (c) 1995, 1996 Guy Eric Schalnat, Group 42, Inc. For the purposes of this copyright and license, "Contributing Authors" is defined as the following set of individuals:

Andreas Dilger, Dave Martindale, Guy Eric Schalnat, Paul Schmidt, Tim Wegner.

The PNG Reference Library is supplied "AS IS". The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. disclaim all warranties, expressed or implied, including, without limitation, the warranties of merchantability and of fitness for any purpose. The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. assume no liability for direct, indirect, incidental, special, exemplary, or consequential damages,

which may result from the use of the PNG Reference Library, even if advised of the possibility of such damage. Permission is hereby granted to use, copy, modify, and distribute this source code, or portions hereof, for any purpose, without fee, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this source code must not be misrepresented.
2. Altered versions must be plainly marked as such and must not be misrepresented as being the original source.
3. This Copyright notice may not be removed or altered from any source or altered source distribution.

The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. specifically permit, without fee, and encourage the use of this source code as a component to supporting the PNG file format in commercial products. If you use this source code in a product, acknowledgment is not required but would be appreciated. A "png_get_copyright" function is available, for convenient use in "about" boxes and the like:

printf("%s",png_get_copyright(NULL));

Also, the PNG logo (in PNG format, of course) is supplied in the files "pngbar.png" and "pngbar.jpg (88x31) and "pngnow.png" (98x31).

Libpng is OSI Certified Open Source Software. OSI Certified Open Source is a certification mark of the Open Source Initiative.

Glenn Randers-Pehrson

randeg@alum.rpi.edu

April 15, 2002

2.20 zlib License

Copyright/Copyright holders – see List of Open Source Components

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

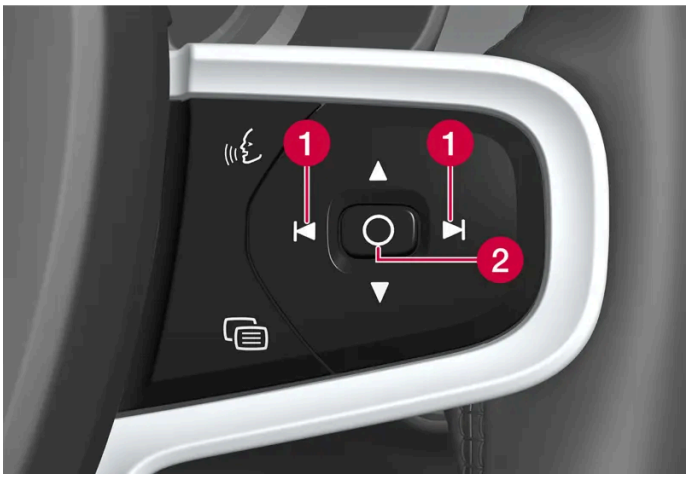
1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

4.1.6. Messages in the driver display

The driver display can show messages to inform or assist the driver in the event of different events.

Messages are shown in the middle of the driver display. The composition may vary and is shown together with graphics, symbols or buttons for acknowledging the message or accepting a request, for example.

Managing messages



1 Left/right

2 Confirm

The message disappears from the driver display when it has been acknowledged/acted on. Certain selected messages can be seen in the notification view of the centre display.

Service messages

Shown below is a selection of service messages and their meanings.

Message	Specification
Do not drive[1]	Stop and contact a workshop. Serious risk of injury.
Book time for regular maintenance	Time for regular service - contact a workshop[1]. Shown before the next service date.
Time for regular maintenance	Time for regular service - contact a workshop[1]. Shown at the next service date.
Regular maintenance overdue	Time for regular service - contact a workshop[1]. Shown when the service date has passed.

[1] Part of message, shown together with information on where the problem has arisen.

4.2. Centre display

4.2.1. Settings

4.2.1.1. Resetting user data

User data and system settings are restored via the centre display.

Settings that can be restored to their defaults:

- app settings
- network settings (only admin)
- factory reset (admin only) – profiles, user data, connected keys and personal settings are deleted

In the event of a change of ownership, user data and system settings should be restored to a factory reset.

Restoring settings via the centre display

1 Press ⚙.

2 Continue to **System**, **Restore settings** to restore the desired setting.

To be able to restore network settings or factory settings in the car, the user profile must have administrator rights, which is obtained by clicking on the **Become an admin** option in the profile view.

4.2.1.2. Changing system units

Unit settings are made via the centre display.

1 Press ⚙.

2 Continue to **System**, **Units**.

3 Select the standard units desired for distance, speed and temperature, for example.

> The units in the driver display and centre display are changed.

4.2.1.3. Changing system language

Language settings are made via the centre display.

> **Note**
>
> Changing the language in the centre display may mean that some owner's information is not compliant with national or local laws and regulations. Do not switch to a language that is difficult to understand as this may make it difficult to find your way back through the screen structure.

1 Press ⚙.

2 Continue to **System**, **Languages and input**.

3 Select the required language.

> The language in the driver display and centre display are changed.

Changing the system language also changes the language for Google Assistant. If a different language is required for Google Assistant then it can be selected separately in the menu for Google Assistant.

4.2.1.4. Settings for unlocking

It is possible to select different sequences for unlocking.

1 Press ⚙ in the centre display.

2 Press **Controls**.

3 Select setting for unlocking.

4.2.1.5. Setting the speed limit for Care Key

The speed limit for Care Key is set in the centre display.

The speed limit for Care Key is set in the settings for the administrator user profile. Once the setting has been made, the speed limit is activated when the car is used with a Care Key.

A speed limit can be set within the range 50–150 km/h (30–95 mph), with a step interval of 10 km/h (5 mph).

The car must be unlocked using a key without limit in order to deactivate the function. The user with administrator rights can deactivate the speed limit for Care Key via the settings in the centre display. Care Key can then be used like a regular key.

4.2.1.6. Lock indication setting

It is possible to select various options for how the car confirms locking and unlocking in the settings menu in the centre display.

1. Press ⚙ in the centre display.
2. Press **Controls**.
3. Choose to activate or deactivate confirmation for locking/unlocking.

4.2.1.7. Settings for Keyless entry*

It is possible to select different sequences for Keyless entry.

1. Press ⚙ in the centre display.
2. Press **Controls**.
3. Select setting for unlocking.

* Option/accessory.

4.2.2. User profiles

4.2.2.1. User profiles

Many of the settings defined in the car can be saved to a personal user profile.

The **Owner** profile is pre-installed and active in the car on first use or after a factory reset.

The **Owner** profile has administrative privileges and cannot be deleted.

Drag down the notification view to access user profiles.

The status field shows a symbol, together with the initials of the active profile. When the system is logged-out, no symbol/initials are shown in the status field.

Automatic profile selection

It is possible to connect your key to a profile. The profile along with all of its settings will then be automatically selected every time the car is used with that specific key.

The last profile used is activated if a key is not linked with a specific profile.

General information about settings

Changes to the car's settings are saved in different ways depending on the category to which the settings belong. These settings may be personal, global or adapted for a drive cycle. Tap on and then on **Profiles** in order to access the settings for a selected profile.

Personal preferences

Personal settings are saved to an active profile.

There are two kinds of personal settings:

- Function settings – settings relating to driver support, driver side climate, the driver's seat, the door mirrors and interior and exterior lighting. These settings retain their values when a profile is added or when signing out from an active profile.
- Sound and media settings – settings relating to navigation, sound and media systems, apps and linked accounts. These settings return to default settings when a profile is added or when signing out from an active profile.

Global settings

The global settings are not changed when switching to a different profile. They remain the same regardless of which profile is active. Passenger side climate control, the passenger seat memory function, and certain system settings are examples of global settings.

Default drive cycle settings

A number of settings return to their defaults [1] after a drive cycle.

This means that the value of a setting can be adjusted while you drive. After driving, it is returned to the default. At next drive cycle, the setting will have its default value again.

[1] Default settings may vary depending on market

4.2.2.2. Link key to user profile

It is possible to connect your key to a profile. The profile along with all of its settings will then be automatically selected every time the car is used with that specific key.

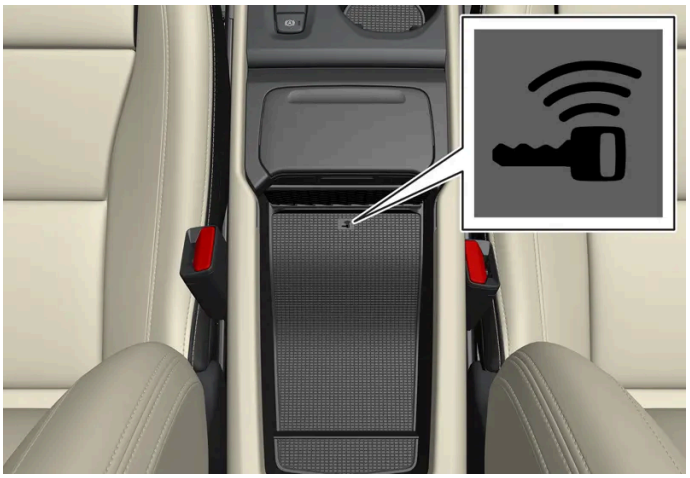
The first time the key is used, it is not linked to any specific profile. The **Owner** profile or the last profile used is activated automatically when the car is started.

Linking a key to a profile

> **Note**
>
> If the key was previously linked to another profile, the link is moved from the previous profile to the active profile.

1. Press ⚙.
2. Select **Profiles**.
3. Select **Connect key to profile** to connect a selected key to a profile.

It is only possible to connect a profile to the key that is currently being used in the car. If there are multiple keys in the car, the message **More than one key found. Place the key you want to connect on the backup reader.** will be displayed



Backup reader's location in the tunnel console.

Disconnecting a key from a profile

1. Press ⚙.
2. Select **Profiles**.
3. Select **Disconnect key from profile** to remove the active profile from the connected key.

It is possible to disconnect a key from a profile even if the key is not in the car.

4.2.2.3. Managing user profiles

It is possible to switch to another profile even if the key being used is linked to a different profile.

Creating a profile

1. Drag down the notification view to access user profiles.
2. Tap on the active profile.
3. Select **New profile**.
4. The profile is created.

> The profile is set as the active profile.

You will be guided through an interactive flow to help you set up the new profile. There you can choose to pair a phone with the car or to link different accounts, such as Volvo ID, to the profile. It is also possible to skip certain steps and complete them later.

It is possible to create up to six different profiles.

Selecting a profile

1 Drag down the notification view to access user profiles.

2 Tap on the active profile.

3 Selectable profiles are displayed.

4 Select the desired profile.

> The profile is selected and the system loads the settings for the selected profile.

> **Note**
>
> To cancel the moving of the seat when changing the profile, tap on any of the buttons on the seat part of the front seat.

Signing out a profile

1 Drag down the notification view to access user profiles.

2 Select **Log out**.

> Signing out takes place from the profile and it is no longer possible to access the accounts linked with that profile.

3 The system is preset to a signed-out mode and settings changed are not saved to a profile.

> **Note**
>
> To create, select and logout of a user profile is only possible when the car is stationary.

4.2.2.4. Profile settings

From profile settings, it is possible to change profile name, add and remove linked keys, link different accounts (such as Volvo ID), activate the lock screen, and delete the active profile, among other things.

Activating the screen lock

When the screen lock is activated, a passcode is required to be able to use the active profile.

1. Press ⚙.
2. Select **Profiles**.
3. Select **Screen lock**.
4. Select the type of screen lock and then activate.

> The screen lock will be shown in the centre display when switching to a profile with a passcode, and also every time the system is restarted.

Deleting a profile

Settings that have been saved to one or more profiles can only be deleted if the car is stationary.

1. Press ⚙.
2. Select **Profiles**.
3. Select **Delete this profile**.

> User information and connections linked to the profile are deleted.

4. The system is preset to a signed-out mode and settings changed are not saved to a profile.

Become an administrator

It is possible to set a profile as administrator.

1. Press ⚙.
2. Select **Profiles**.
3. Select **Become an admin**.

Accept the internet terms of use [1]

1. Press ⚙.
2. Select **Profiles**.
3. Select **Internet terms of service** and follow the instructions.

The terms of use must be accepted once per car in order to use the internet.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

4.2.2.5. Link account to user profile

It is possible to add accounts to a selected user profile. Examples of accounts that can be added are Volvo ID and Google account.

Adding an account

1. Press ⚙.
2. Select **Profiles**.
3. Select **Accounts**.
4. Select to add account.

> A list of accounts that can be added is shown.

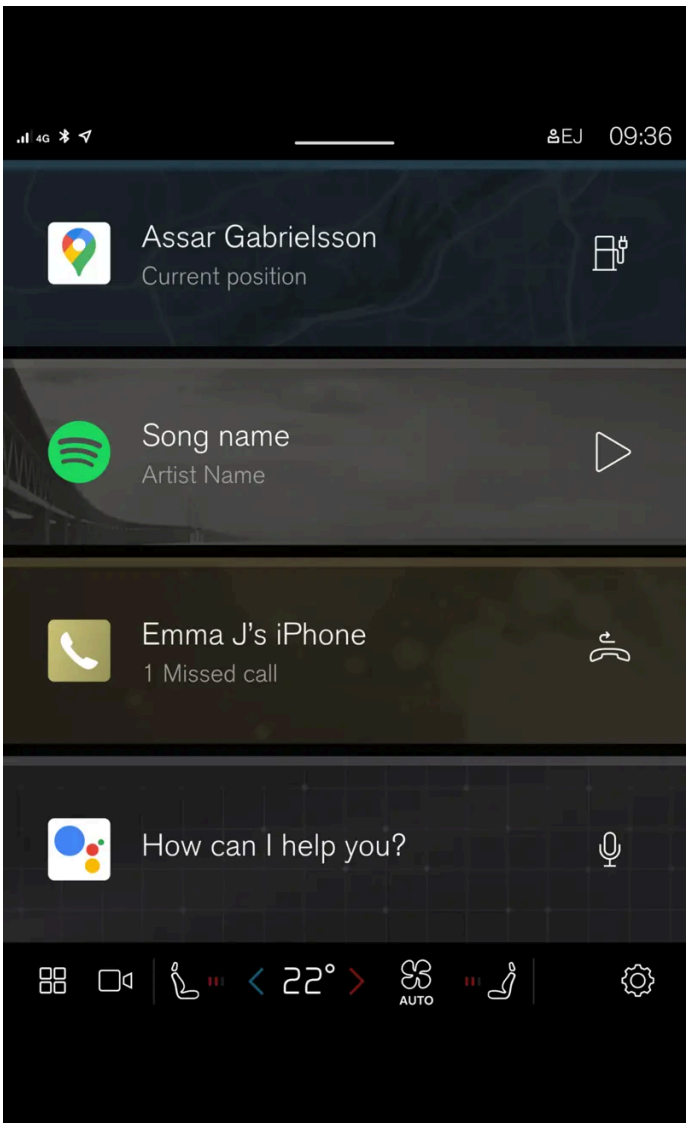
5. Select the desired account.

Then follow the instructions shown. The instructions depend on the type of account selected.

4.2.3. Overview of centre display

Many of the car's functions are controlled from the centre display. Presented here is the centre display and its options.

Home view

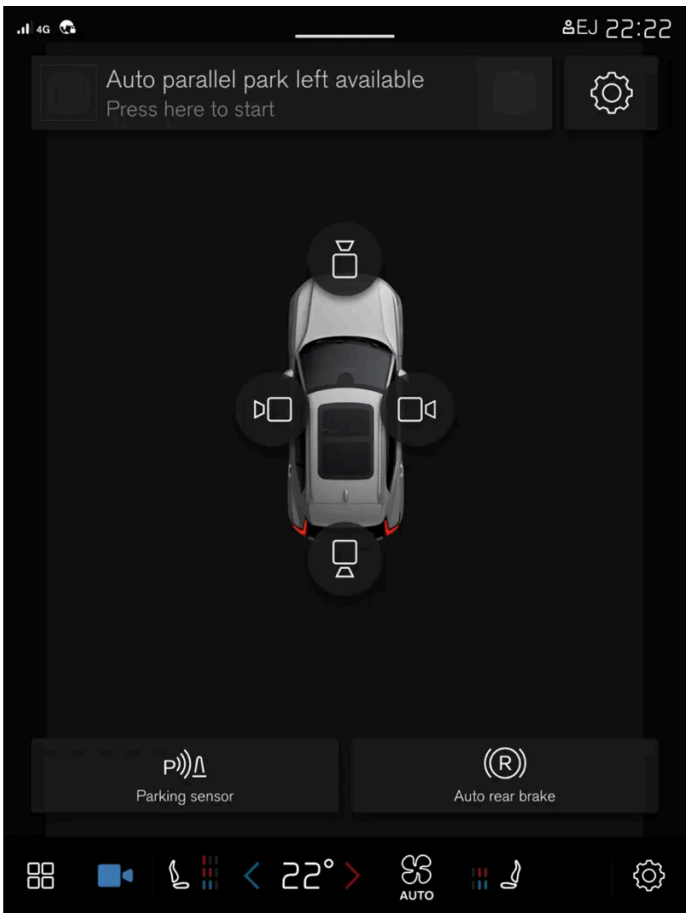


Home view is the first view that is shown when the screen is started.

Home view consists of four tiles that show the most recently used apps. The different views in the centre display such as climate view, camera view, app view, and notification view can also be reached from the home view.

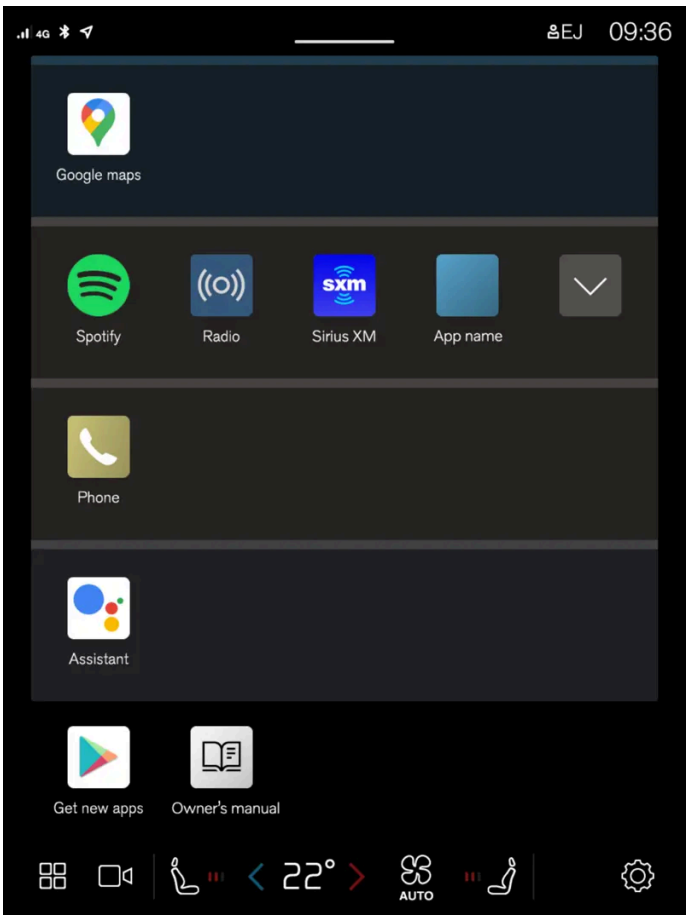
The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Camera view



Camera view shows the park assist cameras (PAC[1]), which displays a composite 360° view and separate views for each of the four cameras: rear, front, left or right camera view.

App view



The view for apps that have been downloaded (third-party apps) or for the car's built-in functions.

> **Note**
>
> If necessary, the climate control can be used to cool the media system in the centre display. In these cases, the message **Cooling infotainment system** is shown in the driver display.

[1] Park Assist Camera

4.2.4. Managing the centre display

Many of the car's functions are controlled and regulated from the centre display. The centre display is a touch screen that reacts to touch.

Using the touch screen functionality in the centre display

The screen reacts differently depending on whether it is touched by dragging, swiping, or tapping. Actions such as browsing between different views, marking objects and scrolling in a list can be performed by touching the screen in different ways.

The centre display is an optical touchscreen.

Two people can interact with the screen at the same time, e.g. to adjust the climate for the driver and passenger side respectively.

> **Important**
>
> Do not use sharp objects on the screen as they may scratch it.

> **Note**
>
> Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touch screen response.

Returning to home view from another view

1 Briefly press the home button below the centre display.

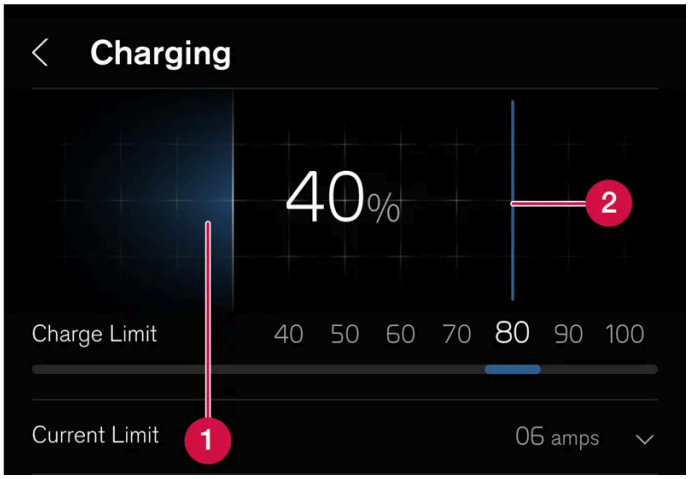
> The last position of the home view is shown.

4.2.5. Charging in the car's centre display

From the centre display it is possible to set the state of charge (SoC), unlock the charging cable and set amperage.

To access the charging view in the car's centre display, tap on ⚙ and then on **Charging**. When charging is started, the view for charging is also activated in the car's centre display.

Setting the state of charge (SoC)



1 The battery's current charge status.

2 Swipe to set the preferred state of charge (SoC). The state of charge (SoC) remains unchanged until next time, unless it is changed in the centre display.

Schedule charging

When charging with alternating current, it is possible to schedule charging and set start and stop times for when charging should take place. Tap on **Set timer** to schedule charging.

Unlocking the charging cable

Tap on **Unlock cable** in the centre display to unlock the charging cable and end the charging in progress.

Setting the amperage

When charging with alternating current[1], it is possible to limit the maximum amperage the car can be charged with. Tap on **+** to increase the amperage or **-** to reduce the amperage[2].

> **Note**
>
> The amperage may be limited by the charging station or charging cable. There is no guarantee that the car can be charged with the specified amperage if it is higher than permitted by the charging station or charging cable.

[1] Refers to charging via charging station (mode 3) and charging via wall socket (mode 2).

[2] The set amperage applies per phase from the alternating current source.

4.2.6. Centre display views

The centre display is started automatically when the driver's door is opened.

Home view

Home view is the view that is shown when the screen is started. This consists of four subviews.

It is possible to choose which apps you want to be displayed in the home view's subviews. An app selected from app view is launched in the relevant subview in home view.

The subviews are dynamic and show the latest apps used, e.g. navigation, media or phone. Tap on the desired app to expand it, or swipe from the left in the tile to view additional apps.

Status field

The activities in the car are shown at the top of the screen. The status field shows active user profile, network and connection information and the clock, among other things.

Notification view

The car's notifications are collected together at the top of the screen.

Drag the tab down to access notification view. Missed calls or information regarding the car, for example, are shown here. User profiles are also accessible from the notification view.

Leave notification view by tapping outside notifications or on the home button, or swipe up. The underlying view is then visible and available for use again.

Climate view

Buttons for app view, settings, and the most common climate settings, such as setting temperature and seat heating, are available at the bottom of the screen.

Tap on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display to open the climate view with more setting options.

Press the home button to close the climate view.

Camera view

Camera view starts automatically when gear position R is used.

Camera view shows the park assist cameras (PAC[1]), which displays a composite 360° view and separate views for each of the four cameras: rear, front, left or right camera view.

Camera view is closed automatically when the car is moving at a certain speed, or is closed by tapping on ▢◁ or pressing the home button.

App view

Tap on ⊞ down in the centre display.

The app view provides access to the car's pre-installed and downloaded apps. From the app view, there is the option to download and install additional apps. The owner's manual is also available from here.

Tap on an app to open it in full screen mode.

User profiles

Drag down the notification view to access user profiles.

Many of the settings made in the car can be adapted according to the user's personal preferences and can be saved in different user profiles.

Settings that can be saved in a user profile include, amongst other things, screens, mirrors, front seats, navigation, audio and media system, language and voice control.

You can add profiles, log out, or switch between profiles in the notification view.

[1] Park Assist Camera

4.2.7. Managing subviews in centre display

Home view and app view in the centre display include subviews that can be expanded.

Expanding an app in home view

Expanding an app:

1 Tap on the desired app. When an app is opened, the other apps are suppressed temporarily.

The open app provides access to its basic functions.

Closing an app:

1 Briefly press the physical home button below the centre display.

Expanding a tile in the app view

Expanding a subview:

1 Press ∨.

> The subview is expanded and provides access to further apps.

Closing an expanded subview:

1 The subview can be closed in two ways.

- Press ∧.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

- Briefly tap on the home button at the bottom of the centre display.

Home button for the centre display.

There is always the option to go back to home view by pressing the home button.

4.2.8. Symbols in the centre display's status bar

Overview of the symbols that can be shown in the centre display's status bar.

The status bar shows activities in progress and, in some cases, their status. Not all symbols are shown all the time due to the limited space in the status bar. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Specification
	Connected to the network.
LTE 2G 3G 4G	Network type.
R	Roaming activated.
	Bluetooth device connected.
	Information sent to and from GPS.
15:45	Clock.
	Wireless phone charging.

4.2.9. Moving apps in the centre display

The app view is made up of four tiles where the apps can be moved and organised as preferred. Expand a tile for access to apps other than just the ones displayed.
New apps installed are placed in app view.

1 Open app view.

Press ⊞.

2 Tap on an app and hold it down.

> It is then possible to move it.

3 Drag the app to the preferred place in the app view.

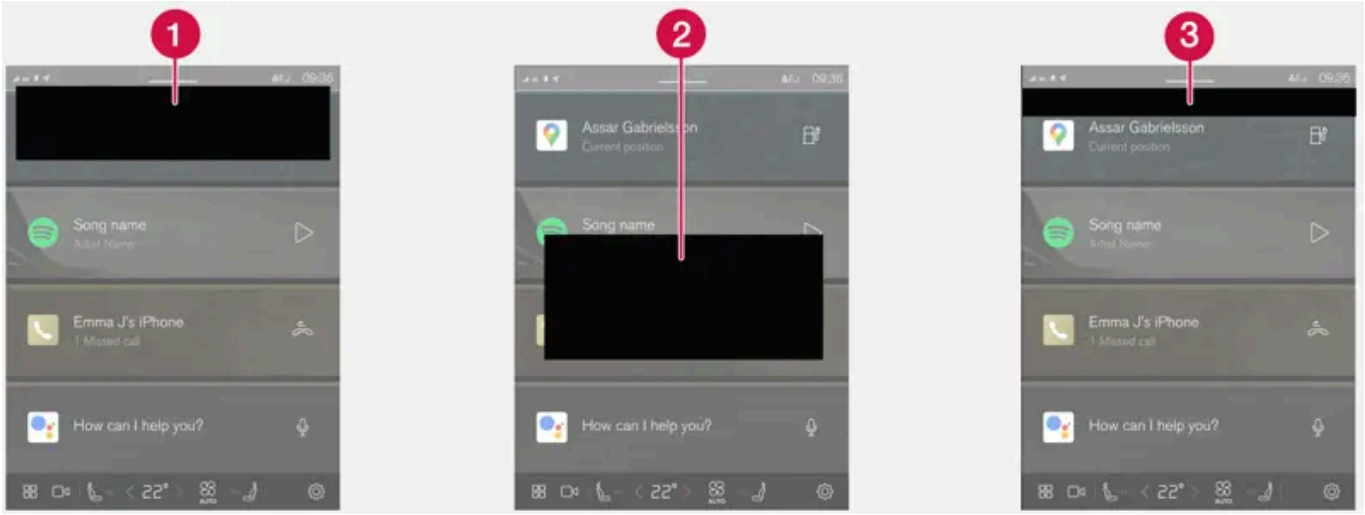
Swipe across the screen to scroll up or down in the view.

> **Note**
>
> A tile cannot be left empty without apps.

> **Note**
>
> Apps cannot be added to locations that are already occupied.

4.2.10. Message in the centre display

The following sample illustration shows how messages and notifications can be shown in the centre display in various contexts.



1. Appears at the top of the centre display. Requires direct action and can have up to three buttons that allow the user to deal with the message. Dismiss by sweeping right or left, the message is then saved in notification view.
2. Displayed as a window in the centre display and requires direct action. May have 1-3 buttons for action.
3. Appears for a few seconds at the top of the centre display. It is not possible to do anything with this notification, and it is not saved anywhere.

4.2.11. Keyboard in the centre display

The centre display keyboard makes it possible make entries using keys. It is also possible to "draw in" letters and characters on the screen by hand.

The keyboard can be used to enter characters, letters and numbers, e.g. to write text messages from the car, enter passwords or search for articles in the digital owner's manual.

The keyboard is only shown when entries can be made on the screen.

Hides the keyboard. If this is not possible, the button is not shown.

Changes keyboard mode to write letters and characters by hand instead.

Pressing the confirmation button above the keypad confirms the entered text. The appearance of the button differs depending on context.

Variants of a letter or character

Variants of a letter or character, e.g. **é** or **è**, can be entered by holding down the letter or character. A box is displayed showing possible variants of letters or characters. Press the required variant. If no variant is selected, the original letter/character is entered.

4.2.12. Enter the characters, letters and words manually in the centre display

The centre display keyboard allows you to enter characters, letters and words on the screen by "drawing" by hand.

Press the button on the keyboard to change from typing with the keys to entering letters and characters by hand.

Return to the keyboard with regular character input.

Writing characters/letters/words by hand

1 Write a character, a letter, a word or parts of a word in the area for hand-written letters. Write a word or parts of a word above each other or on a line.

> A number of suggested characters, letters or words is shown. The most likely choice is found at the top of the list.

> **Important**
>
> Do not use sharp objects on the screen as they may scratch it.

2 Enter the character/letters/word by waiting a moment.

> The character/letter/word at the top of the list is entered. It is also possible to select a different character by pressing the required character, letter or word in the list.

4.2.13. Changing keyboard language in centre display

To make it possible to switch between different languages for the keyboard, the languages must first be added under **Settings**.

Adding or deleting languages in settings

The keyboard is automatically set to the same languages as the system language. The language for the keyboard can be adapted manually without affecting the system language.

1 Tap on ⚙ at the bottom of the centre display.

2 Tap on **System**, **Languages and input**, **Keyboard**.

3 Select one or more languages from the list.

> It is now possible to switch between the selected languages directly from the keyboard for text input.

If no languages have been actively selected under **Settings**, the keyboard retains the same language as the car's system language.

Switching between different languages in the keyboard

When a number of languages have been selected in **Settings**, the button in the keyboard is used to switch between the different languages.

To change keyboard language with list:

1 Give a long press on the button.

A list opens.

2 Select the required language. If more than four languages have been selected, it is possible to scroll in the list from the keyboard.

> The keyboard is adapted to the selected language and other word suggestions are given.

To change the keyboard language without displaying the list:

1 Give a short press on the button.

> The keyboard is adapted to the next language in the list without displaying the list.

4.2.14. Date and time

The clock is shown in the centre display, and it is also possible to change the date and time settings there.

Clock location

The clock is located at the top right of the centre display's status bar.

Date and time settings

1 Tap on ⚙ and then **System**, the select **Date and time**.

2 Select the desired settings.

Automatic date and time setting

Date and time are set automatically as standard, and time zone is adjusted automatically as standard based on the location of the car.

Adjust the date and time manually by disabling the automatic date and time setting. Adjust time zone manually by disabling the setting for automatic time zone. It is also possible to select the 24-hour or 12-hour clock.

4.2.15. Navigate in the owner's manual in the centre display

The digital owner's manual can be accessed from the centre display.

To access the owner's manual, tap on ⊞ followed by 🕮.

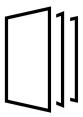
There is a range of different options for finding information in the owner's manual.

Contents of the Owner's Manual

Homepage

Tap on the symbol to go back to the start page in the owner's manual.

Categories



The articles in the owner's manual are structured into main categories and subcategories. The same article can be found in several appropriate categories so that it can be found more easily.

Visual navigation

Exterior and interior overview images of the car. Different parts are designated with hotspots that lead to articles about those parts of the car.

1 Press **Exterior** or **Interior**.

> Exterior or interior images are shown with so-called hotspots in place. The hotspot leads to articles about the corresponding part of the car. Swipe horizontally over the screen to browse among the images.

2 Tap on a hotspot.

> The title of the article about the area is shown.

3 Tap on the title to open the article.

To go back, press the back arrow.

Quick guide

Information to help you get started with the most commonly used functions in the car.

Video

Press the symbol to view brief instruction videos for various functions in the car.

Release notes

Read more about the current version and updates implemented.

Search function

Tap on the search field at the top of the owner's manual to access the search function from the homepage.

Use ⌕ at the top in the owner's manual to access the search function from other pages.

4.3. Symbols and messages

4.3.1. Messages for BLIS*

A number of messages regarding BLIS[1] can be shown in the driver display. Here are some examples.

Message	Specification
Blind spot sensor Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[2].
Blind spot system off Trailer attached	BLIS and Cross Traffic Alert* have been deactivated as a trailer has been connected to the car's electrical system.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Blind Spot Information

[2] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

4.3.2. Symbols and messages for electronic stability control

A number of symbols and messages regarding electronic stability control (ESC[1]) can be shown on the driver display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Constant glow for approx. 2 seconds	System check when the car is started.
	Flashing light	The system is being activated.
–	**Traction control temporarily off**	The traction control system has been temporarily reduced due to excessive brake temperature. The function is reactivated automatically when the brakes have cooled.
	ESC Service required	The system is disengaged. Stop the car at a safe place. Check whether the error was temporary or if it persists by getting out of the car, locking it, unlocking it and getting back in. If the problem persists, contact a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

[1] Electronic Stability Control

4.3.3. Symbols and messages for Pilot Assist*

A number of symbols and messages regarding Pilot Assist[1] can be shown. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	The symbol is lit. The car symbol is lit when the car has a vehicle ahead to relate to.	The car is maintaining the stored/selected speed.
	Pilot Assist Service required The symbol is extinguished	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted. Pilot Assist has been set in standby mode.
	Steering wheel symbol extinguished	Indicates deactivated steering assistance. When Pilot Assist provides steering assistance, the steering wheel is lit up.
	Symbol for hands on the steering wheel	The system cannot detect whether the driver has his/her hands on the steering wheel. Place your hands on the steering wheel and actively steer the car. The system warns in different steps coupled with acoustic signals. The hazard warning flashers are activated if the car needs to slow down to a standstill.
	Radar sensor front Sensor blocked See Owner's manual, **Front radar alignment incomplete** or **Front camera alignment incomplete**	Clean in front of the radar unit's detectors.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

4.3.4. Symbols and messages for lane assistance

A number of symbols and messages regarding lane assistance (LKA[1]) can be shown on the driver display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Driver support system Reduced functionality Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[2].
	Windscreen sensor blocked See Owner's manual	The ability of the camera to scan the roadway in front of the car is reduced.
	Apply steering Lane Keeping Aid	The steering assistance does not function if the driver does not have his/her hands on the steering wheel. Follow the instruction and steer the car.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

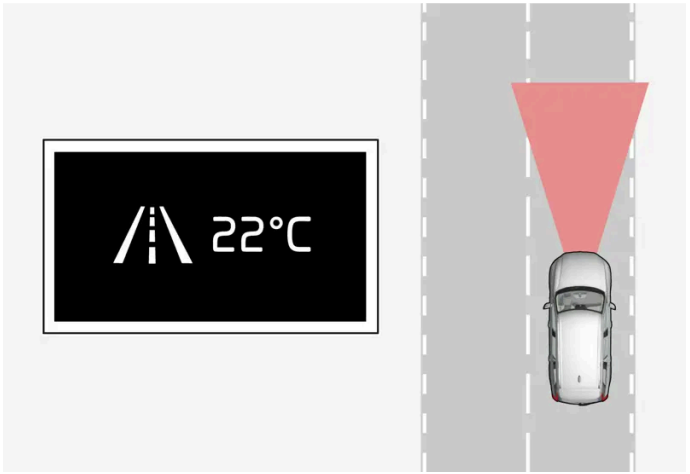
[2] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

4.3.5. Display mode for lane assistance

Lane assistance (LKA[1]) is visualised by symbols in the driver display depending on the situation.

Here are some examples of symbols and the situations in which they are shown:

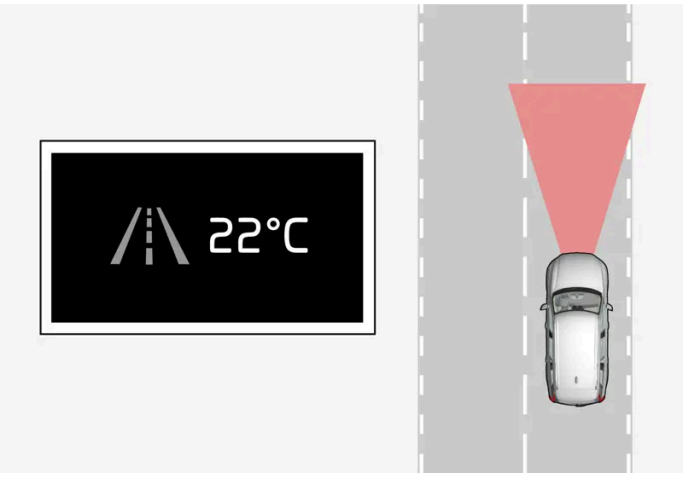
Available



Available – the lane lines in the symbol are white.

Lane assistance is scanning one or both lane lines.

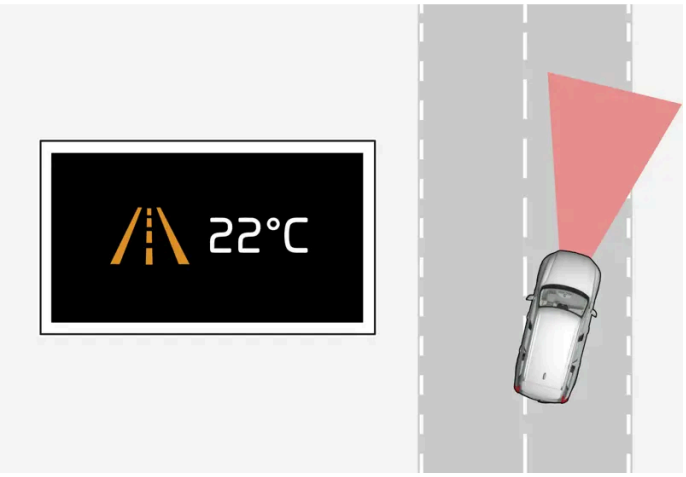
Unavailable



Unavailable – the lane lines in the symbol are extinguished.

The Lane assistance cannot detect the lane lines, the speed is too low or the road is too narrow.

Indication of steering assistance/warning



Steering assistance/warning – the lane lines in the symbol are coloured.

Lane assistance indicates that the system is giving a warning and/or attempting to steer the car back into the lane.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

4.3.6. Symbols and messages for park assist system* and park assist camera*

Symbols and messages for Park Assist System and Park Assist Camera can be shown in the driver display and/or the centre display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	If the symbol is extinguished.	The rearward parking assistance sensors are **deactivated**, so there are no acoustic warnings and field marks for obstacles/objects.
	Cleaning needed Park Assist System sensors blocked	One or more of the function's sensors are blocked - check and correct as soon as possible.
	Park Assist System unavailable Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[1].

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

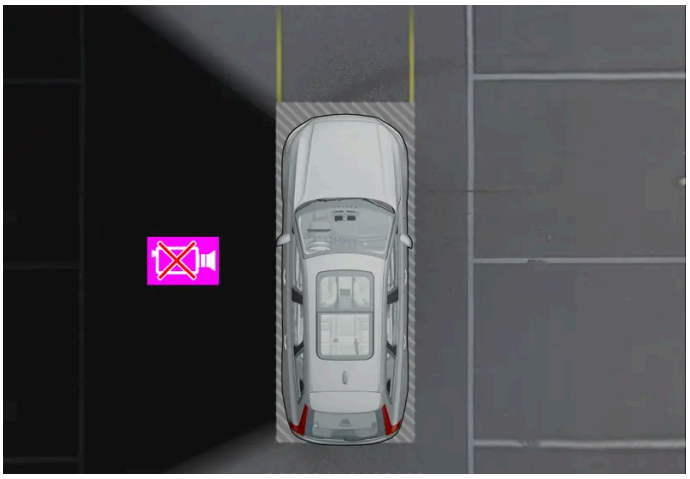
If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Warning

Pay additional attention while reversing when this symbol is shown if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is mounted and electrically connected to the car.

Extinguished symbol indicates that the parking assistance sensors rearward are **switched off** and warn of any obstacles.

Defective park assist camera



Example for showing when the car's left camera is non-operational.

If a camera sector is black it means that the camera is inoperative.

A black camera sector is also shown in the following instances, but then **without** the symbol for defective camera:

- open door
- open tailgate
- folded-in door mirror.

* Option/accessory.

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

4.3.7. Symbols in the centre display's status bar

Overview of the symbols that can be shown in the centre display's status bar.

The status bar shows activities in progress and, in some cases, their status. Not all symbols are shown all the time due to the limited space in the status bar. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Specification
	Connected to the network.
LTE 2G 3G 4G	Network type.
R	Roaming activated.
	Bluetooth device connected.
	Information sent to and from GPS.
15:45	Clock.
	Wireless phone charging.

4.3.8. Indicator and warning symbols

The indicator and warning systems alert the driver to the fact that a function is activated, a system is working, or a defect or serious error has occurred.

Red symbols

	Warning The red warning symbol illuminates when a fault has been detected which could affect the safety or drivability of the car. An explanatory text is shown on the driver display at the same time. The warning symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.
	Seatbelt reminder Illuminates or flashes when someone in the car is not wearing a seatbelt.
	Airbags An error has been detected in any of the car's safety systems. Read the message on the driver display and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.
	Fault in brake system An error has occurred on the braking system. Read the message on the driver display and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.
	Parking brake Light illuminated permanently: The parking brake is activated. Flashing: an error has occurred with the parking brake. Read the message in the driver display.
	Faults in the electrical system An error has occurred on the electrical system. Read the message on the driver display and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.
	Assistance at risk of collision Warns of a risk of collision with other vehicles, pedestrians, cyclists or large animals.

Amber symbols

	Information A fault has occurred in one of the car's systems. Read the message in the driver display. The information symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.
	Fault in brake system An error has occurred on the braking system. Read the message in the driver display.
	ABS fault The system is disengaged. The car's regular brake system continues to work, but without the ABS function.
	Rear fog lamp The rear fog lamp is illuminated.
	Tyre pressure system Low tyre pressure. If there is a fault in the tyre pressure system, the symbol will flash for approx. 1 minute and then illuminate with a constant glow. This may be because the system cannot detect or warn of low tyre pressure as intended.
	Fault in the headlamp system A fault has occurred on the headlamp system. Read the message in the driver display.
	Lane assistance Lane assistance warns/intervenes.
	Reduced performance Temporary fault on drivetrain. Read the message in the driver display.
	Stability system Light on permanently: a fault has occurred in the system. Flashing: the system is working.
	Assistance at risk of collision System not available The system for assistance at risk of collision is not available, or is operating with reduced performance.

Blue symbols

	Active main beam Active main beam is activated and switched on.
	Main beam Main beam is switched on.

Green symbols

	Front fog lamps The front fog lamp is switched on.
	Position lamps The position lamps are switched on.
 	Left and right-hand direction indicator The direction indicator is being used.

White/grey symbols

	Active main beam Active main beam is activated, but does not come on.
	Brake when stationary Brake when stationary is activated.
	Driver Alert Driver Alert is activated.
	Cold battery The battery has reduced capacity due to low temperature. The battery risks losing a lot of charge if the car is parked in cold ambient temperatures.
	Lane assistance White symbol: Lane assistance is on and road lines are detected. Grey symbol: Lane assistance is on and road lines are not detected.
	Rain sensor The rain sensor is activated.

4.3.9. Symbols and messages for parking climate control

A number of symbols and messages regarding parking climate control can be shown in the driver display.

Messages relating to parking climate control can also be displayed in a device which has the Volvo Cars* app.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Parking climate Service required	Parking climate control is disengaged. Contact a workshop[1] to check the function as soon as possible.
	Parking climate Temporarily unavailable	Parking climate control is temporarily disengaged.
	Parking climate unavailable Charge level too low	Parking climate control cannot be activated if the charge level of the high voltage battery is too low to start the parking heater. Charge the car.
	Limited parking climate Charge level too low	The running time for parking climate control is limited when the state of charge in the high voltage battery is low. Charge the car.

Symbol	Message	Specification

* Option/accessory.

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

4.3.10. Symbols and messages for the transmission

If a fault should occur in the gearbox, a symbol and a message are shown in the driver display.

Symbol	Specification
	An error has occurred in the transmission. Read the message in the driver display.
	Temporary fault on drivetrain. Read the message in the driver display.

4.4. Voice control

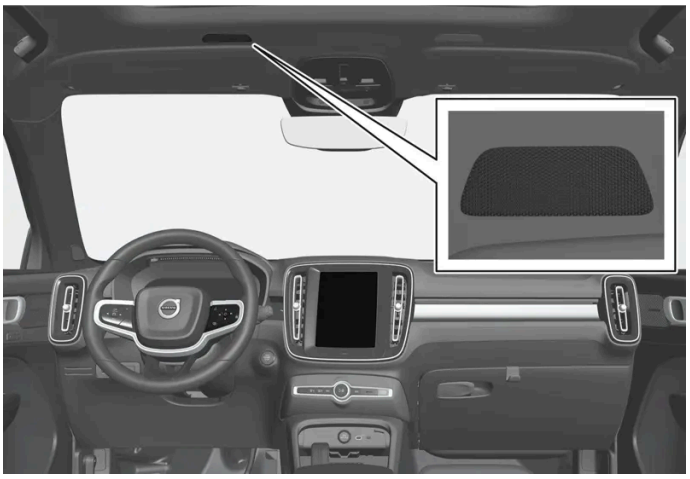
4.4.1. Voice control with Google Assistant

Google Assistant, which is integrated in the car, makes it possible to use your voice to control a range of functions, e.g. the climate control system, Google Maps for navigation, FM radio* and your phone.

What is Google Assistant?

Google Assistant is a digital assistant that makes it possible to use your voice to control various in-car functions and get help with other things such as searching for information, weather forecasts, managing your Google Calender, etc.

The Assistant understands natural speech, i.e. you do not need any knowledge of specific commands to get the system to do different things. Instead, there is the option to speak freely with the system, which provides feedback in the form of responses to what was requested, or indicates whether what was said could not be understood.



Voice control system microphone

Which areas can be controlled via Google Assistant?

Besides asking the Assistant for information searched for via Google, searching for weather forecasts or managing your Google Calender[1], a number of in-car functions can be controlled using voice commands. These include:

- media
- FM radio*
- phone and text messaging[2]
- navigation via Google Maps
- climate

> **Note**
>
> A poorer connection may limit the number of available functions.

> **Warning**
>
> The driver always holds overall responsibility for driving the vehicle in a safe manner and complying with all applicable rules of the road.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Requires Internet connection.

[2] Text messages can only be dictated for phones with Android or iOS 13 or later.

4.4.2. Using voice control

Google Assistant makes it possible to use voice control to control different functions in the car or, for example, to ask for other information such as a weather forecast.

Starting Google Assistant

There are three different ways to start Google Assistant, as follows:

- by saying the voice command "**Ok Google**" or "**Hey Google**"[1]
- by pressing briefly on the steering wheel button for voice control .
- by tapping on the microphone in the centre display .

The system shows that it is active and listening by means of a brief audible signal[2] and a graphic confirmation in the centre display.

Example of voice control

After the system has started, different requests can be made by speaking freely. Here are some examples of how to use voice control.

- "**Navigate home**" – Show route description to the address stored in Maps as home address for the Google account used for login.
- "**Read my messages.**" – Reads out text messages sent to the phone.
- "**Raise the temperature**" – Raises the temperature in the passenger compartment.
- "**Play music**" – Plays back music in selected media app.

Being logged in with a Google account means that the assistant is more personalised when the car is online. For example, it is possible to call contacts stored in contacts.google.com [https://contacts.google.com/] or ask about entries in Google Calendar.

Note

Google Assistant is not yet available in all languages. Read more at support.google.com [https://support.google.com/] for availability or, if possible, try another language.

Note

The instructions above are general descriptions and include third-party suppliers. Availability, procedure and functionality are subject to change or variation.

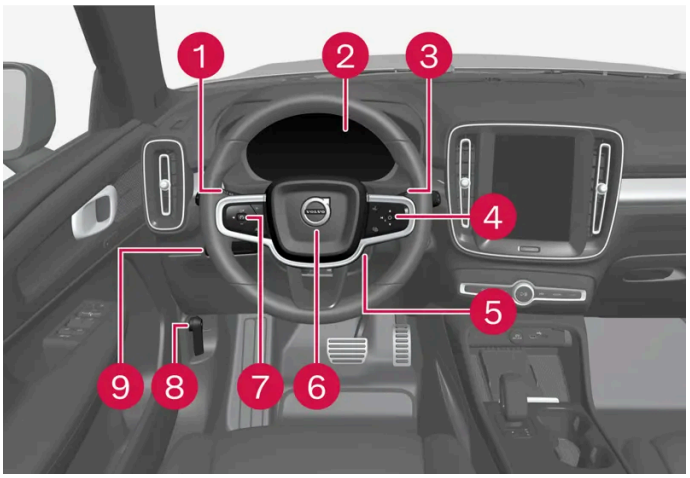
[1] "Hey Google" only works in certain languages.

[2] When a voice command is used to start the system, you will only hear the audible signal if you pause before you continue your request.

4.5. Displays and controls by the driver in a left-hand drive car

The overviews show where the displays and controls near the driver are located.

Steering wheel and instrument panel

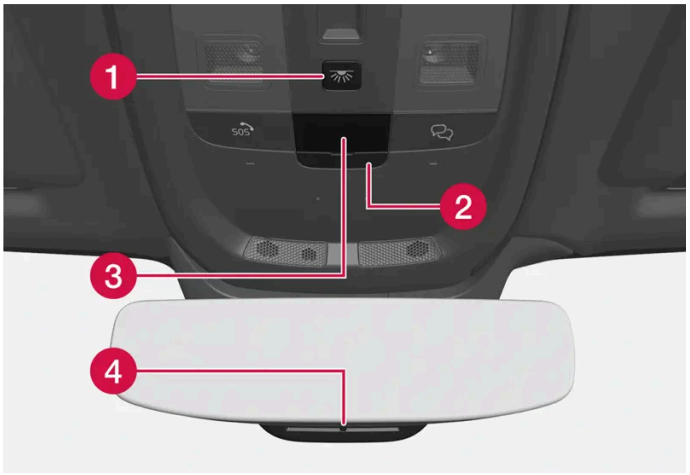


1. Position lamps, daytime running lights, dipped beam, main beam, direction indicators, front fog lamps/cornering lights*, rear fog lamp, resetting the trip meter
2. Driver display
3. Wipers and washing, rain sensor*
4. Right-hand steering wheel keypad
5. Steering wheel adjustment
6. Horn
7. Left-hand steering wheel keypad

8 Bonnet opening

9 Display lighting, unlocking/opening*/closing* of tailgate

Roof console



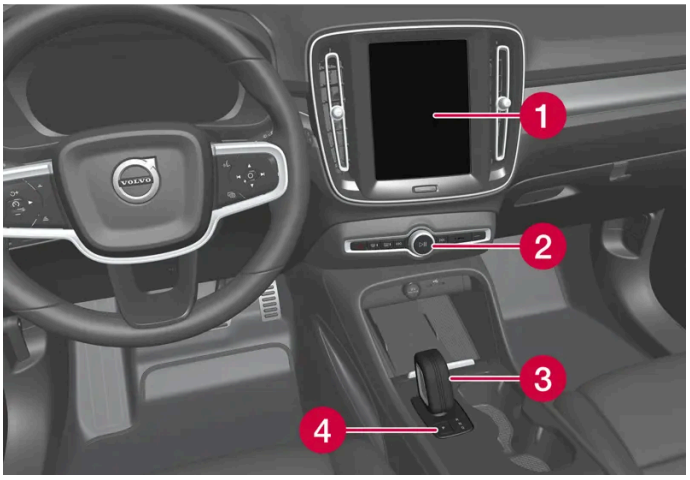
1 Front reading lamps and interior lighting

2 Flap for SIM card

3 Display in roof console, 🗩 button

4 Manual dimming of interior rearview mirror [1]

Centre and tunnel console



1 Centre display

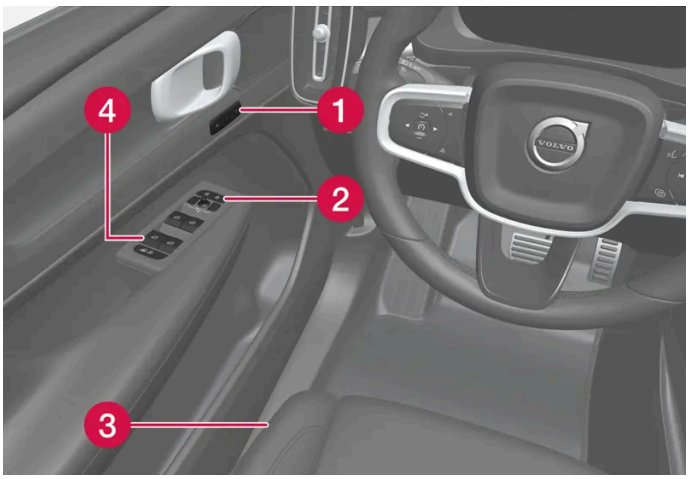
2 Hazard warning flashers, defrosting, media

3 Gear selector

4 Parking brake

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Driver's door



1 Memory for settings for power front seat

2 Central locking and door mirrors

3 Adjusting front seat

4 Power windows and child lock*

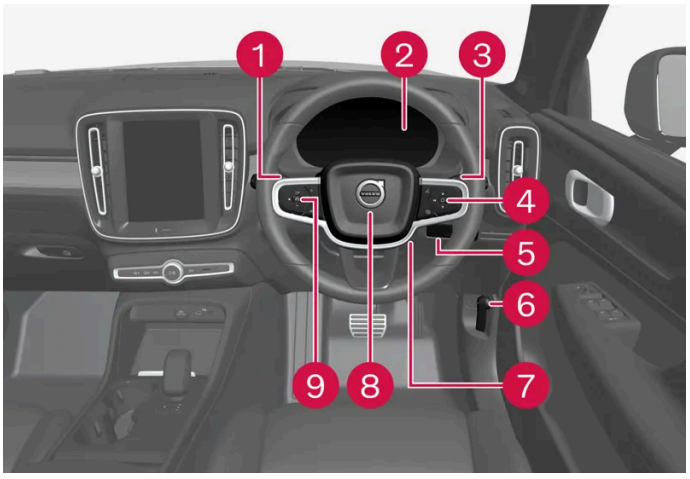
* Option/accessory.

[1] There are no controls for manual dimming for cars with automatic dimming.

4.6. Displays and controls by the driver in a right-hand drive car

The overviews show where the displays and controls near the driver are located.

Steering wheel and instrument panel



1 Position lamps, daytime running lights, dipped beam, main beam, direction indicators, front fog lamps/cornering lights*, rear fog lamp, resetting the trip meter

2 Driver display

3 Wipers and washing, rain sensor*

4 Right-hand steering wheel keypad

5 Unlocking/opening*/closing* of tailgate

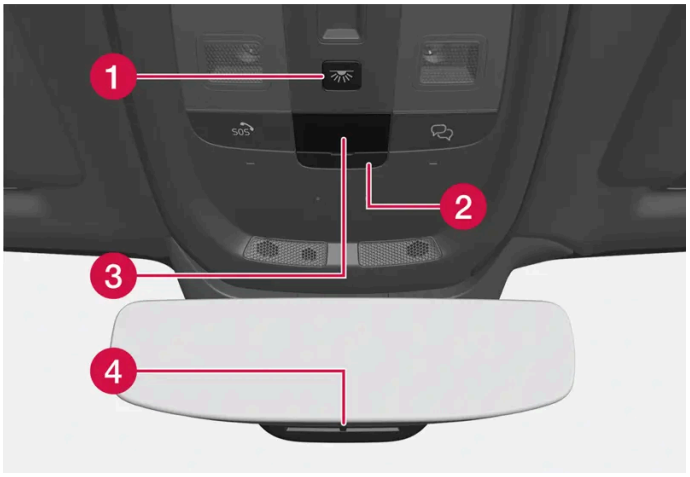
6 Bonnet opening

7 Steering wheel adjustment

8 Horn

9 Left-hand steering wheel keypad

Roof console



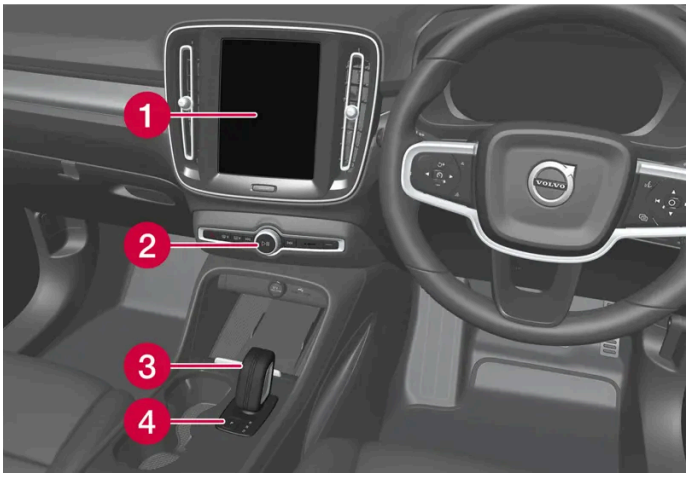
1 Front reading lamps and interior lighting

2 Flap for SIM card

3 Display in roof console, 🗨 button

4 Manual dimming of interior rearview mirror [1]

Centre and tunnel console



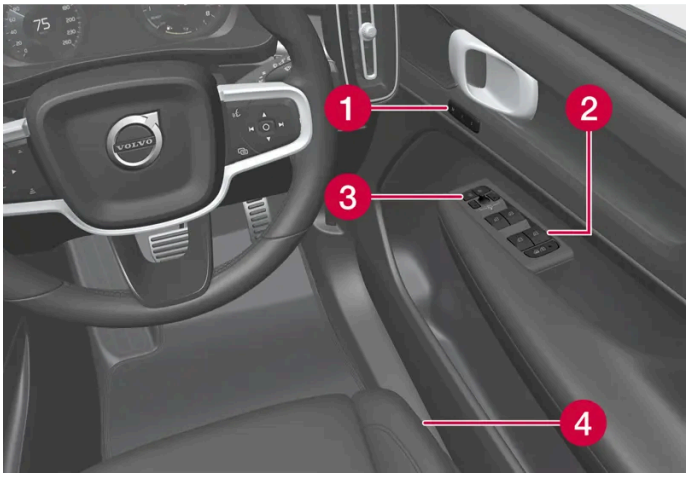
1 Centre display

2 Hazard warning flashers, defrosting, media

3 Gear selector

4 Parking brake

Driver's door



1 Memory for settings for power front seat

2 Central locking and door mirrors

3 Power windows and electric child lock*

4 Adjusting front seat

* Option/accessory.

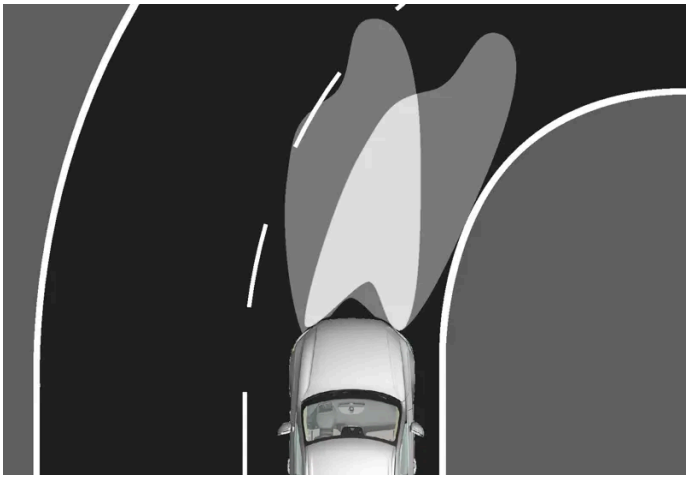
[1] There are no controls for manual dimming for cars with automatic dimming.

5. Lighting

5.1. Exterior lighting

5.1.1. Active bending lights*

Active bending lights are designed to provide additional illumination in bends and junctions. Cars with LED[1] headlamps* can have active bending lights, depending on the car's equipment level.



Headlamp pattern without active bending lights (left) and with active bending lights (right).

Active bending lights follow steering wheel movements to provide additional illumination in bends and junctions and can thereby provide the driver with improved visibility.

In the event of a fault in the function, the symbol illuminates in the driver display at the same time as the driver display shows an explanatory text.

The active bending lights are only switched on in weak daylight or in darkness as well as when the stalk switch's rotating ring is in AUTO position. The car also needs to be in motion with the main beam or dipped beam activated.

* Option/accessory.

[1] LED (Light Emitting Diode)

5.1.2. Active main beam

Active main beam uses the camera sensor in the upper edge of the windscreen. The camera sensor registers the headlamp beams from oncoming traffic or the rear lights of vehicles ahead, and then switches from main beam to dipped beam.

The symbol ECA represents active main beam.

The function can start while driving in the dark when the car's speed is approx. 20 km/h (approx. 12 mph) or higher. The function can also take streetlights into account. When the camera sensor no longer detects any oncoming car or car in front, main beam is switched on again after about a second.

Activate active main beam

Active main beam is activated and deactivated by turning the left-hand stalk switch to position ECA. The rotating ring then returns to position AUTO. When active main beam is activated, the symbol ECA illuminates with a white glow in the driver display. When main beam is activated, the symbol shines blue.

If active main beam is deactivated while main beam is on, the lighting is immediately reset to dipped beam.

Active main beam does not need to be reactivated every time the car is started.

Limitations for active main beam

The camera sensor on which the function is based has limitations.

If this symbol is shown in the driver display, together with the message **Active High Beam Temporarily unavailable**, then switching between main and dipped beam must be performed manually.

The same applies if this symbol is shown together with the message **Windscreen sensor blocked See Owner's manual**.

Active main beam may be temporarily unavailable e.g. in situations with dense fog or heavy rain. When active main beam becomes available again, or the windscreen sensors are no longer blocked, the message is extinguished and active main beam is reactivated.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Warning

Active main beam is an aid for using the optimum beam pattern when conditions are favourable.

The driver always bears responsibility for manually switching between main and dipped beam when traffic situations or weather conditions so require.

5.1.3. Using direction indicators

The car's direction indicators are operated with the left-hand stalk switch. The direction indicator lamps flash three times or continuously, depending on how far up or down the stalk switch is moved.

Direction indicators.

Short flash sequence

1. Move the stalk switch up or down to the first position and release. The direction indicator lamps flash three times.

Note

- This automatic flashing sequence can be stopped by moving the stalk switch immediately in the opposite direction.
- If the symbol for direction indicators in the driver display flashes more quickly than normal - see the message in the driver display.

Continuous flash sequence

2. Move the stalk switch up or down to its end position.

The stalk switch remains in its position and is moved back manually, or automatically by the steering wheel movement.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

5.1.4. Brake lights

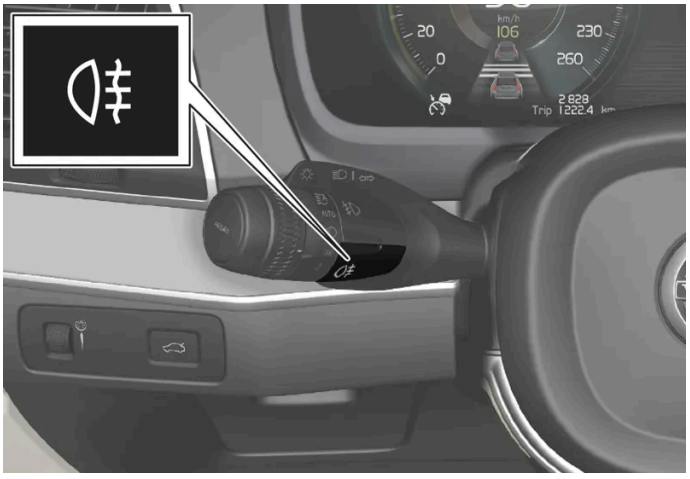
The brake light automatically comes on during braking.

The brake light is illuminated when the brake pedal is depressed and when the car is braked automatically by one of the driver support systems.

The brake light also illuminates during regenerative braking if the braking force exceeds a certain level.

5.1.5. Rear fog lamp

The rear fog lamp is considerably stronger than the normal rear lights and should only be used in reduced visibility due to fog, snow, smoke or dust so that other road users have an early warning of a vehicle ahead.



Button for rear fog lamp.

The rear fog lamp is a lamp at the rear of the car, on the driver's side.

The rear fog lamp can only be switched on when:

- the stalk switch's rotating ring is in position AUTO or
- the stalk switch's rotating ring is in position and the front fog lamps are switched on.

Press the button to switch the lights on/off. The symbol in the driver display illuminates when the rear fog lamp is switched on.

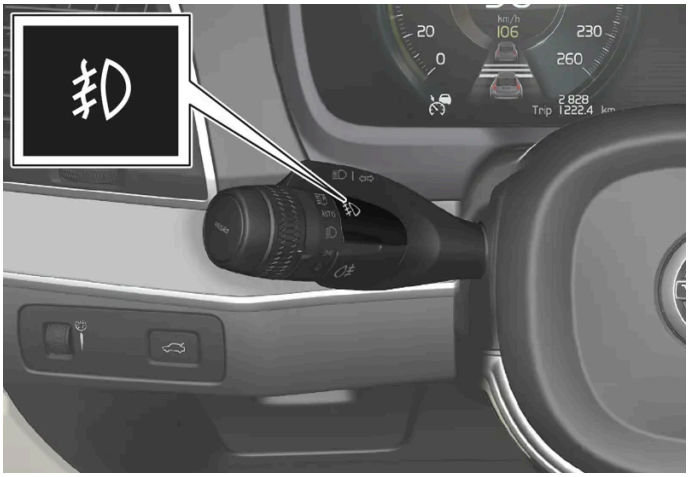
The rear fog lamp is switched off automatically when:

- when the stalk switch's rotating ring is set in position 0
- the stalk switch's rotating ring is in position and the front fog lamps are switched off.

> **Note**
>
> Regulations on the use of rear fog lamps vary from country to country.

5.1.6. Front fog lamps/cornering lights*

The front fog lamps are activated manually when driving in fog and automatically when reversing in order to complement the reversing light.
If the car is fitted with cornering lights*, the front fog lamps come on automatically in dull daylight or darkness in order to light up the area diagonally in front of the car.



Button for front fog lamps.

The front fog lamps can be switched on when the car is in drive mode and the rotating ring on the stalk switch is in position AUTO, or .

Press the button to activate and deactivate. The symbol illuminates in the driver display when the front fog lamps are switched on.

The front fog lamps switch off automatically when the car is switched off or when the rotating ring on the stalk switch is set to the 0 position.

> **Note**
>
> Regulations on the use of fog lamps vary from country to country.

Cornering lights*

The front fog lamps can include the cornering lights function, which temporarily illuminates the area diagonally in front of the car in the direction the steering wheel is turned on a sharp bend, or in the direction shown by the direction indicators.

The function is activated in weak daylight or darkness when the stalk switch's rotating ring is in the AUTO or position and the speed of the car is lower than approx. 30 km/h (approx. 20 mph).

In addition, both cornering lights are switched on as a supplement to the reversing lamp during reversing. They are extinguished when the car drives forward again.

* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

5.1.7. Dipped beam

When driving with the stalk switch's rotating ring in the AUTO position, dipped beam is activated automatically in weak daylight or darkness.

Stalk switch rotating ring in AUTO position.

With the stalk switch's rotating ring in AUTO position, dipped beam is also activated automatically if the rear fog lamp is activated.

With the stalk switch's rotating ring in the position, dipped beam is always activated when the car is started.

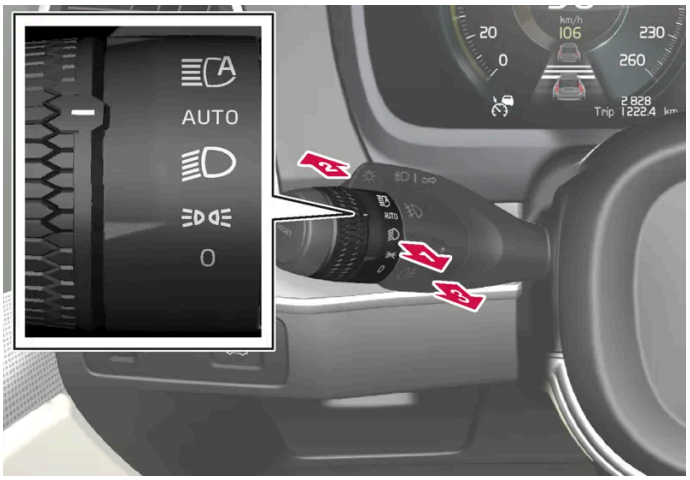
Tunnel detection

The car detects when it is driven into a tunnel and switches from daytime running lights to dipped beam.

Note that the rotating ring in the left-hand stalk switch must be in AUTO mode for tunnel detection to work.

5.1.8. Using main beam

Main beam is operated with the left-hand stalk switch. Main beam is the car's strongest lighting and should be used when driving in the dark for better visibility, as long as it does not dazzle other road users.



Steering wheel stalk switch with rotating ring.

Main beam flash

1 Move the stalk switch backwards slightly to main beam flash position. Main beam comes on until the stalk switch is released.

Main beam

2 Main beam can be activated when the steering wheel stalk switch's rotating ring is in position AUTO [1] or . Activate main beam by moving the stalk switch forwards.

3 Deactivate by moving the stalk switch backwards.

> **Note**
>
> When main beam has been activated, it can be deactivated by moving the stalk switch backwards to either 1 position or 3 position.

When main beam has been activated the symbol illuminates in the driver display.

[1] When dipped beam is activated.

5.1.9. Using home safe lighting

Some of the exterior lighting can be kept switched on to work as home safe lighting after the car has been locked.

To activate the function:

1. Make sure the car is switched off.
2. Move the left-hand stalk switch forward toward the instrument panel and release.
3. Get out of the car and lock the door.

> A symbol in the driver display is illuminated to indicate that the function is activated and outer lighting is switched on: Position lamps, headlamp beams, number plate lighting and lighting in outer handles*.

The home safe lighting is illuminated for approximately 60 seconds.

* Option/accessory.

5.1.10. Adapting the headlamp pattern from the headlamps

This car does not need to reset the headlamp pattern when changing from right to left-hand traffic, and vice versa.

5.1.11. Emergency brake lights

Emergency brake lights are activated to alert vehicles behind about heavy braking.
The function means that the brake light flashes instead of - as in normal braking - shining with a constant glow.

The emergency brake lights are activated during heavy braking or if the ABS system is activated at high speeds.

After the driver brakes to a low speed and then releases the brake, the brake light returns to normal function and is extinguished.

The car's hazard warning flashers are activated at the same time. These flash until the driver accelerates the car to a higher speed again or switches off the car's hazard warning flashers.

5.1.12. Position lamps

Position lamps can be used so that other road users can see the car if it stops or is parked. The position lamp is switched on with the rotating ring on the stalk switch.

Stalk switch rotating ring in position lamps position.

Turn the rotating ring to the position - the position lamps are switched on (number plate lighting is switched on at the same time).

If the car is in drive mode, the daytime running lights are switched on instead of the front position lamps.

If the car is stationary but running, the rotating ring can be moved to the position lamp position from another position to switch on only the position lamps instead of other lighting.

When driving for more than 30 seconds at max. 10 km/h (approx. 6 mph), or if the speed exceeds 10 km/h (approx. 6 mph), the daytime running lights are switched on. The driver should turn to a position other than ≡D◎≡.

If the tailgate is opened when it is dark outside, the rear position lamps come on (if not already switched on) to warn road users approaching from behind.

5.1.13. Guidance light

The guidance light is switched on when the car is unlocked and is used to switch on the car's lighting at a distance.

The function is activated when the car is unlocked. In daylight, position lamps, interior roof lamps, floor lights and cargo area lighting are activated. In weak daylight or darkness, number plate lighting and lighting in the outer handles are also activated* with their light source aimed towards the ground.

The lighting stays on for approx. 2 minutes if no doors are opened. If a door is opened within the activation time, the time for the interior lighting and lighting in the outer handles* will be extended.

The function can be activated and deactivated via the centre display.

* Option/accessory.

5.1.14. Hazard warning flashers

Hazard warning flashers warn other road users by means of all of the car's direction indicators being activated simultaneously. The function can be used to give a warning in the event of traffic hazards.

Button for hazard warning flashers.

Press the button to activate the hazard warning flashers.

The hazard warning flashers are automatically activated when the car brakes so powerfully that the emergency brake lights are activated and the speed is low. The hazard warning flashers start to flash after the emergency brake lights have stopped flashing

and are then deactivated automatically when the car drives away again or are deactivated if the button is depressed.

The hazard warning flashers are automatically activated in the event of a collision.

> **Note**
>
> Regulations for the use of hazard warning flashers may vary between countries.

5.1.15. Daytime running lights

The car has sensors that detect the light conditions in the surroundings. With the stalk switch's rotating ring in position 0 , ≡D◐≡ or AUTO, the daytime running lights are switched on. In position AUTO, the headlamps change automatically to dipped beam in weak daylight or darkness.

Stalk switch rotating ring in AUTO position.

If the stalk switch rotating ring is in the AUTO position, the daytime running lights (DRL[1]) are switched on when the car is driven in daylight. The car automatically changes lighting from daytime running light to dipped beam in weak daylight or darkness. Changing to dipped beam also takes place if the front fog lamp* and/or rear fog lamp are activated.

> **Warning**
>
> This system help to save energy - it cannot determine in all situations when daylight is too weak or sufficiently strong, e.g. in mist and rain.
>
> The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the car is driven with the correct beam pattern for the traffic situation and in accordance with applicable traffic regulations.

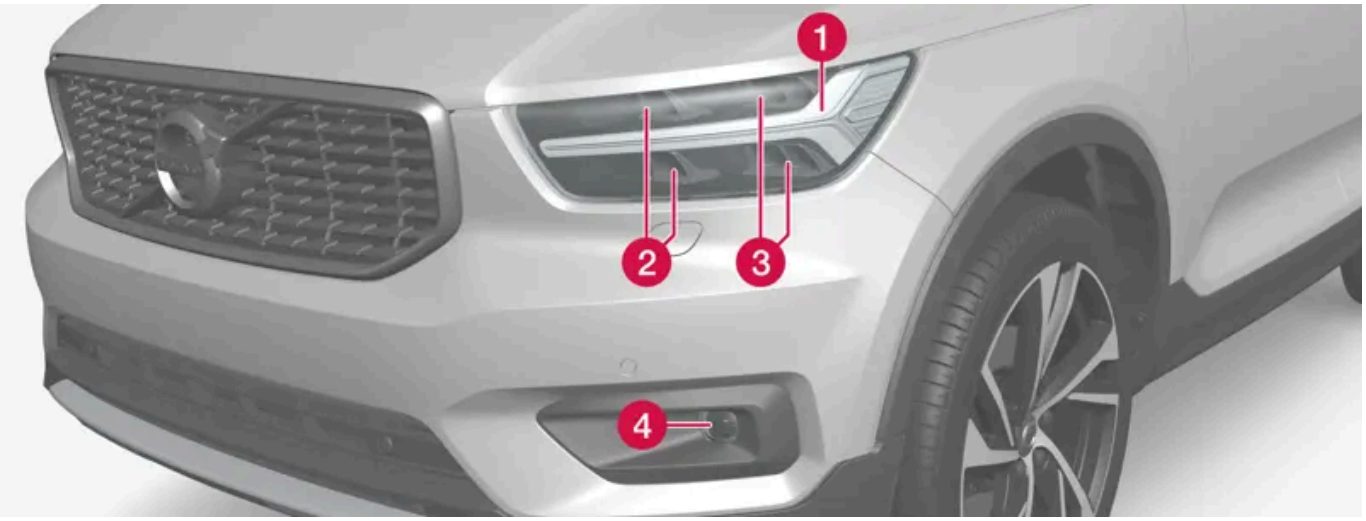
[1] Daytime Running Lights

* Option/accessory.

5.1.16. Exterior lamp positions

The exterior lighting of the car uses a number of different lamps. An LED[1] type lamp must be replaced by a workshop. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Lamps, front



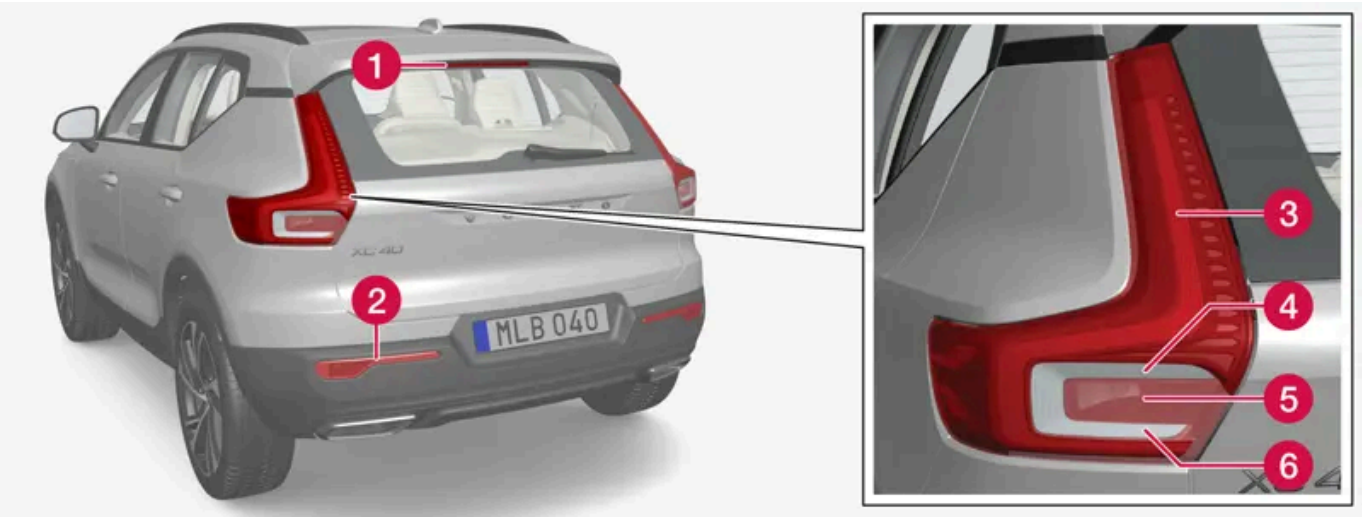
1 Daytime running lights/position lamps/direction indicators (LED)

2 Main beam (LED)

3 Dipped beam (LED)

4 Front fog lamps/cornering lights* (LED)

Lamps, rear



1 Brake light - central, high-level (LED)

2 Fog lamp

3 Position lamps (LED)

4 Direction indicators

5 Brake lights

6 Reversing lamps (LED)

[1] LED (Light Emitting Diode)

* Option/accessory.

5.1.17. Bulb specifications

Specifications for replaceable bulbs.
Contact a workshop[1] if faults occur in lamps other than bulbs. If a fault occurs in LED[2] lamps, the entire lamp unit usually must be replaced.

Function	W[3]	Type
Rear direction indicators	21	PY21W
Brake lights	21	H21W LL
Rear fog lamp	21	H21W LL

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

[2] LED (Light Emitting Diode)

[3] Watt

5.1.18. Checking trailer lamps*

When connecting a trailer – check that the trailer lamps work before departure.

Checking trailer lamps*

Automatic checking

After a trailer is connected electrically, it is possible to ensure that the trailer lamps are working via an automatic lamp activation. The function helps the driver check that the trailer lamps are working before starting off.

1 When a trailer is connected to the towbar, the **Perform a trailer lamp check?** message is shown in the driver display.

2 Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's O button.

> The lamp check starts.

3 Exit the car to check lamp functionality.

> All trailer lamps start to flash - then the lamps are switched on one at a time.

4 Visually check that all lamps available on the trailer are operational.

5 After a moment, all lamps on the trailer flash again.

> The check is complete.

Rear fog lamp on trailer

When connecting the trailer, the rear fog lamp may not light up on the car. In such cases, the rear fog lamp function switches to the trailer. Upon activation of the rear fog lamp, check therefore that the trailer is equipped with a rear fog lamp to travel safely.

Symbols and messages in the driver display

If one or more of the trailer's direction indicators or brake light bulbs is broken, the driver display shows a symbol and a message. Other lights on the trailer must be checked manually by the driver before setting off.

Symbol	Message
	Right trailer turn indicator malfunction Left trailer turn indicator malfunction
	Trailer brake light malfunction

If any lamp for the trailer's direction indicators is broken, the driver display symbol for direction indicators will also flash more quickly than normal.

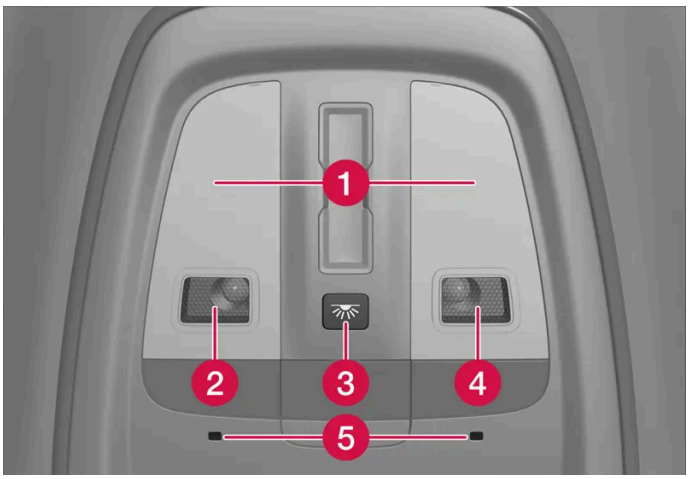
* Option/accessory.

5.2. Interior lighting

5.2.1. Interior lighting

The passenger compartment is equipped with several types of lighting, e.g. general interior lighting, adjustable interior lighting and reading lighting.

Front roof lighting



Lighting and controls in the roof console.

1 General interior lighting

2 Reading lamp, left-hand side

3 Button for passenger compartment lighting and automatic passenger compartment lighting

4 Reading lamp, right-hand side

5 Ambience lights

Reading lighting

The reading lamps in the roof console are switched on or off by pressing each reading lamp gently and briefly. Brightness can be adjusted by pressing and holding the lamp.

Passenger compartment lighting

The floor lighting and general interior lighting are switched on or off with a short press on the button for passenger compartment lighting in the roof console.

Auto function for passenger compartment lighting

The automatic system is activated and deactivated by holding down the passenger compartment lighting button. When the button shines

- white, the automatic system is activated
- orange, the automatic system is deactivated.

When the automatic system is activated, the passenger compartment lighting is switched on as described below.

The passenger compartment lighting comes on when

- the car is unlocked
- a side door is opened.

The passenger compartment lighting goes off when

- the car is locked

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

- gear position D, R or N is selected
- a side door is closed
- a side door has remained open for approx. 2 minutes.

Rear roof lighting*

The rear area of the car has reading lighting, which is also used as general lighting.

Reading lamps above the rear seat.

In cars with a panorama roof*, the two lamp units are located on either side of the roof.

The reading lamps are switched on or off by gently and briefly pressing the lamp. Brightness can be adjusted by pressing and holding the lamp.

Glovebox lighting

Glovebox lighting is switched on and off respectively when the lid is opened or closed.

Sun visor mirror lighting*

The lighting for the mirror in the sun visor is switched on and off respectively when the cover is opened or closed.

Ground lighting*

The ground lighting is switched on or off when the corresponding door is opened or closed.

Lighting in the cargo area

The lighting in the cargo area is switched on or off when the tailgate is opened or closed.

Interior lighting

A number of the car's interior ambient light sources can be adapted in the centre display and also be finely adjusted using the thumbwheel in the instrument panel.

Lighting in storage compartments in doors

The lighting in the storage compartments in the doors comes on when the car is unlocked and goes off when it is locked. The brightness can be precisely adjusted using the thumbwheel in the instrument panel.

Lighting in the tunnel console's front cup holder*

The lighting in the front cup holders is switched on when the car is unlocked and is switched off when the car is locked. The brightness can be precisely adjusted using the thumbwheel in the instrument panel.

* Option/accessory.

5.2.2. Adjusting interior lighting

The lamps inside the car are switched on differently depending on usage mode. The interior lighting can be adjusted with a thumbwheel in the instrument panel, and certain light functions can also be adjusted via the centre display.

The thumbwheel on the instrument panel, to the left of the steering wheel, is used to adjust the brightness of the display lighting, controls lighting and interior lighting.

Adjusting interior lighting via the centre display

1. Press ⚙ in the centre display.
2. Then tap on **Controls**.
3. Adjust the required setting for interior lighting.

5.3. Adjusting light functions via the centre display

Light functions can be adjusted and activated via the centre display.

1. Press ⚙ in the centre display.
2. Then tap on **Controls**.
3. Adjust the required function for interior or exterior lighting.

5.4. Lighting control

The different lighting controls are used to control both exterior and interior lighting. The left-hand stalk switch activates and adjusts the exterior lighting. The interior brightness is adjusted using a thumbwheel on the instrument panel.

Exterior lighting

Rotating ring in the left-hand stalk switch.

When the car is started, the following functions are available for the rotating ring's different positions:

Position	Specification
0	Daytime running lights. Main beam flash can be used.
	Daytime running lights and position lamps. Position lamps when the car is parked.[1] Main beam flash can be used.
	Dipped beam and position lamps. Main beam can be activated. Main beam flash can be used.
AUTO	Front daytime running lights and rear position lamps in daylight. Dipped beam and position lamps in weak daylight or darkness, or when the front fog lamp* and/or rear fog lamp are activated. The Active main beam function can be activated. Main beam can be activated when dipped beam is switched on. Main beam flash can be used.
	Active main beam on/off.

Volvo recommends that AUTO mode is used when the vehicle is driven.

Warning

The car's lighting system is not able to determine when daylight is too weak or sufficiently strong, e.g. in fog and rain, in all situations.

The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the car is driven with a beam pattern suitable for the traffic situation and in accordance with applicable traffic regulations.

Thumbwheel in instrument panel

Thumbwheel (to left) for adjusting interior brightness.

[1] If the car is stationary but running, the rotating ring can be moved to position from another position to switch on only the position lamps instead of other lighting.

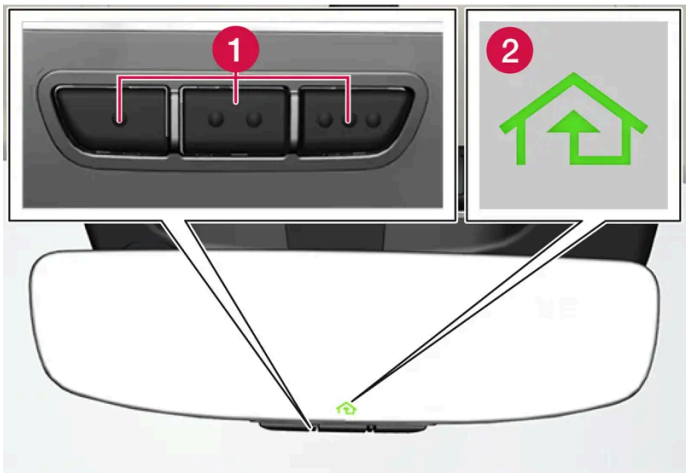
* Option/accessory.

6. Windows, glass and mirrors

6.1. Rearview mirrors

6.1.1. HomeLink® * [1]

HomeLink® [2] is a programmable remote control integrated into the car's electrical system.
It can control up to three different devices remotely, e.g. a garage door opener or alarm system, and hence replace the remote controls for these.



The figure is schematic - the version may vary.

1 Programmable buttons

2 Indicator lamp

HomeLink® is built into the interior rearview mirror and consists of three programmable buttons and one indicator lamp in the mirror glass.

> **Note**
>
> Save the original remote controls for future reprogramming (e.g. when changing to another car or for use in another vehicle).
>
> It is also recommended that the programming for the buttons should be deleted when the car is sold.

More information

Visit homelink.com or call 00 8000 466 354 65 (or premium charge number +49 6838 907 277) [3].

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

[2] HomeLink and the HomeLink house symbol are registered trademarks of Gentex Corporation.

[3] Note that the toll-free number may not be available depending on operator.

6.1.2. Rearview and door mirrors

The rearview mirrors and door mirrors can be used to give the driver better visibility to the rear.

Interior rearview mirror

The interior rearview mirror is equipped with HomeLink* and automatic dimming*.

The interior rearview mirror is adjusted by angling it manually.

Door mirrors

> **Warning**
>
> Both mirrors are bent to provide optimal vision. Objects may appear to be further away than they actually are.

The door mirror positions are adjusted with the joystick in the driver's door control panel.

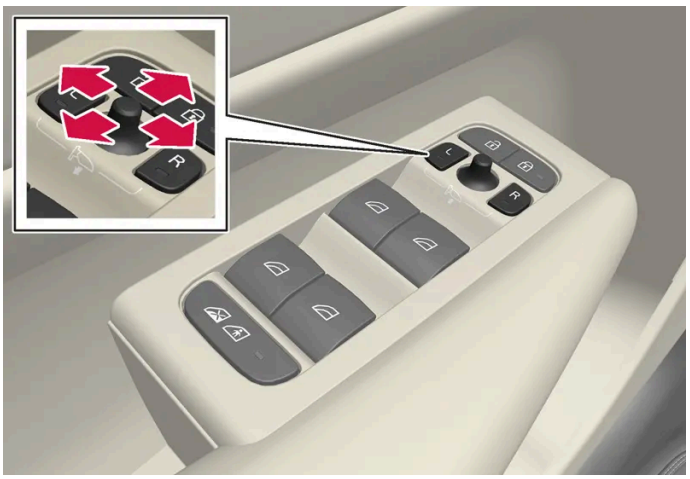
There are also a number of automatic settings that can be linked to the memory function buttons for the power seat*.

* Option/accessory.

6.1.3. Angling adjustment of the door mirrors

To ensure better visibility to the rear, the door mirrors need to be set to the preferences of the driver. There are a number of automatic settings that can also be linked to the memory function buttons for the power seat*.

Using controls for door mirrors



Controls for door mirrors.

The door mirror positions are adjusted with the joystick in the driver's door control panel. The car must be in usage mode Comfort or higher.

1. Press the L button for the left-hand door mirror or the R button for the right-hand door mirror. The light in the button illuminates.
2. Adjust the position with the joystick in the centre.
3. Press the L or R button again. The light should no longer be illuminated.

Folding in rearview mirrors electrically*

The mirrors can be retracted for parking/driving in narrow spaces.

1. Depress the L and R buttons simultaneously.
2. Release them after approximately 1 second. The mirrors automatically stop in the fully retracted position.

Fold out the mirrors by pressing down the L and R buttons simultaneously. The mirrors automatically stop in the extended position with the previous setting.

Resetting to neutral

Mirrors that have been moved out of position due to external influences, such as being frozen in the retracted position and manually unfolded, must be electrically reset to their original position for the electrical retraction/extension* to work properly.

1. Fold in the door mirrors by pressing down the L and R buttons simultaneously.

2 Fold them out again by pressing the L and R buttons simultaneously.

3 Repeat the above procedure as necessary.

The mirrors are reset to their original position and electrical retraction and extension works again.

Angling during parking [1]

A door mirror can be angled down for the driver to view the side of the road when parking, for example.

1 Engage reverse gear and press the L or R button.

Note that the button needs to be pressed twice. The button flashes when the door mirror is angled down.When reverse gear is engaged, the door mirror automatically returns to its original position.

Automatic angling during parking [1]

With this setting, the door mirrors are automatically angled down when reverse gear is selected. The folded position is preset and cannot be adjusted.

1 Press ⚙ in the centre display.

2 Press **Controls**.

3 Select the desired setting under **Exterior mirrors tilt when reversing**.

You can make the door mirrors return to their original positions by pressing the L or R button twice.

Automatic retraction when locking*

The door mirrors are automatically retracted/extended when the car is locked/unlocked using the key.

> **Note**
>
> If the mirrors are retracted manually using the L and R buttons, and the car is then locked, the mirrors will not be extended automatically when the car is unlocked, even if this setting has been made. Extending must be carried out manually using the L and R buttons.

* Option/accessory.

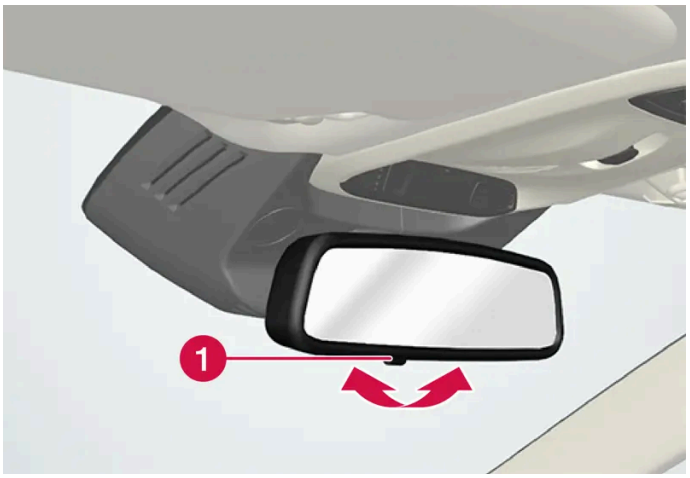
[1] Only in combination with power seat with memory buttons*.

6.1.4. Adjusting rearview mirror dimming

Bright light from behind could be reflected in the rearview mirrors and dazzle the driver. Use dimming when disturbed by light from behind.

Manual dimming

The interior rearview mirror can be dimmed with a control in the mirror's lower edge.



1 Control for manual dimming.

1 Use dimming by moving the control in towards the passenger compartment.

2 Return to normal mode by moving the control towards the windscreen.

In cars with controls for manual dimming, there is no option for automatic* dimming.

Automatic dimming*

If bright light comes from behind, the rearview mirrors automatically dim when it is dark outside or when the light is limited, for example when driving in tunnels.

It is possible to set whether automatic dimming should be active during driving or not via the centre display.

1 Press ⚙ in the centre display.

2 Press **Controls**.

3 Select the desired setting under **Mirror auto-dimming**.

Dimming is adjusted automatically using light sensors in the interior rearview mirror.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Note

If the sensors are obscured by e.g. parking permits, transponders, sun visors or objects in the seats or in the cargo area in such a way that light is prevented from reaching the sensors, then the dimming function of the interior rearview and door mirrors is reduced.

* Option/accessory.

6.1.5. Using a stored position for seat and door mirrors

If the positions for the power* seat and the door mirrors have been stored, they can be activated by using the memory buttons.

Using a stored setting

A stored setting can be used with the front door either open or closed:

Open front door

1 Depress one of the memory buttons 1 (2) or 2 (3) with a short press. Power seat and door mirrors move and then stop at the positions stored in the selected memory button.

1 Hold one of the memory buttons 1 (2) or 2 (3) depressed until seat and door mirrors stop in the positions that are stored in the selected memory button.

If the memory button is released, the movement of the seat and door mirrors will be stopped.

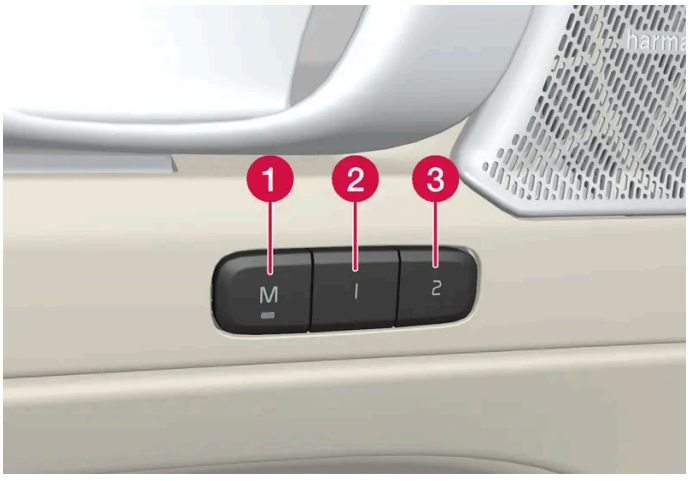
> **Warning**
>
> - Because the driver's seat can be adjusted with the ignition off, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.
> - Movement of the seat can be STOPPED at any time by pressing any button on the power seat control panel.
> - Do not adjust the seat while driving.
> - Make sure there is nothing under the seats when they are being adjusted.

* Option/accessory.

6.1.6. Storing a position for seat and door mirrors

You can store the position for power* seat and door mirrors in the memory buttons.

Store two different positions for the power seat* and the door mirrors using the memory buttons. The buttons are located on the inside of one of the front doors or both*.



1 Button **M** for storing settings.

2 Memory button.

3 Memory button.

Storing a position

1. Adjust seat and door mirrors to the desired position.
2. Press and hold the M button depressed. The light indicator in the button illuminates.
3. Within three seconds, press and hold the 1 or 2 button.

> When the position has been stored in the selected memory button, an acoustic signal can be heard and the light indicator in the M button extinguishes.

If none of the memory buttons is depressed within three seconds then the M button extinguishes and no storing takes place.

The seat or the door mirrors must be readjusted before a new memory can be set.

* Option/accessory.

6.1.7. Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove mist and ice from the windows and mirrors.

Activating and deactivating heated rear window and door mirrors from centre console

In the centre console is a physical button for rapid access to the heated rear window and door mirrors.

Physical button in the centre console.

1 Press the button.

> Heated rear window and door mirrors are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Activating and deactivating heated rear window and door mirrors from centre display

1 Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.

2

Tap on the button for the heated rear window and door mirrors.

> Heated rear window and door mirrors are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

6.1.8. Activating and deactivating automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove mist and ice from the windows and mirrors.

It is possible to set whether automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors should be activated/deactivated when the driver is in the car.[1] With automatic starting activated, electric heating will start when there is a risk of ice or mist on the window. The heating switches off automatically when the windscreen/window is sufficiently warm and the ice or misting is gone.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.
2. Press •••
3. Select the desired setting under **Auto rear defroster** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated rear window and door mirrors.

[1] Comfort usage mode

6.2. Windscreen and rear window

6.2.1. Damaged windscreen

It is important to repair a damaged windscreen as soon as possible. Minor damage due to stone chips, for example, can often be repaired without replacing the entire windscreen. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop if the windscreen is damaged.

Minor glass damage

If possible, repair the damage within 24 hours in order to avoid it getting worse. If there is minor damage to the windscreen, a windscreen stone chip sticker can protect the area from dust and dirt until it is repaired.

Major glass damage

In the event of major damage to the windscreen, the entire windscreen will need to be replaced.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not drive the car if there is major damage to the windscreen. The damage can quickly get worse, obscure driver vision, and prevent the car from being driven safely.

Replacing the windscreen

It is important that the new windscreen and its installation meet Volvo's specifications for safety and compatibility with the car's functions. Volvo recommends an authorised Volvo workshop for windscreen replacement.

6.2.2. Wiper blades and washer fluid

Together with the washer fluid, the wipers aim to improve visibility as well as headlamp pattern.

The washer nozzles are heated* automatically in cold weather to prevent the washer fluid from freezing.

Information indicating that the washer fluid needs topping up appears in the driver display when there is approx. 1 litre (1 qt) of washer fluid remaining.

* Option/accessory.

6.2.3. Using the rear window wiper and rear window washer

The rear window wiper and rear window washer are designed to clean the rear window. Washing/wiping is started and settings are changed by means of the right-hand steering wheel stalk switch.

Activating the rear window wiper and rear window washer

1 Select for intermittent wiping with the rear window wiper.

2 Select for continuous speed with the rear window wiper.

1 Move the right-hand steering wheel stalk switch forward to start rear window washing and wiping.

Automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing

Engaging reverse gear while the windscreen wipers are switched on initiates rear window wiping. The function stops when reverse gear is disengaged.

> **Note**
>
> In low outside temperature, the automatic rear window wiping when reversing is deactivated in order to avoid damage to the wiper arm.

6.2.4. Using the rain sensor

The rain sensor automatically starts the windscreen wipers based on how much water it detects on the windscreen. Rain sensor sensitivity can be adjusted with the thumbwheel on the right-hand stalk switch.

Right-hand stalk switch.

1 Rain sensor button

2 Thumbwheel sensitivity/frequency

When the rain sensor is activated, the rain sensor symbol is shown in the driver display.

The rain sensor is automatically on or off when the car is started depending on rain sensor mode set when the car was switched off.

Activating the rain sensor

To activate the rain sensor, the windscreen wipers must be in position 0, or in the position for single sweep.

Activate the rain sensor by pressing the rain sensor button .

Move the lever down to make the wipers move.

Turn the thumbwheel upward for higher sensitivity and downward for lower sensitivity. An extra sweep is made when the thumbwheel is turned upward.

Deactivating the rain sensor

Deactivate the rain sensor by pressing the rain sensor button or moving the stalk switch up to another wiper program.

The rain sensor is deactivated automatically when the car is switched off.

The rain sensor is deactivated automatically when wiper blades are set in service position. The rain sensor is reactivated when service mode has been deactivated.

> **Important**
>
> The windscreen wipers could start and be damaged in an automatic car wash. Switch off the rain sensor before washing the car. The symbol in the driver display extinguishes.

6.2.5. Using windscreen and headlamp washers

Windscreen and headlamp washers are designed to clean the windscreen and headlamps. Windscreen and headlamp washers are started using the right-hand stalk switch.

Starting windscreen and headlamp washers

Washing function, right-hand stalk switch.

1 Move the right-hand stalk switch toward the steering wheel to start the windscreen and headlamp washers.

> The windscreen wipers will make several more sweeps once the stalk switch has been released.

> **Important**
>
> Avoid activating the washer system when it is frozen or the washer reservoir is empty, otherwise there is a risk of damaging the pump.

Headlamp washing*

When activating windscreen washing, the headlamps are also cleaned automatically according to a defined interval, when the headlamps are switched on.

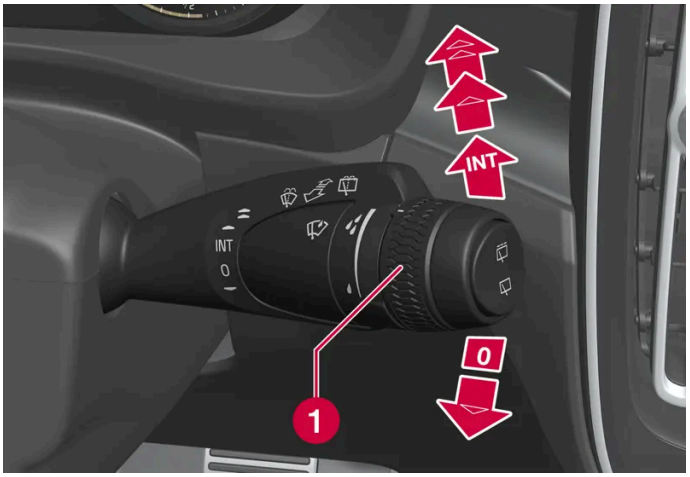
Reduced washing

If only approx. 1 litre (1 qt) of washer fluid remains in the reservoir and the message, Washer fluid **Refill washer fluid, level low**, together with the symbol, is shown in the driver display, then the supply of washer fluid to the headlamps is switched off. This is to prioritise cleaning the windscreen and the visibility through it. The headlamps are only washed if main or dipped beam is switched on.

* Option/accessory.

6.2.6. Using windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers are designed to clean the windscreen. Different settings for the windscreen wipers are set using the right-hand stalk switch.



Right-hand stalk switch.

1 The thumbwheel is used to set rain sensor sensitivity and wiper swipe frequency.

Single sweep

Lower the stalk switch and release to make one sweep.

Windscreen wipers off

0 Move the stalk switch to position 0 to switch off the windscreen wipers.

Intermittent wiping

INT Move the lever up to switch the wipers to intermittent wiping. Set the number of sweeps per time unit with the thumbwheel when intermittent wiping is selected.

Continuous wiping

Raise the stalk switch for the wipers to sweep at normal speed.

Raise the stalk switch further for the wipers to sweep at high speed.

> ! **Important**
>
> Before activating the wipers - ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen in, and that any snow or ice on the windscreen and rear window is scraped away.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

6.2.7. Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove mist and ice from the windows and mirrors.

Activating and deactivating heated rear window and door mirrors from centre console

In the centre console is a physical button for rapid access to the heated rear window and door mirrors.

Physical button in the centre console.

1 Press the button.

> Heated rear window and door mirrors are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Activating and deactivating heated rear window and door mirrors from centre display

1 Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.

2

Tap on the button for the heated rear window and door mirrors.

> Heated rear window and door mirrors are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

6.2.8. Activating and deactivating automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove mist and ice from the windows and mirrors.

It is possible to set whether automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors should be activated/deactivated when the driver is in the car.[1] With automatic starting activated, electric heating will start when there is a risk of ice or mist on the window. The heating switches off automatically when the windscreen/window is sufficiently warm and the ice or misting is gone.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.
2. Press •••
3. Select the desired setting under **Auto rear defroster** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated rear window and door mirrors.

[1] Comfort usage mode

6.2.9. Activating and deactivating the heated windscreen*

A heated windscreen is used to quickly remove mist and ice from the window.

Activating and deactivating heated windscreen from centre console

In the centre console is a physical button for rapid access to the heated windscreen.

Physical button in the centre console.

1 Press the button repeatedly in order to switch between the three levels:
   - Activated heated windscreen
   - Activated heated windscreen and max defroster
   - Deactivated.

> Heated windscreen and max defroster are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Activating and deactivating heated windscreen from centre display

1 Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.

2

Press the button for heated windscreen.

> Heated windscreen is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Note

A triangular area at the end of each side of the windscreen is not electrically heated, where de-icing may take longer.

Note

The heated windscreen may affect the performance of transponders and other communication equipment.

* Option/accessory.

6.2.10. Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated windscreen*

A heated windscreen is used to quickly remove mist and ice from the window.

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated windscreen should be activated/deactivated when the driver gets into the car.[1] With automatic start activated, the electric heating will start when there is a risk of ice or mist on the windscreen. The heating switches off automatically when the windscreen/window is sufficiently warm and the ice or misting is gone.

1 Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.

2 Press •••

3 Select the desired setting under **Auto front defroster** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated rear window and door mirrors.

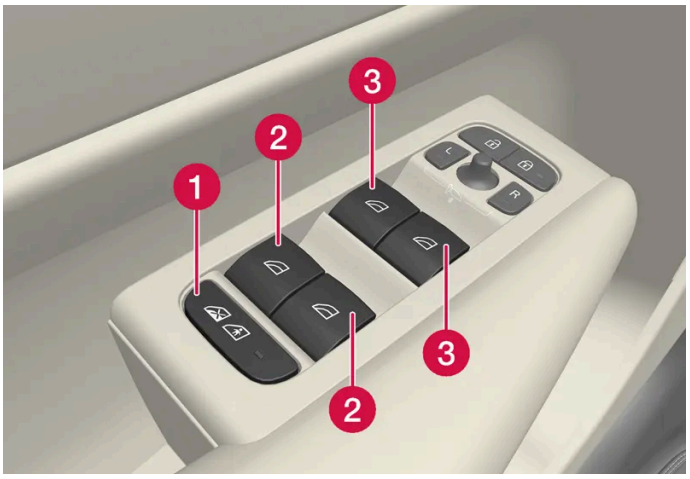
* Option/accessory.

[1] Comfort usage mode

6.3. Side windows and panoramic roof

6.3.1. Power windows

Each door has a control panel for the electrically-driven power windows. The driver's door has controls for operating all windows and also to activate the child safety locks.



Driver's door control panel.

1 Electric child safety locks* that deactivate the controls in the rear doors to prevent doors or windows from being opened from the inside.

2 Controls for rear windows.

3 Controls for front windows.

Warning

Children, other passengers or objects may be trapped by the moving parts.

- Always operate the windows with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the controls.
- Never leave children alone in the car.
- Remember to always switch off the power to the power windows by removing all the keys from the car when leaving the driver's seat. Note that if the car's software is not updated to version 1.10 [1] or later, the power windows can be reactivated either through the centre display or by occupying the driver's seat, even if the keys are not inside the car.
- Never put an object or part of the body through the windows, even if the car's electrical system is fully disconnected.

* Option/accessory.

[1] For more information on software updates, see https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support]

6.3.2. Operating power windows

Using the driver's door control panel, all power windows can be operated - using the control panels in the other doors operates the power window in the individual door.

The power windows are equipped with pinch protection. If any fault arises with the pinch protection, a reset sequence can be tested.

Warning

Children, other passengers or objects may be trapped by the moving parts.

- Always operate the windows with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the controls.
- Never leave children alone in the car.
- Remember to always switch off the power to the power windows by removing all the keys from the car when leaving the driver's seat. Note that if the car's software is not updated to version 1.10[1] or later, the power windows can be reactivated either through the centre display or by occupying the driver's seat, even if the keys are not inside the car.
- Never put an object or part of the body through the windows, even if the car's electrical system is fully disconnected.

Operating the power windows.

1. Operating without auto. Move one of the controls gently up or down. The power windows move up or down as long as the control is held in position.
2. Operating with auto. Move one of the controls up or down to the end position and release it. The window runs automatically to its end position.

The power windows can be operated as long as the seat sensor detects that the driver's seat is occupied. It is only possible to operate one control at a time.

It can also be operated using a key or keyless opening* with a door handle.

Warning

Check that children or other passengers are not at risk of crushing when all the windows are closed with a key or keyless opening* with a door handle.

Note

One way to reduce the pulsating wind noise when the rear windows are open is to also open the front windows slightly.

Note

The windows cannot be opened at speeds above approx. 180 km/h (approx. 112 mph), but they can be closed.

The driver always bears responsibility for following traffic regulations in force.

Note

It may not be possible to operate windows at low temperatures.

[1] For more information on software updates, see https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support]

* Option/accessory.

6.3.3. Panoramic roof*

The panoramic roof is divided into two glass sections. The front section can be opened vertically at the rear edge (ventilation position) or horizontally (open position). The rear section is fixed roof glass.
The panoramic roof has a wind deflector and a sun blind made of perforated fabric and located under the glass roof to provide extra protection from factors such as strong sunlight.

The panoramic roof and sun blind are operated with a control located in the roof.

In order that the panoramic roof and the sun blind can be operated, the car must be in Comfort or Drive usage mode.

Warning

Children, other passengers or objects may be trapped by the moving parts.

- Always operate the windows with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the controls.
- Never leave children alone in the car.
- Remember to always switch off the power to the power windows by removing all the keys from the car when leaving the driver's seat. Note that if the car's software is not updated to version 1.10[1] or later, the power windows can be reactivated either through the centre display or by occupying the driver's seat, even if the keys are not inside the car.
- Never put an object or part of the body through the windows, even if the car's electrical system is fully disconnected.

Important

- Do not open the panoramic roof when load carriers are fitted.
- Do not place any heavy objects on the panoramic roof.

Important

- Remove ice and snow before opening the panoramic roof. Take care not to scratch surfaces or damage strips.
- Do not operate the panoramic roof if it has frozen closed.

Wind deflector

The panoramic roof has a wind deflector that is raised when the panoramic roof is in the open position.

* Option/accessory.

[1] For more information on software updates, see https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support]

6.3.4. Automatic closing of the panoramic roof's* sun blind

With this function, the sun blind is closed automatically 15 minutes after the car has been locked if it is parked in hot weather. This is in order to lower the passenger compartment temperature and protect the car's upholstery from sun-fading.

The function is deactivated when the car is supplied from the factory and can be activated or deactivated in the centre display.

1 Tap on ⚙, **Controls**, **Auto-close sunroof cover** and select the desired setting.

> **Note**
>
> The sun blind is also closed when all windows are closed using the key or keyless opening* with a door handle.

* Option/accessory.

6.4. Windows, glass and mirrors

The car contains several different windows, glass panes and mirrors. Some of the windows in the car are laminated.

The windscreen has laminated glass, and laminated glass is available as an option for certain other glass areas[1]. Laminated glass is reinforced, which provides better protection against break-ins and improved sound insulation in the passenger compartment.

The panoramic roof* also has laminated glass.

The symbol is shown on the windows where the glass is laminated.[2]

[1] Applies to certain models.

* Option/accessory.

[2] Does not apply to the windscreen or panoramic roof* which are always laminated and thus do not have this symbol.

6.5. Pinch protection for windows and sun blinds

All power windows and sun blinds* have pinch protection which is deployed if they are blocked by any object while opening or closing.

In the event of blocking, the movement stops and then reverses automatically to approx. 50 mm (approx. 2 inches) from the blocked position (or to full ventilation position).

It is possible to force pinch protection when closing has been cancelled, e.g. when ice is formed, by continuing to press the control in one and the same direction.

If any fault arises with the pinch protection, a reset sequence can be tested.

> **Warning**
>
> If the 12V battery is disconnected, the automatic opening and closing function must be reset to work properly. A reset must take place for pinch protection to work.

* Option/accessory.

6.6. Reset sequence for pinch protection

If a problem occurs with the electrical functions for the electric windows, a reset sequence can be tested.

> **Warning**
>
> If the 12V battery is disconnected, the automatic opening and closing function must be reset to work properly. A reset must take place for pinch protection to work.

In the event of problems with the panoramic roof, contact a workshop[1].

Reset the power window

1. Start with the window in closed position.
2. Then operate the controls in the manual position 3 times upwards to closed position.

> The system is initialised automatically.

If problems persist, contact a workshop.

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

6.7. Activating and deactivating max defroster

Max defroster is used to quickly remove mist and ice from windows.

Max defroster deactivates auto-regulation of the climate and air recirculation, activates air conditioning and changes the fan level to **5** and the temperature to **HI**.

> **Note**
>
> Changing the fan level to **5** increases the noise level.

When max defroster is deactivated, the climate control system returns to the previous settings.

Activating and deactivating max defroster from centre console

There is a physical button in the centre console for quick access to max defroster.

For cars with heated windscreen*, the first press of the button activates the heating, and the next press activates max defroster. A third press deactivates both.

Physical button in the centre console.

Cars without heated windscreen:

1. Press the button.

> Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button lights up/goes off. The temperatures in the various climate zones are not synchronised while max defroster is activated.

Cars with heated windscreen:

Press the button repeatedly in order to switch between the three levels:

1
- Activated heated windscreen
- Activated heated windscreen and max defroster
- Deactivated.

> Heated windscreen and max defroster are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Note

Max defroster starts with a certain delay in order to avoid a short increase in fan level if the heated windscreen is deactivated by two quick presses of the button.

Activating and deactivating max defroster from centre display

1 Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.

2

Tap on the max defroster button.

> Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button lights up/goes off. The temperatures in the various climate zones are not synchronised while max defroster is activated.

* Option/accessory.

7. Seats and steering wheel

7.1. Front seat

7.1.1. Climate controls for front seat

7.1.1.1. Activating and deactivating heated front seat*

The seats can be heated in order to increase comfort for driver and passengers when it is cold.

1

Press the driver's side or passenger side seat button at the bottom of the centre display in order to open the control for seat heating.

2

Tap on the button for the heated seats repeatedly in order to switch the heating on/off and toggle between the three heating levels.

> The level changes and the button shows the set level.

Warning

Heated seats must not be used by people who find it difficult to perceive an increase in temperature due to a lack of sensation or who otherwise have problems operating the controls for the heated seats.

* Option/accessory.

7.1.1.2. Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated front seat*

The seats can be heated in order to increase comfort for driver and passengers when it is cold.

It is possible to set whether automatic starting of the heated seats should be activated/deactivated when the driver is in the car. [1] With automatic starting activated, electric heating will start when the ambient temperature is 10 °C(50 °F) or lower.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.
2. Press •••
3. Select the desired setting under **Auto driver seat heat** and **Auto passenger seat heat** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated driver's and passenger seat.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Comfort usage mode

7.1.1.3. Regulating fan level for front seat [1]

The fan can be set to several different automatically controlled fan speeds for the front seat.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.
2. Tap on the desired fan level; **OFF**, **1-5** or **Max**.

> The fan level is changed and the selected level illuminates.

Important

If the fan is fully switched off then the air conditioning is not engaged, which results in a risk of misting on the insides of the windows.

> **Note**
>
> The climate control system automatically adjusts the air flow within the selected fan level based on requirements. This means that the fan speed may change even though the fan level is the same.
>
> High fan level in the rear seat may cause increased sound volume in the front seat.

[1] For 2-zone climate, also rear seat.

7.1.1.4. Regulating temperature for front seat [1]

The temperature can be set to the desired number of degrees for the front seat's climate zones.

1. Tap on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display to open the control. [2]
2. Tap on the arrows to the side of the temperature to increase or decrease the temperature. There is also the option to tap directly on the arrows without first tapping on the temperature button, when the temperature is synchronised.

> The temperature changes and the button shows the set temperature.

> **Note**
>
> Heating or cooling cannot be hastened by selecting a higher or lower temperature than the actual desired temperature.

[1] For 2-zone climate, also rear seat.

[2] If temperature synchronisation has been deactivated, the current temperature is shown on both the driver's side and the passenger side.

7.1.1.5. Synchronising temperature

The temperature in the car's different climate zones is synchronised by default with the temperature set on the driver's side, but it is possible to deactivate synchronisation and set the temperature separately for the various climate zones.

Deactivating temperature synchronisation

1 Tap on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display to open the control.

2

Tap on the synchronisation button between the temperature controls.

> The temperature can now be set separately for the various climate zones. The temperature set is now displayed separately in the climate row on the driver's side and passenger side instead of just in the middle.

Synchronisation of the temperature can also be deactivated by changing the temperature on the passenger side.

Resetting synchronised temperature

1 Press the driver's side or passenger side temperature button at the bottom of the centre display in order to open the control.

2

Tap on the synchronisation button between the temperature controls.

> The temperature for all zones in the car is synchronised with the temperature set for the driver's side.

7.1.2. Memory function for front seat

7.1.2.1. Using a stored position for seat and door mirrors

If the positions for the power* seat and the door mirrors have been stored, they can be activated by using the memory buttons.

Using a stored setting

A stored setting can be used with the front door either open or closed:

Open front door

1 Depress one of the memory buttons 1 (2) or 2 (3) with a short press. Power seat and door mirrors move and then stop at the positions stored in the selected memory button.

Closed front door

1 Hold one of the memory buttons 1 (2) or 2 (3) depressed until seat and door mirrors stop in the positions that are stored in the selected memory button.

If the memory button is released, the movement of the seat and door mirrors will be stopped.

Warning

- Because the driver's seat can be adjusted with the ignition off, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.
- Movement of the seat can be STOPPED at any time by pressing any button on the power seat control panel.
- Do not adjust the seat while driving.
- Make sure there is nothing under the seats when they are being adjusted.

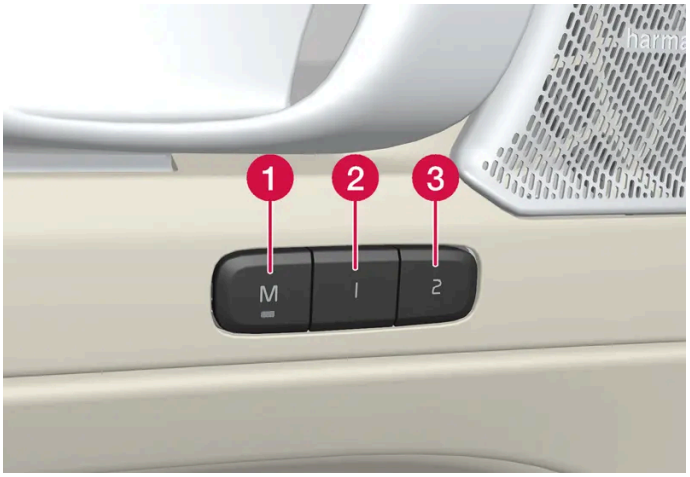
* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

7.1.2.2. Storing a position for seat and door mirrors

You can store the position for power* seat and door mirrors in the memory buttons.

Store two different positions for the power seat* and the door mirrors using the memory buttons. The buttons are located on the inside of one of the front doors or both*.



1 Button **M** for storing settings.

2 Memory button.

3 Memory button.

Storing a position

1. Adjust seat and door mirrors to the desired position.
2. Press and hold the M button depressed. The light indicator in the button illuminates.
3. Within three seconds, press and hold the 1 or 2 button.

> When the position has been stored in the selected memory button, an acoustic signal can be heard and the light indicator in the M button extinguishes.

If none of the memory buttons is depressed within three seconds then the M button extinguishes and no storing takes place.

The seat or the door mirrors must be readjusted before a new memory can be set.

* Option/accessory.

7.1.3. Front seats

The seat has a range of adjustment options to increase your comfort.

7.1.4. Power* front seat

The car's front seats have a range of setting options in order to enhance comfort. The power seat can be moved forwards/backwards and upwards/downwards. The front edge of the seat cushion can be raised/lowered and the backrest inclination can be changed. The lumbar support* can be adjusted upwards/downwards/forwards/backwards. Seat cushion length is adjusted manually*.

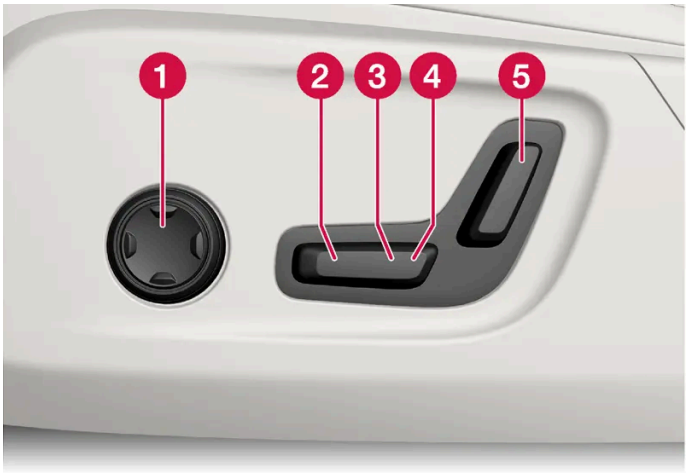
Seat adjustment can take place when the car is running and within a certain time after unlocking the door without the car running. Adjustment can also take place within a certain time after the car has been switched off.

> **Important**
>
> The power seats have overload protection that is triggered if any seat is blocked by an object. If this happens, remove the object and then move the seat again.

* Option/accessory.

7.1.5. Adjusting the power* front seat

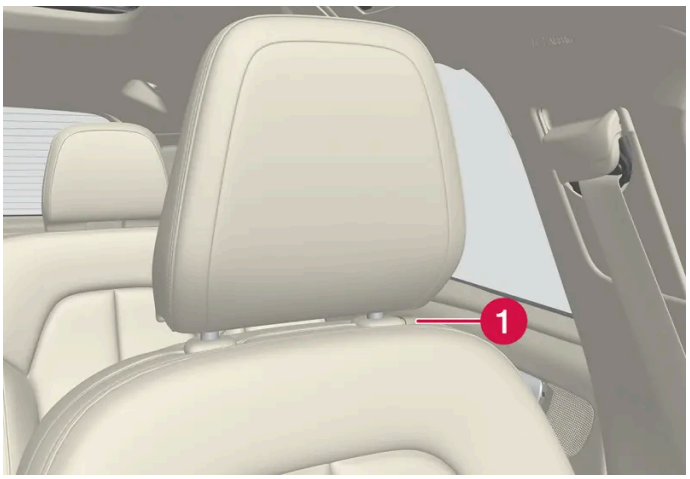
Set to desired sitting position using the control on the front seat's seating section. Activate the lumbar support* by pressing the four-way control.



1. Activate and use the lumber support control by pressing the four-way control up/down/forwards/back.
2. Raise/lower the seat cushion front edge by adjusting the control up/down.
3. Raise/lower the seat by means of adjusting the control up/down.
4. Move the seat forward/backward by adjusting the control forward/backward.
5. Change the backrest inclination by adjusting the control forward/backward.

Only one movement (forward/back/up/down) can be made at a time.

The backrests of the front seats cannot be lowered fully forward.



1 You can manually adjust the height of the head restraints by pressing in the button.

* Option/accessory.

7.1.6. Manual front seat

The car's front seats have a range of setting options in order to enhance comfort.

1 Adjust the seat forward/backward by lifting the handle and adjusting the distance to the steering wheel and pedals. Check that the seat is locked after the position has been adjusted.

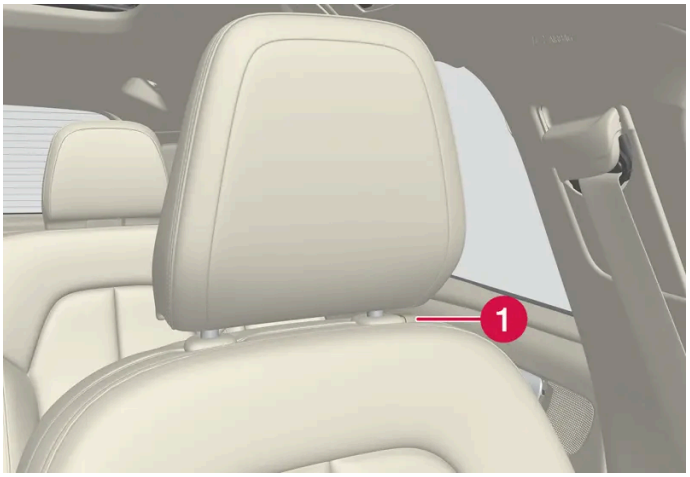
2 Change the length* of the seat cushion by pulling the lever up and moving the seat cushion forward/backward by hand.

3 Raise/lower the front edge of the seat cushion* by pumping up/down.[1]

4 Change the lumbar support* by pressing the button upward/downward/forward/back.

5 Raise/lower the seat by means of pumping the lever up/down.

6 Change the backrest inclination by turning the control knob.



1 You can manually adjust the height of the head restraints by pressing in the button.

> **Warning**
>
> Adjust the position of the driver's seat before setting off, never while driving. Make sure that the seat is in locked position in order to avoid personal injury in the event of heavy braking or an accident.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only applies to the driver's seat.

7.1.7. Adjusting* the length of the seat cushion in the front seat

For increased comfort, you can adjust the length of the seat cushion.

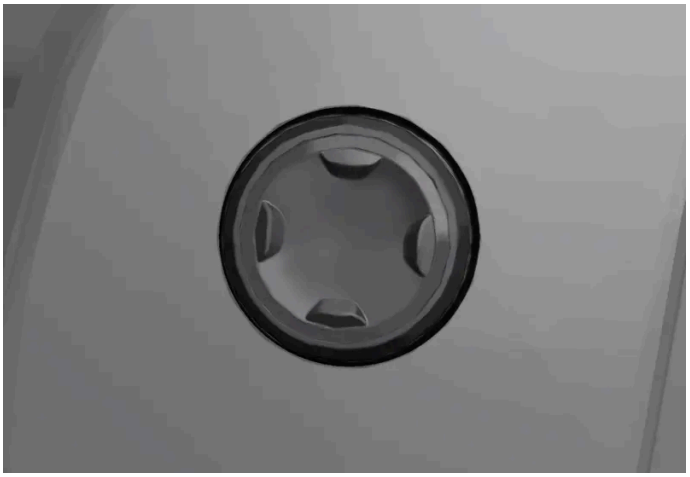
Control for seat cushion adjustment.

1. Grip the handle 1 on the front of the seat and pull upwards.
2. Adjust the length of the seat cushion.
3. Release the handle and make sure that the seat cushion has reached the correct position.

* Option/accessory.

7.1.8. Adjusting the lumbar support* in the front seat

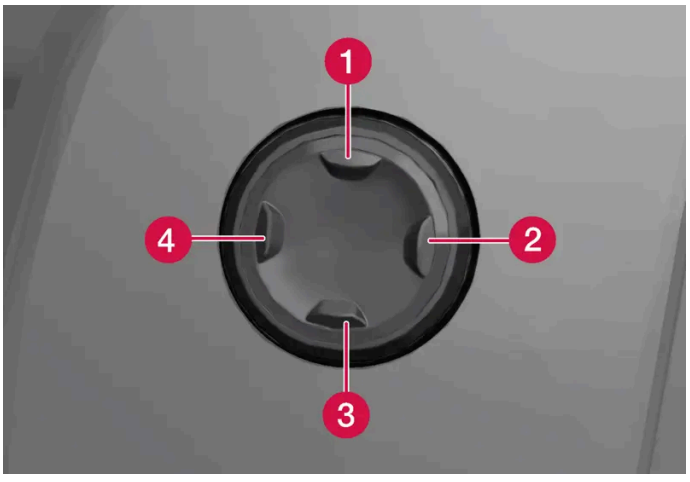
The lumbar support is adjusted using a control on the side of the seat cushion.



Four-way button, located on the side of the seat's seating section.

The four-way lumbar support is adjusted using the four-way button (the round one) which is located on the side of the seat's seating section. The lumbar support can be adjusted forwards/backwards and upwards/downwards.

Adjusting the lumbar support



The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

- Press the four-way button up 1/down 3 to move the lumbar support upwards/downwards.
- Press the front section 4 of the four-way button to increase lumbar support.
- Press the rear section 2 of the four-way button to decrease lumbar support.

* Option/accessory.

7.2. Rear seat

7.2.1. Climate controls for rear seat

7.2.1.1. Activating and deactivating heated rear seat*

The seats can be heated in order to increase comfort for the passengers when it is cold.

With 2-zone climate:

1

Buttons for heated seats at the rear of the tunnel console.

Tap repeatedly on the physical buttons for the heated seats on the left and right-hand side at the rear of the tunnel console in order to switch the seat heating on/off and toggle between the three heating levels.

> The level changes and the LEDs in the button show the set level.

> **Warning**
>
> Heated seats must not be used by people who find it difficult to perceive an increase in temperature due to a lack of sensation or who otherwise have problems operating the controls for the heated seats.

* Option/accessory.

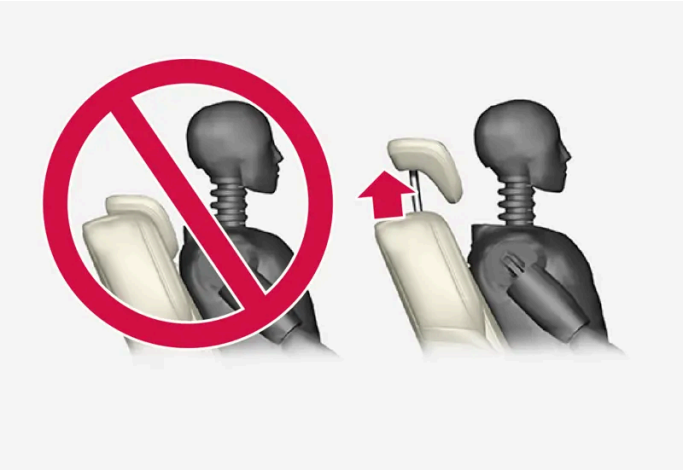
7.2.2. Rear seat

The car has five seats. The rear seat is divided into two folding parts, with one or two passenger seats respectively.

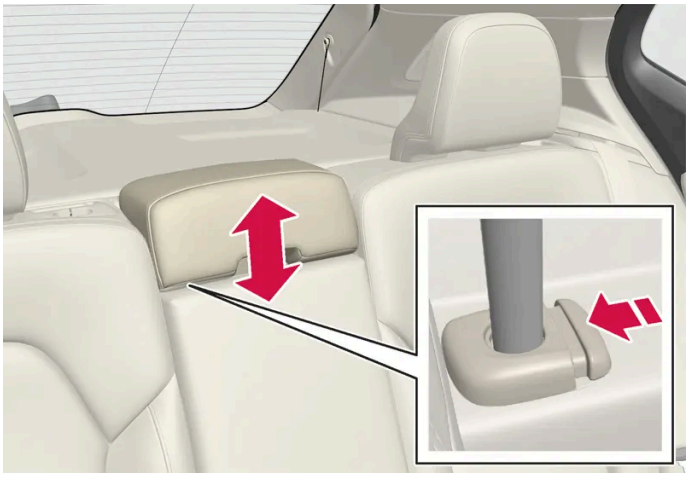
7.2.3. Adjusting the head restraints in the rear seat

Adjust the centre seat head restraint according to the height of the passenger. Fold down the outer seat head restraints* to improve rearward visibility.

Adjust the head restraint for the centre seat



The centre seat's head restraint must be adjusted according to the passenger's height so that, if possible, the whole of the back of the head is covered. Slide it up manually as required.



To lower the head restraint, the button (see illustration) must be depressed while the restraint is carefully moved down.

> **Warning**
>
> The centre seat head restraint must be in its lowest position when the centre seat is not used. When the centre seat is used, the head restraint must be correctly adjusted to the height of the passenger so that it covers the whole of the back of the head if possible.

Fold down the rear seat's outer head restraints via the centre display*

The outer head restraints can be retracted via the centre display. Lowering the head restraint is possible when the car is in Passive usage mode.

1. Press ⚙ in the centre display.
2. Press **Controls**.
3. Select the desired setting under **Headrest fold**.

Move the head restraint back manually until a click is heard.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not lower the outer head restraints if there are passengers in any of the outer rear seats.

> **Warning**
>
> The head restraint must be in locked position after being folded up.

* Option/accessory.

7.2.4. Lowering the backrests in the rear seat

The rear seat's backrest is divided into two parts. The two parts can be folded forward individually.

> **Warning**
>
> - Adjust the seat and fix it before driving away. Take care when adjusting the seat. Uncontrolled or careless adjustment can lead to trapping injuries.
> - When loading long objects, they must always be strapped in securely to avoid injury and damage during sudden braking.
> - Always switch off the car and apply the parking brake when loading and unloading the car.
> - For cars with automatic gearbox, set the gear selector in P to prevent it from being moved by mistake.

> **Important**
>
> There must be no objects on the rear seat when the backrest is to be folded down. The seat belts must not be connected either. Otherwise there is a risk of damaging the rear seat upholstery.

Important

The armrest* for the centre seat must be raised before lowering the seat.

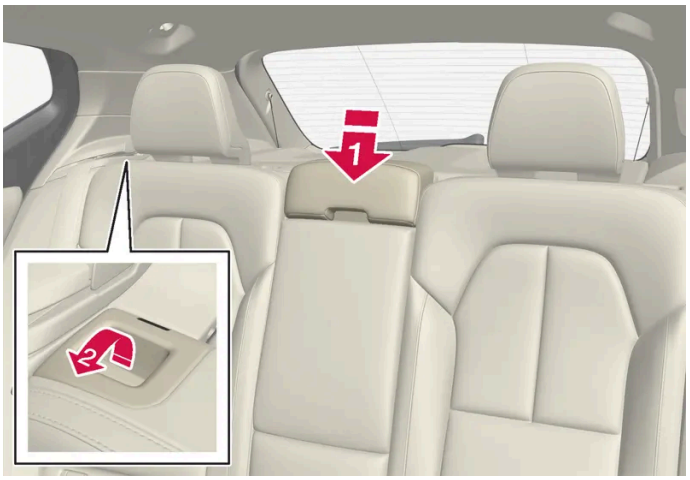
The through-load hatch* in the rear seat must be closed before lowering.

Note

The front seats may need to be pushed forwards, and the backrests adjusted upwards, in order that the rear backrests can be fully folded forward.

Lowering the backrest

To facilitate folding of the rear seat, the car must be stationary and at least one rear door open.



Ensure that there are no occupants or objects in the rear seat.

1 1
Lower the centre seat's head restraint manually.

2 2
Pull the handles located on the car's left and right-hand backrests forwards to fold down the left and right-hand part of the rear seat respectively.

3 The backrest disengages from the lock and needs to be lowered manually to the horizontal position.

Raising the backrest

Raising the backrest to upright position is carried out manually:

1 Move the backrest up/back.

2 Press the backrest until the lock engages.

3 Raise the head restraints manually.

4 If necessary, raise the centre seat's head restraint.

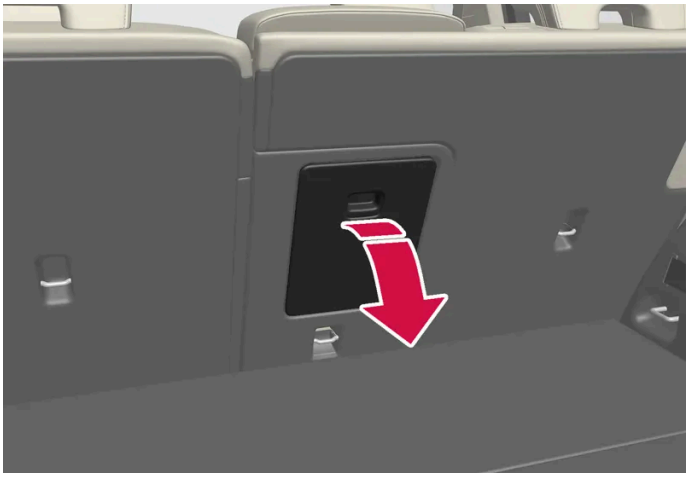
> **Warning**
>
> When the backrest has been raised, the red indicator should no longer be showing. If it is still showing then the backrest is not locked in place.

> **Warning**
>
> Check that the backrests and head restraints in the rear seat are locked properly after being folded up.
>
> The head restraints of the outer seats must always be raised when there are passengers on any of the rear seats.

* Option/accessory.

7.2.5. Through-load hatch in the rear seat*

The hatch in the rear seat's backrest can be opened to transport long narrow items, e.g. skis.



1. In the cargo area, grip the hatch's handle and fold down the hatch.
2. Fold forward the armrest in the rear seat.
3. Adjust the centre seat's head restraint upwards so that the steel tubes do not block the hatch opening.

* Option/accessory.

7.3. Steering wheel

7.3.1. Speed-dependent steering force

Speed related power steering causes the steering wheel force to increase with the speed of the car so as to be able to give the driver enhanced sensitivity. On motorways the steering is firmer. When parking and at low speed steering is light and requires less effort.

Reduced power

In rare situations, the power steering may need to work at reduced power, and turning the steering wheel may then seem slightly heavier. This may occur when the power steering becomes too hot and it then needs temporary cooling. It may also occur if the power supply is disrupted.

In the event of reduced power, the message **Power steering assistance Temporarily reduced** is shown, as well as this symbol in the driver display.

While the power steering is working at reduced power, the driver support functions and steering assistance systems are not available.

> **Warning**
>
> If the temperature increases too much, the servo may be forced to switch off completely. In such a situation, the driver display shows the **Stop safely Power steering failure** message, combined with a symbol.

Change the steering force level

1. Press ⚙ in the centre display.
2. Then tap on **Driving**.
3. Activating or deactivating **Steering feel firm**.

Steering wheel resistance selection can only be accessed if the car is stationary or is moving at low speed and in a straight line.

7.3.2. Steering wheel controls and horn

The steering wheel houses the horn and controls for e.g. the driver support systems and voice control.

Keypads in the steering wheel.

1 Controls for driver support systems.[1]

2 Controls for voice control and menu, message and phone handling.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Horn

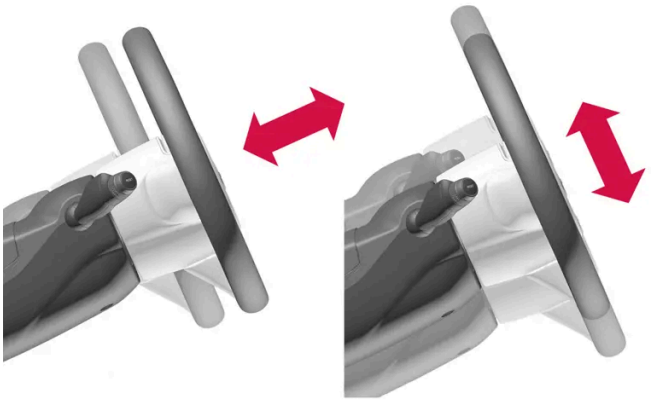
The horn is located in the centre of the steering wheel.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Speed Limiter, Cruise Control, Adaptive Cruise Control*, Distance Warning* and Pilot Assist.

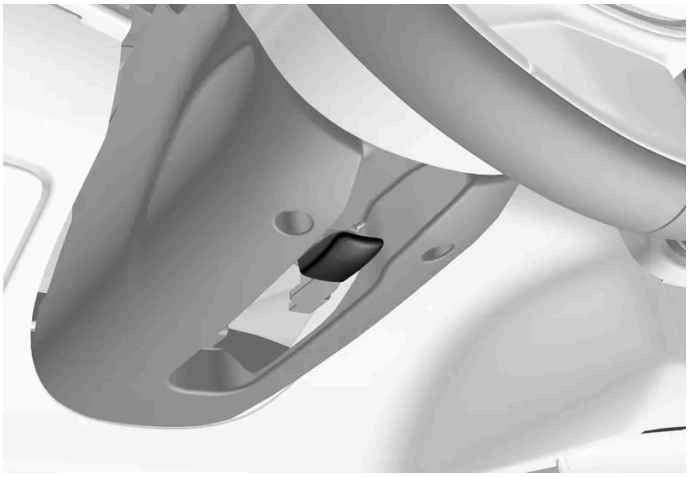
7.3.3. Adjusting the steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted in different positions.



The steering wheel can be adjusted for height and for depth.

> **Warning**
>
> Adjust and secure the steering wheel before driving away. The steering wheel must never be adjusted while driving.



Lever for steering wheel adjustment.

1. Push the lever forwards to release the steering wheel.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the position that suits you.
3. Pull the lever back to fix the steering wheel in place. If the lever is stiff, press or raise the steering wheel slightly at the same time as you move the lever back.

7.3.4. Steering lock

Steering lock makes it difficult to steer the car if it is stolen, for example. A mechanical noise can be perceived when the steering lock is locked or unlocked.

Activating the steering lock

The steering lock is activated when the car is locked from the outside and the car is switched off. If the car is left unlocked then the steering lock will be activated automatically after a while.

Deactivating the steering lock

The steering lock is deactivated when the car is unlocked from outside. If the car is not locked, the steering wheel lock will be deactivated as long as the key is in the passenger compartment and the car is started.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

7.3.5. Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel*

The steering wheel can be heated in order to increase comfort for the driver when it is cold.

1

Tap on the driver's side seat button at the bottom of the centre display to display the control for steering wheel heating.

2

Tap on the button for the heated steering wheel repeatedly in order to switch the heating on/off and toggle between the three heating levels.

> The level changes and the button shows the set level.

* Option/accessory.

7.3.6. Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated steering wheel*

The steering wheel can be heated in order to increase comfort for the driver when it is cold.

It is possible to set whether automatic starting of the heated steering wheel should be activated/deactivated when the driver is in the car.[1] With automatic starting activated, electric heating will start when the ambient temperature is low.

1 Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.

2 Press •••

3 Select the desired setting under **Auto start steering wheel heat** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated steering wheel.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Comfort usage mode

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

8. Climate control

8.1. Climate system controls

8.1.1. Climate controls for passenger compartment

8.1.1.1. Activating auto climate control

With auto climate control activated, multiple climate functions are controlled automatically.

1 Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.

2 Give a short or long press on **AUTO**.

- Short press - air recirculation, air conditioning and air distribution are controlled automatically.
- Long press - air recirculation, air conditioning and air distribution are controlled automatically, temperature and fan speed are changed to standard settings: 22 °C (72 °F) and level **3**.

> Auto-regulation of the climate is activated and the button illuminates.

Note

Temperature and fan speed can be changed without deactivating the automatically-regulated climate control system. The automatically-regulated climate control system is deactivated when the air distribution is changed manually or when maximum defroster is activated.

8.1.1.2. Regulating fan level for front seat [1]

The fan can be set to several different automatically controlled fan speeds for the front seat.

1 Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.

2 Tap on the desired fan level; **OFF**, **1-5** or **Max**.

> The fan level is changed and the selected level illuminates.

> **Important**
>
> If the fan is fully switched off then the air conditioning is not engaged, which results in a risk of misting on the insides of the windows.

> **Note**
>
> The climate control system automatically adjusts the air flow within the selected fan level based on requirements. This means that the fan speed may change even though the fan level is the same.
>
> High fan level in the rear seat may cause increased sound volume in the front seat.

[1] For 2-zone climate, also rear seat.

8.1.1.3. Activating and deactivating air conditioning

The air conditioning cools and dehumidifies incoming air as required.

When the air conditioning is activated, the climate control system automatically controls starting and switching off as required.

1 Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.

2

Tap on the air conditioning button.

> Air conditioning is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Note

Close all side windows and the panoramic roof* so that the air conditioning should work as well as possible.

Note

It is not possible to activate the air conditioning when the fan control is in **Off** position.

* Option/accessory.

8.1.1.4. Activating and deactivating air recirculation

Air recirculation shuts out bad air, exhaust gases, etc. from outside the car by the climate control system reusing the air in the passenger compartment.

1 Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.

2

Tap on the air recirculation button.

> Air recirculation is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Important

If the air in the car is recirculated for too long then there is a risk of misting on the insides of the windows.

Note

It is not possible to activate air recirculation when max defroster is activated.

Note

If the air quality sensor detects that the outside air is contaminated, the air intake is closed and air recirculation is activated automatically.

8.1.1.5. Activating and deactivating time setting for air recirculation

Air recirculation shuts out bad air, exhaust gases, etc. from outside the car by the climate control system reusing the air in the passenger compartment.

It is possible set whether the air recirculation timer should be activated/deactivated. When the timer is activated, air recirculation is automatically switched off after 20 minutes.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.
2. Press •••
3. Select the desired setting under **Recirculation timer** to activate/deactivate the timer for air recirculation.

8.1.1.6. Regulating temperature for front seat [1]

The temperature can be set to the desired number of degrees for the front seat's climate zones.

1. Tap on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display to open the control. [2]
2. Tap on the arrows to the side of the temperature to increase or decrease the temperature. There is also the option to tap directly on the arrows without first tapping on the temperature button, when the temperature is synchronised.

> The temperature changes and the button shows the set temperature.

Note

Heating or cooling cannot be hastened by selecting a higher or lower temperature than the actual desired temperature.

[1] For 2-zone climate, also rear seat.

[2] If temperature synchronisation has been deactivated, the current temperature is shown on both the driver's side and the passenger side.

8.1.1.7. Synchronising temperature

The temperature in the car's different climate zones is synchronised by default with the temperature set on the driver's side, but it is possible to deactivate synchronisation and set the temperature separately for the various climate zones.

Deactivating temperature synchronisation

1 Tap on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display to open the control.

2

Tap on the synchronisation button between the temperature controls.

> The temperature can now be set separately for the various climate zones. The temperature set is now displayed separately in the climate row on the driver's side and passenger side instead of just in the middle.

Synchronisation of the temperature can also be deactivated by changing the temperature on the passenger side.

Resetting synchronised temperature

1 Press the driver's side or passenger side temperature button at the bottom of the centre display in order to open the control.

2

Tap on the synchronisation button between the temperature controls.

> The temperature for all zones in the car is synchronised with the temperature set for the driver's side.

8.1.1.8. Changing air distribution

The air distribution can be changed manually if required.

1 Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature symbol at the bottom centre of the centre display.

2 The air distribution buttons in the climate view are located in the centre around the **AUTO** button, from the top and down:

- Air distribution - windscreen defroster vents
- Air distribution - air vents in instrument panel and centre console
- Air distribution - air vents in the floor

Press one or more of the air distribution buttons in order to open/close the corresponding air flow.

> The air distribution is changed and the buttons illuminate/extinguish.
If all air distribution buttons are deselected in manual mode, the climate control system returns to automatically regulated climate control.

8.1.2. Climate controls for seat and steering wheel

8.1.2.1. Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel*

The steering wheel can be heated in order to increase comfort for the driver when it is cold.

1

Tap on the driver's side seat button at the bottom of the centre display to display the control for steering wheel heating.

2

Tap on the button for the heated steering wheel repeatedly in order to switch the heating on/off and toggle between the three heating levels.

> The level changes and the button shows the set level.

* Option/accessory.

8.1.2.2. Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated steering wheel*

The steering wheel can be heated in order to increase comfort for the driver when it is cold.

It is possible to set whether automatic starting of the heated steering wheel should be activated/deactivated when the driver is in the car.[1] With automatic starting activated, electric heating will start when the ambient temperature is low.

1 Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.

2 Press •••

3 Select the desired setting under **Auto start steering wheel heat** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated steering wheel.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Comfort usage mode

8.1.2.3. Activating and deactivating heated rear seat*

The seats can be heated in order to increase comfort for the passengers when it is cold.

With 2-zone climate:

1

Buttons for heated seats at the rear of the tunnel console.

Tap repeatedly on the physical buttons for the heated seats on the left and right-hand side at the rear of the tunnel console in order to switch the seat heating on/off and toggle between the three heating levels.

> The level changes and the LEDs in the button show the set level.

Warning

Heated seats must not be used by people who find it difficult to perceive an increase in temperature due to a lack of sensation or who otherwise have problems operating the controls for the heated seats.

* Option/accessory.

8.1.2.4. Activating and deactivating heated front seat*

The seats can be heated in order to increase comfort for driver and passengers when it is cold.

1

Press the driver's side or passenger side seat button at the bottom of the centre display in order to open the control for seat heating.

2

Tap on the button for the heated seats repeatedly in order to switch the heating on/off and toggle between the three heating levels.

> The level changes and the button shows the set level.

> **Warning**
>
> Heated seats must not be used by people who find it difficult to perceive an increase in temperature due to a lack of sensation or who otherwise have problems operating the controls for the heated seats.

* Option/accessory.

8.1.2.5. Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated front seat*

The seats can be heated in order to increase comfort for driver and passengers when it is cold.

It is possible to set whether automatic starting of the heated seats should be activated/deactivated when the driver is in the car. [1] With automatic starting activated, electric heating will start when the ambient temperature is 10 °C(50 °F) or lower.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.
2. Press •••
3. Select the desired setting under **Auto driver seat heat** and **Auto passenger seat heat** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated driver's and passenger seat.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Comfort usage mode

8.1.3. Climate controls for windows and mirrors

8.1.3.1. Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove mist and ice from the windows and mirrors.

Activating and deactivating heated rear window and door mirrors from centre console

In the centre console is a physical button for rapid access to the heated rear window and door mirrors.

Physical button in the centre console.

1 Press the button.

> Heated rear window and door mirrors are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Activating and deactivating heated rear window and door mirrors from centre display

1 Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.

2

Tap on the button for the heated rear window and door mirrors.

> Heated rear window and door mirrors are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

8.1.3.2. Activating and deactivating automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove mist and ice from the windows and mirrors.

It is possible to set whether automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors should be activated/deactivated when the driver is in the car.[1] With automatic starting activated, electric heating will start when there is a risk of ice or mist on the window. The heating switches off automatically when the windscreen/window is sufficiently warm and the ice or misting is gone.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.
2. Press •••
3. Select the desired setting under **Auto rear defroster** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated rear window and door mirrors.

[1] Comfort usage mode

8.1.3.3. Activating and deactivating the heated windscreen*

A heated windscreen is used to quickly remove mist and ice from the window.

Activating and deactivating heated windscreen from centre console

In the centre console is a physical button for rapid access to the heated windscreen.

Physical button in the centre console.

1 Press the button repeatedly in order to switch between the three levels:
   - Activated heated windscreen
   - Activated heated windscreen and max defroster
   - Deactivated.

> Heated windscreen and max defroster are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Activating and deactivating heated windscreen from centre display

1 Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.

2

Press the button for heated windscreen.

> Heated windscreen is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Note

A triangular area at the end of each side of the windscreen is not electrically heated, where de-icing may take longer.

Note

The heated windscreen may affect the performance of transponders and other communication equipment.

* Option/accessory.

8.1.3.4. Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated windscreen*

A heated windscreen is used to quickly remove mist and ice from the window.

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated windscreen should be activated/deactivated when the driver gets into the car.[1] With automatic start activated, the electric heating will start when there is a risk of ice or mist on the windscreen. The heating switches off automatically when the windscreen/window is sufficiently warm and the ice or misting is gone.

1 Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.

2 Press •••

3 Select the desired setting under **Auto front defroster** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated rear window and door mirrors.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Comfort usage mode

8.1.3.5. Activating and deactivating max defroster

Max defroster is used to quickly remove mist and ice from windows.

Max defroster deactivates auto-regulation of the climate and air recirculation, activates air conditioning and changes the fan level to **5** and the temperature to **HI**.

> **Note**
>
> Changing the fan level to **5** increases the noise level.

When max defroster is deactivated, the climate control system returns to the previous settings.

Activating and deactivating max defroster from centre console

There is a physical button in the centre console for quick access to max defroster.

For cars with heated windscreen*, the first press of the button activates the heating, and the next press activates max defroster. A third press deactivates both.

Physical button in the centre console.

Cars without heated windscreen:

1 Press the button.

> Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button lights up/goes off. The temperatures in the various climate zones are not synchronised while max defroster is activated.

Cars with heated windscreen:

1 Press the button repeatedly in order to switch between the three levels:
   - Activated heated windscreen
   - Activated heated windscreen and max defroster
   - Deactivated.

> Heated windscreen and max defroster are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Note

Max defroster starts with a certain delay in order to avoid a short increase in fan level if the heated windscreen is deactivated by two quick presses of the button.

Activating and deactivating max defroster from centre display

1 Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.

2

Tap on the max defroster button.

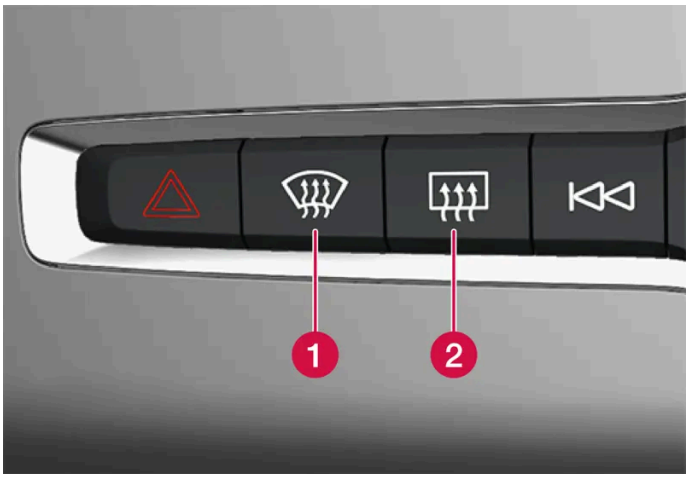
> Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button lights up/goes off. The temperatures in the various climate zones are not synchronised while max defroster is activated.

* Option/accessory.

8.1.4. Climate controls

The climate control system's functions are controlled from physical buttons in the centre console, the centre display and the climate controls at the rear of the tunnel console*.

Physical buttons in centre console

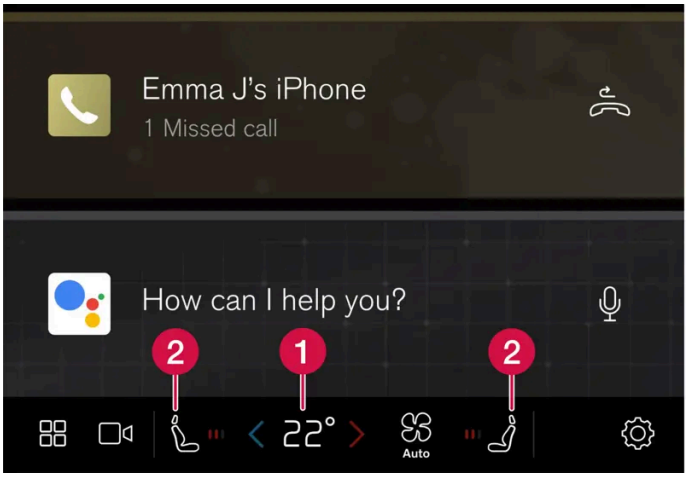


1 Button for heated windscreen* and max defroster.

2 Button for heated rear window and door mirrors.

Climate buttons in the centre display

The most common climate functions are always available at the bottom of the centre display.



1 Temperature controls for driver and passenger side.[1]

2 Controls for heated* driver and front passenger seats, as well as heated steering wheel*.

Climate view in centre display

Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display or on the fan symbol.

Main climate

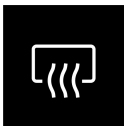
Other main climate functions can also be controlled under **Main climate**, in addition to the climate functions always available in the centre display.

Controls for max defroster.

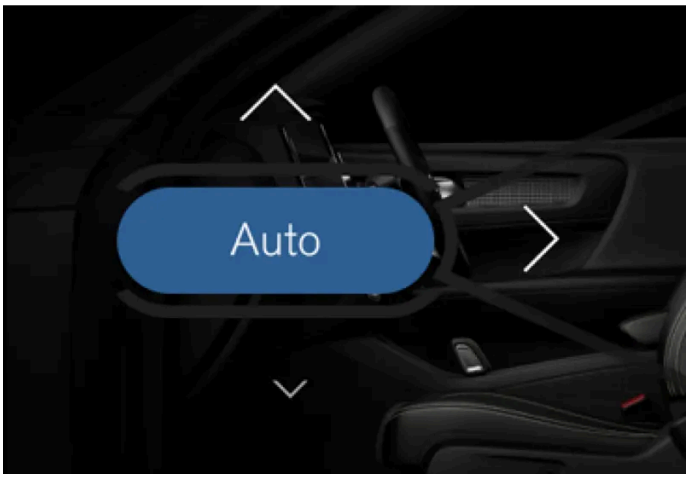
Controls for heated windscreen.

Controls for air conditioning.

Controls for air recirculation.



Controls for heated rear window and door mirrors.



Button for auto regulating of climate and arrows for air distribution.

Parking climate

The car's parking climate can be regulated under **Parking**.

Settings

Further climatization settings can be defined under •••.

Physical buttons at the rear on the tunnel console*

There are physical buttons at the rear on the tunnel console in order to regulate the rear seat heating.

* Option/accessory.

[1] If temperature synchronisation has been deactivated, the current temperature is shown on both the driver's side and the passenger side.

8.2. Air distribution

8.2.1. Activating and deactivating air recirculation

Air recirculation shuts out bad air, exhaust gases, etc. from outside the car by the climate control system reusing the air in the passenger compartment.

1 Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.

2

Tap on the air recirculation button.

> Air recirculation is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Important

If the air in the car is recirculated for too long then there is a risk of misting on the insides of the windows.

Note

It is not possible to activate air recirculation when max defroster is activated.

Note

If the air quality sensor detects that the outside air is contaminated, the air intake is closed and air recirculation is activated automatically.

8.2.2. Activating and deactivating time setting for air recirculation

Air recirculation shuts out bad air, exhaust gases, etc. from outside the car by the climate control system reusing the air in the passenger compartment.

It is possible set whether the air recirculation timer should be activated/deactivated. When the timer is activated, air recirculation is automatically switched off after 20 minutes.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.
2. Press •••
3. Select the desired setting under **Recirculation timer** to activate/deactivate the timer for air recirculation.

8.2.3. Activating and deactivating max defroster

Max defroster is used to quickly remove mist and ice from windows.

Max defroster deactivates auto-regulation of the climate and air recirculation, activates air conditioning and changes the fan level to **5** and the temperature to **HI**.

> **Note**
>
> Changing the fan level to **5** increases the noise level.

When max defroster is deactivated, the climate control system returns to the previous settings.

Activating and deactivating max defroster from centre console

There is a physical button in the centre console for quick access to max defroster.

For cars with heated windscreen*, the first press of the button activates the heating, and the next press activates max defroster. A third press deactivates both.

Physical button in the centre console.

Cars without heated windscreen:

1 Press the button.

> Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button lights up/goes off. The temperatures in the various climate zones are not synchronised while max defroster is activated.

Cars with heated windscreen:

1 Press the button repeatedly in order to switch between the three levels:
   - Activated heated windscreen
   - Activated heated windscreen and max defroster
   - Deactivated.

> Heated windscreen and max defroster are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Note

Max defroster starts with a certain delay in order to avoid a short increase in fan level if the heated windscreen is deactivated by two quick presses of the button.

Activating and deactivating max defroster from centre display

1 Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.

2

Tap on the max defroster button.

> Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button lights up/goes off. The temperatures in the various climate zones are not synchronised while max defroster is activated.

* Option/accessory.

8.2.4. Air distribution

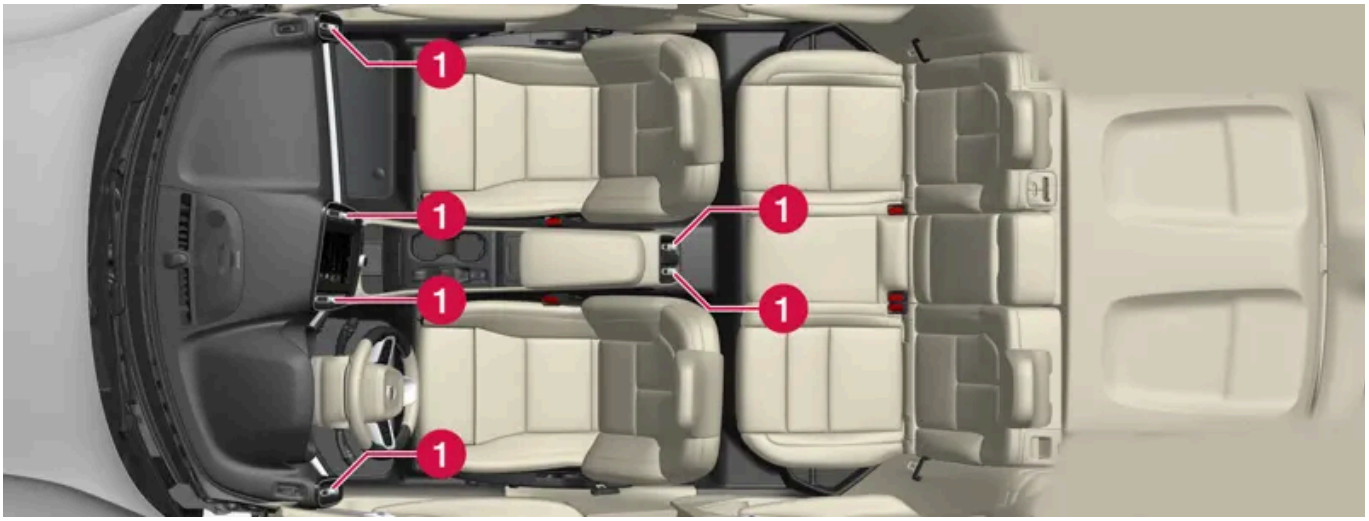
The climate control system distributes the incoming air via a number of different vents in the passenger compartment.

Automatic and manual air distribution

With auto-regulated climate running the air distribution takes place automatically. If necessary, the air distribution can be controlled manually.

Adjustable air vents

Some of the air vents in the car are adjustable, which means that you can open/close the vent to aim the air flow.



Location of adjustable air vents in the passenger compartment.

1 Four on the instrument panel and two at the rear of the tunnel console.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Note

At low ambient temperatures, no air is distributed from the adjustable air vents on the rear of the tunnel console.

8.2.5. Changing air distribution

The air distribution can be changed manually if required.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature symbol at the bottom centre of the centre display.
2. The air distribution buttons in the climate view are located in the centre around the **AUTO** button, from the top and down:
   - Air distribution - windscreen defroster vents
   - Air distribution - air vents in instrument panel and centre console
   - Air distribution - air vents in the floor

   Press one or more of the air distribution buttons in order to open/close the corresponding air flow.

> The air distribution is changed and the buttons illuminate/extinguish.
> If all air distribution buttons are deselected in manual mode, the climate control system returns to automatically regulated climate control.

8.2.6. Opening, closing and aiming the air vents

Some air vents in the passenger compartment can be opened, closed and aimed individually.

If the car's outer vents are aimed at the side windows then misting can be eliminated.

If the car's outer vents are aimed inwards then, in a hot climate, a comfortable environment is obtained in the passenger compartment.

Opening and closing the air vents

1. Turn the rotary knob in the middle of the air vent to open/close the air flow from the vent.

   The air flow is at maximum when the marking on the knob is in vertical position.

Aiming the air vents

1 Move the lever in the middle of the air vent horizontally/vertically to direct the air flow from the vent.

8.3. Air quality

8.3.1. Air quality

The materials selected for the passenger compartment and the air purification system ensure that the air quality in the passenger compartment is high.

Materials in the passenger compartment

The interior of the passenger compartment is designed to be pleasant and comfortable, even for people with contact allergies and for asthma sufferers.

Tested materials have been developed in order to reduce the quantity of dust in the passenger compartment and to contribute to making the passenger compartment easier to keep clean.

The carpets in both the passenger compartment and the cargo area are removable and easy to remove and clean.

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo to clean the interior.

Air purification system

In addition to the passenger compartment filter, the car is equipped with an air purification system that helps to maintain high air quality in the passenger compartment.

8.3.2. CleanZone*

The CleanZone function checks and indicates whether or not all conditions have been met for good air quality in the passenger compartment.

If the conditions are not met, the text **CleanZone**, which is shown in the climate view, is white.

When all conditions have been met, this is indicated by the text changing colour to blue.

Conditions that need to be met:

- That all doors and the tailgate are closed.

- That all side windows and the panoramic roof* are closed.
- That the air quality system Interior Air Quality System* is activated.
- That the ventilation fan is activated.
- That the air recirculation is deactivated.

> **Note**
>
> CleanZone does not indicate that the air quality is good. It only indicates that the conditions for good air quality have been met.

* Option/accessory.

8.3.3. Clean Zone Interior Package*

Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP) comprises a series of modifications that keep the passenger compartment even clearer from allergy and asthma-inducing substances, among other things.

The following is included:

- An enhanced fan function that means that the fan starts when the car is unlocked with the key. The fan fills the passenger compartment with fresh air. The function starts when required and is disengaged automatically after a time or when one of the passenger compartment doors is opened. The amount of time the fan runs is reduced gradually due to reduced need up until the car is 4 years old.
- The fully automatic air quality system Interior Air Quality System (IAQS).

* Option/accessory.

8.3.4. Interior Air Quality System*

Interior Air Quality System (IAQS) is a fully automatic air quality system that separates gases and particles to reduce the levels of odours and contaminants in the passenger compartment.

IAQS is a part of the Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP) and cleans the air in the passenger compartment from contaminants such as particles, hydrocarbons, nitrous oxides and ground-level ozone.

If the air quality sensor senses that the outside air is contaminated, the air intake is closed and air recirculation is activated.

Note

The air quality sensor should always be engaged in order to improve the air quality in the passenger compartment.

In a cold climate recirculation is limited so as to prevent misting.

In the event of misting, the defrost functions for windscreen, side windows and rear window should be used.

* Option/accessory.

8.3.5. Activating and deactivating the air quality sensor*

The air quality sensor is part of the fully automatic air quality system Interior Air Quality System (IAQS).

It is possible to set whether the air quality sensor should be activated/deactivated.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.
2. Press ••• in climate view.
3. Select the desired setting under **Air quality sensor** to activate/deactivate the air quality sensor.

* Option/accessory.

8.3.6. Passenger compartment filter

All air entering the car's passenger compartment is cleaned with a filter.

Replacing the passenger compartment filter

To maintain high climate system performance, the filter must be changed at regular intervals. Follow the Volvo Service Programme for the recommended replacement intervals. If the car is used in a severely contaminated environment, it may be necessary to replace the filter more often.

Note

There are different types of passenger compartment filter. Make sure that the correct filter is fitted.

8.4. Parking climate

8.4.1. Preconditioning

8.4.1.1. Preconditioning

Preconditioning is a climate function which, if possible, attempts to reach comfort temperature in the passenger compartment before departure.

Preconditioning can use direct start or be set via the timer from the centre display. It can also be started from a device with the Volvo Cars app*.

The function utilises several systems in different cases:

- In a cold climate, the parking heater warms up the passenger compartment to a comfortable temperature.
- The air conditioning, in a hot climate, cools the passenger compartment to the comfort temperature.
- The electric heating of the steering wheel* and heated seats* for driver and passenger is activated automatically at low ambient temperatures.
- Heated windscreen*, rear window, and door mirrors are automatically activated as required.
- Heated rear window and door mirrors are automatically activated as required.

During preconditioning in a hot climate, condensation from the air conditioning may drip under the car. This is normal.

Note

Preconditioning is available when the high voltage battery is sufficiently charged, but performing preconditioning without the car being connected to charging affects the car's range to a great extent.

Note

During preconditioning of the passenger compartment, the car works to reach comfort temperature and not the temperature set in the climate control system.

Note

Air purification* starts automatically when preconditioning is completed.

Windows and doors must be closed for air purification to be possible.

* Option/accessory.

8.4.1.2. Start and switch off preconditioning

Preconditioning heats or cools the passenger compartment, if possible, prior to driving. The function is started directly from the centre display or the Volvo Cars app.

1 Open the climate view in the centre display by tapping on the temperature button at the bottom centre of the centre display.

2 Press **Parking**.

3 Tap on **Start heating/cooling** to start preconditioning directly.

Note

Preconditioning is available when the high voltage battery is sufficiently charged, but performing preconditioning without the car being connected to charging affects the car's range to a great extent.

Note

The car's doors and windows should be closed during the preconditioning of the passenger compartment.

Note

Air purification* starts automatically when preconditioning is completed.

Windows and doors must be closed for air purification to be possible.

Note

When the driver's seat is occupied[1] preconditioning is paused, and normal climate control is started.

When the car starts to drive[2], preconditioning is switched off.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Usage mode Comfort

[2] Usage mode Drive

8.4.1.3. Preconditioning time setting

The timer can be set so that the preconditioning is finished at a predetermined time.

The timer can handle up to 8 different settings for

- a time on one or more days of the week, with or without repetition.

8.4.1.4. Activating and deactivating time setting for preconditioning

A time setting in the timer for preconditioning can be activated or deactivated based on need.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Parking** tab.
3. Activate/deactivate a time setting by tapping on the button to the right of the setting.

> The time setting is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Warning

Do not use preconditioning if the car is equipped with a fuel-driven heater*:

- In unventilated spaces indoors. Exhaust gases are emitted if the heater starts.
- In locations with combustible or flammable material nearby. Fuel, gas, long grass, sawdust, etc. may ignite.
- When there is a risk that the heater's exhaust line may be blocked. For example, deep snow inside the front right-hand wheel housing can obstruct the heater's ventilation.

Remember that the preconditioning can be started by a timer that has been set for a long time in advance.

* Option/accessory.

8.4.1.5. Removing time setting for preconditioning

A time setting for preconditioning that is no longer required can be deleted.

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.

2 Select the **Parking** tab.

3 Press the time setting that is to be deleted.

4 Press **Delete timer**.

> The time setting is deleted.

8.4.1.6. Adding and editing time setting for preconditioning

The timer for preconditioning can manage up to 8 time settings.

Adding a time setting

1 Open the climate view in the centre display.

2 Select the **Parking** tab.

3 Press **Timers**.

4 Press **Add new timer**.

> **Note**
>
> It is not possible to add a time setting if there already are 8 settings entered for the timer. Delete a time setting in order to be able to add a new one.

5 Set a time for one or more days of the week. Activate/deactivate repetition by tapping on **Repeat weekly**.

6 Press **Set timer**.

> The time setting is added to the list and is activated.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not use preconditioning if the car is equipped with a fuel-driven heater*:
>
> - In unventilated spaces indoors. Exhaust gases are emitted if the heater starts.
> - In locations with combustible or flammable material nearby. Fuel, gas, long grass, sawdust, etc. may ignite.
> - When there is a risk that the heater's exhaust line may be blocked. For example, deep snow inside the front right-hand wheel housing can obstruct the heater's ventilation.
>
> Remember that the preconditioning can be started by a timer that has been set for a long time in advance.

Editing a time setting

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Parking** tab.
3. Press the time setting that is to be changed.

> A pop-up window is shown.

4. Edit the time setting in the same way as described in "Adding a time setting" above.

* Option/accessory.

8.4.2. Parking climate*

Parking climate control is a generic term for various functions that improve the passenger compartment climate when the car is parked, e.g. preconditioning.

Functions belonging to the parking climate control are controlled from the **Parking** in climate view in the centre display. Open the climate view by tapping on the temperature symbol at the bottom centre of the centre display.

* Option/accessory.

8.4.3. Symbols and messages for parking climate control

A number of symbols and messages regarding parking climate control can be shown in the driver display.

Messages relating to parking climate control can also be displayed in a device which has the Volvo Cars* app.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Parking climate Service required	Parking climate control is disengaged. Contact a workshop[1] to check the function as soon as possible.
	Parking climate Temporarily unavailable	Parking climate control is temporarily disengaged.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Parking climate unavailable Charge level too low	Parking climate control cannot be activated if the charge level of the high voltage battery is too low to start the parking heater. Charge the car.
	Limited parking climate Charge level too low	The running time for parking climate control is limited when the state of charge in the high voltage battery is low. Charge the car.

* Option/accessory.

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

8.4.4. Parking heater

The parking heater heats the passenger compartment and battery as necessary before driving if the car's preconditioning is activated.

The parking heater is a high-voltage heater. It starts automatically if the parking climate's preconditioning is activated and the passenger compartment needs to be heated up.

Preconditioning switches off automatically when the car is started.

Battery and charging

The heater is powered by the car's high voltage battery. If the charge level of the high voltage battery is too low, then the heater is switched off automatically and the driver display shows a message.

> **Note**
>
> Make sure that there is enough charge in the high voltage battery if the parking heater needs to be used.

8.5. Heater

8.5.1. Parking heater

The parking heater heats the passenger compartment and battery as necessary before driving if the car's preconditioning is activated.

The parking heater is a high-voltage heater. It starts automatically if the parking climate's preconditioning is activated and the passenger compartment needs to be heated up.

Preconditioning switches off automatically when the car is started.

Battery and charging

The heater is powered by the car's high voltage battery. If the charge level of the high voltage battery is too low, then the heater is switched off automatically and the driver display shows a message.

> **Note**
>
> Make sure that there is enough charge in the high voltage battery if the parking heater needs to be used.

8.6. Climate

The car is equipped with electronic climate control. The climate control system cools or heats as well as dehumidifies the air in the passenger compartment.

All climate control system functions are controlled from the centre display and physical buttons in the centre console.

Some functions for the rear seat can also be controlled from the climate controls* at the rear of the tunnel console.

Most climate functions can also be controlled using voice control. Some functions require an Internet connection for use with voice control.

> **Note**
>
> If necessary, the climate control can be used to cool the media system in the centre display. In these cases, the message **Cooling infotainment system** is shown in the driver display.

> **Note**
>
> If the battery charge level falls below 3%, the climate control will be switched off to save energy.

* Option/accessory.

8.7. Servicing the climate control system

The air conditioning system must only be serviced and repaired by an authorised workshop.

Troubleshooting and repair

The air conditioning system contains fluorescent tracing agents. Ultraviolet light is used for leak detection.

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.

The car's climate control system uses a freon-free refrigerant, either R1234yf or R134a depending on market. Information about which refrigerant the car's climate control system uses is printed on a decal located on the inside of the front bonnet.

Warning

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R134a. Service and repair of the system must only be performed by trained and certified technicians.

Warning

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R1234yf. In accordance with SAE J2845 (Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile A/C System), service and repair of the refrigerant system must only be performed by trained and certified technicians in order to ensure the safety of the system.

8.8. Climate control - sensors

The climate control system has a number of sensors to help control the climate in the car. Do not cover or block the sensors with clothing or other objects.

Sensor location

1 Sun sensor - on the upper side of the instrument panel.

2 Moisture sensor - in the casing by the interior rearview mirror.

3 Outside temperature sensor - in the right-hand door mirror.

4 Temperature sensor for the passenger compartment - by the physical buttons in the centre console.

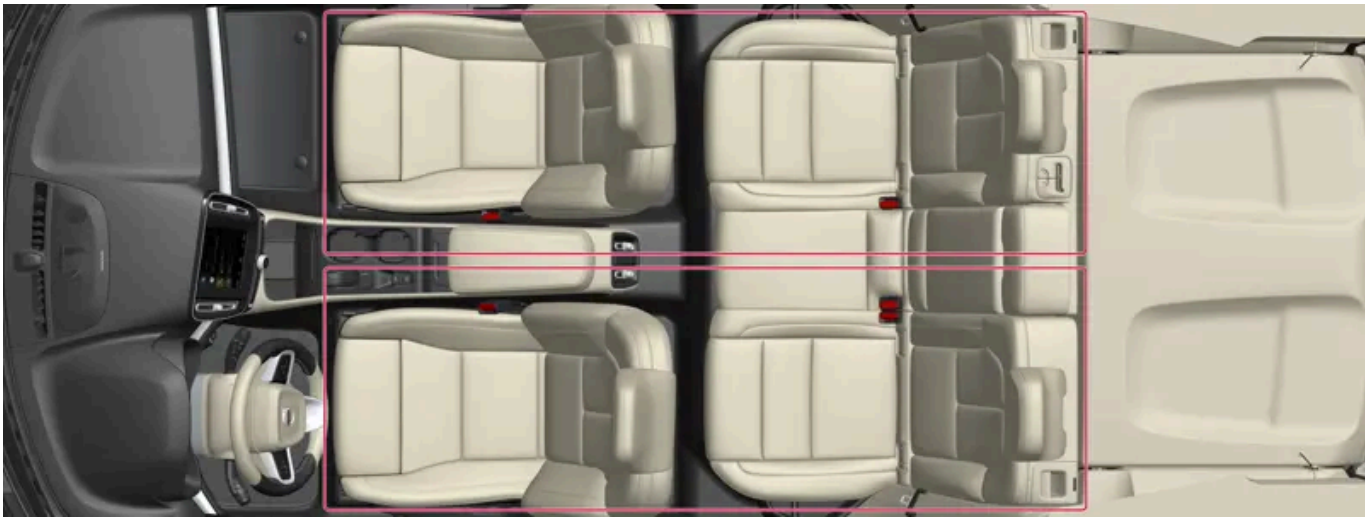
With the Interior Air Quality System* there is also an air quality sensor that is fitted into the climate control system air intake.

* Option/accessory.

8.9. Climate zones

The number of climate zones that the car is divided into governs the options for setting different temperatures for different parts of the passenger compartment.

2-zone climate



Climate zones with 2-zone climate.

With 2-zone climate, the temperature in the passenger compartment can be set separately for the left and right-hand sides.

8.10. Perceived temperature

The climate control system regulates the climate in the passenger compartment based on the perceived temperature, not on actual temperature.

The temperature you select in the passenger compartment corresponds to the physically perceived temperature as affected by factors such as the ambient temperature, air speed, humidity, solar radiation, etc. in and around the car at the time.

The system includes a sun sensor which detects on which side the sun is shining into the passenger compartment. This means that the temperature can differ between the right and left-hand side's air vents despite the controls being set for the same temperature on both sides.

9. Key, locks and alarm

9.1. Remote control key

9.1.1. User profiles

9.1.1.1. User profiles

Many of the settings defined in the car can be saved to a personal user profile.

The **Owner** profile is pre-installed and active in the car on first use or after a factory reset.

The **Owner** profile has administrative privileges and cannot be deleted.

Drag down the notification view to access user profiles.

The status field shows a symbol, together with the initials of the active profile. When the system is logged-out, no symbol/initials are shown in the status field.

Automatic profile selection

It is possible to connect your key to a profile. The profile along with all of its settings will then be automatically selected every time the car is used with that specific key.

The last profile used is activated if a key is not linked with a specific profile.

General information about settings

Changes to the car's settings are saved in different ways depending on the category to which the settings belong. These settings may be personal, global or adapted for a drive cycle. Tap on and then on **Profiles** in order to access the settings for a selected profile.

Personal preferences

Personal settings are saved to an active profile.

There are two kinds of personal settings:

- Function settings – settings relating to driver support, driver side climate, the driver's seat, the door mirrors and interior and exterior lighting. These settings retain their values when a profile is added or when signing out from an active profile.
- Sound and media settings – settings relating to navigation, sound and media systems, apps and linked accounts. These settings return to default settings when a profile is added or when signing out from an active profile.

Global settings

The global settings are not changed when switching to a different profile. They remain the same regardless of which profile is active. Passenger side climate control, the passenger seat memory function, and certain system settings are examples of global settings.

Default drive cycle settings

A number of settings return to their defaults [1] after a drive cycle.

This means that the value of a setting can be adjusted while you drive. After driving, it is returned to the default. At next drive cycle, the setting will have its default value again.

[1] Default settings may vary depending on market

9.1.1.2. Link key to user profile

It is possible to connect your key to a profile. The profile along with all of its settings will then be automatically selected every time the car is used with that specific key.

The first time the key is used, it is not linked to any specific profile. The **Owner** profile or the last profile used is activated automatically when the car is started.

Linking a key to a profile

> **Note**
>
> If the key was previously linked to another profile, the link is moved from the previous profile to the active profile.

1. Press ⚙.
2. Select **Profiles**.
3. Select **Connect key to profile** to connect a selected key to a profile.

It is only possible to connect a profile to the key that is currently being used in the car. If there are multiple keys in the car, the message **More than one key found. Place the key you want to connect on the backup reader.** will be displayed

Backup reader's location in the tunnel console.

Disconnecting a key from a profile

1. Press ⚙.
2. Select **Profiles**.
3. Select **Disconnect key from profile** to remove the active profile from the connected key.

It is possible to disconnect a key from a profile even if the key is not in the car.

9.1.1.3. Managing user profiles

It is possible to switch to another profile even if the key being used is linked to a different profile.

Creating a profile

1. Drag down the notification view to access user profiles.
2. Tap on the active profile.

3 Select **New profile**.

4 The profile is created.

> The profile is set as the active profile.

You will be guided through an interactive flow to help you set up the new profile. There you can choose to pair a phone with the car or to link different accounts, such as Volvo ID, to the profile. It is also possible to skip certain steps and complete them later.

It is possible to create up to six different profiles.

Selecting a profile

1 Drag down the notification view to access user profiles.

2 Tap on the active profile.

3 Selectable profiles are displayed.

4 Select the desired profile.

> The profile is selected and the system loads the settings for the selected profile.

> **Note**
>
> To cancel the moving of the seat when changing the profile, tap on any of the buttons on the seat part of the front seat.

Signing out a profile

1 Drag down the notification view to access user profiles.

2 Select **Log out**.

> Signing out takes place from the profile and it is no longer possible to access the accounts linked with that profile.

3 The system is preset to a signed-out mode and settings changed are not saved to a profile.

> **Note**
>
> To create, select and logout of a user profile is only possible when the car is stationary.

9.1.1.4. Profile settings

From profile settings, it is possible to change profile name, add and remove linked keys, link different accounts (such as Volvo ID), activate the lock screen, and delete the active profile, among other things.

Activating the screen lock

When the screen lock is activated, a passcode is required to be able to use the active profile.

1. Press ⚙.
2. Select **Profiles**.
3. Select **Screen lock**.
4. Select the type of screen lock and then activate.

> The screen lock will be shown in the centre display when switching to a profile with a passcode, and also every time the system is restarted.

Deleting a profile

Settings that have been saved to one or more profiles can only be deleted if the car is stationary.

1. Press ⚙.
2. Select **Profiles**.
3. Select **Delete this profile**.

> User information and connections linked to the profile are deleted.

4. The system is preset to a signed-out mode and settings changed are not saved to a profile.

Become an administrator

It is possible to set a profile as administrator.

1. Press ⚙.
2. Select **Profiles**.
3. Select **Become an admin**.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Accept the internet terms of use [1]

1. Press ⚙.
2. Select **Profiles**.
3. Select **Internet terms of service** and follow the instructions.

The terms of use must be accepted once per car in order to use the internet.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

9.1.1.5. Link account to user profile

It is possible to add accounts to a selected user profile. Examples of accounts that can be added are Volvo ID and Google account.

Adding an account

1. Press ⚙.
2. Select **Profiles**.
3. Select **Accounts**.
4. Select to add account.

> A list of accounts that can be added is shown.

5. Select the desired account.

Then follow the instructions shown. The instructions depend on the type of account selected.

9.1.2. Immobiliser

The electronic immobiliser is a theft protection system that prevents an unauthorised person from starting the car.

The car can only be started with the correct key.

The following error message in the driver display is related to the electronic immobiliser:

Symbol	Message	Specification
	The car key is not detected. See Owner's Manual for more information.	Error reading the key during starting - place the key on the key symbol in the storage compartment and try again.

9.1.3. Keys

The car's keys lock and unlock the car. When a key is within the front part of the passenger compartment, the car can be started.

Available key types are standard key, Key Tag*, and Care Key.[1]

The standard key and Care Key are equipped with buttons. Additional keys to the number included as standard can be ordered. For cars equipped with keyless locking and unlocking*, a slightly smaller, lighter and button-less key (Key Tag) can be purchased as an accessory.

To start the car, a key needs to be within the front part of the passenger compartment.

For cars equipped with keyless locking and unlocking (Passive Entry)* the key can be anywhere in the car to start the car.

These keys can be linked to different driver profiles to save personal preferences in the car.

Warning

The key contains a button cell battery. Keep new and used batteries out of the reach of children. If someone swallows a battery it may cause serious injury.

If damage is discovered, e.g. if the battery cover cannot be closed properly, then the product should not be used. Keep defective products out of the reach of children.

The key's buttons

The key has four buttons – one on the left-hand side and three on the right-hand side.

Locking

One press on the button locks the car and arms the alarm*.

One long press closes all windows as well as the panoramic roof*.

Unlocking

One press on the button unlocks the car and disarms the alarm*. One long press opens all windows simultaneously. This can be used, for example, to quickly air a hot car before getting into it.

Tailgate

One press on the button disarms the alarm* and unlocks the tailgate. On cars with power operated tailgate*, the tailgate is opened or closed with one long press. An acoustic warning signal sounds when the tailgate is opened or closed.

Panic function

The panic function is used to attract attention in an emergency. Press and hold the button for at least 3 seconds or press it twice within 3 seconds to activate the car's direction indicators and the horn. The function can be switched off using the unlock

button after it has been active for at least 5 seconds. Otherwise it is deactivated automatically after 2 minutes and 45 seconds.

Warning

Watch out for the risk of crushing when opening and closing.

- Always operate with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the controls.
- Never leave children alone in the car.
- Remember that the power windows can also be operated even if key has been removed from the car, as long as the seat sensor detects that the driver's seat is occupied. The driver's door must be open and the driver's seat unoccupied in order to switch off the power to the power windows. The power windows can be reactivated via the centre display, even if the key has been removed from the car and the seat sensor does not detect that the driver's seat is occupied.
- Never put an object or part of the body through the windows, even if the car's electrical system is fully disconnected.

Note

A key that has been locked in the car is temporarily deactivated and cannot be used before the car has been unlocked using another valid key. The double lock function is also deactivated.

Button-less key (Key Tag)*

A Key Tag can be ordered as an accessory for cars equipped with the keyless locking and unlocking function. Starting and keyless locking and unlocking work in the same way as with the standard key. The key is waterproof to a depth of approx. 10 metres (30 feet) for up to 60 minutes. It does not have extending key blade, and the battery cannot be replaced.

Care Key

You can set a speed limit that is active when the Care Key is used. The limitation is intended to encourage the car to be driven in a safe manner, e.g. when being loaned out.

If the active key is removed from the car

If the key is removed from the car when the engine is running, the warning message, **The car key is not detected. See Owner's Manual for more information.**, is shown in the driver display and an acoustic reminder sounds when the last door is closed.

The message disappears when the key is returned to the car, followed by a press of the right-hand keypad's O button, or when all of the doors have been closed.

Interference

Key functions for keyless starting and keyless locking and unlocking* can be disrupted by electromagnetic fields and screening.

Note

Avoid storing the car's keys close to metal objects or electronics (e.g. mobile phones, tablets, laptops or chargers). Preferably no closer than 10-15 cm (4-6 inches).

If there is still interference - use the key's detachable key blade to unlock. Then place the key in the back-up reader in the tunnel console's storage compartment to disarm the alarm and allow the car to be started.

Note

When the key shall be read by the back-up reader, make sure that the storage compartment is separate from other nearby car keys, metal objects and electronics (e.g. mobile phones, tablets, laptops or chargers). These objects may disrupt the functions.

* Option/accessory.

[1] The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

9.1.4. Ordering additional keys

If a key is lost or you need more keys than the standard number, it is possible to order new keys. If the car is equipped with keyless locking and unlocking* a button-less key (Key Tag) can also be ordered.

A total of twelve keys can be programmed and used for one single car. If additional keys are ordered, additional driver profiles are added – one per new key. This also applies for the key tag.

If you lose a key

If you lose a key then a new one can be ordered through a Volvo dealer or an authorised Volvo workshop. The code of the missing key must be erased from the system as a theft prevention measure. Access to all remaining keys is required during a workshop visit.

* Option/accessory.

9.1.5. Replacing the battery in the key

The battery in the key can be replaced when it has discharged. The service life of the battery depends on how much the key is used. The Key Tag* battery cannot be replaced.

> **Note**
>
> All batteries have a limited service life and must eventually be replaced (does not apply to Key Tag). The service life of the battery varies depending on how often the vehicle/key is used.

The key's battery needs to be replaced when the information symbol is illuminated and the **The car key battery is low. See Owner's Manual for replacement.** message is shown in the driver display.

Another sign that the battery level is low is decreased range for the key.

The battery in the Key tag (Key Tag)* cannot be replaced. When the battery is discharged, a new Key tag can be ordered from an authorised Volvo workshop.

> **Important**
>
> Hand in a discharged Key Tag to an authorised Volvo workshop where it can be deleted from the car's system. The key can still be used to start the car via back-up start when the battery has been discharged.

Opening the key and changing its battery

> **Important**
>
> Avoid touching the contact surfaces of a new battery with your fingers. This impairs the battery's functionality.

Hold the key so that its front with the Volvo logotype is facing up, and with the keyring bracket facing you.

There is a catch on the left of the keyring bracket. If it is on the wrong side then the front and rear have been mixed up when the battery was replaced on an earlier occasion.

1 1

Slide the catch by the keyring bracket to the side, and slide the front shell away from the bracket.

> The shell detaches and can be lifted off.

There is a further catch under the shell to detach the rear.

2 2

Slide the catch that was behind the front shell to the side, and slide the rear shell away from the key ring bracket.

> The shell detaches and can be lifted off.
The battery cover is under the shell.

3 3

Turn the battery cover anticlockwise to OPEN position. Use a screwdriver or a coin, for example.

Lift off the battery cover. If it is difficult to detach, you can prize it upward using a narrow tool.

4 4

The battery (+) side is facing upwards. Loosen the battery by pressing on its edge and then lifting it out.

5 5

Install a new battery with the (+) side up. Avoid touching the key's battery contacts with your fingers.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Position the edge of the battery under the two outer plastic catches.

Then press down on the battery so that it is held in place by the upper plastic catch.

> **Note**
>
> Use batteries with the designation CR2032, 3 V.

> **Note**
>
> Volvo recommends that replacement batteries for the key meet UN Manual of Test and Criteria, Part III, sub-section 38.3. The batteries that are included or the batteries used for replacement by an authorised Volvo workshop will meet the same criterion.

6 6

Refit the battery cover and turn clockwise to CLOSE position.

7 7

Refit the rear shell in reverse order to how it was removed. There is no logotype on the rear shell. Press in the shell until you hear a click, and then slide it the last few millimetres to its original position.

> A further click will indicate that the shell is properly positioned and securely attached.
There must be no gaps remaining.

8 8

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Turn the key and refit the front shell in the same way as for the rear.

Warning

Check that the battery is fitted correctly with the correct polarity. If the key shall not been used for a long time, remove the battery to avoid battery leakage and damage. Batteries with damage or leaks may cause corrosive injury on contact with the skin. Therefore, use protective gloves when handling damaged batteries.

- Keep batteries out of the reach of children.
- Do not leave batteries lying around since they can be swallowed by children or pets.
- Batteries must not: be dismantled, short-circuited or thrown into open flames.
- Do not try to charge non-rechargeable batteries. They may explode.
- Check battery operated products for signs of damage on a regular basis.

The key should not be used if anything indicates that the key or its battery has been damaged or has started to leak. Keep defective products out of the reach of children.

Important

Used batteries must be recycled in an environmentally sound manner.

* Option/accessory.

9.1.6. Locking and unlocking using the key's buttons

The buttons on the key can be used to lock and unlock all doors and the tailgate simultaneously.

Locking using the key's buttons

1 Press the button to lock the car.

The driver's door must be closed in order for the lock sequence to be activated[1]. If any of the other doors or the tailgate is open, then these are not locked and their alarms armed* until they are closed. The alarm's movement detectors* are activated when all the doors and the tailgate are closed and locked.

> **Note**
>
> A key that has been locked in the car is temporarily deactivated and cannot be used before the car has been unlocked using another valid key. The double lock function is also deactivated.

Locking when the tailgate is open

> **Note**
>
> If the car has been locked while the tailgate is open, be careful not to leave the key in the cargo area when the tailgate is closed[1].

Unlocking using the key's buttons

1 Press the button to unlock the car.

Automatic relocking

If none of the doors or the tailgate is opened within 2 minutes of unlocking, they are locked automatically. This function prevents the car from being left unlocked unintentionally.

If the key is not working

If the key's buttons stop working then its battery may be discharged – in which case, replace the battery or use the detachable key blade.

* Option/accessory.

[1] If the car is equipped with keyless locking/unlocking* then all side doors must be closed.

9.1.7. Care Key – speed limit key

A Care Key makes it possible for the owner of the car to limit the maximum speed of the car. The speed limit is intended to encourage the car to be driven in a safe manner such as when being loaned out, for example.

The button functions for a Care Key are the same as for the standard key. The car and the key work as normal if no speed limit has been set.

The speed limit can be set via the administrator user profile. The limit is then activate while the car is being used with a Care Key.

The option of setting a speed limit when using a specific key is intended to increase safety when entrusting the car to e.g. a young or unexperienced driver, valet parking, or a workshop.

An active speed limit is indicated by a symbol in the driver display and a message.

9.1.8. Setting the speed limit for Care Key

The speed limit for Care Key is set in the centre display.

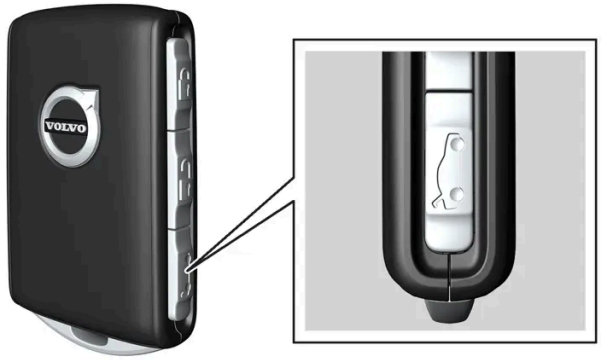
The speed limit for Care Key is set in the settings for the administrator user profile. Once the setting has been made, the speed limit is activated when the car is used with a Care Key.

A speed limit can be set within the range 50–150 km/h (30–95 mph), with a step interval of 10 km/h (5 mph).

The car must be unlocked using a key without limit in order to deactivate the function. The user with administrator rights can deactivate the speed limit for Care Key via the settings in the centre display. Care Key can then be used like a regular key.

9.1.9. Unlocking the tailgate with a key button

There is a button on the key to unlock the tailgate only.



1 Press the key's button.

> The tailgate is unlocked but remains closed.
The side doors are still locked and the alarm is armed*. The lock and alarm indicator on the instrument panel extinguishes in order to show that the entire car is not locked.
You can open the tailgate by gripping the rubberised pressure plate underneath its lower edge.
If the tailgate is not opened within 2 minutes then it is relocked and the alarm is re-armed.

Power operated tailgate*

1 Hold the key's button depressed for a couple of seconds.

> The tailgate is unlocked and opened, while the side doors remain locked and their alarm functions armed*.

Note

If the system for the power operated tailgate* works continuously for a long time, it is deactivated in order not to overload it. It can be used again after a few minutes.

* Option/accessory.

9.1.10. Detachable key blade

The standard key contains a detachable key blade in metal with several different functions.

The key blade's unique code is provided by authorised Volvo workshops, which are recommended when ordering new key blades.

The key blade's application areas

Using the key's detachable key blade, the following are possible:

- the left-hand[1] front door can be opened manually if central locking cannot be activated by pressing a button
- all doors are emergency-locked
- the rear doors' mechanical child lock can be activated and deactivated.

If the key blade has been used to unlock the car, the alarm can be disarmed and the car started by placing the key in the back-up reader in the tunnel console's storage compartment.

The Key Tag accessory does not have a detachable key blade.

Taking out the key blade

Hold the key so that its front with the Volvo logotype is facing up, and with the keyring bracket facing you.

There is a catch on the left of the keyring bracket. If it is on the wrong side then the front and rear have been mixed up when they were assembled on an earlier occasion.

1 1

Slide the catch by the keyring bracket to the side, and slide the front shell away from the bracket.

> The shell detaches and can be lifted off.

2 2

Remove the key blade.

3 3

Refit the front shell in reverse order to how it was removed. Press in the shell until you hear a click, and then slide it the last few millimetres to its original position.

> A further click will indicate that the shell is properly positioned and securely attached.
There must be no gaps remaining.

[1] This applies whether the car is left-hand drive or right-hand drive.

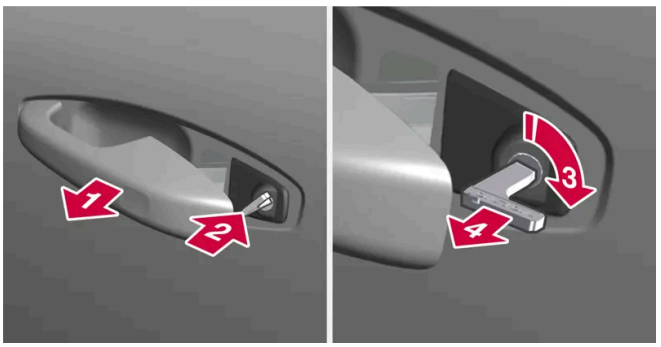
9.1.11. Locking and unlocking with the detachable key blade

The detachable key blade can be used to unlock one of the car's doors from the outside – such as if the battery in the key is discharged.

Unlocking with the key blade

> **Note**
>
> When the door is unlocked using the key blade and is then opened, the alarm is triggered. The alarm must be deactivated manually, see separate section.

1



Pull out the front door's handle on the left-hand side of the car to its end position.[1]

2 2
Insert the key.

3 3
Turn clockwise 45 degrees so that the key is pointing straight back.

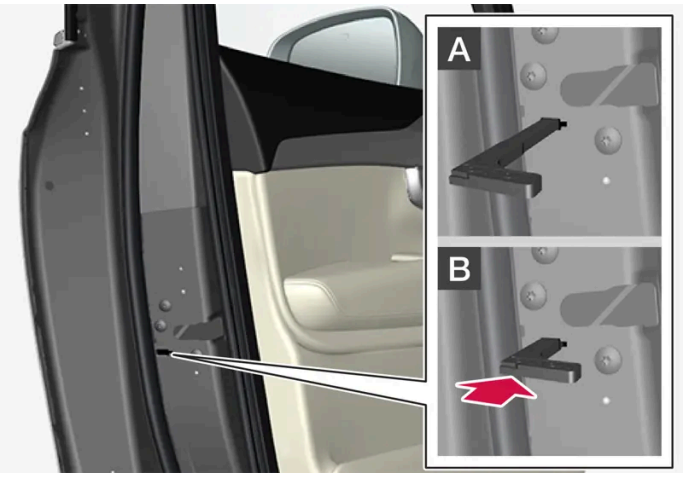
4 4
Turn the key back 45 degrees to its starting position and remove it.

> The door can be opened using the handle.

Locking with the key blade

The left-hand front door can be locked using the detachable key blade.

Other doors have a lock reset on the end face that must be pressed in using the key blade. Then they are mechanically locked against opening from the outside, but can be opened from the inside.



Manual locking of the door. Not to be mixed up with child locks.

1 Remove the detachable key blade from the key with buttons.

2 Insert the key blade in the hole for lock reset.

3 Press in the key until it bottoms – approximately 12 mm (0.5 inches).

A The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.

B The door is blocked against opening from the outside. To return to position A, the inner door handle must be opened.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Note

- A door's lock reset only locks that particular door - not all doors simultaneously.
- A manually locked rear door with enabled child lock cannot be opened from either insider or outside. Unlocking is possible using the buttons on the key, the central locking button, the keyless locking system* or by using the Volvo Cars app.

[1] This applies whether the car is right-hand drive or left-hand drive.

* Option/accessory.

9.1.12. The key's range

In order for the key to work properly, it needs to be within a certain distance from the car.

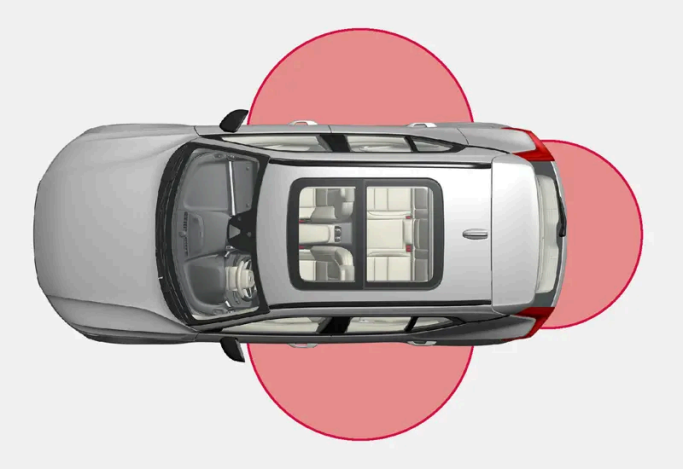
Physical barriers between the key and the car may have an adverse effect on the range or completely block the signal.

Using the key's buttons

The key's functions that are controlled by pressing a button have a range of approx. 20 metres (65 feet) from the car.

If the car does not verify a button being pressed - move closer and try again.

For keyless* use



For keyless use, a key must be within a distance of approx. 1 to 1.5 metres (3 to 5 feet) from the car's doors or tailgate.

Note

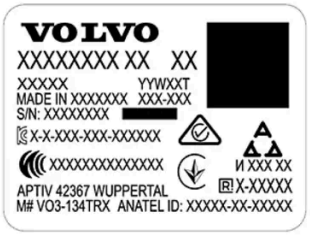
The key functions may be disrupted by surrounding radio waves, buildings, topographical conditions, etc. The car can always be locked/unlocked with the key blade.

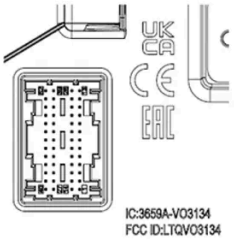
* Option/accessory.

9.1.13. Type approval for the remote control key system

Type approval for the car's remote key system can be seen in the following tables.

Lock system keyless start (Passive Start) and keyless locking/unlocking (Passive Entry*)





CEM marking for the remote control key system. For supplementary type approval numbers, see following tables.

Country/Area	Type approval	
Argentina		See the illustration below the table.
Brazil	MT-3245/2015	ANATEL 0589-15-6830 (01) 0 7897843840961
Europe	Delphi Deutschland GmbH, 42367 Wuppertal hereby declares that this VO3-134TRX conforms to the essential property requirements and other relevant provisions contained in directive 2014/53/EU (RED).	
The United Arab Emirates	ER37847/15 DA0062437/11	
Indonesia	Nomor: 38301/SDPPI/2015	
Jordan	TRC/LPD/2014/250	
Malaysia	RAAT/37A/1215/S(15-5198)	
Mexico	IFETEL: RLVDEVO15-0396	
Namibia	TA-2016-02	CRAN Communications Regulatory Authority of Namibia
Russia		EAC

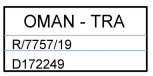
Country/Area	Type approval	
Serbia	P1614120100	
South Africa	TA-2014-1868	

Argentina

H-25867

Remote control key

Country/Area	Type approval	
Europe	Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG hereby declares that this type of radio equipment HUF8423MS conforms to directive 2014/53/EU. Wavelength: 433.92 MHz Maximum radiated transmission power: 10 mW Manufacturer: Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG, Steeger Str. 17, 42551 Velbert, Germany	
Argentina		See the illustration below the table.
Brazil	Anatel: 06768-19-06643 Modelo: HUF8423MS Este equipomento opera em caráter secundário isto é não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.	
Philippines	ESD-1919938C	
The United Arab Emirates		TRA REGISTERED No: ER72465/19 DEALER No: DA36976/14
Ghana	NCA Approved: ZRO-M8-7E3-138	
Indonesia [1]	Sertifikat Nomor: 65073/SDPPI/2019 PLG ID: 8093	
CU (Customs Union) Kazakhstan, Russia		



Country/Area	Type approval	
Morocco	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément: MR 20402 ANRT 2019 Date d'agrément: 10/07/2019	
Moldova		
Nigeria	Connection and use of this communication equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission	
Oman		
Paraguay	HUF8423MS	
Serbia		
Singapore	Complies with IMDA Standards DA103787	
South Africa	TA-2019/772	
Taiwan	本產品符合低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 第十二條、第十四條等條文規定 .1 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不 • 得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能 .2 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾 • 現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用 • 前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信 低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設 • 備之干擾	
Ukraine	Справжнім Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co KG заявляє, що тип радіообладнання відповідає Технічному[HUF8423MS] регламенту радіообладнання; повний текст -декларації про відповідність доступний на веб :сайті за такою адресою Робоча частота: 433,92 ГГц	
Vietnam		
Belarus		
Zambia		

Argentina

H-23694

Key Tag

Country/Area	Type approval	
Europe	Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG hereby declares that this type of radio equipment HUF8432MS conforms to directive 2014/53/EU. Wavelength: 433.92 MHz Maximum radiated transmission power: 10 mW Manufacturer: Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG, Steeger Str. 17, 42551 Velbert, Germany	
Argentina		See the illustration below the table.
Brazil	Anatel: 04362-16-06643 Modelo: HUF8432MS Este equipo opera em caráter secundário isto é não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.	ANATEL
Ghana	NCA Approved: ZRO-M8-7E3-139	
Philippines	ESD-1919939C	NTC Type Approved No.: ESD-1919939C
The United Arab Emirates		TRA REGISTERED No: ER72467/19 DEALER No: DA36976/14
CU (Customs Union) Kazakhstan, Russia		EAC
Indonesia [1]	Sertifikat Nomor: 65072/SDPPI/2019 PLG ID: 8093	
Morocco	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément: MR 20403 ANRT 2019 Date d'agrément: 10/07/2019	
Moldova		024

Country/Area	Type approval	
Nigeria	Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission	
Oman		OMAN - TRA R/7758/19 D172249
Paraguay	HUF8432MS	HUF8432MS CONATEL NR:2019-08-I-0448
Serbia		005 19
Singapore	Complies with IMDA Standards DA103787	
South Africa	TA-2019-773	ICASA
Taiwan	本產品符合低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 第十二條、第十四條等條文規定 .1 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不 • 得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能 .2 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾 • 現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用 • 前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信 低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設 • 備之干擾	
Ukraine	Справжнім Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co KG заявляє, що тип радіообладнання відповідає Технічному[HUF8432MS] регламенту радіообладнання; повний текст -декларації про відповідність доступний на веб :сайті за такою адресою Робоча частота: 433,92 ГГц	
Vietnam		ICT
Belarus		TP BY
Zambia		ZICTA ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2019/7/121

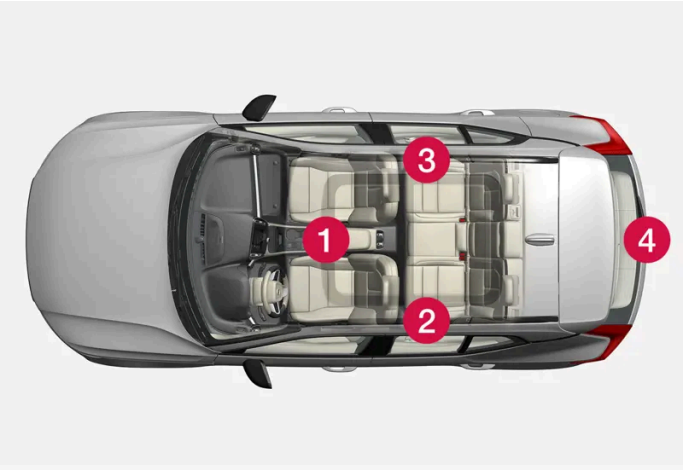
H-23695

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only applies to Indonesia.

9.1.14. Antenna locations for the start and lock systems

An antenna for the keyless starting system and antennas for the keyless locking system* are built into the car.



Antenna locations:

1. In the storage compartment in the tunnel console
2. In the upper front section of the left-hand rear door[1]
3. In the upper front section of the right-hand rear door[1]
4. In the cargo area[1]

Warning

People with an implanted pacemaker should keep it at a distance of at least 22 cm (9 inches) away from the antennas to prevent interference between the pacemaker and the key system.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only in cars equipped with keyless locking and unlocking*.

9.2. Locking and unlocking

9.2.1. Keyless locking and unlocking

9.2.1.1. Operating the tailgate with foot movement*

Being able to open and close the tailgate with a foot movement* under the rear bumper makes things easier when your hands are full.

If the car is equipped with keyless locking and unlocking* then you can unlock the tailgate with a foot movement.

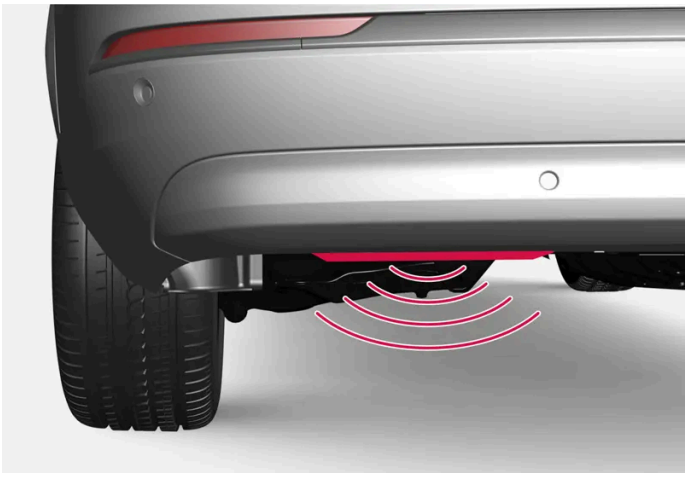
The function with both opening and closing of the tailgate is also available when the car is equipped with power operated tailgate*.

Note

The foot-operated tailgate function is available in two versions:

- Opening and closing with foot movement
- Only unlocking with foot movement (lift up the tailgate manually to open it)

Note that the function for opening and closing with foot movement requires power operated tailgate*.



The sensor is located slightly to the left of the bumper.

One of the car's keys must be within range behind the car, approx. 1 metre (3 feet), for opening and closing to be possible. This also applies to an already unlocked car in order to avoid accidental opening e.g. in a car wash.

Opening and closing with foot movement

1

Make **one** forward kicking motion in the sensor area under the rear bumper. Then take a step back. The bumper must not be touched.

> A short acoustic signal sounds when opening or closing is activated - the tailgate is opened/closed.

If several kicking motions take place without a key sufficiently close, opening will not be possible until after a certain delay.

Do not leave your foot positioned under the car during the kicking motion. This could cause activation to fail.

Cancelling opening or closing with foot movement

1 Make **one** forward kicking motion while opening or closing is in progress.

> Opening or closing the tailgate is stopped.

The key does not need to be in the vicinity of the car to cancel opening or closing of the tailgate.

If the tailgate is stopped close to closed position, the next activation will open the tailgate.

Note

Make sure you keep the area around the foot movement detector clean. A build-up of dirt, ice or snow may disrupt its function.

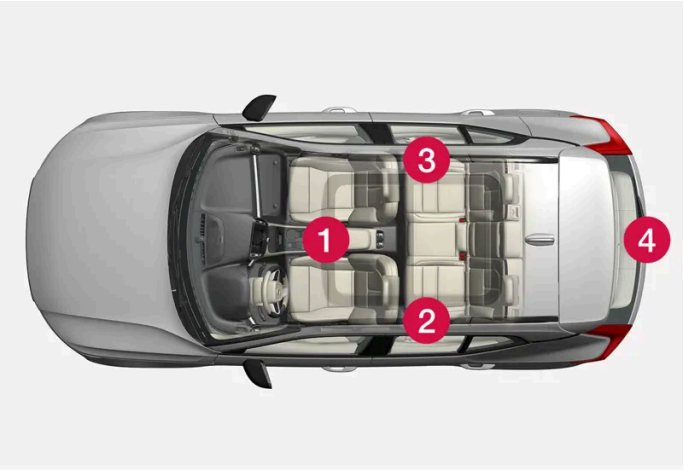
Note

Pay attention to the possibility that the system may be activated in a car wash if the key is within range.

* Option/accessory.

9.2.1.2. Antenna locations for the start and lock systems

An antenna for the keyless starting system and antennas for the keyless locking system* are built into the car.



Antenna locations:

1. In the storage compartment in the tunnel console
2. In the upper front section of the left-hand rear door[1]
3. In the upper front section of the right-hand rear door[1]
4. In the cargo area[1]

Warning

People with an implanted pacemaker should keep it at a distance of at least 22 cm (9 inches) away from the antennas to prevent interference between the pacemaker and the key system.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only in cars equipped with keyless locking and unlocking*.

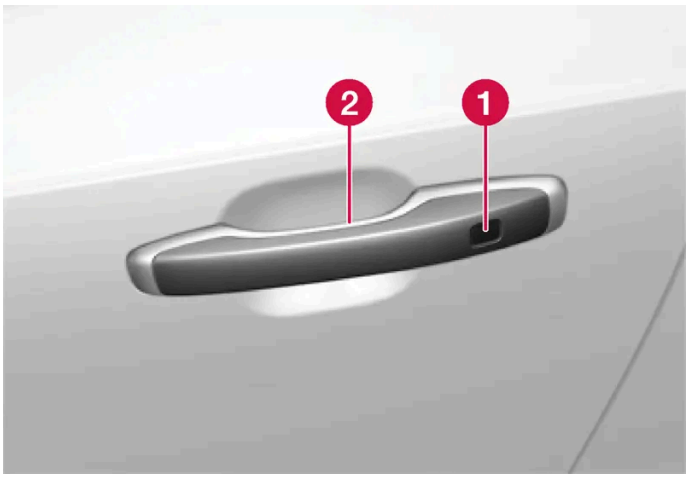
9.2.1.3. Keyless locking and unlocking with touch-sensitive surfaces*

With the keyless locking and unlocking function, there is no need to use the key's buttons – the key just needs to be near the car. The car is locked or unlocked via a touch-sensitive surface on the door handle.

Touch-sensitive surfaces

Door handle

The outside of the door handles contains a recess for locking, while the inside contains a touch-sensitive surface for unlocking.



1 Touch-sensitive recess for locking

2 Touch-sensitive surface for unlocking

> **Note**
>
> It is important that only one touch-sensitive surface is activated at a time. Gripping the handle while touching the lock surface risks giving double commands. This means that the requested activity (locking/unlocking) will not be executed, or will be executed with a delay.

Tailgate handle

The tailgate handle has a rubberised pressure plate underneath that is only used for unlocking.

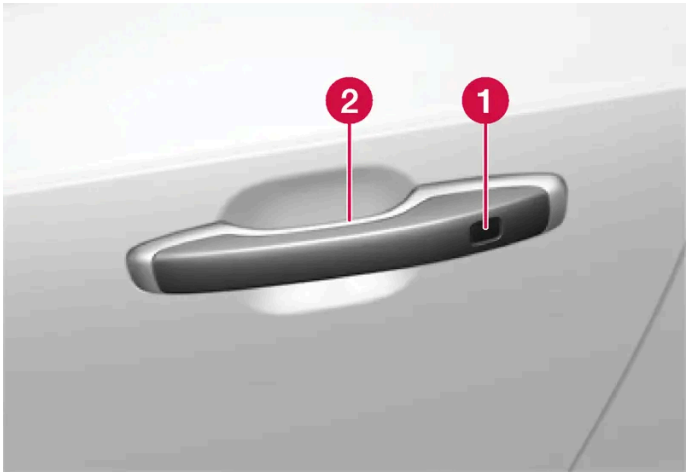
> **Note**
>
> Be aware that the system may be activated in connection with car washing if the key is in range.

* Option/accessory.

9.2.1.4. Keyless locking and unlocking*

With keyless locking and unlocking, it is sufficient to touch the door handle's touch-sensitive surface to lock or unlock the car.

> **Note**
>
> One of the car's keys must be within range for locking and unlocking to work.



1 Touch-sensitive recess for locking

2 Touch-sensitive surface for unlocking

> **Note**
>
> Be aware that the system may be activated in connection with car washing if the key is in range.

Keyless locking

All side doors must be closed to be able to lock the car. The tailgate, on the other hand, can be open when locking the car with a side door handle.

1 Touch the marked surface towards the rear on the outside of a door handle after the door has been closed. Or press the button on the underside of the tailgate before it closes.

> The lock indicator on the instrument panel starts to flash to indicate the car is locked.

To close all side windows and the panoramic roof* simultaneously - place a finger against the touch-sensitive recess on the outside of the door handle and hold it there until all of the side windows and the panoramic roof have been closed.

Locking when the tailgate is open

If the car has been locked and the tailgate is still open, make sure that the key is not left in the cargo area when the tailgate is closed.

> **Note**
>
> If the key is detected inside the car, the tailgate will not lock when it is closed.

Keyless unlocking

1 Grasp a door handle or gently press the rubberised pressure plate beneath the tailgate handle to unlock the car.

> The lock indicator on the instrument panel stops flashing to indicate that the car is unlocked.

Automatic relocking

If none of the doors or the tailgate is opened within 2 minutes of unlocking, they are locked automatically. This function prevents the car from being left unlocked unintentionally.

* Option/accessory.

9.2.1.5. Settings for Keyless entry*

It is possible to select different sequences for Keyless entry.

1 Press ⚙ in the centre display.

2 Press **Controls**.

3 Select setting for unlocking.

* Option/accessory.

9.2.1.6. Closing and locking tailgate with button*

The buttons on the underside of the tailgate can close and lock the car automatically.

Location of the button/buttons on the underside of the tailgate.

> **Important**
>
> During manual tailgate operation, open or close it slowly. Do not use force to open/close it if there is resistance. It may be damaged and stop working correctly.

Closing[1]

1 Press the button on the underside of the tailgate.

> The tailgate closes automatically and remains unlocked.

> **Note**
>
> - The button is active 24 hours after the hatch has been left open. Thereafter, it must be closed manually.
> - If the flap has been open for more than 30 minutes, it will close at a slow speed.

Closing and locking[2]

1 Press the button on the underside of the tailgate.

> The tailgate is closed automatically and the car is locked[3].

Note

- One of the car's keys must be within range for locking and unlocking to work.
- When using keyless* locking or closing, three signals will sound if the key is not sufficiently close to the tailgate.

Cancel closing

- Press the button on the instrument panel.
- Press the key's button.
- Press the closing button on the underside of the tailgate[1].
- Press the rubberised pressure plate beneath the outside handle.
- Using a foot movement*.

The tailgate's movement is interrupted and stops. The tailgate can then be operated manually.

If the tailgate is stopped close to closed position, the next activation will open the tailgate.

Pinch protection

If something with sufficient resistance prevents the tailgate from opening or closing then the pinch protection is activated.

- During opening - movement is interrupted, the tailgate stops and a long acoustic signal sounds.
- During closing - movement is interrupted, the tailgate stops, a long acoustic signal sounds and the tailgate returns to the programmed max. position.

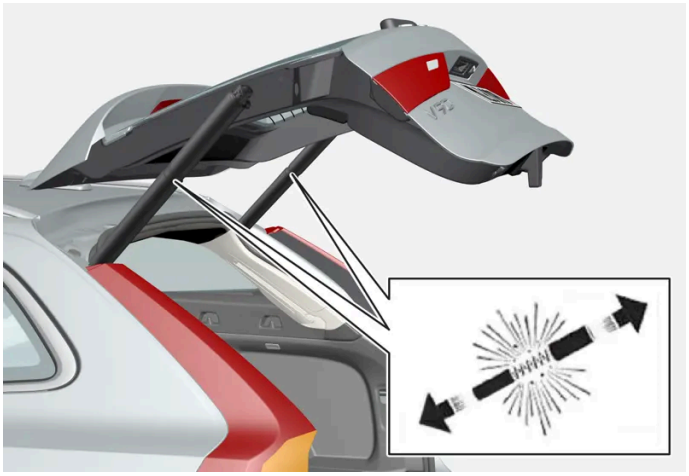
Warning

Watch out for the risk of crushing when opening and closing.

Check that there is nobody near the tailgate before starting to open or close it as a crush injury may have severe consequences.

Always operate the tailgate with caution.

Pre-tensioned springs



The pre-tensioned springs for the power operated tailgate.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not open the pre-tensioned springs for the power operated tailgate. They are pre-tensioned with high pressure and can cause injury if opened.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to cars with power operated boot lid.

[2] Applies to cars with keyless locking/unlocking and power operated tailgate.

[3] All doors must be closed for locking the car.

9.2.1.7. Keyless unlocking of the tailgate*

With keyless locking and unlocking, it is sufficient to press lightly on the rubberised pressure plate underneath by the tailgate's handle to unlock.

> **Note**
>
> One of the car's keys must be within range behind the car for unlocking to work.

The tailgate is held closed by an electrical lock.

To open:

1 Press gently on the rubberised pressure plate beneath the tailgate handle.

> The lock is released.

2 Lift by the outside handle in order to open the tailgate.

> **Important**
>
> - Handle the rubber panel with care to avoid damage to its electrical contact. Minimal force is required for activation.
> - Do not exert the lifting force on the rubber panel when opening – lift the handle.

It is also possible to unlock the tailgate with a foot movement* under the rear bumper, see separate section.

* Option/accessory.

9.2.2. Keys

The car's keys lock and unlock the car. When a key is within the front part of the passenger compartment, the car can be started.

Available key types are standard key, Key Tag*, and Care Key. [1]

The standard key and Care Key are equipped with buttons. Additional keys to the number included as standard can be ordered. For cars equipped with keyless locking and unlocking*, a slightly smaller, lighter and button-less key (Key Tag) can be purchased as an accessory.

To start the car, a key needs to be within the front part of the passenger compartment.

For cars equipped with keyless locking and unlocking (Passive Entry)* the key can be anywhere in the car to start the car.

These keys can be linked to different driver profiles to save personal preferences in the car.

Warning

The key contains a button cell battery. Keep new and used batteries out of the reach of children. If someone swallows a battery it may cause serious injury.

If damage is discovered, e.g. if the battery cover cannot be closed properly, then the product should not be used. Keep defective products out of the reach of children.

The key's buttons

The key has four buttons – one on the left-hand side and three on the right-hand side.

Locking

One press on the button locks the car and arms the alarm*.

One long press closes all windows as well as the panoramic roof*.

Unlocking

One press on the button unlocks the car and disarms the alarm*. One long press opens all windows simultaneously. This can be used, for example, to quickly air a hot car before getting into it.

Tailgate

One press on the button disarms the alarm* and unlocks the tailgate. On cars with power operated tailgate*, the tailgate is opened or closed with one long press. An acoustic warning signal sounds when the tailgate is opened or closed.

Panic function

The panic function is used to attract attention in an emergency. Press and hold the button for at least 3 seconds or press it twice within 3 seconds to activate the car's direction indicators and the horn. The function can be switched off using the unlock button after it has been active for at least 5 seconds. Otherwise it is deactivated automatically after 2 minutes and 45 seconds.

Warning

Watch out for the risk of crushing when opening and closing.

- Always operate with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the controls.
- Never leave children alone in the car.
- Remember that the power windows can also be operated even if key has been removed from the car, as long as the seat sensor detects that the driver's seat is occupied. The driver's door must be open and the driver's seat unoccupied in order to switch off the power to the power windows. The power windows can be reactivated via the centre display, even if the key has been removed from the car and the seat sensor does not detect that the driver's seat is occupied.
- Never put an object or part of the body through the windows, even if the car's electrical system is fully disconnected.

Note

A key that has been locked in the car is temporarily deactivated and cannot be used before the car has been unlocked using another valid key. The double lock function is also deactivated.

Button-less key (Key Tag)*

A Key Tag can be ordered as an accessory for cars equipped with the keyless locking and unlocking function. Starting and key-less locking and unlocking work in the same way as with the standard key. The key is waterproof to a depth of approx. 10 metres (30 feet) for up to 60 minutes. It does not have extending key blade, and the battery cannot be replaced.

Care Key

You can set a speed limit that is active when the Care Key is used. The limitation is intended to encourage the car to be driven in a safe manner, e.g. when being loaned out.

If the active key is removed from the car

If the key is removed from the car when the engine is running, the warning message, **The car key is not detected. See Owner's Manual for more information.**, is shown in the driver display and an acoustic reminder sounds when the last door is closed.

The message disappears when the key is returned to the car, followed by a press of the right-hand keypad's O button, or when all of the doors have been closed.

Interference

Key functions for keyless starting and keyless locking and unlocking* can be disrupted by electromagnetic fields and screening.

> **Note**
>
> Avoid storing the car's keys close to metal objects or electronics (e.g. mobile phones, tablets, laptops or chargers). Preferably no closer than 10-15 cm (4-6 inches).

If there is still interference - use the key's detachable key blade to unlock. Then place the key in the back-up reader in the tunnel console's storage compartment to disarm the alarm and allow the car to be started.

> **Note**
>
> When the key shall be read by the back-up reader, make sure that the storage compartment is separate from other nearby car keys, metal objects and electronics (e.g. mobile phones, tablets, laptops or chargers). These objects may disrupt the functions.

* Option/accessory.

[1] The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

9.2.3. Locking and unlocking using the key's buttons

The buttons on the key can be used to lock and unlock all doors and the tailgate simultaneously.

Locking using the key's buttons

1 Press the button to lock the car.

The driver's door must be closed in order for the lock sequence to be activated[1]. If any of the other doors or the tailgate is open, then these are not locked and their alarms armed* until they are closed. The alarm's movement detectors* are activated when all the doors and the tailgate are closed and locked.

> **Note**
>
> A key that has been locked in the car is temporarily deactivated and cannot be used before the car has been unlocked using another valid key. The double lock function is also deactivated.

Locking when the tailgate is open

> **Note**
>
> If the car has been locked while the tailgate is open, be careful not to leave the key in the cargo area when the tailgate is closed[1].

Unlocking using the key's buttons

1 Press the button to unlock the car.

Automatic relocking

If none of the doors or the tailgate is opened within 2 minutes of unlocking, they are locked automatically. This function prevents the car from being left unlocked unintentionally.

If the key is not working

If the key's buttons stop working then its battery may be discharged – in which case, replace the battery or use the detachable key blade.

* Option/accessory.

[1] If the car is equipped with keyless locking/unlocking* then all side doors must be closed.

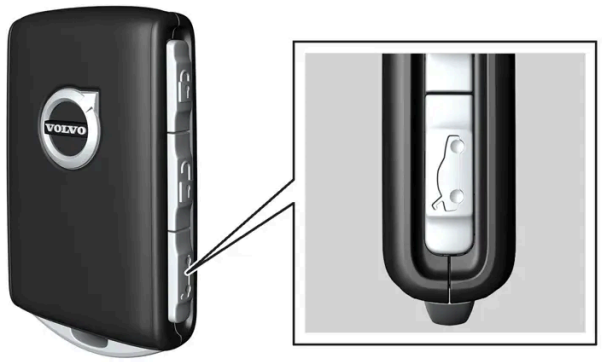
9.2.4. Settings for unlocking

It is possible to select different sequences for unlocking.

1. Press ⚙ in the centre display.
2. Press **Controls**.
3. Select setting for unlocking.

9.2.5. Unlocking the tailgate with a key button

There is a button on the key to unlock the tailgate only.



The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

1 Press the key's button.

> The tailgate is unlocked but remains closed.
The side doors are still locked and the alarm is armed*. The lock and alarm indicator on the instrument panel extinguishes in order to show that the entire car is not locked.
You can open the tailgate by gripping the rubberised pressure plate underneath its lower edge.
If the tailgate is not opened within 2 minutes then it is relocked and the alarm is re-armed.

Power operated tailgate*

1 Hold the key's button depressed for a couple of seconds.

> The tailgate is unlocked and opened, while the side doors remain locked and their alarm functions armed*.

Note

If the system for the power operated tailgate* works continuously for a long time, it is deactivated in order not to overload it. It can be used again after a few minutes.

* Option/accessory.

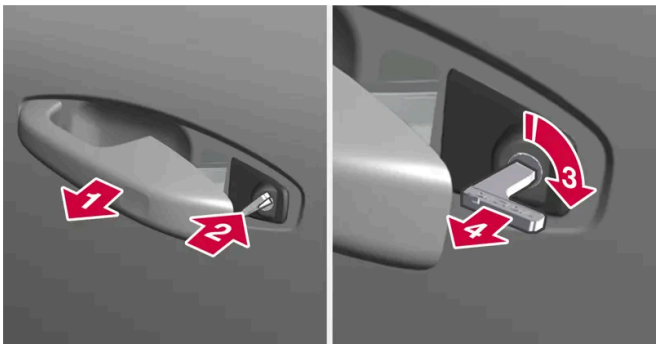
9.2.6. Locking and unlocking with the detachable key blade

The detachable key blade can be used to unlock one of the car's doors from the outside – such as if the battery in the key is discharged.

Unlocking with the key blade

Note

When the door is unlocked using the key blade and is then opened, the alarm is triggered. The alarm must be deactivated manually, see separate section.

1 

1

Pull out the front door's handle on the left-hand side of the car to its end position.[1]

2 2

Insert the key.

3 3

Turn clockwise 45 degrees so that the key is pointing straight back.

4 4

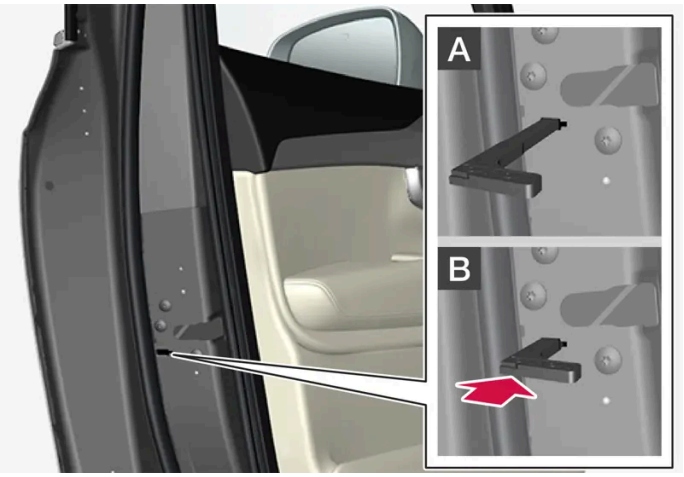
Turn the key back 45 degrees to its starting position and remove it.

> The door can be opened using the handle.

Locking with the key blade

The left-hand front door can be locked using the detachable key blade.

Other doors have a lock reset on the end face that must be pressed in using the key blade. Then they are mechanically locked against opening from the outside, but can be opened from the inside.



Manual locking of the door. Not to be mixed up with child locks.

1. Remove the detachable key blade from the key with buttons.
2. Insert the key blade in the hole for lock reset.
3. Press in the key until it bottoms – approximately 12 mm (0.5 inches).

A The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.

B The door is blocked against opening from the outside. To return to position A, the inner door handle must be opened.

Note

- A door's lock reset only locks that particular door - not all doors simultaneously.
- A manually locked rear door with enabled child lock cannot be opened from either insider or outside. Unlocking is possible using the buttons on the key, the central locking button, the keyless locking system* or by using the Volvo Cars app.

[1] This applies whether the car is right-hand drive or left-hand drive.

* Option/accessory.

9.2.7. Automatic locking when driving

When the car starts to drive, the doors and tailgate are locked automatically for safety reasons.

The doors can still be opened from the inside during automatic locking when driving. Either all doors are unlocked, or just the door being opened, depending on the lock settings.

Note

You will need to use the child lock to prevent a rear door from being opened from inside the car.

Note

In the event of a collision, the car unlocks all doors for safety reasons. This only happens if any of the safety systems have deployed.

9.2.8. Double lock*

Double lock means that all of the car's opening handles are disengaged when the car is locked from the outside. None of the internal or external handles can then open the car until it has been unlocked again.

Warning

Do not lock the car from the outside while there is anyone left in the car. Double lock means that the car cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside.

Double lock is activated when locking with a key button or with keyless locking*, and takes place with a delay of approx. 10 seconds after the doors have locked. If a door is opened within the delay time then the sequence is interrupted and the alarm is deactivated.

The car can only be unlocked with the key, keyless unlocking* or with the Volvo Cars app* when deadlocks are activated.

The front left door can also be unlocked with the detachable key blade. If the car is unlocked with the detachable key blade, the alarm will be triggered.

* Option/accessory.

9.2.9. Setting the max. opening for electrically operated tailgate*

Set the amount the tailgate should be opened if the car is, for example, parked in a garage with limited headroom.

To adjust max. opening

1 Open the tailgate manually - and stop it in the desired opening position.

2 Press and hold button on the bottom of the tailgate for approx. 3 seconds.

> Two acoustic signals sound to indicate that the set position has been saved.

Note

It is not possible to program an opening position lower than half-open tailgate.

Reset max. opening

1 Open the tailgate manually to the fully open position.

2 Press and hold the button on the underside of the tailgate for approx. 3 seconds.

> Two acoustic signals sound to indicate that the set position has been cleared.

* Option/accessory.

9.2.10. Locking and unlocking from inside the car

There are several buttons and locking controls on the inside of the car.

Central locking

Locking and unlocking button with indicator lamp in the front door.

Unlocking using a button in the front door

1 Press the button to unlock all side doors and the tailgate.

Unlocking with the inside door handles

1 Pull the opening handle on one of the side doors and release.

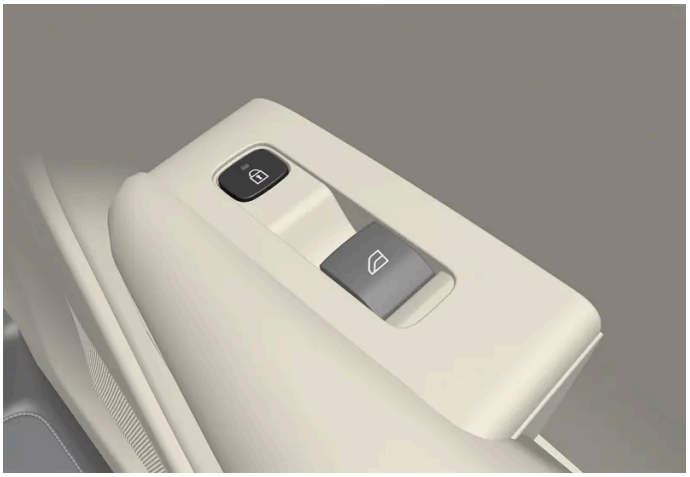
> Depending on the settings for unlocking, either all doors will be unlocked or the selected door will be unlocked and opened.

Locking using a button in the front door

1 Press the button - both front doors must be closed.

> All doors and the tailgate are locked.

Locking using a button in the rear door*



Locking button with indicator lamp in the rear door.

The rear door lock buttons lock their respective rear door.

Unlocking the rear door

1 Pull the opening handle.

> The rear door is unlocked and opened [1].

* Option/accessory.

[1] Provided that the child lock is not activated.

9.2.11. Unlocking the tailgate from the inside of the car

The tailgate can be unlocked from inside the car using a button beside the steering wheel on the instrument panel.

1 Press the button on the instrument panel.

> The tailgate is unlocked and can be opened from the outside.

With the power operated tailgate option*:

1 Hold the instrument panel's button depressed for a couple of seconds.

> The tailgate is opened.
The same button can then be used to close the tailgate.

Note

If the system for the power operated tailgate* works continuously for a long time, it is deactivated in order not to overload it. It can be used again after a few minutes.

* Option/accessory.

9.2.12. Locking and unlocking

The car can be locked and unlocked in several different ways.

The options are:

- with the key's buttons
- using the detachable key blade (if the battery in the key is discharged)
- keyless* (the car detects that a key is within range)
- from the inside of the car with the door handles and lock buttons
- through remote unlocking with the Volvo Cars app
- automatic locking when the car is driven.

Note

In the event of a collision, the car unlocks all doors for safety reasons. This only happens if any of the safety systems have deployed.

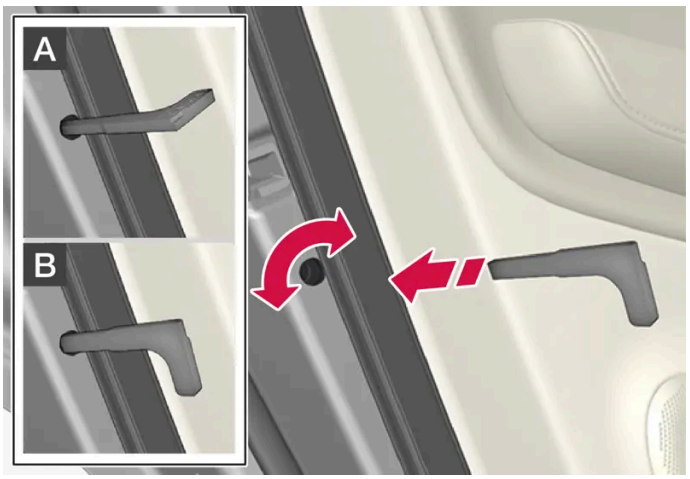
* Option/accessory.

9.2.13. Activating and deactivating child safety locks

The child safety lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from inside. With electric child safety locks, power window operation from the rear seat is also prevented.

The child lock can be either manual or electrical*.

Manual child lock



Manual child lock. Not to be confused with manual door locks.

1 Use the key's detachable key blade to turn the knob.

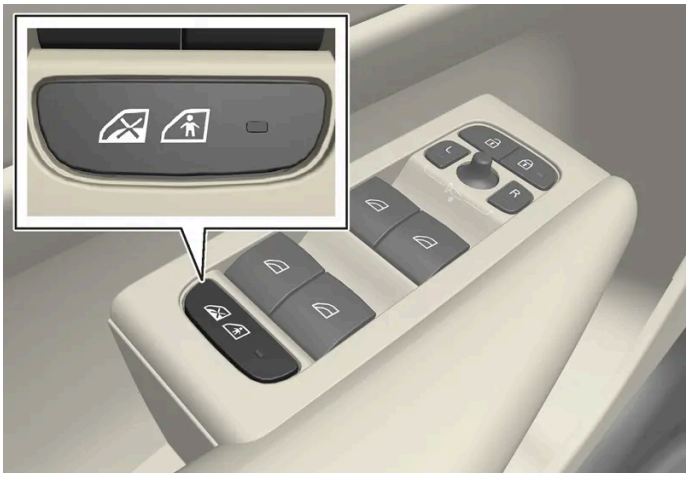
A The door is blocked against opening from the inside.

B The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.

> **Note**
>
> - A door's knob control only blocks that particular door - not both rear doors simultaneously.
> - Cars with an electric child safety lock do not have a manual child lock.

Electric child lock*

The electric child lock can be activated and deactivated in all ignition positions above **0**. Activation and deactivation can be performed up to 2 minutes after switching off the car, provided that no door is opened.



Activation and deactivation button.

Rear child safety lock enabled

When the lamp in the button is illuminated, the child safety lock is enabled.

If the child lock is activated when the car is switched off, it will remain activated the next time the car is started.

- Rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.
- Rear power windows can only be operated from the driver's door.

Rear child safety lock disabled

When the lamp in the button is extinguished, the child safety lock is inactivated.

- Rear doors can be opened from the inside and power windows operated from the rear seat.

Symbols and messages

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Rear child lock activated	The child lock is activated.
	Rear child lock deactivated	The child lock is deactivated.

* Option/accessory.

9.2.14. Lock confirmation

The car indicates when it is locked or unlocked. How it is indicated depends on the settings for lock indication and door mirrors.

Exterior indication

Locking

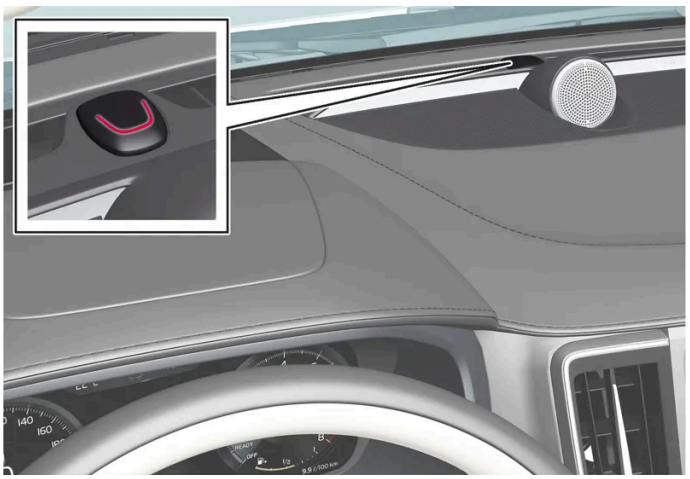
- The car's hazard warning flashers indicate locking by flashing and retracting the door mirrors [1].

Unlocking

- The car's hazard warning flashers indicate unlocking by two flashes and extending the door mirrors [1].

All doors, the tailgate and the bonnet must be closed for the car to indicate that it is locked. If locking takes place with just the driver door closed [2], locking will take place but the lock indication with hazard warning flashers will only take place when all doors, the tailgate and the bonnet have been closed.

Lock and alarm indicator on the instrument panel



The lock and alarm indicator shows the status of the locking system:

- A long flash indicates locking.
- Short flashes indicate that the car is locked.
- Rapid flashes after disarming the alarm* indicate that the alarm has been triggered.

Indication in lock buttons

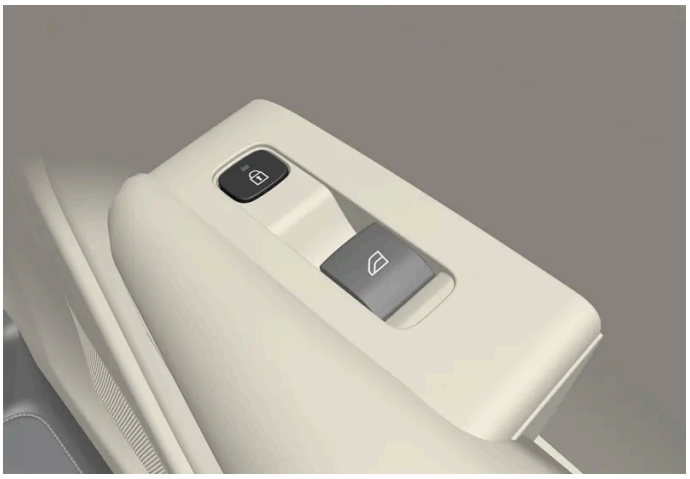
Front door

Lock buttons with indicator lamp in the front door.

An illuminated indicator lamp in the lock button of either front door indicates that all doors are locked. If any door is opened, the lamp will extinguish in both doors.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Rear door*



Lock button with indicator lamp in the rear door.

An illuminated indicator lamp in the lock button for one of the doors indicates that the door in question is locked. If any door is unlocked, its lamp will extinguish while the others will continue to illuminate.

Other indication

The home safe lighting and approach light functions can also be activated when locking and unlocking.

Retraction/extension of door mirrors can also be used as an aid to indicate locking/unlocking.

[1] Only for cars with retractable power door mirrors.

* Option/accessory.

[2] Not possible with keyless locking*.

9.2.15. Lock indication setting

It is possible to select various options for how the car confirms locking and unlocking in the settings menu in the centre display.

1. Press ⚙ in the centre display.
2. Press **Controls**.
3. Choose to activate or deactivate confirmation for locking/unlocking.

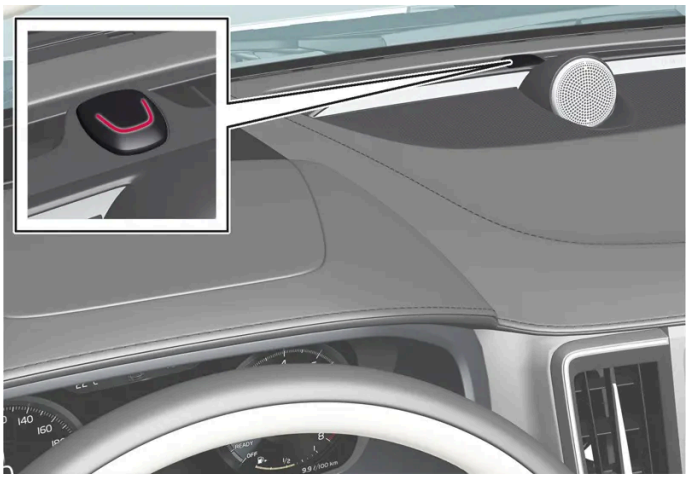
The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

9.3. Alarm

9.3.1. Alarm*

The alarm provides audible and visual warnings if anyone enters the car without a valid key or tampers with the battery or alarm siren.

Alarm indicator



A red LED on the instrument panel indicates the alarm system's status:

- LED not lit – alarm not armed.
- The LED flashes once every other second – alarm is armed.
- After the alarm has been disarmed, the LED flashes rapidly for a maximum of 30 seconds or until ignition position I has been activated - the alarm has been triggered.

When armed, the alarm is triggered if:

- a door, the bonnet or the tailgate is opened [1]
- a movement is detected in the passenger compartment (if fitted with a movement detector*)
- the car is raised or towed away (if fitted with a tilt detector*)
- the battery is disconnected
- the siren is disconnected.

Alarm signals

When the alarm has been triggered, the following happens:

- A siren sounds for 30 seconds or until the alarm is switched off.
- Hazard warning flashers flash for 5 minutes or until the alarm is switched off.

If the cause of alarm activation is not rectified, the alarm cycle is repeated up to 10 times [1].

Movement and tilt sensors*

Movement and tilt detectors react to movements inside the car[2] e.g. if the window is broken or if anyone tries to tow the car away.

To avoid triggering the alarm unintentionally:

- Close all windows when leaving the car.
- Close the panoramic roof.
- If the climate control is used – aim the airflow so that it does not point upwards in the passenger compartment.

It is also possible to reduce the alarm level in the centre display.

Symbols and messages

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Alarm system failure Service required	Contact a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

> **Note**
>
> Do not attempt to repair or alter components in the alarm system yourself. Any such attempts may affect the terms of the insurance.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

[2] Airflows from the climate control are also registered.

9.3.2. Activating and deactivating alarms*

The alarm is activated when the car is locked, and is deactivated when the car is unlocked. It is also possible to deactivate the alarm without a working key.

Activating and deactivating alarms

The alarm is activated when the car is locked, and is deactivated when the car is unlocked.

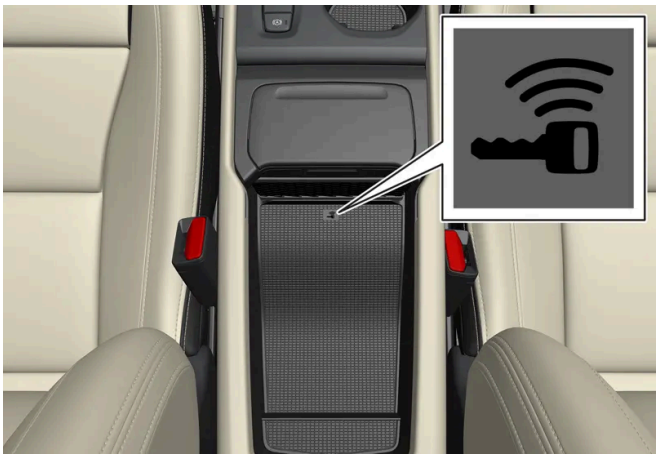
> **Note**
>
> It is not possible to lock the car without activating the alarm. If the car is parked on a ferry, for example, the function for reduced alarm level should be used instead.

Deactivate the alarm without a functioning key

The car can be unlocked and disarmed even if the key does not work, e.g. if its battery is dead.

1 Open the driver's door with the detachable key blade.

> The alarm is triggered.

2 

Place the key on the key symbol in the backup reader in the tunnel console's storage compartment.

3 Depress the brake pedal and select a gear.

> The alarm is deactivated.

> **Note**
>
> When the key shall be read by the back-up reader, make sure that the storage compartment is separate from other nearby car keys, metal objects and electronics (e.g. mobile phones, tablets, laptops or chargers). These objects may disrupt the functions.

Switching off a triggered alarm

1 Press the key's unlock button or depress the brake pedal and select a gear.

* Option/accessory.

9.3.3. Reduced alarm level*

Reduced alarm level switches off certain types of alarm sensors so that a false alarm is not triggered, e.g. when travelling on a car ferry.

The alarm's movement and tilt detectors are deactivated when reduced alarm level is activated. The alarm then does not react to movement inside the car.

The function can be activated via the centre display when the unlocking the car.

Reduced alarm level is deactivated after each usage and must then be reactivated.

Activating reduced alarm level in the car's centre display

1. Select ⚙.
2. Select **Controls**.
3. Activate **Reduced alarm mode**.

> The function is active until the car is driven, and must then be reactivated.
> Reduced alarm level can also be deactivated in the settings menu.

* Option/accessory.

10. Driver support

10.1. Cruise control functions

10.1.1. Cruise control

10.1.1.1. Cruise control

The cruise control (CC[1]) helps the driver maintain an even speed, which can result in more relaxed driving on motorways and long, straight roads in regular traffic flows.
Cruise control is not available in cars equipped with Pilot Assist.

Using engine braking instead of the foot brake

With Cruise Control, speed is regulated with less frequent application of the foot brake. On a downhill gradient, it may sometimes be desirable to start moving a little faster and instead limit the acceleration by engine braking. In this case the driver can temporarily disable foot brake application by Cruise Control.

To do so, proceed as follows:

1 Depress the accelerator pedal about halfway down and release.

> Cruise Control will disengage its automatic foot braking and then uses engine braking only.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

[1] Cruise Control

10.1.1.2. Standby mode for cruise control

Cruise control (CC[1]) can be deactivated and set in standby mode. This can take place automatically or be done by the driver.

Standby mode means that the function is selected in the driver display but not activated. The symbol in the driver display is extinguished and cruise control does not then regulate the speed.

Standby mode on driver intervention

Cruise control is deactivated and set to standby mode if any of the following occur:

- The foot brake is used.
- The gear selector is moved to **N** position.
- The driver maintains a speed higher than the stored speed for longer than 1 minute.

The driver must then control the speed himself/herself.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Automatic standby mode

Activation of automatic standby mode can be due to one of the following:

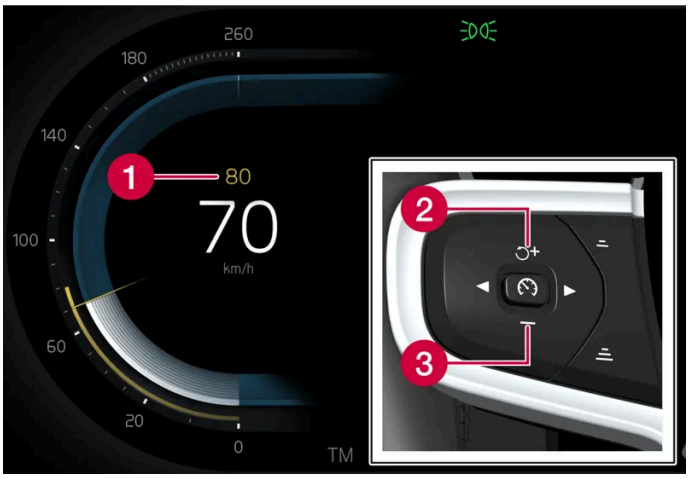
- The wheels are losing traction.
- The engine speed is too low/high.
- Brake temperature is too high.
- Speed falls below 30 km/h (20 mph).

The driver must then control the speed himself/herself.

[1] Cruise Control

10.1.1.3. Setting the stored speed for cruise control functions

It is possible to set stored speed for the speed limiter, cruise control and Pilot Assist* functions.



1. Stored speed
2. + : Increases the stored speed
3. − : Reduces stored speed

1 Change a set speed with short presses on the steering wheel buttons + (1) or − (2) or by pressing and holding them.

- **Short** presses: Each press changes the speed in increments of +/- 5 km/h (+/- 5 mph).
- **Press** and **hold**: Release the button when the speed indicator (3) has moved to the desired speed.

> The speed set after the last button press is stored in the memory.

Effect of the accelerator pedal

If the driver increases the car's speed using the accelerator pedal before pressing the steering wheel button + (1), the speed stored will be the car's speed when the button is depressed, provided the driver's foot is on the accelerator pedal at the moment when the button is depressed.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Possible speed

Automatic gearbox

The driver support functions can follow another vehicle at speeds from 0 km/h up to the maximum speed of the car.

Pilot Assist can give steering assistance from almost stationary up to 140 km/h (87 mph).

Note that the lowest programmable speed is 30 km/h (20 mph) – even though it is capable of following another vehicle down to 0 km/h, a speed lower than 30 km/h (20 mph) cannot be selected/stored.

* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

10.1.2. Pilot Assist

10.1.2.1. Automatic braking with cruise control functions

The driver support Pilot Assist* has a special brake function in slow traffic and while stationary. In certain situations, the parking brake is applied in order to keep the car stationary.

Brake function in slow queues and while stationary

For shorter stops in connection with creep mode in slow traffic or at traffic lights, driving is automatically resumed if the stops do not exceed approx. 3 seconds - if it takes longer before the vehicle in front starts moving again then the driver support function is set in standby mode with automatic braking.

1 The function is reactivated in one of the following ways:

- Press the steering wheel button .
- Depress the accelerator pedal.

> The function resumes following the vehicle ahead if it starts moving forward within approx. 6 seconds.

Warning

A significant increase in speed may follow when the speed is resumed with the steering wheel button.

Warning

Driver supports only warn of obstacles which their radar unit has detected – hence a warning may not be given, or it may be given with a certain delay.

- Never wait for a warning or intervention. Apply the brakes when the situation requires.

Note

The driver supports can hold the car stationary for a maximum of 10 minutes – then the parking brake is applied and the function is disengaged.

Before the driver supports can be reactivated, the parking brake must be released.

Cessation of automatic braking

In some situations, automatic braking ceases on coming to a standstill and the function is set in standby mode. This means that the brakes are released and the car may start to roll - the driver must therefore intervene and brake the car himself/herself to keep it stationary.

This may take place in any of the following situations:

- The driver puts his/her foot on the brake pedal.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The gear selector is moved to P, N, or R position.
- The driver sets Pilot Assist in standby mode.

Automatic activation of parking brake

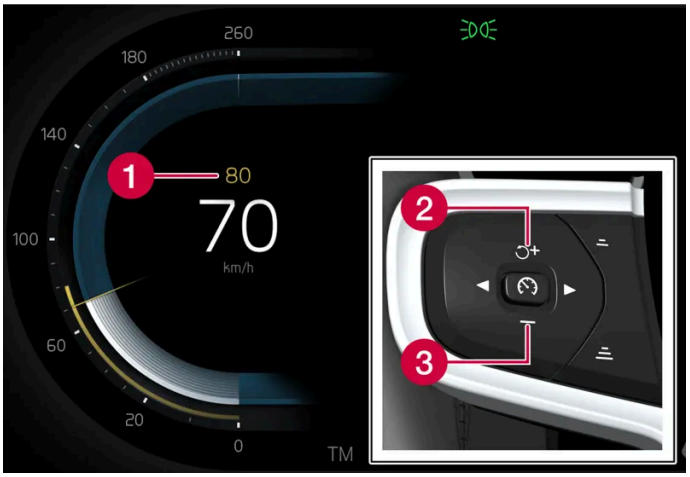
The Parking brake is applied if the function is holding the car stationary with the foot brake and:

- The driver opens the door or takes off his/her seatbelt.
- The function has kept the car stationary for more than approx. 10 minutes.
- The brakes have overheated.
- The driver switches the engine off.

* Option/accessory.

10.1.2.2. Setting the stored speed for cruise control functions

It is possible to set stored speed for the speed limiter, cruise control and Pilot Assist* functions.



1. Stored speed
2. + : Increases the stored speed
3. − : Reduces stored speed

1 Change a set speed with short presses on the steering wheel buttons + (1) or − (2) or by pressing and holding them.

- **Short** presses: Each press changes the speed in increments of +/- 5 km/h (+/- 5 mph).
- **Press** and **hold**: Release the button when the speed indicator (3) has moved to the desired speed.

> The speed set after the last button press is stored in the memory.

Effect of the accelerator pedal

If the driver increases the car's speed using the accelerator pedal before pressing the steering wheel button + (1), the speed stored will be the car's speed when the button is depressed, provided the driver's foot is on the accelerator pedal at the moment when the button is depressed.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Possible speed

Automatic gearbox

The driver support functions can follow another vehicle at speeds from 0 km/h up to the maximum speed of the car.

Pilot Assist can give steering assistance from almost stationary up to 140 km/h (87 mph).

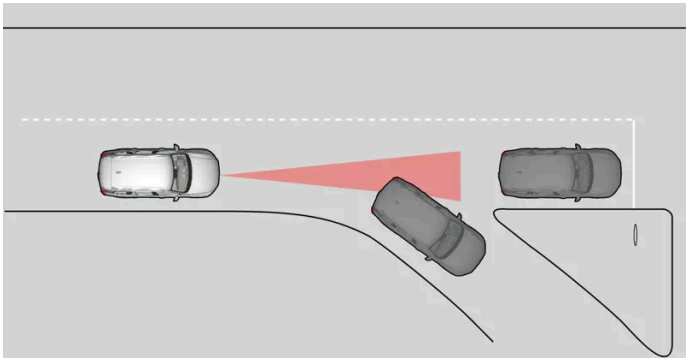
Note that the lowest programmable speed is 30 km/h (20 mph) – even though it is capable of following another vehicle down to 0 km/h, a speed lower than 30 km/h (20 mph) cannot be selected/stored.

* Option/accessory.

10.1.2.3. Change of target with cruise control functions

In combination with automatic gearbox, the driver support Pilot Assist* has functionality for change of target at certain speeds.

Change of target



If the target vehicle in front suddenly turns then there may be stationary traffic in front.

When Pilot Assist is following another vehicle at speeds **below** 30 km/h (20 mph) and changes target vehicle from a moving to a stationary vehicle, Pilot Assist will slow down for the stationary vehicle.

> **Warning**
>
> When Pilot Assist is following another vehicle at speeds **in excess of** approx. 30 km/h (20 mph) and the target is changed from a moving vehicle to a stationary vehicle, Pilot Assist will **ignore** the stationary vehicle and instead accelerate to the stored speed.
>
> - The driver must then intervene him/herself and brake.

Automatic standby mode with change of target

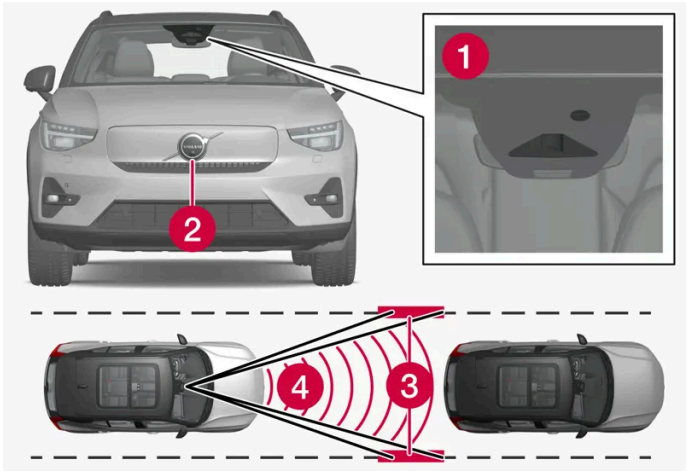
Pilot Assist is disengaged and set in standby mode:

- when the speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and Pilot Assist is uncertain whether the target object is a stationary vehicle or some other object, e.g. a speed bump.
- when the speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle ahead turns off so that Pilot Assist no longer has a vehicle to follow.

* Option/accessory.

10.1.2.4. Pilot Assist*

Pilot Assist[1] can help the driver to maintain a constant speed, combined with a preselected time interval from the vehicle ahead. Pilot Assist can also help the driver to keep the car within the lane markings.



The camera and radar units measure the distance to the vehicle ahead and detect lane markings.

1. Camera unit
2. Radar unit
3. Reading edge markings
4. Reading distance

Get to know Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist helps to control your car and you may need to drive a few kilometres with Pilot Assist before you feel completely at home with the function. It is important to know about all of the function's applications and limitations in order to safely use all of the advantages.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

The Pilot Assist function is primarily intended for use on motorways and similar major roads where it can contribute to more comfortable driving and a more relaxed driving experience.

The driver selects the desired speed and a time interval to the vehicle ahead. Pilot Assist scans the distance to the vehicle ahead and the lane's side markings on the road surface using the camera unit. The preset time interval is maintained with automatic speed adjustment whilst the steering assistance helps to position the car in the lane.

Pilot Assist regulates the speed with acceleration and braking. It is normal for the brakes to emit a low sound when they are being used to adjust the speed.

Pilot Assist strives to:

- regulate the speed smoothly. In situations that demand sudden braking the driver must brake himself/herself. This applies in cases of large speed differences or if the car in front brakes suddenly. Due to the limitations of the camera and radar unit, braking may come unexpectedly or not at all.
- follow the vehicle ahead in the same lane at a time interval set by the driver. If the radar unit cannot see any vehicle ahead then the car will instead maintain the maximum speed selected by the driver. This also takes place if the speed of the vehicle ahead increases and exceeds the selected maximum speed.

Position of the car in the lane *

When Pilot Assist helps to steer, it attempts to place the car halfway between the visible lane markings. For a smoother drive, it is a good idea to allow the car to find a good position. The driver can always adjust the position him/herself by increasing the steering input. It is important that the driver checks to make sure the car is positioned safely in the lane.

If Pilot Assist does not position the car in an appropriate way in the lane, it is recommended to turn Pilot Assist off or switch to Adaptive Cruise Control. This is done by pressing the right arrow on the steering wheel.

Steering assistance *

The current status of steering assistance is indicated by the colour of the steering wheel's symbol:

• Steering wheel lit up indicates active steering assistance

• Steering wheel extinguished (as in illustration) indicates deactivated steering assistance.

Pilot Assist steering assistance takes into account the speed of the preceding car and the lane markings. The driver can at any time adjust steering interventions from Pilot Assist and steer in another direction, e.g. to change lane or avoid an obstruction on the road. Resistance is then felt in the steering wheel as long as the steering assistance is active.

Temporary disabling of steering assistance

> **Warning**
>
> Pilot Assist steering assistance is automatically deactivated and is resumed without prior warning.

When the direction indicators are used, Pilot Assist steering assistance is temporarily disengaged. When the direction indicator is switched off, steering assistance is reactivated automatically if the lane's edge markings can still be detected.

If Pilot Assist is unable to interpret the lane clearly, e.g. if the camera unit does not see the lane's edge markings, Pilot Assist shuts off steering assistance temporarily. Adaptive Cruise Control continues to remain active. Steering assistance is resumed when the lane can be interpreted again. In these situations, slight vibration in the steering wheel may alert the driver to the fact that steering assistance has been deactivated temporarily.

Round bends and when the road splits

Pilot Assist interacts with the driver, who should therefore not wait for the steering assistance from Pilot Assist but should always be prepared to increase his/her own steering input, especially in bends.

When the car approaches an exit or if the lane splits, the driver should steer towards the desired lane so that Pilot Assist can detect the desired direction.

Hands on the steering wheel [2]

In order for Pilot Assist to function, the driver's hands must be on the steering wheel. It is also important for the driver always to carry on being active and alert when driving as Pilot Assist is unable to read all situations and the function may toggle between off and on without prior warning.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not wait for all levels of warning and assistance from the systems, but act immediately if any warning signal is triggered.

1. If Pilot Assist detects that the driver does not keep his/her hands on the steering wheel, the system gives a warning with a symbol and text message in the driver display in order to prompt the driver to actively steer the car.
2. If the driver's hands still cannot be detected on the steering wheel after a few seconds the prompt to actively steer the car is repeated supplemented by an acoustic signal.
3. If Pilot Assist cannot detect the driver's hands on the steering wheel after a further few seconds, the audible signal becomes intensive and the steering function is deactivated. Pilot Assist must then be restarted using the steering wheel button .
4. When Pilot Assist is shut off, additional audible and visual warnings are provided and the car's system brakes the car. This braking takes place in a jerky fashion in order to attract the driver's attention [3] [2]
5. The system continues to brake the car to a stop in its own lane and the hazard warning flashers come on [4]. [2]

Steep roads and/or heavy load

Bear in mind that Pilot Assist is primarily intended for use when driving on level road surfaces. The function may have difficulty in keeping the correct distance from the vehicle ahead when driving on steep downhill slopes – in which case, be extra attentive and ready to brake.

Do not use Pilot Assist if the car has a heavy load or if a trailer is connected to the car.

Pilot Assist will not provide steering assistance if anything is connected to the towbar connector.

> **Note**
>
> Pilot Assist will not provide steering assistance if something is connected to the towbar connector, like a trailer or a bicycle rack.

Read all warnings before use

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Note

This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

Important

Maintenance of driver support components must only be performed at a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Warning

In certain situations, steering assistance may have difficulty helping the driver in the right way or it may be automatically deactivated – in which case, the use of steering assistance is not recommended. Examples of such situations may be that:

- the lane markings are unclear, worn, missing, or they cross each other, or if there are several sets of lane markings.
- the lane division is changed, e.g. when the lanes split or merge, as well as on slip roads.
- at roadworks and sudden changes in the roadway, e.g. when the lines may stop marking the correct route.
- edges or other lines than lane markings are present on or near the road, e.g. kerbs, joints or repairs to the road surface, edges of barriers, roadside edges or strong shadows.
- the lane is narrow or winding.
- the lane contains ridges or holes.
- weather conditions are poor, e.g. rain, snow or fog or slush or impaired view with poor light conditions, back-lighting, wet road surface etc.

The driver should also note that Pilot Assist has the following limitations:

- High kerbs, roadside barriers, temporary obstacles (traffic cones, safety barriers, etc.) are not detected. Alternatively, they may be detected incorrectly as lane markings, with a subsequent risk of contact between the car and such obstacles. The driver must ensure him/herself that the car is at a suitable distance from such obstacles.
- The camera and radar units do not have the capacity to detect all oncoming objects and obstacles in traffic environments, e.g. potholes, stationary obstacles or objects which completely or partially block the route.
- Pilot Assist does not "see" pedestrians, animals, etc.
- The functions steering assist is force limited, which means that Pilot Assist cannot always help the driver to steer and keep the car within the lane.
- In cars equipped with map data, the function has the option of using information from map data, which may involve varied performance.
- Pilot Assist is switched off if the power steering for speed related steering force is working with reduced power – e.g. during cooling due to overheating.

Warning

Steering assistance must only be used if there are clear lane lines painted on each side of the lane. All other use involves increased risk of contact with surrounding obstacles that cannot be detected by the function.

Warning

- This is not a collision avoidance system. The driver is always responsible and must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle ahead.
- The function does not brake consistently for humans or animals, and neither for small vehicles such as bicycles and motorcycles. Nor for low trailers, oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles and objects.
- Do not use the function in demanding situations, such as in city traffic, at junctions, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads or on slip roads.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

* Option/accessory.

[1] This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

[2] The function is available in certain markets.

[3] The function may vary between countries.

[4] Regulations for the use of hazard warning flashers may vary from country to country.

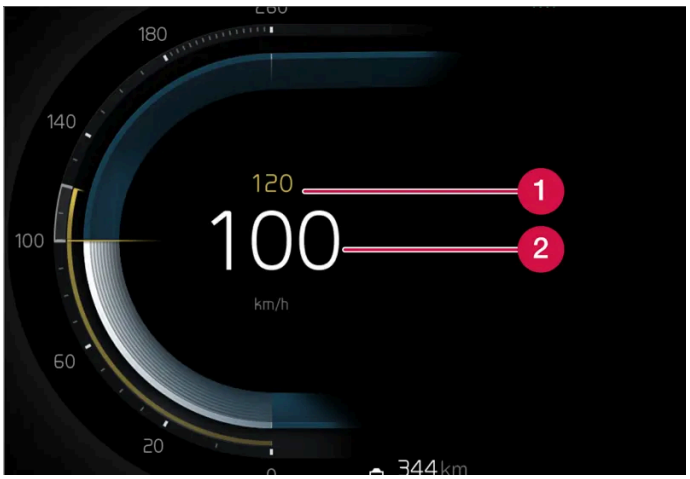
10.1.2.5. Display mode for Pilot Assist*

The following sample illustration shows how Pilot Assist* and Adaptive Cruise Control[1] can be shown in the driver display.

Symbol indication

	Adaptive Cruise Control is active. Pilot Assist is selected but not available. The criteria for the function are not met.
	Pilot Assist is active.

Speed



Indication of speeds.

1 Stored speed

2 Current speed of your car

Time interval

	When the symbol in the driver display shows a car, the time interval to the vehicle ahead is regulated.
	When no car is shown, the functions follow the saved speed.

* Option/accessory.

[1] These functions can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

10.1.2.6. Symbols and messages for Pilot Assist*

A number of symbols and messages regarding Pilot Assist[1] can be shown. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	The symbol is lit. The car symbol is lit when the car has a vehicle ahead to relate to.	The car is maintaining the stored/selected speed.
	Pilot Assist Service required The symbol is extinguished	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted. Pilot Assist has been set in standby mode.
	Steering wheel symbol extinguished	Indicates deactivated steering assistance. When Pilot Assist provides steering assistance, the steering wheel is lit up.
	Symbol for hands on the steering wheel	The system cannot detect whether the driver has his/her hands on the steering wheel. Place your hands on the steering wheel and actively steer the car. The system warns in different steps coupled with acoustic signals. The hazard warning flashers are activated if the car needs to slow down to a standstill.
	Radar sensor front Sensor blocked See Owner's manual, **Front radar alignment incomplete** or **Front camera alignment incomplete**	Clean in front of the radar unit's detectors.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

10.1.2.7. Standby mode for Pilot Assist*

Pilot Assist and Adaptive Cruise Control[1] can be deactivated and set in standby mode. This can take place automatically or be done by the driver.

Standby mode means that the function is selected in the driver display but not activated. The functions do not control speed, distance from the vehicle ahead, or give steering assistance.

Standby mode on driver intervention

Pilot Assist is deactivated and set in standby mode if any of the following occurs:

- The foot brake is used.
- The gear selector is moved to **N** position.
- The direction indicators are used for longer than 1 minute.
- The driver maintains a speed higher than the stored speed for longer than 1 minute.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

> **Warning**
>
> - With Adaptive Cruise Control in standby mode, the driver must intervene and steer, regulating both speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.
> - When Adaptive Cruise Control without steering assistance is in standby mode and the car comes too close to a vehicle ahead, the driver may be warned of the short distance by the Distance Warning* function instead.

Automatic standby mode

> **Warning**
>
> With automatic standby mode, the driver is warned via an acoustic signal and a message in the driver display.
>
> - The driver must then regulate the car's speed, apply the brakes as needed, steer the car and maintain a safe distance to other vehicles.

Automatic standby mode may be engaged in the event of one of the following.

- One of the systems that Pilot Assist is dependent on stops working, e.g. stability control / anti-skid[2].
- The driver opens the door.
- The driver takes off the seatbelt.
- The engine speed is too low/high.
- One or more wheels lose traction.
- The brake temperature is high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- Camera and radar units are covered by, for example, snow or heavy rainfall (camera lens/radio waves are blocked).
- The speed is below 5 km/h(3 mph) and Pilot Assist is uncertain whether the vehicle ahead is a stationary vehicle or an object, such as a speed bump.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

- The speed is below 5 km/h(3 mph) and the vehicle ahead turns off so that Pilot Assist no longer has a vehicle to follow.

* Option/accessory.

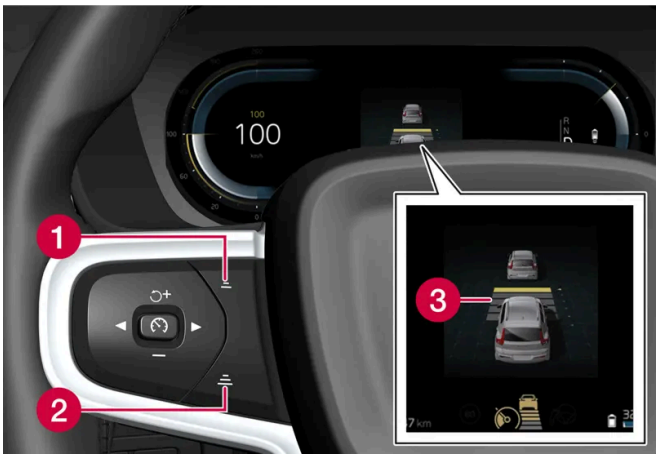
[1] This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

[2] Electronic Stability Control

10.1.2.8. Setting time interval to vehicle ahead

It is possible to set the time interval to the vehicle ahead to be maintained by Pilot Assist*.

1



Control for time interval.

1 Decrease time interval

2 Increase time interval

3 Distance indicator

Press the steering wheel button (1) or (2) to increase or decrease the time interval.

> The distance indicator (3) shows the current time interval.

Different time intervals to the vehicle in front can be selected and shown in the driver display as 1-5 horizontal lines - the more lines the longer the time interval. One line represents about 1 second to the vehicle in front, 5 lines represents about 3 seconds.

Pilot Assist allows the time interval to vary significantly in certain situations in order to allow the car to follow the vehicle ahead smoothly and comfortably. At low speed, when the distances are short, Pilot Assist increases the time interval slightly.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Note

When the symbol in the driver display shows a car and a steering wheel, Pilot Assist follows a vehicle in front at a preset time gap.

When only one steering wheel is shown, there is no vehicle within a reasonable distance ahead.

Note

- The higher the speed the longer the calculated distance in metres for a given time interval.
- Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.
- If the driver supports do not seem to respond with a speed increase when activated, it may be because the time window to the vehicle ahead is shorter than the set time window.

Warning

- Only use a time window that suits the current traffic conditions.
- The driver should be aware that short time windows limit the amount of time available to react and take action in an unexpected traffic situation.

* Option/accessory.

10.1.2.9. Difference between Pilot Assist* and lane assistance

Pilot Assist is a comfort function that can help you to keep your car within its own lane and maintain a safe distance from vehicles in front of you. Lane assistance[1] is a function which, in a similar way, can help you in some situations to reduce the risk of your car accidentally leaving its own lane.

Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist can help you to steer your car between the lane's markings, as well as maintaining a preset speed and time interval to the vehicle ahead. The function can also help to maintain an advantageous position in the lane using the lane's lane lines.

What does Pilot Assist do?

- Can help to keep the car within its lane by assisting steering in some cases.
- Can help to maintain a preset speed or the distance to the vehicle ahead by means of acceleration and braking operations.

How do I know when Pilot Assist is operational?

Symbols in the driver display in the car indicate when Pilot Assist is operational.

	Adaptive Cruise Control is active. Pilot Assist is selected but not available. The criteria for the function are not met.
	Pilot Assist is active.

Lane assistance

Lane assistance can provide steering assistance and/or give you an alert when the vehicle is about to leave its own lane unintentionally. This function is active in the speed range 65-180 km/h (40-112 mph) on roads with clearly visible lane lines.

What does lane assistance do?

- Lane assistance can provide the driver with steering assistance, steering the car back into its lane and/or providing warnings using steering wheel vibration.

How do I know when lane assistance is operational?

Symbols in the driver's display in the car show the status of the function.

An extinguished symbol in the driver display means that the function is running but the conditions for LKA have not been met.

A white symbol in the driver's display means that the conditions for LKA have been met and that the function is available.

An orange symbol in the driver's display means that LKA is providing steering assistance back in to the lane and/or will provide warnings using steering wheel vibration.

Warning

The driver always bears responsibility for ensuring that the car is driven safely. Before using this function, the driver is recommended to read all sections on the function in the owner's manual.

Warning

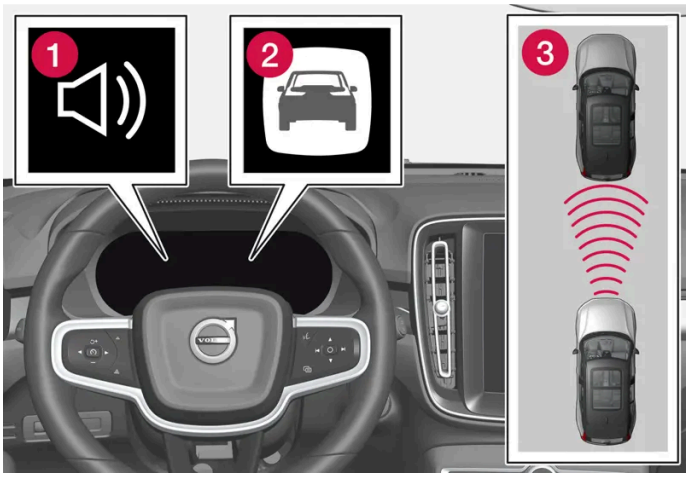
- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid(LKA)

10.1.2.10. Warning from cruise control functions in the event of a collision risk

The driver support system Pilot Assist* can warn the driver if the distance to the vehicle ahead suddenly becomes too short.



Audio and symbol for collision warning

1 Acoustic signal in the event of a risk of collision

2 Warning signal in the event of a risk of collision

3 Distance measurement with the camera and radar units

Pilot Assist uses approx. 40% of the foot brake's capacity. If the car needs to be braked more heavily than the driver support is capable of and the driver does not brake, the warning lamp and acoustic warning are activated to alert the driver that immediate intervention is required.

> **Warning**
>
> The driver support systems only warn of vehicles which their radar unit has detected – hence a warning may not be given, or it may be given with a certain delay. Never wait for a warning. Apply the brakes when the situation requires.

* Option/accessory.

10.1.3. Overtaking assistance

10.1.3.1. Overtaking Assistance*

Overtaking Assistance can help the driver when overtaking other vehicles. The function can be used with Pilot Assist*.

When Pilot Assist is following another vehicle and the driver indicates the intention to overtake by activating the direction indicator[1], the systems can help by accelerating the vehicle towards the vehicle ahead **before** the driver's vehicle reaches the overtaking lane.

The function then delays reducing speed in order to avoid premature braking when the driver's car is approaching a slower vehicle.

The function remains active until the driver's vehicle has cleared the overtaken vehicle.

> **Warning**
>
> Be aware that this function can be activated in more situations than during overtaking, e.g. when a direction indicator is used to indicate a change of lane or exit to another road – the car will then accelerate briefly.

> **Warning**
>
> - The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
> - The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
> - Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] On left flash only in left-hand-drive car, or right flash in right-hand-drive car.

10.1.3.2. Using Overtaking Assistance*

Overtaking assistance can be used with Pilot Assist* and Adaptive Cruise Control. There are a number of criteria if Overtaking Assistance is to be used.

The following conditions must exist for Overtaking Assistance to be activated:

- there must be a vehicle in front (the "target vehicle")
- your car's **current speed** is at least 70 km/h (43 mph)
- **the selected speed** must be high enough for overtaking to take place safely.

To start the Overtaking Assistance:

1 Activate the direction indicator.

Use the left-hand direction indicator in a left-hand drive car right in a right-hand drive car.

> Overtaking Assistance begins acceleration and reduces the time interval the vehicle ahead for a limited period in order to facilitate overtaking. If no overtake is executed, the time interval returns to the preset value.

Warning

When using the Overtaking Assistance System, the driver should be aware that there may be undesired acceleration if the conditions suddenly change.

Some situations should therefore be avoided, such as if:

- the car is approaching an exit to turn-off in the same direction as overtaking would normally occur.
- the vehicle ahead slows down before the driver's car has crossed over into the overtaking lane.
- the traffic in the overtaking lane slows down.
- a right-hand drive car is driven in a county with left-hand traffic (or vice versa).

Situations of this type are avoided by temporarily setting Pilot Assist to standby mode.

* Option/accessory.

10.1.4. Cruise control functions

There are several driver support systems that can assist you while driving in order to maintain a suitable speed depending on situation. Here is a summary to make them more easily distinguishable from each other.

It is recommended that you read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to a function in order to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.

	Speed limiter[1]	Automatic speed limiter* [2]	Cruise control[3]	Adaptive Cruise Control[4]	Pilot Assist* [4]
Symbol in the driver display		+			

	Speed limiter[1]	Automatic speed limiter* [2]	Cruise control[3]	Adaptive Cruise Control[4]	Pilot Assist* [4]
Brief description	The driver controls the speed with the accelerator pedal but is prevented by the speed limiter from mistakenly exceeding a preselected/preset maximum speed.	The automatic speed limiter uses speed information from the Road Sign Information function* to automatically adapt the maximum speed of the car.	The cruise control helps the driver to maintain an even speed, which can result in a more relaxed driving experience on, for example, motorways and long straight main roads in smooth traffic flows.	Adaptive Cruise Control can help the driver to maintain a constant speed, combined with a preselected time interval to the vehicle ahead.	Pilot Assist can help the driver to drive the car between the lane's side markings using steering assistance as well as to maintain an even speed, combined with a preselected time interval to the vehicle ahead.

[1] Speed Limiter

* Option/accessory.

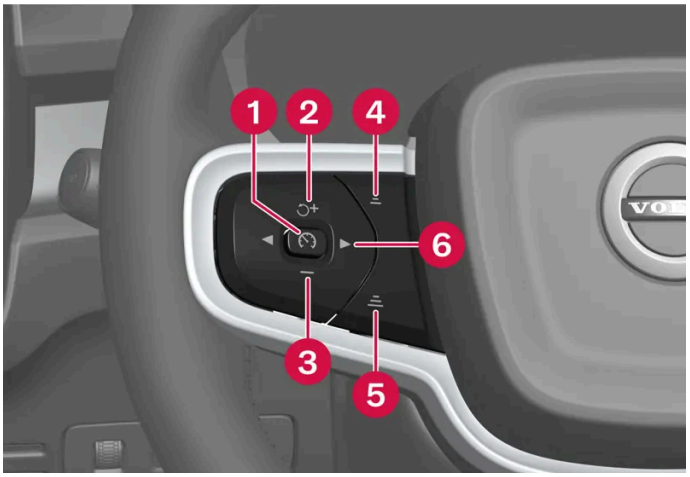
[2] Automatic Speed Limiter

[3] Cruise Control

[4] This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

10.1.5. Steering wheel buttons for the cruise control functions

In the centre display, the selected cruise control function can be controlled with the left-hand steering wheel button. This is applies to speed limiter (SL[1])*, automatic speed limiter (ASL[2]), cruise control (CC[3]), Pilot Assist* and Adaptive Cruise Control*.



Cruise control function buttons

1. : **From standby mode** – Activates the selected function and stores the current speed. : **From active mode** – Sets the function to standby mode.
2. : **From standby mode** – Activates the selected function and resumes the stored speed. + : **From active mode** – Increases the stored speed.
3. − : Reduces stored speed.
4. : Reduces the time interval to vehicles ahead.
5. : Increases the time interval to vehicles ahead.
6. ▶ : Switches between Pilot Assist* and Adaptive Cruise Control*.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

[1] Speed Limiter

* Option/accessory.

[2] Automatic Speed Limiter

[3] Cruise Control

10.1.6. Selecting and activating cruise control functions

For a special preference of the cruise control function, it can be selected in the centre display before activation with steering wheel button. This applies to speed limiter, cruise control (CC[1]), Pilot Assist* and Adaptive Cruise Control*.

1 Press ⚙ in the centre display.

2 Tap on **Driving** and activate the desired function.

3 When the desired function is selected – press the steering wheel button to activate it.

> The symbol in the driver display lights up – the function is started and the current speed is stored as the maximum speed.

4 If the function is set to standby mode – press the steering wheel button to reactivate it.

> The driver display's cruise control markings light up – the car then continues to follow the last speed stored.

To always obtain Pilot Assist when activating cruise control functions for each new driving cycle:

1 Press ⚙ in the centre display.

2 Press **Driving**.

3 Activate **Pilot Assist as default**.

> **Warning**
>
> A significant increase in speed may follow when the speed is resumed with the steering wheel button.

Criteria

Certain criteria have to be met to be able to start any of the functions.

Speed limiter and automatic speed limiter

- The speed limiter cannot be activated until after the engine has been started.
- The lowest maximum speed that can be stored is 30 km/h (20 mph).

Cruise control

- In order to start the cruise control from the standby mode, the car's current speed must be 30 km/h (20 mph) or higher.

Adaptive Cruise Control

- The driver's seatbelt must be buckled and the driver's door must be closed.
- There must be a vehicle (the "target vehicle") within reasonable distance in front of the car, or the current speed must be at least 15 km/h (9 mph).

Pilot Assist

- The driver's seatbelt must be buckled and the driver's door must be closed.
- The lane's edge markings must be clear and must be detected by the car.
- There must be a vehicle (the "target vehicle") within reasonable distance in front of the car, or the current speed must be at least 15 km/h (9 mph).
- The speed must not exceed 140 km/h (87 mph).
- The driver must keep his/her hands on the steering wheel.

[1] Cruise Control

* Option/accessory.

10.1.7. Deactivating cruise control functions

The cruise control functions can be deactivated using a button on the steering wheel. The function then switches to standby mode. This is applies to speed limiter (SL[1]), automatic speed limiter (ASL[2]), cruise control (CC[3]) and Pilot Assist*.

1 Press the steering wheel button .

> The symbol and indicators in the driver display are extinguished – the selected cruise control function is set in standby mode.

When a different function is selected in the centre display, the driver display's symbol and the marker indicating a previously selected function are hidden – the set/stored max speed is then deleted.

Warning

When the cruise control functions are in standby mode, the driver must intervene and regulate both speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.

[1] Speed Limiter

[2] Automatic Speed Limiter

[3] Cruise Control

* Option/accessory.

10.2. Speed limiter functions

10.2.1. Speed limiter

10.2.1.1. Speed limiter

A speed limiter (SL[1]) operates by means of the driver regulating the speed using the accelerator pedal but is prevented from accidentally exceeding a pre-selected/set maximum speed by the speed limiter.
The function is available in certain markets.

Temporary acceleration

The speed limiter can be overridden temporarily when the accelerator pedal is depressed fully, without having to set the speed limiter to standby mode first – e.g. so as to be able to accelerate the car out of a situation quickly.

In which case, proceed as follows:

1 Fully depress the accelerator pedal and release it to interrupt acceleration when the desired speed has been reached.

> In this mode, the speed limiter is still activated and the driver display's symbol is therefore lit up.

2 Fully release the accelerator pedal when the temporary acceleration is finished.

> The car is then engine-braked automatically to below the last stored maximum speed.

Steep roads

On steep hills the speed limiter's braking effect may be inadequate and the stored maximum speed may be exceeded.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

[1] Speed Limiter

10.2.2. Automatic speed limiter

10.2.2.1. Automatic speed limiter*

The Automatic Speed Limiter (ASL[1]) function helps the driver to adapt the car's maximum speed to the speed shown on the road signs.

This function has a dynamic symbol that changes appearance when the function is active.

The colour of the symbol indicates the status of the function:

Symbol	Meaning
Lit	The automatic speed limiter is active.
Grey	The automatic speed limiter is selected but in standby mode.

Speed information from road signs

The automatic speed limiter uses speed information from the Road Sign Information function to automatically adapt the maximum speed of the car.

Road sign information bases its information on the speed limit road signs that the car passes, plus map data. Physical signs passed have top priority, which may be necessary in the case of roadworks, for example.

If road sign information cannot interpret and provide speed information to the driver support systems, the automatic speed limiter is set to standby mode and changes to the normal speed limiter. In such cases the driver must intervene and brake to a suitable speed.

The automatic speed limiter will be reactivated when road sign information can once again interpret and provide speed information.

Warning

Even if the driver clearly sees the speed-related road sign, the speed information from the Road Sign Information* function to the automatic speed limiter may be incorrect – in such cases the driver must intervene him/herself and accelerate or brake to a suitable speed.

Tolerance level for automatic speed limiter

The automatic speed limiter can be set to different tolerance levels. The tolerance is adjusted in the same way as the speed setting is in the speed limiter.

If, for example, the car follows a signed speed limit of 70km/h (43 mph) the driver can instead choose to allow the car to maintain 75 km/h (47 mph).

The tolerance is followed until a road sign with a lower or higher speed is passed - then the car follows the new signed speed limit instead and the tolerance is deleted from the memory.

Note

The maximum selectable tolerance is +/- 10 km/h (5 mph).

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Automatic Speed Limiter

10.3. Distance Warning

10.3.1. Setting time interval to vehicle ahead

It is possible to set the time interval to the vehicle ahead to be maintained by Pilot Assist*.

1

Control for time interval.

1 Decrease time interval

2 Increase time interval

3 Distance indicator

Press the steering wheel button (1) or (2) to increase or decrease the time interval.

> The distance indicator (3) shows the current time interval.

Different time intervals to the vehicle in front can be selected and shown in the driver display as 1-5 horizontal lines - the more lines the longer the time interval. One line represents about 1 second to the vehicle in front, 5 lines represents about 3 seconds.

Pilot Assist allows the time interval to vary significantly in certain situations in order to allow the car to follow the vehicle ahead smoothly and comfortably. At low speed, when the distances are short, Pilot Assist increases the time interval slightly.

Note

When the symbol in the driver display shows a car and a steering wheel, Pilot Assist follows a vehicle in front at a preset time gap.

When only one steering wheel is shown, there is no vehicle within a reasonable distance ahead.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Note

- The higher the speed the longer the calculated distance in metres for a given time interval.
- Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.
- If the driver supports do not seem to respond with a speed increase when activated, it may be because the time window to the vehicle ahead is shorter than the set time window.

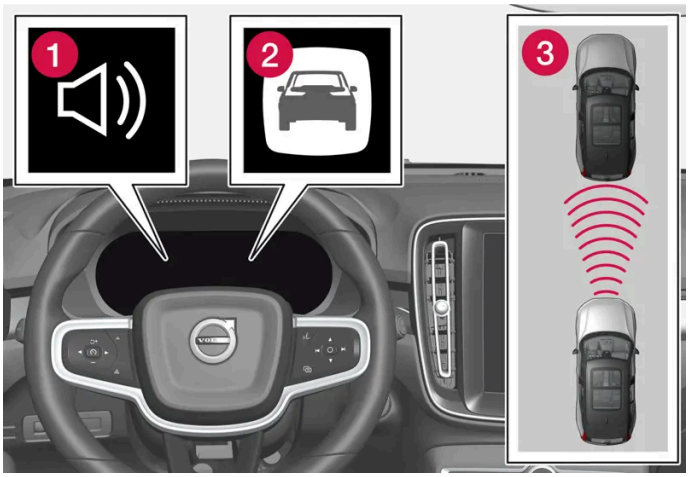
Warning

- Only use a time window that suits the current traffic conditions.
- The driver should be aware that short time windows limit the amount of time available to react and take action in an unexpected traffic situation.

* Option/accessory.

10.3.2. Warning from cruise control functions in the event of a collision risk

The driver support system Pilot Assist* can warn the driver if the distance to the vehicle ahead suddenly becomes too short.



Audio and symbol for collision warning

1 Acoustic signal in the event of a risk of collision

2 Warning signal in the event of a risk of collision

3 Distance measurement with the camera and radar units

Pilot Assist uses approx. 40% of the foot brake's capacity. If the car needs to be braked more heavily than the driver support is capable of and the driver does not brake, the warning lamp and acoustic warning are activated to alert the driver that immediate intervention is required.

> **Warning**
>
> The driver support systems only warn of vehicles which their radar unit has detected – hence a warning may not be given, or it may be given with a certain delay. Never wait for a warning. Apply the brakes when the situation requires.

* Option/accessory.

10.4. Blind Spot Information

10.4.1. BLIS*

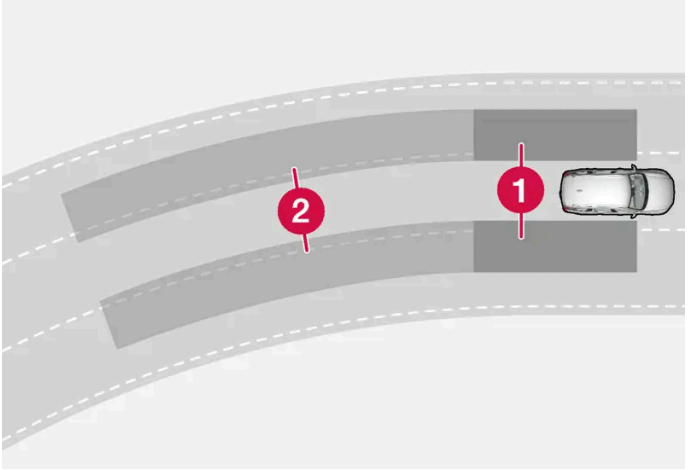
The BLIS[1] function is intended to help the driver detect vehicles diagonally behind and to the side of the car so as to provide assistance in heavy traffic on roads with several lanes in the same direction.

Location of BLIS lamp

BLIS is a driver aid intended to give a warning of:

- vehicles in the car's blind spot

- quickly approaching vehicles in the left and right lanes closest to the car.



Principle of BLIS

1 Zone in blind spot

2 Zone for quickly approaching vehicle

The system is designed to react when:

- your car is overtaken by other vehicles
- another vehicle is approaching your own car at speed.

When BLIS detects a vehicle in Zone 1 or a quickly approaching vehicle in Zone 2, the indicator lamp on the door mirror on the right or left illuminates with a constant glow. If the driver activates the direction indicator on the same side as the warning, the indicator lamp will change over from a constant glow to flashing with a more intense light.

BLIS is active when the driver's vehicle is travelling at a speed above 12 km/h (7 mph).

BLIS reacts to passing vehicles driving up to 100 km/h (62 mph) faster than your vehicle.

Note

The lamp illuminates on the side of the car where the system has detected the vehicle. If the car is overtaken on both sides at the same time then both lamps illuminate.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

[1] Blind Spot Information

10.4.2. Messages for BLIS*

A number of messages regarding BLIS[1] can be shown in the driver display. Here are some examples.

Message	Specification
Blind spot sensor Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[2].
Blind spot system off Trailer attached	BLIS and Cross Traffic Alert* have been deactivated as a trailer has been connected to the car's electrical system.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Blind Spot Information

[2] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

10.4.3. Limitations of BLIS*

The BLIS[1] function may have limitations in certain situations.

Keep the surface indicated clean – on both the left and right-hand sides of the car[2].

Examples of limitations:

- Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may reduce the functions and deactivate alerts.
- The BLIS function is automatically deactivated if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is connected to the car's electrical system.
- For good performance of BLIS, there should be no bicycle rack, luggage carrier or similar mounted on the car's towbar.

Warning

- BLIS does not work on sharp bends.
- BLIS does not work when the car is reversing.

Note

This function uses the car's radar units, which have certain general limitations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Blind Spot Information

[2] NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

10.5. Cross Traffic Alert

10.5.1. Warning and auto-brake when reversing*

There are systems in the car that can assist the driver to detect obstacles when reversing and even brake automatically if the driver does not manage to act in time.

The Rear Auto Brake (RAB) and Cross Traffic Alert (CTA)* functions are only active if the car rolls backwards or if reverse gear has been selected.

If obstacles are detected:

1. A warning signal and the parking assistance graphic illuminate to indicate the position of the obstacle.
2. If the driver does not pay attention to the warning and a collision is unavoidable, the car is auto-braked and an explanatory text message is shown for why the car was braked.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed forcefully then the car also reverses after braking automatically.

Warning

- The functions are supplementary driver supports intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – but they cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the owner's manual that relate to these functions to learn about factors such as limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the functions.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Note

The functions use the car's detectors and radar units, which have some general limitations.

Obstacles immediately behind

Rear Auto Brake is intended to help the driver detect stationary obstacles that may be directly behind the car when it is being reversed.

This function is primarily designed to detect stationary obstacles that are higher than the rear bumper – and not moving vehicles, for example.

Brake intervention with Rear Auto Brake is active at speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph).

Rear Auto Brake needs to be deactivated before using an automatic car wash and before a trailer, bicycle holder or similar is connected to the car.

It may also be necessary to deactivate the auto brake to avoid unwanted intervention, e.g. when reversing in tall grass.

Obstacles from the side

Cross Traffic Alert is designed to help the driver detect traffic crossing behind the car when it is reversing.

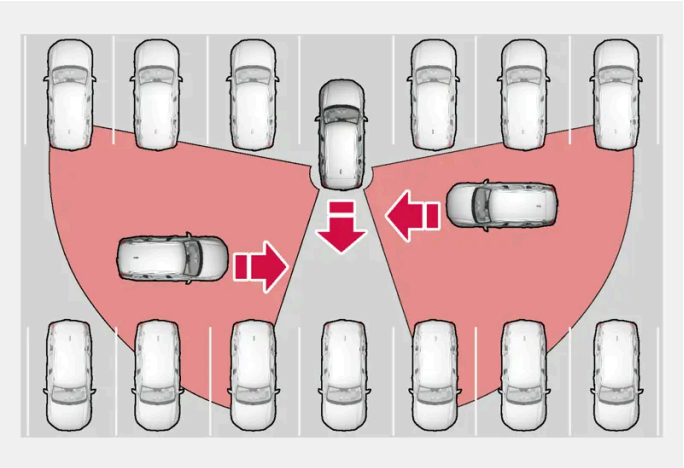
This function is primarily designed to detect larger vehicles in motion. In favourable conditions it may also be able to detect smaller objects, such as cyclists and pedestrians.

Brake intervention with Cross Traffic Alert is active at speeds below 15 km/h (9 mph).

Cross Traffic Alert is automatically deactivated if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is connected to the car's electrical system.

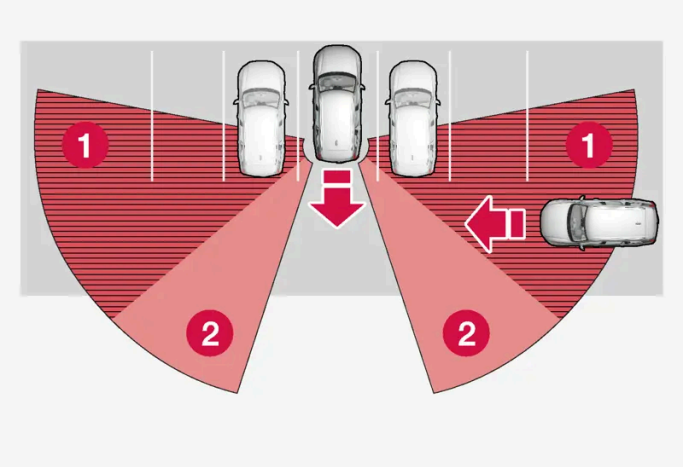
The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Examples of detection and limitations

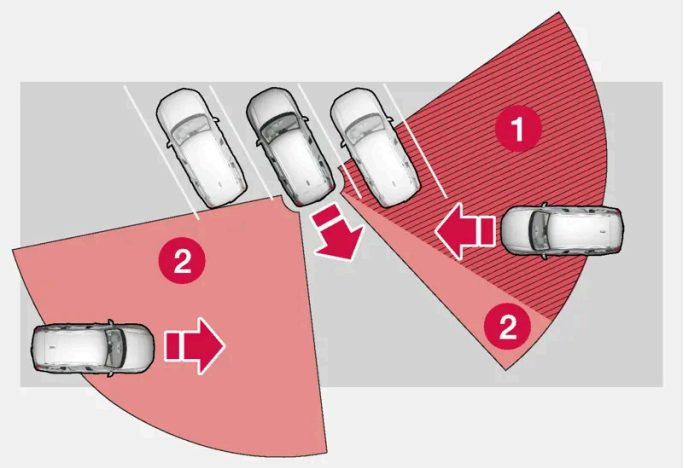


Examples of areas where the function can assist the driver to detect obstacles during reversing.

The function's sensors cannot detect moving traffic through other parked vehicles or bulky obstacles. Here are some examples of when approaching vehicles cannot therefore be detected until they are very close.



The car is parked deep inside a parking slot.



In an angled parking slot, the sensors may be completely blocked on one side.

1 Blind sector

2 Sector in which the function can detect

However, as your car slowly reverses, the angle it makes with the obstructing vehicle/object changes and the blind sector rapidly decreases.

* Option/accessory.

10.5.2. Activating and deactivating warning and auto-brake when reversing*

The driver can choose to deactivate auto-brake with Rear Auto Brake (RAB) and Cross Traffic Alert (CTA)*. The warning signal can be deactivated separately.

Warning signal

Activate or deactivate the warning signal with this button in the parking camera view.

Auto Brake

Activate or deactivate the auto-brake with this button in parking camera view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

The functions are activated automatically each time the engine is started.

* Option/accessory.

10.6. Rear Collision Warning

10.6.1. Rear Collision Warning*

The Rear Collision Warning[1] (RCW) function can help the driver to avoid being hit by a vehicle approaching from behind.

Drivers in vehicles behind can be warned about an imminent collision by the function flashing intensively with the direction indicators.

If, at a speed below 30 km/h (20 mph), the function detects that the car is in danger of being hit from behind, the seatbelt tensioners may tension the front seatbelts. The Whiplash Protection System is also activated in the event of a collision.

Immediately before a collision from behind, this function may also activate the foot brake in order to reduce the forward acceleration of the car during the collision. However, the foot brake is only activated if the car is stationary. The foot brake releases immediately if the accelerator pedal is depressed.

This function is activated automatically each time the engine is started.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] The function is not available in all markets.

10.6.2. Limitations of Rear Collision Warning*

In certain cases, the Rear Collision Warning (RCW)[1] may have difficulty helping the driver in the event of a collision risk.

This can, for example, be if:

- the vehicle approaching from behind is detected too late
- the vehicle approaching from behind changes lane at the last moment
- a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is connected to the car's electrical system - the function is then deactivated automatically.

Note

In certain markets, RCW does **not** give a warning with the direction indicators due to local traffic regulations - in such cases, this part of the function is deactivated.

> **Note**
>
> This function uses the car's radar units, which have certain general limitations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Rear collision warning.

10.7. Connected Safety

10.7.1. Connected Safety

Connected Safety[1] communicates information between your own car and other vehicles via a cloud service[2]. The function is intended to make a driver aware that there may be a potentially dangerous traffic situation further ahead on the same road.

The function can inform the driver whether another vehicle further ahead on the same road has activated its hazard warning flashers or detected slippery driving conditions. Information about slippery driving conditions is also given if your own car detects slippery surfaces.

Connected Safety can help the driver with the following:

- Alarm on hazard warning flashers
- Alarm on slippery driving conditions

Connected Safety communication between vehicles only works for vehicles equipped with the function. Connected Safety also needs to be approved via **Volvo privacy settings**.

Alarm on hazard warning flashers

If your own car's hazard warning flashers are activated, information about this can be sent to vehicles approaching your own car's position.

When your own car is approaching a vehicle with flashing hazard warning flashers, this symbol is shown on the driver display.

Alarm on slippery driving conditions

If your car detects reduced friction between its tyres and the road, this symbol is shown in the driver display. The information can then be forwarded to vehicles that approach the position of your car.

If your car receives information about slippery conditions from another vehicle, this symbol is shown in the driver display.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

[1] Not available on all markets.

[2] Data is transferred (data traffic) when using the cloud service, and this may involve a cost.

10.7.2. Activating and deactivating Connected Safety

For Connected Safety to be able to share information on road conditions with other vehicles, the function needs to be approved in **Volvo privacy**.

1. Press ⚙ in the centre display.
2. Press **Privacy** or **Profiles**. The menu path depends on whether you are logged in to a Google account.
3. Then tap on **Privacy settings** and approve Connected Safety.

If there is no Internet connection, your own car will still inform you, the driver, that slippery driving conditions have been detected by your own car. For Connected Safety to work fully, your own car needs to be connected to the Internet.

10.7.3. Limitations of Connected Safety

Information about vehicles with activated hazard warning flashers or which have detected slippery driving conditions is not always communicated between all vehicles within the same area.

This can be because for example:

- Poor or no contact with the Internet.
- Vehicles on slippery surfaces make manoeuvres that are too weak for friction between tyres and road surface to be detectable, e.g. steering wheel movement, acceleration or braking.
- Vehicles that have detected slippery surfaces, or have activated their hazard warning flashers, do not have the function active.
- Vehicles that have detected slippery surfaces, or have activated their hazard warning flashers, are not equipped with the function.
- There may be no warning due to missing or defective global positioning/satellite navigation.
- Detection of slippery surfaces or activation of hazard warning flashers has taken place on a road which is missing from Volvo Cars database.
- Connected Safety is not available in all markets and does not cover all areas - a retailer for Volvo has information on current areas.

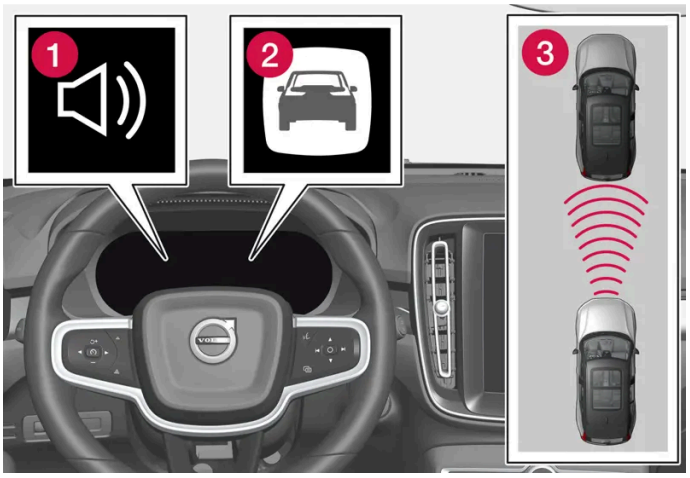
Warning

- In certain situations, the function may give incorrect warnings for slippery driving conditions.
- The function cannot always detect other vehicles with activated hazard warning flashers or detect all sections of road with slippery surfaces.

10.8. Assistance at risk of collision

10.8.1. Assistance at risk of collision [1]

Assistance at risk of collision [2] can assist the driver to avoid or mitigate a collision with a warning, automatic braking and steering assistance.



Audio and symbol for collision warning

1 Acoustic signal in the event of a risk of collision

2 Warning signal in the event of a risk of collision

3 Distance measurement with the camera and radar units

The driver or passengers are not normally aware of the function – it only intervenes in a situation where a collision is immediately imminent.

The function can help the driver to avoid a collision when driving in queues, e.g. when changes in the traffic ahead, combined with a lapse in attention, could lead to an incident. The function then activates a short, sharp braking procedure, normally stopping the car just behind the vehicle in front.

The function cannot be deactivated but is always activated.

Subfunctions

Assistance at risk of collision can perform the following steps if necessary:

- Collision warning
- Assisted braking
- Automatic braking
- Steering assistance

Step 1 – Collision warning

If there is a risk of collision with a pedestrian, cyclist, large animal or a vehicle then the driver's attention is alerted to it by means of a warning symbol as well as acoustic and brake pulse warnings. There is no brake pulse warning in the event of sudden driver braking or acceleration. The brake pulse frequency varies according to the car's speed.

Step 2 – Assisted braking

Assisted braking reinforces the driver’s braking action if the system considers that the braking is not sufficient to avoid a collision.

Step 3 – Automatic braking

If the driver has not started to take evasive action and the risk of collision is imminent then the automatic braking function is deployed – this takes place irrespective of whether or not the driver brakes. Braking then takes place with full brake force in order to reduce collision speed, or with limited brake force if it is sufficient to avoid a collision.

The seatbelt tensioner can be activated in connection with the engagement of the automatic brake function.

The function is designed to be activated as late as possible in order to avoid unnecessary intervention. Automatic braking takes place only after or at the same time as the collision warning.

When brake assistance has prevented a collision with a stationary object, the car remains stationary in anticipation of positive action by the driver. If the car has been braked to avoid collision with a slower vehicle in front its speed is reduced to match that of the vehicle in front.

The driver can always interrupt a braking intervention by firmly depressing the accelerator pedal.

When the function is activated and brakes, the brake lights are switched on. The driver display shows a text message advising that the function is or has been active.

> **Warning**
>
> The function must not be used by the driver to change his/her driving style – the driver must not rely on the function alone and allow it to do the braking.

Steering assistance

The function can help the driver reduce the risk of the car leaving its lane unintentionally or colliding with another vehicle or obstacle by actively steering the car back into its lane or swerving. Steering assistance does not occur in sequence but can take place regardless of when the other elements occur.

After automatic engagement, the driver display indicates that this has occurred via a text message.

> **Note**
>
> It is always the driver who decides how much the car should steer – the car can never take command.

> **Warning**
>
> - The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
> - The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
> - Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

[1] The function is not available in all markets.

[2] Collision Avoidance

10.8.2. Detection of obstacles with assistance at risk of collision

Assistance at risk of collision [1] can help the driver to detect different types of obstacle.

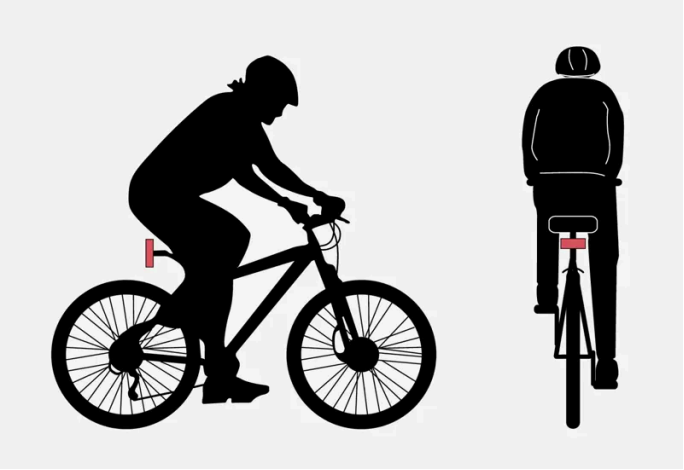
The function can detect pedestrians, cyclists or vehicles that are stationary or moving in the same direction as the car and are ahead. The function can also detect pedestrians, cyclists or large animals that are crossing the road in front of the car.

> **Warning**
>
> Warnings and brake interventions could be late or not occur at all. The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven correctly and with a safety distance adapted to the speed.

Vehicles

In order for the function to be able to detect a vehicle in the dark, the vehicle's front and rear lights must be working and clearly illuminated.

Cyclists



Examples of what the function interprets as a cyclist — with clear body outline and bicycle outline.

Good performance requires that the camera and radar units that detect a cyclist must receive the clearest possible information about the body and bicycle outline, requiring the ability to identify the bicycle, head, arms, shoulders, legs, upper and lower body plus a normal human pattern of movement.

If large parts of the cyclist's body or bicycle are not visible to the function's camera then the system cannot detect a cyclist.

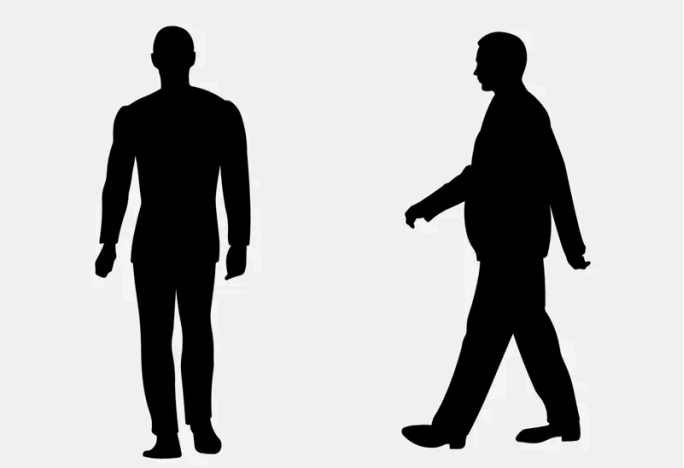
For the function to be able to detect a cyclist, he/she must be an adult and riding a bicycle designed for adults.

Warning

The function is a supplementary driver support, but it cannot detect all cyclists in all situations and, for example, cannot see:

- partially obscured cyclists.
- cyclists if the background contrast for the cyclists is poor.
- cyclists wearing clothing that obscures the body outline.
- bicycles loaded with large objects.

Pedestrians



Examples of what the function regards as pedestrians with clear body outlines.

Good performance requires that the camera and radar units that detect a pedestrian must receive the clearest possible information about the body outline, requiring the ability to identify the head, arms, shoulders, legs, upper and lower body plus a normal human pattern of movement.

In order that it shall be possible to detect a pedestrian there must be a contrast with the background and this will be affected by such things as clothes, the background and the weather. With poor contrast the pedestrian may either be detected late or not at all, which may mean that warnings and braking are late or omitted.

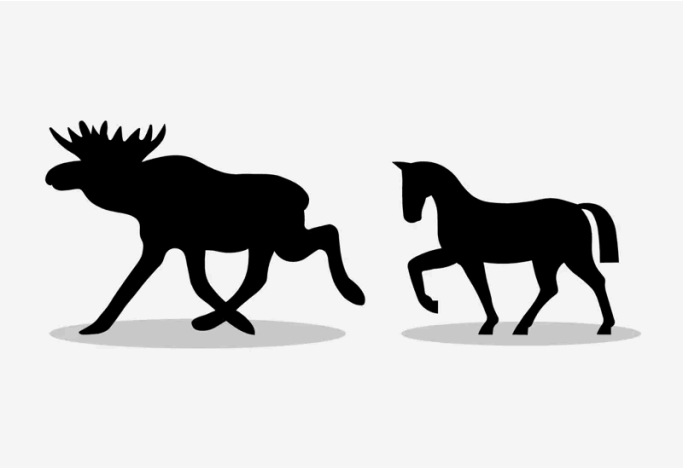
The function can also detect pedestrians in the dark if they are illuminated by the car's headlamps.

Warning

The function is a supplementary driver support, but it cannot detect all pedestrians in all situations and, for example, cannot see:

- partially obscured pedestrians, people in clothing that hides their body contour or pedestrians shorter than 80 cm (32 tum).
- pedestrians if the background contrast for the pedestrians is poor.
- pedestrians who are carrying larger objects.

Large animals



Examples of what the function interprets as large animals - standing still or walking slowly and with clear body outline.

Good performance requires that the system function that detects a large animal (e.g. elk and horse) must receive the clearest possible information about the body outline, requiring the ability to identify the animal directly from the side in combination with what is a normal pattern of movement for the animal.

If parts of the animal's body are not visible to the function's camera then the system cannot detect the animal.

The function can also detect large animals in the dark if they are illuminated by the car's headlamps.

> **Warning**
>
> The function is supplementary driver support, but it cannot detect all large animals in all situations and, for example, cannot see:
>
> - partially obscured large animals.
> - larger animals seen from the front or from behind.
> - large animals that run or move quickly.
> - large animals if the background contrast for the animals is poor.
> - small animals such as dogs and cats, for example.
>
> Warnings and brake interventions could be late or not occur at all. The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven correctly and with a safety distance adapted to the speed.

[1] Collision Avoidance

10.8.3. Speed reduction option with assistance at risk of collision

Assistance at risk of collision[1] can help to prevent a collision or reduce the collision speed.

If the speed difference between the driver's car and the obstacle is greater than the following specified speeds, the automatic brake function cannot prevent a collision but it can mitigate the consequences of a collision.

Vehicles

For a vehicle in front, brake assistance can reduce the speed by up to 60 km/h(37 mph).

Cyclists

For a cyclist, brake assistance can reduce the speed by up to 50 km/h(30 mph).

Pedestrians

For a pedestrian, brake assistance can reduce the speed by up to 45 km/h(28 mph).

Large animals

In the event of a risk of a collision with a large animal, brake assistance can reduce the car's speed by up to 15 km/h(9 mph).

The brake function for large animals is primarily intended to reduce the force of the impact at higher speeds and is most effective at speeds above 70 km/h(43 mph) but less effective at lower speed.

[1] Collision Avoidance

10.8.4. Symbols and messages for assistance at risk of collision

A number of symbols and messages regarding assistance at risk of collision[1] can be shown in the driver display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Automatic intervention Collision Avoidance	When the function is activated, a message is shown to the driver indicating that the system has been activated.
	Collision Avoidance system unavailable	The system is temporarily out of order or is working with reduced performance.
	Windscreen sensor blocked See Owner's manual	The ability of the camera to scan the roadway in front of the car is reduced.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

[1] Collision Avoidance

10.8.5. Limitations for assistance at risk of collision

Assistance at risk of collision[1] has certain limitations that a driver should be aware of.

Limitations for brake assistance

Extra equipment

Low-hanging objects, e.g. a flag/pennant for projecting load, or accessories such as auxiliary lamps and bull bars that are higher than the car bonnet limit the function since they may obstruct the camera or radar unit.

Skidding

On slippery road surfaces the braking distance is extended, which may reduce the capacity of the function to avoid a collision. In such situations, the anti-lock brakes and the stability control ESC[2] are designed to give the best possible braking force with maintained stability.

Low speed

The function is not activated at very low speeds – below 4 km/h (3 mph) – and the system therefore does not intervene in situations where your car is approaching a vehicle ahead very slowly, e.g. when parking.

Active driver

Driver commands are always prioritised. The function does not intervene in situations where the driver is steering and accelerating in a decisive manner, even if a collision is unavoidable. Active and aware driving behaviour can therefore delay a collision warning and intervention in order to minimise unnecessary warnings.

Limitations for steering assistance

In certain situations the function may have limited functionality and fail to intervene in the following cases, for example:

- for small vehicles, such as motorcycles
- if the majority of the car has moved into the adjacent lane
- on roads/in lanes with unclear or non-existent lane markings
- outside the speed range 60-140 km/h (37-87 mph)
- as the steering servo for speed-dependent steering wheel resistance is working at reduced power – e.g. when cooling due to overheating.

Other demanding situations can include:

- road works
- winter road conditions
- narrow roads
- poor road surface
- a very “sporty” driving style
- poor weather with reduced visibility.

In these demanding situations, the function may have difficulty helping the driver correctly.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Important warnings

Warning

Driver supports only warn of obstacles which their radar unit has detected – hence a warning may not be given, or it may be given with a certain delay.

- Never wait for a warning or intervention. Apply the brakes when the situation requires.

Warning

- Automatic braking can prevent a collision or reduce collision speed, but to ensure full brake performance the driver should always depress the brake pedal – even when the car brakes automatically.
- The warning and steering assistance are only activated if there is a high risk of collision – you must therefore never wait for a collision warning or for the function to intervene.
- The function does not activate any automatic brake interventions in the event of heavy acceleration.

Warning

- Warnings and brake interventions could be implemented late or not at all if a traffic situation or external influences mean that the camera and radar units cannot detect pedestrians, cyclists, large animals or vehicles correctly.
- For vehicles to be detected at night, their headlamps and rear lamp cluster must be switched on and shining clearly.
- Warnings for stationary and slow-moving vehicles, as well as large animals, may be disengaged due to darkness or poor visibility.
- Warnings and brake interventions for pedestrians and cyclists are deactivated at vehicle speeds exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph).
- The system can provide effective warnings and brake interventions as long as the relative speed is below 50 km/h (30 mph).
- For stationary or slow-moving vehicles, warnings and brake interventions are effective at vehicle speeds up to 70 km/h (43 mph).
- Speed reduction for large animals is less than 15 km/h (9 mph) and can be achieved at vehicle speeds above 70 km/h (43 mph). The warning and brake intervention for large animals is less effective at lower speeds.
- Do not place, stick or mount anything on the outside or inside of the windscreen in front of or around the camera unit – this can interfere with camera-dependent functions.
- Objects, snow, ice or dirt in the area of the camera and radar units may reduce their functionality, fully deactivate them or give incorrect function response.

Note

This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

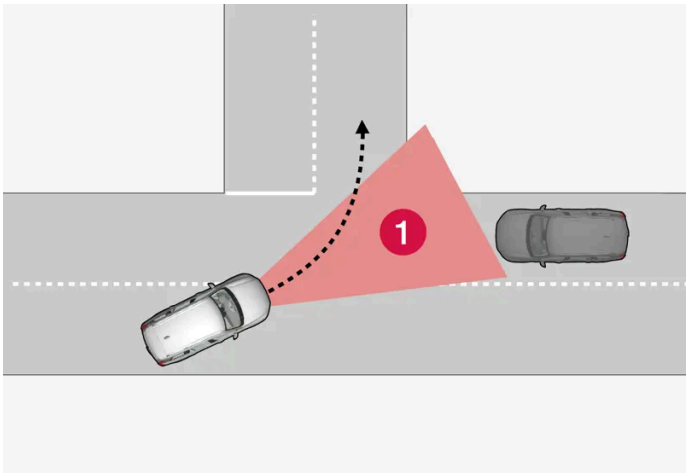
> **Important**
>
> Maintenance of driver support components must only be performed at a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

[1] Collision Avoidance

[2] Electronic Stability Control

10.8.6. Assistance at risk of collision in crossing traffic

Assistance at risk of collision[1] can assist the driver when turning and crossing the path of an oncoming vehicle at an intersection.



1 Sector in which the function can detect oncoming crossing vehicles.

For the function to detect an oncoming vehicle on a collision course, the oncoming vehicle must first enter the sector in which the function can analyse the situation.

In addition:

- your car's speed must be at least 4 km/h (3 mph).
- your car must turn to the left in markets with right-hand traffic (or to the right in left-hand traffic).
- the oncoming vehicle must have its headlamps switched on.

The function may have difficulty in assisting the driver if, for example:

- there are slippery driving conditions and stability control[2] intervenes.
- an oncoming vehicle is detected too late.
- an oncoming vehicle is obscured by something.
- the oncoming vehicle has headlamps switched off.
- the oncoming vehicle drives in an unpredictable manner, for example, abruptly changes lanes at a late stage.

Warning

Warnings and steering assistance due to an impending collision with an oncoming vehicle always come very late.

Note

This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

[1] Collision Avoidance

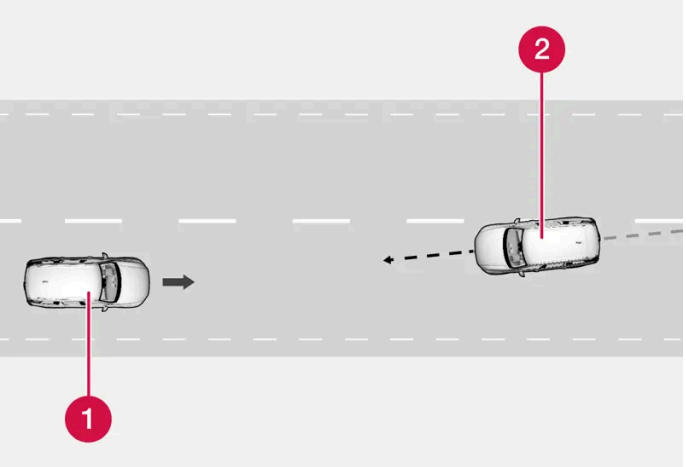
[2] Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

10.8.7. Assistance at risk of collision in oncoming traffic

Assistance at risk of collision[1] can assist the driver to give steering assistance to avoid a collision with vehicles in the oncoming lane. The function can also reduce the speed of the car in order to reduce the force of an impact in the event of an encroachment into the car's own lane.

Meeting in own lane

If an oncoming vehicle enters your car's lane and a collision is unavoidable, the function can reduce the car's speed with a view to reducing the force of the impact.



1 Your car

2 Oncoming vehicles

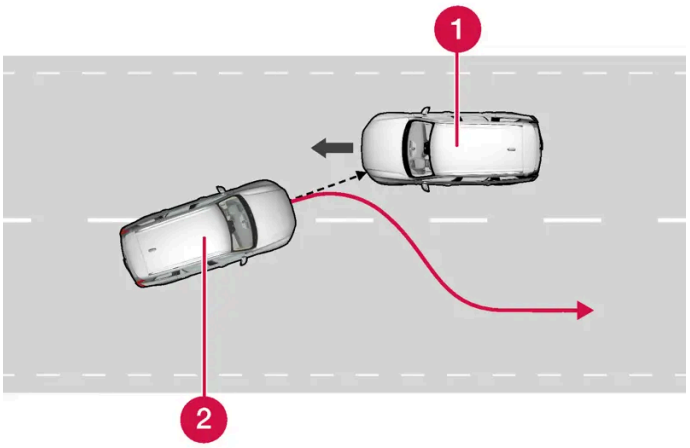
For this function to work, the following criteria must be met:

- your car must be travelling at more than 4 km/h (3 mph)
- the road section must be straight
- your car's lane must have clear lane markings

- your car must be positioned straight in its own lane
- the oncoming vehicle must be within your car's lane markings
- the oncoming vehicle must have its headlamps switched on
- this function can only handle "front to front" collisions
- this function can only detect vehicles with four wheels.

When drifting across to oncoming traffic

The function can help a distracted driver who does not notice that the car is drifting into the oncoming lane.



The function can assist by guiding the car back to its own lane.

1 Oncoming vehicles

2 Your car

The function is active within the speed range 60-140 km/h (37-87 mph) on roads with clearly visible lane markings/lines.

If the car is about to leave its own lane while an oncoming vehicle is approaching at the same time, the function can help the driver to steer the car back into its own lane.

However, the function does **not** intervene with steering assistance if the direction indicator is used. If the function detects that the driver is actively driving the car, activation of the function will be delayed.

When the function intervenes, a symbol and a message are shown in the driver display, and an acoustic signal can be heard as well.

Warning

Warnings and steering assistance due to an impending collision with an oncoming vehicle always come very late.

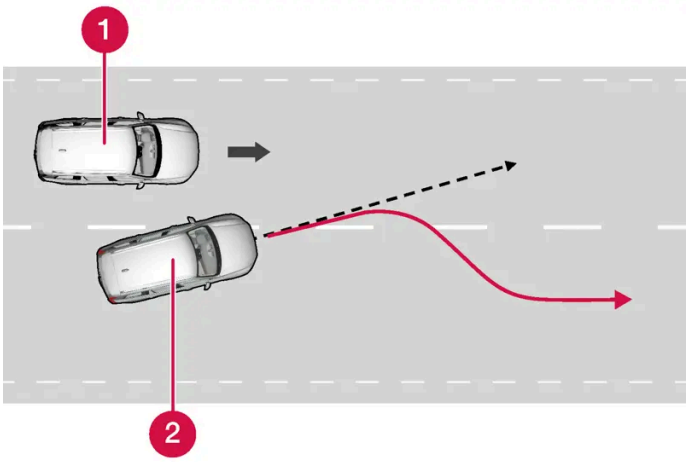
Note

This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

[1] Collision Avoidance

10.8.8. Assistance at risk of rear-end collision*

Assistance at risk of collision[1] can help a driver who does not notice that the car is about to leave its own lane while an oncoming vehicle is approaching at the same time, either from behind or in the blind spot.



The function can assist by steering the car back to its own lane.

1 Other vehicle in the blind spot

2 Your car

The function can even assist if the driver intentionally changes lanes using direction indicators without noticing that another vehicle is approaching.

The function is active within the speed range 60-140 km/h (37-87 mph) on roads with clearly visible lane markings/lines.

The lamps in the door mirrors flash during steering intervention, regardless of whether BLIS*[2] is activated. An acoustic signal can also be heard.

When the function intervenes, a message is shown in the driver display.

Warning

Warnings and steering assistance due to an impending collision always come very late.

Note

This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Collision Avoidance

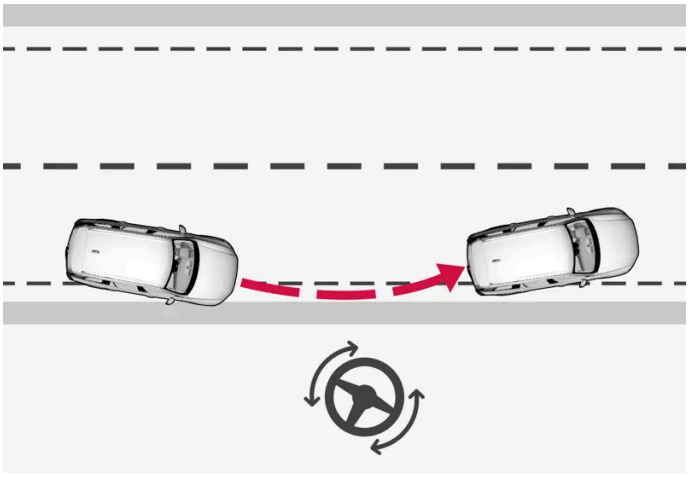
[2] Blind Spot Information

10.8.9. Assistance at risk of run-off

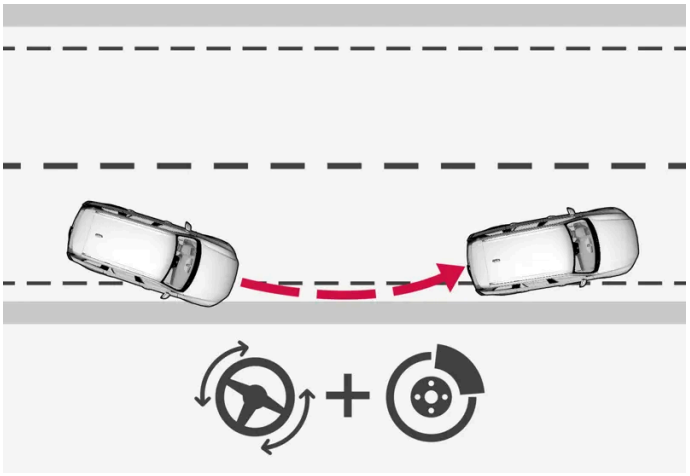
Assistance at risk of collision [1] can help the driver and reduce the risk of the car accidentally leaving the road by actively steering the car back onto the road.

The function has two levels for intervention:

- Steering assistance only
- Steering assistance with brake intervention



Intervention with steering assistance



Intervention with steering assistance and braking

Brake intervention helps in situations where steering assistance alone is not sufficient. The brake force is adapted automatically depending on the situation at the time of road run-off.

The function is active within the speed range 65-140 km/h (40-87 mph) on roads with clearly visible lane markings/lines.

The car's camera unit scans the edges of the road and the painted lane markings. If the car is about to leave the side of the road, the car is steered back onto the road and if the steering intervention is not enough to avoid run-off, the brakes are also activated.

However, there is no intervention from the function with either steering assistance or brake intervention if the direction indicators are used. If the function detects that the driver is actively driving the car, activation of the function will be delayed.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

When the function intervenes, a message is shown in the driver display.

> **Warning**
>
> Warnings and steering assistance due to an impending collision with an oncoming vehicle always come very late.

> **Note**
>
> This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

[1] Collision Avoidance

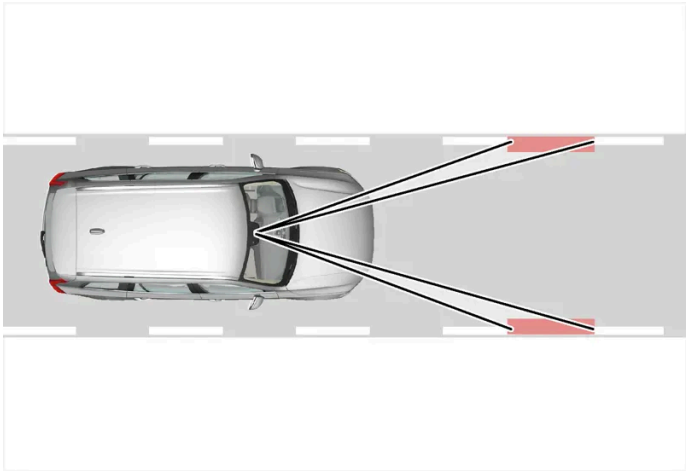
10.9. Driver Alert Control

10.9.1. Driver Alert

The Driver Alert function is intended to help make the driver aware that he or she is starting to drive less consistently, e.g. if the driver becomes distracted or starts to fall asleep.

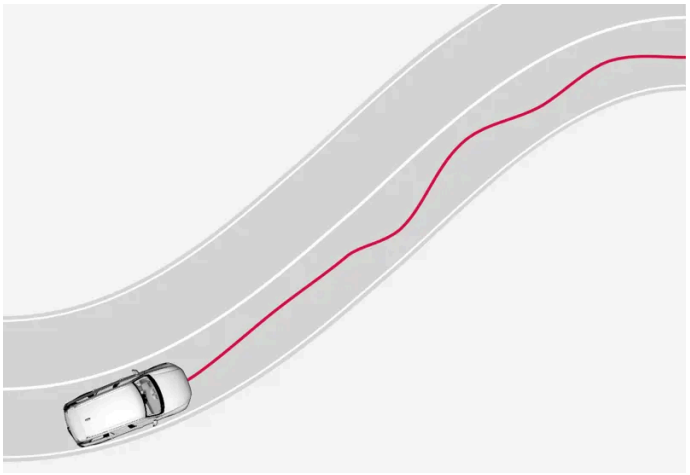
The objective for the function is to detect slowly deteriorating driving ability and it is primarily intended for major roads. The function is not intended for city traffic.

The function is activated when speed exceeds 65 km/h (40 mph) and remains active as long as the speed is over 60 km/h (37 mph).



Driver Alert reads the position of the car in the lane.

A camera detects the edge markings painted on the carriageway and compares the alignment of the road with the driver's steering wheel movements.



The car is being driven erratically in the lane.

If driving behaviour becomes noticeably inconsistent, the driver is alerted by this symbol in the driver display, combined with an acoustic signal and the text message **Time for a break Driver Alert**.

The warning is repeated after a time if driving behaviour has not improved.

Warning

Driver Alert should not be used to extend a period of driving. The driver should instead plan for breaks at regular intervals and make sure they are well rested.

Warning

An alarm from Driver Alert should be taken very seriously, as a sleepy driver is often not aware of his/her own condition.

If the alarm sounds or you feel fatigued:

- Stop the car safely as soon as possible and rest.

Studies have shown that it is just as dangerous to drive while tired as it is to drive under the influence of alcohol or other stimulants.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

10.9.2. Limitations of Driver Alert

The Driver Alert function may have limitations in certain situations.

In some cases the system may issue a warning despite driving ability not deteriorating, for example:

- in strong side winds
- on rutted road surfaces.

> **Warning**
>
> In some cases, driving behaviour is not affected despite driver fatigue – e.g. when using the Pilot Assist* function – resulting in the driver not getting a warning from Driver Alert.

> **Note**
>
> This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

* Option/accessory.

10.10. Lane assistance

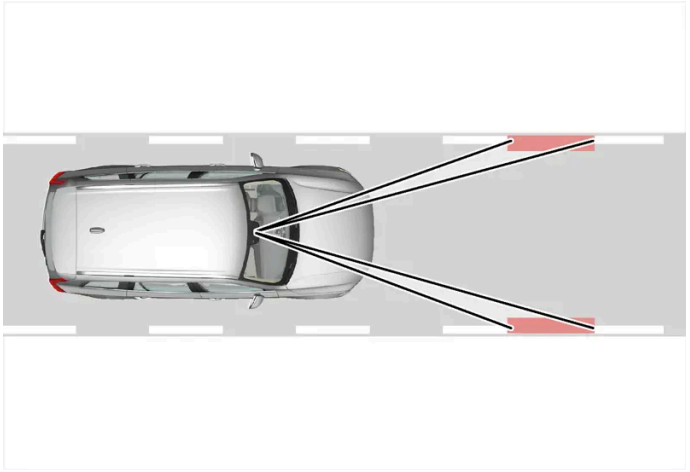
10.10.1. Lane assistance

The function of the Lane Keeping Aid (LKA[1]) is to help the driver to reduce the risk of the car accidentally leaving its own lane on motorways and similar major routes.

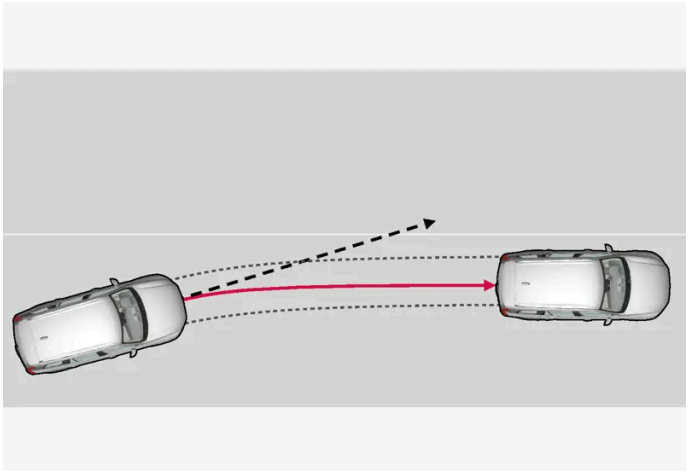
Lane Keeping Aid steers the car back into its lane and/or alerts the driver with vibrations in the steering wheel.

Lane Keeping Aid is active within the speed range 65–200 km/h (40–125 mph) on roads with clearly visible side lines.

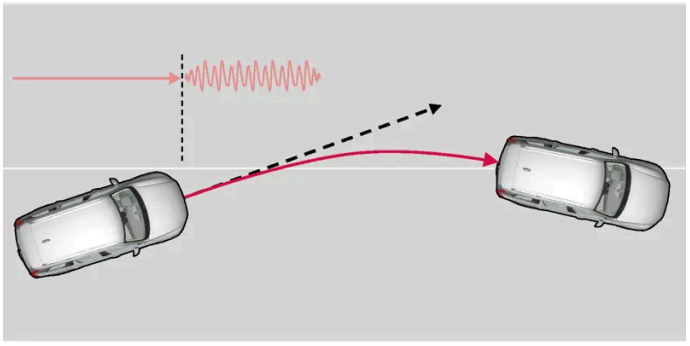
On narrow roads the function may be unavailable, in which case it goes into standby mode. The function becomes available again when the road is wide enough.



A camera reads the side lines of the road/lane.



Lane assistance steers the car back into its lane.



Lane assistance warns with steering wheel vibrations.

Lane assistance acts as follows:

- When the car is approaching a lane line, the function will actively steer the car back into its lane by applying a slight torque to the steering wheel.
- If the car is about to cross a lane line, the driver is warned by means of vibrations in the steering wheel.

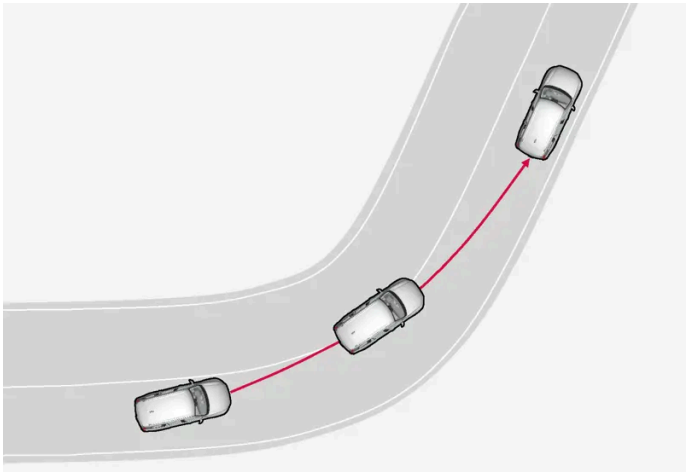
Note

When a direction indicator/flasher is switched on, there are no steering corrections or alerts from lane assistance.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Lane assistance does not intervene



Lane assistance does not engage on sharp inside curves.

In some situations, lane assistance allows lane lines to be crossed without intervening with either steering assistance or a warning – e.g. when using the direction indicators or if the car is allowed to cut the corners in bends.

Hands on the steering wheel

For steering assistance with lane assistance to work, the driver must have his/her hands on the steering wheel, which the system will continue to monitor.

If the driver does not keep his/her hands on the steering wheel, a warning signal is heard and a message encourages the driver to steer the car actively:

- **Apply steering Lane Keeping Aid**

If the driver fails to comply with the request and start to steer, a warning sound is heard until the driver starts to steer the car again.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

10.10.2. Activating and deactivating lane assistance

The Lane Keeping Aid (LKA) function (LKA[1]) is optional – the driver can choose to activate or deactivate this function. However, steering intervention will always be active for unbroken lines.

Activate or deactivate the function under settings.

1 Press ⚙ in the centre display.

2 Tap on **Driving** and activate the desired function.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

10.10.3. Difference between Pilot Assist* and lane assistance

Pilot Assist is a comfort function that can help you to keep your car within its own lane and maintain a safe distance from vehicles in front of you. Lane assistance[1] is a function which, in a similar way, can help you in some situations to reduce the risk of your car accidentally leaving its own lane.

Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist can help you to steer your car between the lane's markings, as well as maintaining a preset speed and time interval to the vehicle ahead. The function can also help to maintain an advantageous position in the lane using the lane's lane lines.

What does Pilot Assist do?

- Can help to keep the car within its lane by assisting steering in some cases.
- Can help to maintain a preset speed or the distance to the vehicle ahead by means of acceleration and braking operations.

How do I know when Pilot Assist is operational?

Symbols in the driver display in the car indicate when Pilot Assist is operational.

	Adaptive Cruise Control is active. Pilot Assist is selected but not available. The criteria for the function are not met.
	Pilot Assist is active.

Lane assistance

Lane assistance can provide steering assistance and/or give you an alert when the vehicle is about to leave its own lane unintentionally. This function is active in the speed range 65-180 km/h (40-112 mph) on roads with clearly visible lane lines.

What does lane assistance do?

- Lane assistance can provide the driver with steering assistance, steering the car back into its lane and/or providing warnings using steering wheel vibration.

How do I know when lane assistance is operational?

Symbols in the driver's display in the car show the status of the function.

An extinguished symbol in the driver display means that the function is running but the conditions for LKA have not been met.

A white symbol in the driver's display means that the conditions for LKA have been met and that the function is available.

An orange symbol in the driver's display means that LKA is providing steering assistance back in to the lane and/or will provide warnings using steering wheel vibration.

Warning

The driver always bears responsibility for ensuring that the car is driven safely. Before using this function, the driver is recommended to read all sections on the function in the owner's manual.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid(LKA)

10.10.4. Symbols and messages for lane assistance

A number of symbols and messages regarding lane assistance (LKA[1]) can be shown on the driver display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Driver support system Reduced functionality Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[2].
	Windscreen sensor blocked See Owner's manual	The ability of the camera to scan the roadway in front of the car is reduced.
	Apply steering Lane Keeping Aid	The steering assistance does not function if the driver does not have his/her hands on the steering wheel. Follow the instruction and steer the car.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

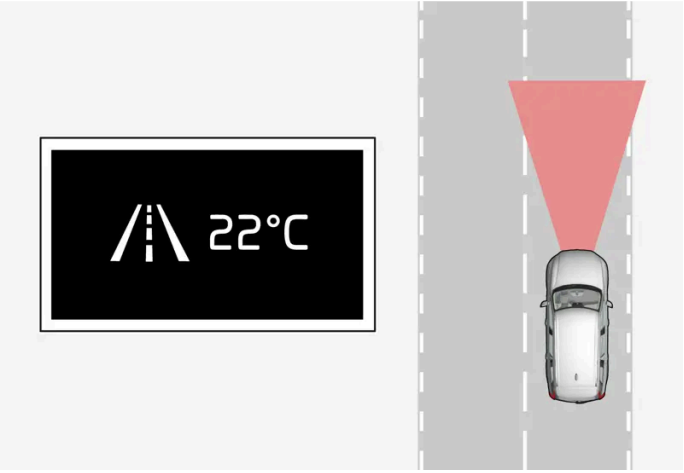
[2] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

10.10.5. Display mode for lane assistance

Lane assistance (LKA[1]) is visualised by symbols in the driver display depending on the situation.

Here are some examples of symbols and the situations in which they are shown:

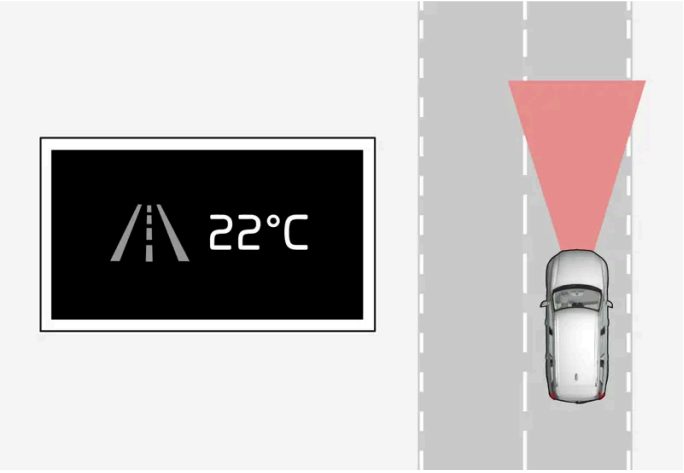
Available



Available – the lane lines in the symbol are white.

Lane assistance is scanning one or both lane lines.

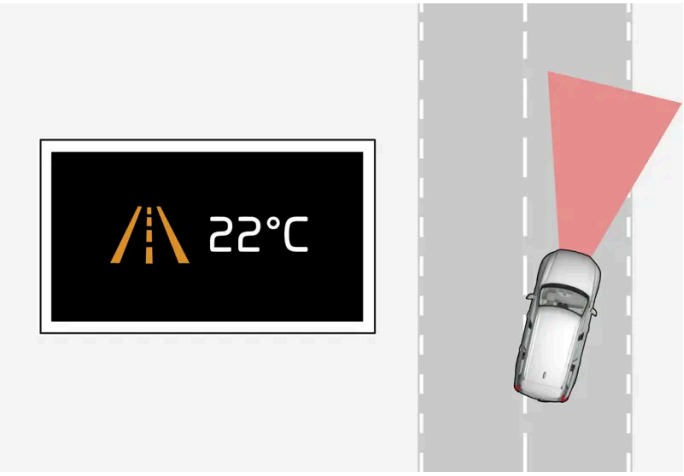
Unavailable



Unavailable – the lane lines in the symbol are extinguished.

The Lane assistance cannot detect the lane lines, the speed is too low or the road is too narrow.

Indication of steering assistance/warning



The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Steering assistance/warning – the lane lines in the symbol are coloured.

Lane assistance indicates that the system is giving a warning and/or attempting to steer the car back into the lane.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

10.10.6. Limitations of Lane assistance

In certain demanding conditions lane assistance (LKA[1]) may have difficulty helping the driver correctly. In such cases it is recommended to switch off this function.

Examples of such conditions are:

- road works
- winter road conditions
- poor road surface
- a very “sporty” driving style
- poor weather with reduced visibility
- roads with unclear or non-existent side markings
- sharp edges or lines other than the lane's side markings
- as the steering servo for speed-dependent steering wheel resistance is working at reduced power – e.g. when cooling due to overheating.

The function is unable to detect barriers, rails or similar obstacles at the side of the carriageway.

> **Note**
>
> This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

10.11. Electronic stability control

10.11.1. Electronic stability control

Electronic Stability Control (ESC[1]) helps the driver to avoid skidding and improves the car's traction.

The driver display shows this symbol when the system is engaged.

Braking from the system may be heard as a pulsing sound, and the car may accelerate more slowly than expected when applying the throttle.

The system consists of the following subfunctions:

- Stability function[2]
- Spin control and traction control system
- Engine Drag Control
- Trailer stability assist

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Stability function[2]

The function checks the driving and brake force of the wheels individually in order to stabilise the car.

Spin control and traction control system

The function is active at low speed and brakes the drive wheels that spin so that additional traction shall be transferred to the drive wheels that are not spinning.

The function can also prevent the driving wheels from spinning against the road surface during acceleration.

Electric motor braking control

Electric motor braking control (EDC[3]) can prevent involuntary wheel lock-up, e.g. when electric motor braking on slippery road surfaces. Involuntary wheel locking while driving can, amongst other things, impair the driver's ability to steer the car.

Trailer stability assist* [4]

Trailer stability assist (TSA[5]) stabilises a car towing a trailer in situations where they begin snaking.

[1] Electronic Stability Control

[2] Also known as Active Yaw Control.

[3] Engine Drag Control

* Option/accessory.

[4] Trailer stability assist is included when the Volvo genuine towbar is installed.

[5] Trailer Stability Assist

10.11.2. Symbols and messages for electronic stability control

A number of symbols and messages regarding electronic stability control (ESC[1]) can be shown on the driver display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Constant glow for approx. 2 seconds	System check when the car is started.
	Flashing light	The system is being activated.
–	Traction control temporarily off	The traction control system has been temporarily reduced due to excessive brake temperature. The function is reactivated automatically when the brakes have cooled.
	ESC Service required	The system is disengaged. Stop the car at a safe place. Check whether the error was temporary or if it persists by getting out of the car, locking it, unlocking it and getting back in. If the problem persists, contact a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

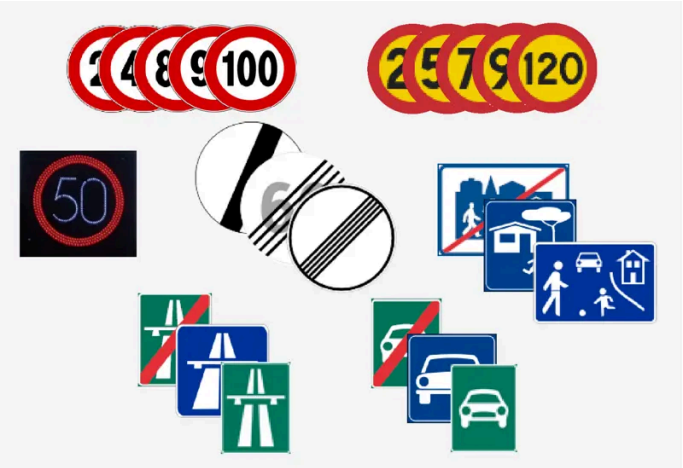
[1] Electronic Stability Control

10.12. Road Sign Information

10.12.1. Road Sign Information*

The Road Sign Information function can help the driver to observe speed-related road signs and certain prohibition signs[1].

The function is available in certain markets.



Examples of readable signs[2].

RSI can provide information about such things as current speed, when a motorway or road is starting/ending, when overtaking is prohibited or when the direction of travel is one-way.

If the car passes a speed limit sign, it will be shown in the driver's display.

Road Sign Information also includes subfunctions that can warn the driver if a speed limit has been exceeded or in connection with speed cameras.

Note

In certain markets, the road sign information function is only available in combination with map data. This may require the settings for Google Maps[3] to be changed.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Internet connection is required for Road Sign Information to work.

[2] Road signs are market-dependent - illustrations in these instructions only show a few examples.

[3] Read more at Maps Privacy center.

10.12.2. Limitations of Road Sign Information*

The Road Sign Information function may have limitations in certain situations.
The function is available in certain markets.

Examples of what can reduce the function are as follows:

- Faded signs
- Signs positioned on bends
- Rotated or damaged signs
- Signs positioned high above the roadway
- Fully/partially obscured or poorly positioned signs
- Signs completely or partly covered with frost, snow and/or dirt
- Digital road maps with outdated, incorrect or missing speed information [1]
- no Internet connection.
- approval for Google Maps [2].

> **Note**
>
> In certain markets, the road sign information function is only available in combination with map data.

> **Note**
>
> The function for Road Sign Information may interpret some types of bicycle rack, connected to the electrical socket for trailers, as a connected trailer. In such cases, the driver display may show incorrect speed information.

> **Note**
>
> This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Map data with speed information does not exist for all areas.

[2] Read more at Maps Privacy center.

10.12.3. Warning for speed limitation and speed camera from road sign information*

Road Sign Information includes subfunctions that can warn the driver if a speed limit has been exceeded or in connection with speed cameras [1].

The function is available in certain markets.

Warning for speed limit

The speed warning is given by the driver display symbol[2] flashing when the speed limit is exceeded by 5 km/h(3 mph).

The warning is repeated once after approx. 30 seconds if the speed has not been reduced.

New warnings will then be given if the speed has been reduced within 5 km/h(3 mph) of the speed limit. A new warning may also be given if the car drives into another speed limit area.

A speed warning is always given if the speed limit is exceeded in connection with speed camera information.[1]

Warning for speed camera

Cars equipped with Road sign information and map data[1] can give information on upcoming speed cameras in the driver display, provided that the navigation map for the current area contains information on speed cameras.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Information on speed cameras on the navigation map is not available for all markets/areas.

[2] Road signs are customised for each market – the one shown here is just an example.

10.12.4. Activating and deactivating warnings from road sign information*

In certain markets, Road Sign Information can be deactivated.
The function is available in certain markets.

Activate or deactivate the function under settings.

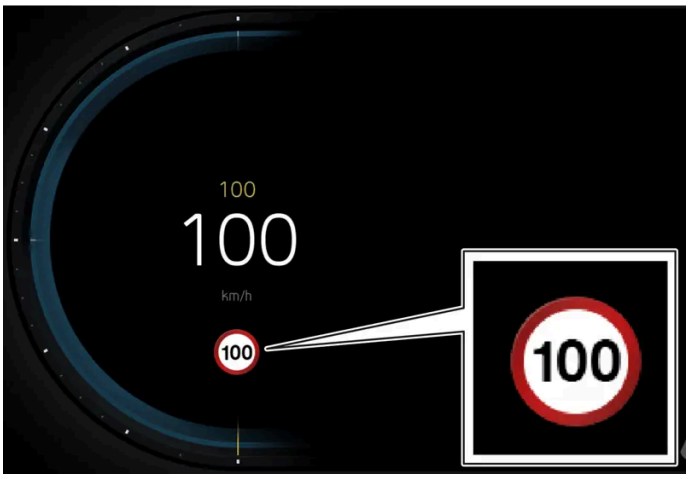
1 Press ⚙ in the centre display.

2 Tap on **Privacy settings** and select Road Sign Information settings.

* Option/accessory.

10.12.5. Display mode for road sign information*

The Road Sign Information function shows road signs in different ways depending on the sign and the situation. The following illustrations are examples.
The function is available in certain markets.



Example[1] of detected speed information.

When the function detects a road sign with an imposed speed limit, the driver display shows the sign as a symbol.

If the car is equipped with map data*, speed-related information is also obtained from map data, which means that the driver display can show or change information on the speed limit without having passed a speed-related sign.

An additional sign, such as "no overtaking", may be shown together with the speed limit symbol.

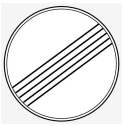
At a road entrance with no-entry signs, or with the prohibition confirmed with sign and map data, the driver is warned by a flashing symbol in the driver display and an acoustic warning.[2]

Speed limit or end of motorway

When the function detects an "indirect speed limit sign" stating the end of the current speed limit – e.g. at the end of a motorway – a symbol appears with the corresponding road sign in the driver's display.

If the car is equipped with map data*, direct speed limit signs are normally displayed – indirect speed limit signs are only displayed if map data has no information on the speed limit for the road section in question.

Example of indirect speed limit sign:



End of all restrictions.

End of motorway.

The driver display's symbol is extinguished shortly after and is re-illuminated when you next drive past a speed-related sign.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Changed speed limit

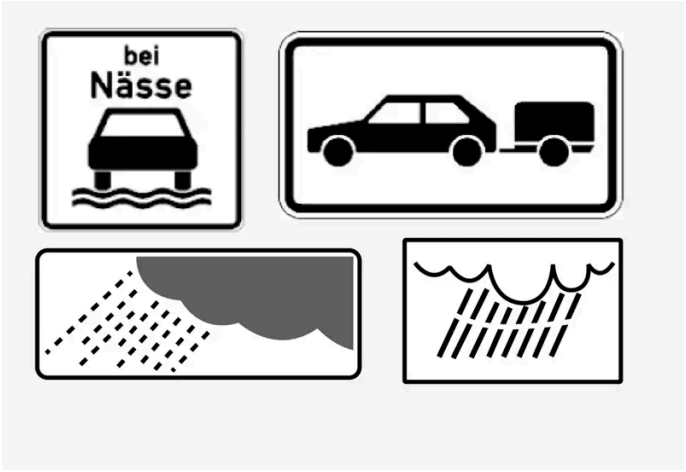
When passing a direct speed limit sign when a speed limit changes a symbol with the corresponding road sign appears in the driver's display.

Example of direct speed limit sign.

The driver display's symbol is extinguished shortly after and is re-illuminated when you next drive past a speed-related sign.

If the car is equipped with map data*, speed limit signs are shown in the driver display when map data contains information on the speed limit for the road section in question, even if no direct sign has been passed. If map data has no information, the sign is extinguished after a while.

Additional signs

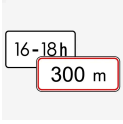


Examples of additional signs.

Sometimes different speed limits are signed for the same road - an additional sign then indicates the circumstances under which the different speeds apply. The road section may be particularly susceptible to accidents in rain and/or fog, for example.

An additional sign relating to rain is displayed only if the windscreen wipers are in use.

If a trailer is connected to the car's electrical system and you pass a speed sign with the additional sign "trailer", the indicated speed will appear on the driver display.



Some speed limits only apply after a certain distance or at a certain time of day. The driver's attention is drawn to this fact by means of a symbol for an additional sign below the speed symbol.

Sign for "School" and "Children at play"

If a warning sign for "School" or "Children at play" is included in the map data*, the driver display shows a sign of this type.

* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

[1] Road signs are market-dependent - the illustrations in these instructions only show examples.

[2] Applies to certain markets.

10.13. Parking functions

10.13.1. Parking assistance

10.13.1.1. Park Assist*

The Park Assist System uses sensors to assist the driver when manoeuvring in tight spaces by indicating the distance to obstacles through acoustic signals combined with a graphic in the centre display.

Example of screen view with obstacle zones and sensor sectors.

The centre display shows an overview of the relationship between the car and detected obstacles.

The highlighted sector indicates the location of the obstacle. The closer the car symbol is to a highlighted sector box at the front/back, the shorter the distance between the car and detected obstacle.

The side sectors change colour as the distance between the car and an object is reduced.

The shorter the distance to the obstacle, the faster the signal sounds. Other sound from the audio system is muted automatically.

The acoustic signal for obstacles ahead and to the sides is active when the car is moving but stops after the car has been stationary for approx. 2 seconds. The acoustic signal for obstacles behind is also active when the car is stationary.

At a distance within approx. 30 cm (1 foot) from an obstacle behind or in front of the car, the tone is constant and the active sensor field closest to the car symbol is filled.

At a distance within approx. 25 cm (0.8 foot) from an obstacle to the sides, the tone pulses intensively and the active sector field changes colour from orange to red.

The volume of the parking assistance signal can be adjusted while the signal is sounding by means of the [>II] knob on the centre console. Adjustment can also be performed in the parking assistance system's settings.

Note

Except in the sector nearest to the car symbol, audible warnings are only given for objects directly in the path of the car.

Warning

- The parking sensors are a complement to the driver's attention to the surroundings around the car. Their ability to detect obstacles at certain angles can be affected by the conditions during use.
- Pay particular attention if there are people and animals near the car.
- Bear in mind that the front of the car may swing out towards oncoming traffic during the parking manoeuvre.
- Objects/obstacles may be closer to the car than they appear to be on the screen.

Warning

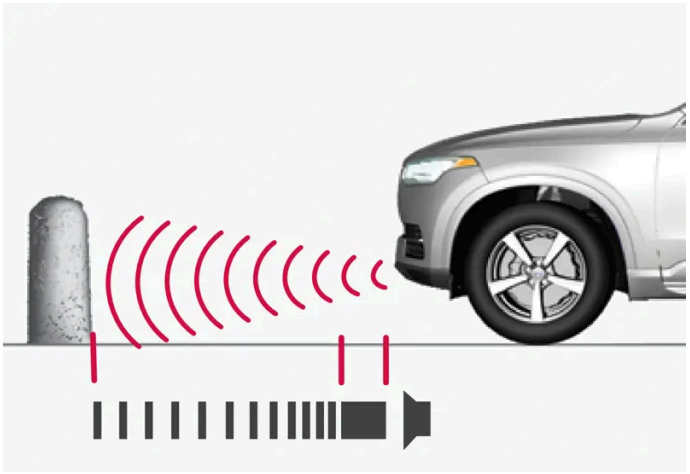
- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

10.13.1.2. Park Assist System front, rear and along the sides*

Park Assist Pilot has different behaviour depending on which part of the car is approaching an obstacle.

Forwards



The warning signal has a constant acoustic signal at less than approx. 30 cm (1 foot) from an obstacle.

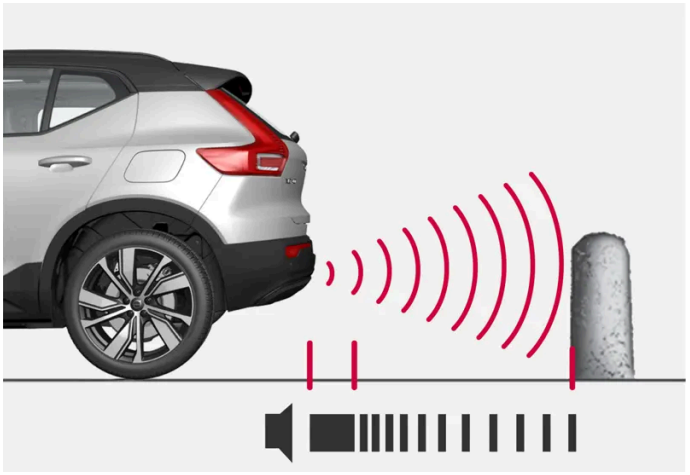
The Parking Assistance System's front detectors are activated automatically when the engine is started. They are active at speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph).

The measuring range is approx. 80 cm (2.5 feet) in front of the car.

> **Note**
>
> Parking assistance is deactivated when the parking brake is used or **P** mode is selected in a car with an automatic gearbox.

> **Important**
>
> When auxiliary lamps are fitted: Remember that these must not obscure the sensors - the auxiliary lamps may then be perceived as an obstacle.

Backwards



The warning signal has a constant tone at less than approx. 30 cm (1 foot) from an obstacle.

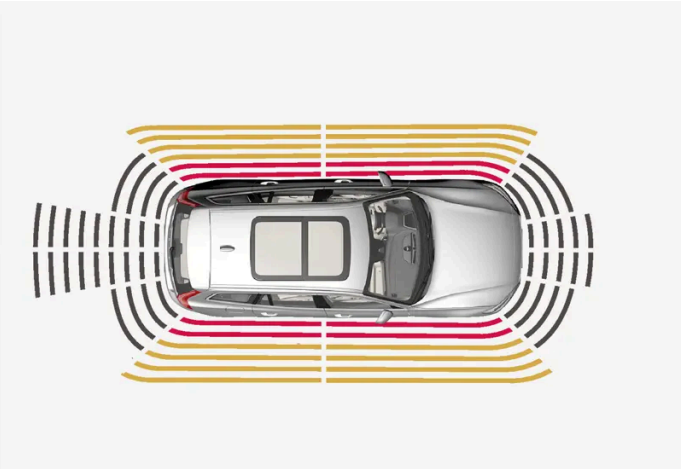
The sensors for reverse are activated if the car rolls backward without a gear engaged or when the gear lever is moved to reverse position.

The measuring range is approx. 1.5 metres (5 feet) behind the car.

When reversing with a trailer connected to the car's electrical system, parking assistance backward is deactivated automatically.

> **Note**
>
> When reversing with e.g. a trailer or bike carrier on the towbar - without Volvo genuine trailer wiring - parking assistance may need to be switched off manually in order that the sensors do not react to them.

Along the sides



The warning signal pulses intensively at less than approx. 25 cm (0.8 foot) from an obstacle.

Parking assistance side sensors are activated automatically when the engine is started. They are active at speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph).

The measuring range is approx. 25 cm (0.8 foot) from the sides.

However, the detection range of the side sensors increases significantly when the steering angle of the front wheels is increased, and obstacles of up to approx. 90 cm (3 feet) located diagonally behind or in front of the vehicle are detected when the steering wheel is turned.

* Option/accessory.

10.13.1.3. Activating and deactivating Parking Assistance System*

The park assist function can be activated or deactivated.

The front and side parking assistance detectors are activated automatically when the engine is started. The rear detectors are ac-

tivated if the car rolls backwards or when reverse gear is engaged.

Activate or deactivate the function with this button in parking camera view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

In cars equipped with a park assist camera*, Park Assist Pilot can also be activated or deactivated from the relevant camera view.

* Option/accessory.

10.13.1.4. Limitations of park assist system*

The Parking Assistance System cannot detect everything in all situations and may therefore have limited functionality in some cases.

A driver should be aware about the following examples of Park Assist Pilot's limitations:

Warning

- The ability of the park assist cameras to clearly reproduce the surroundings in all zones around the car can be affected by the conditions during use.
- Pay particular attention if there are people and animals near the car.
- Bear in mind that the front of the car may swing out towards oncoming traffic during the parking manoeuvre.
- Objects/obstacles may be closer to the car than they appear to be on the screen.

Warning

Pay additional attention while reversing when this symbol is shown if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is mounted and electrically connected to the car.

Extinguished symbol indicates that the parking assistance sensors rearward are **switched off** and warn of any obstacles.

Important

Objects e.g. chains, thin glossy poles or low barriers may be in the "signal shadow" and are then temporarily not detected by the sensors - the pulsating tone may then unexpectedly stop instead of changing over to the expected constant tone.

The sensors cannot detect high objects, such as projecting loading docks.

- In such situations, pay extra attention and manoeuvre/reposition the car particularly slowly or stop the current parking manoeuvre - there may be a high risk of damage to vehicles or other objects since information from the sensors is not always reliable in such situations.

Important

In certain conditions the parking assistance system may produce incorrect warning signals that are caused by external sound sources with the same ultrasonic frequencies that the system works with.

Examples of such sources include horns, wet tyres on asphalt, pneumatic brakes, exhaust noises from motorcycles, etc.

Note

Since a towbar is configured with the car's electrical system, towbar protrusion is included when the function measures the distance to an object behind the car.

* Option/accessory.

10.13.1.5. Symbols and messages for park assist system* and park assist camera*

Symbols and messages for Park Assist System and Park Assist Camera can be shown in the driver display and/or the centre display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	If the symbol is extinguished.	The rearward parking assistance sensors are **deactivated**, so there are no acoustic warnings and field marks for obstacles/objects.
	Cleaning needed Park Assist System sensors blocked	One or more of the function's sensors are blocked - check and correct as soon as possible.
	Park Assist System unavailable Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[1].

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

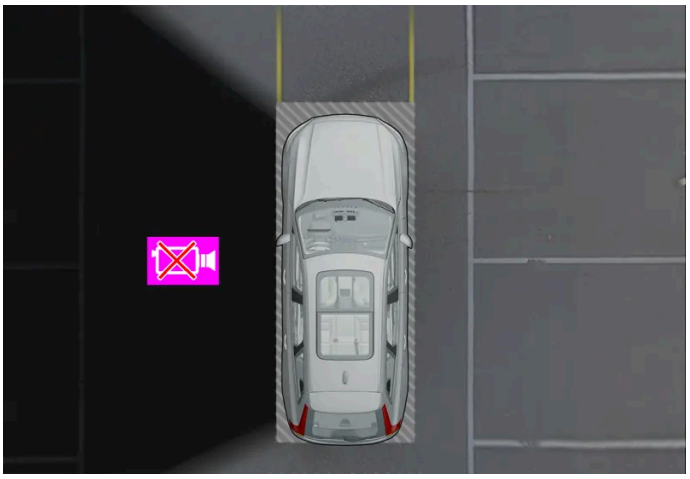
If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Warning

Pay additional attention while reversing when this symbol is shown if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is mounted and electrically connected to the car.

Extinguished symbol indicates that the parking assistance sensors rearward are **switched off** and warn of any obstacles.

Defective park assist camera



Example for showing when the car's left camera is non-operational.

If a camera sector is black it means that the camera is inoperative.

A black camera sector is also shown in the following instances, but then **without** the symbol for defective camera:

- open door
- open tailgate
- folded-in door mirror.

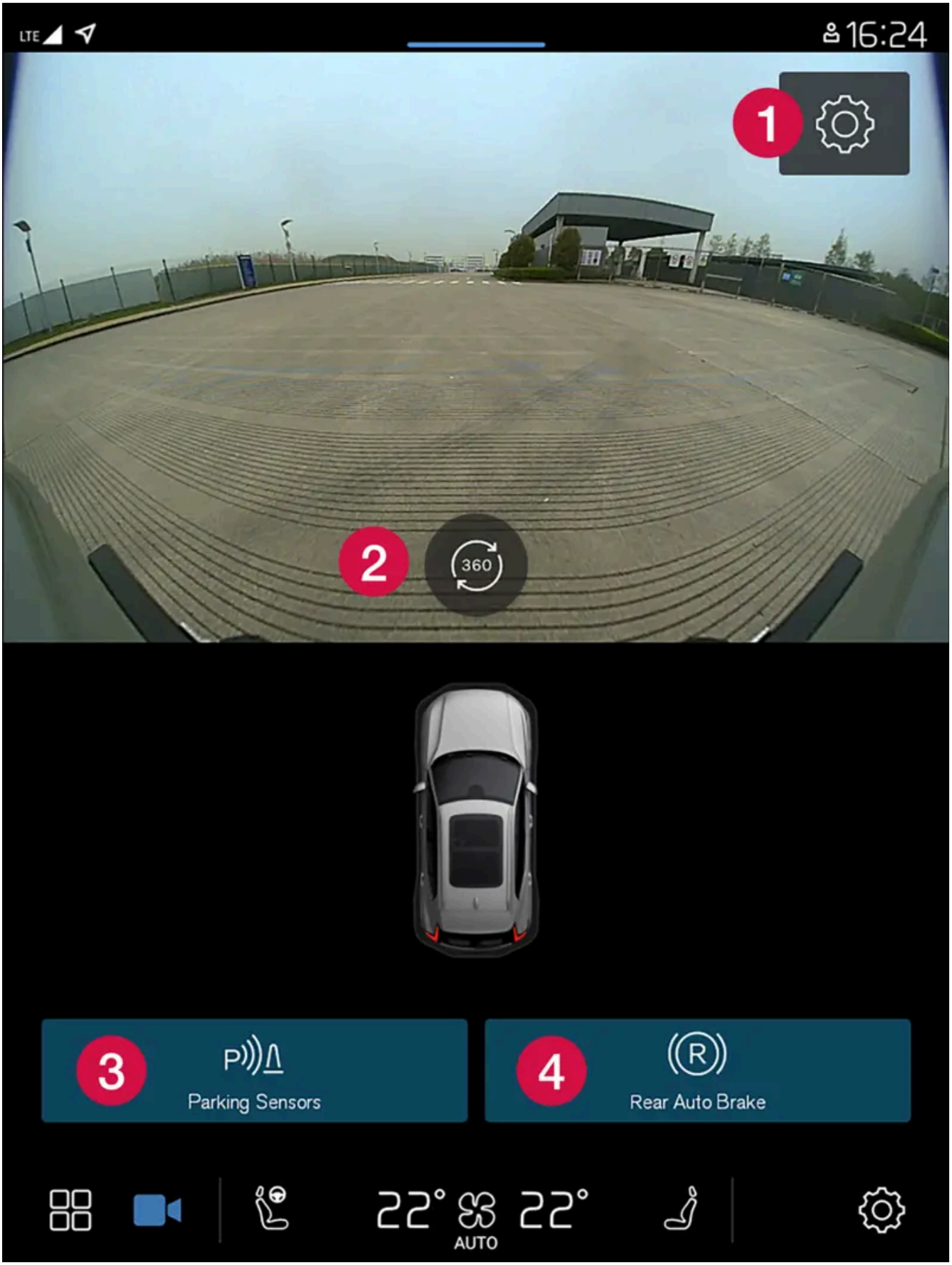
* Option/accessory.

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

10.13.2. Park assist camera

10.13.2.1. Park assist camera*

Park assist camera can assist the driver when manoeuvring in tight spaces by indicating obstacles with a camera image and graphic in the centre display.



Example of camera view.

1. Settings
2. Activates all cameras in order to give a 360° view
3. Activates/deactivates the parking assistance sensors
4. Activates/deactivates auto brake when reversing*

The park assist camera is a support function which is activated automatically when reverse gear is selected or manually in the centre display.

Warning

- The ability of the park assist cameras to clearly reproduce the surroundings in all zones around the car can be affected by the conditions during use.
- Pay particular attention if there are people and animals near the car.
- Bear in mind that the front of the car may swing out towards oncoming traffic during the parking manoeuvre.
- Objects/obstacles may be closer to the car than they appear to be on the screen.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

10.13.2.2. Activating park assist camera*

The park assist camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged or manually with one of the centre display's function buttons.

Camera view when reversing

When reverse gear is engaged, the screen shows the 360° view if it or any of the side views was the last used camera view, otherwise the rear view is shown.

Camera view for manual camera activation

Activate the parking camera with this button in the centre display. The screen then initially shows the last used camera view. But after each engine start, the previously shown side view is replaced by the 360° view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

Automatic deactivation of camera

The front view extinguishes at 25 km/h (16 mph) to avoid distracting the driver – it reactivates automatically if the speed drops to 22 km/h (14 mph) within 1 minute, on the condition that the speed has not exceeded 50 km/h (31 mph).

Other camera views are extinguished at 15 km/h (9 mph) and not reactivated.

* Option/accessory.

10.13.2.3. Symbols and messages for park assist system* and park assist camera*

Symbols and messages for Park Assist System and Park Assist Camera can be shown in the driver display and/or the centre display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	If the symbol is extinguished.	The rearward parking assistance sensors are **deactivated**, so there are no acoustic warnings and field marks for obstacles/objects.
	Cleaning needed Park Assist System sensors blocked	One or more of the function's sensors are blocked - check and correct as soon as possible.
	Park Assist System unavailable Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[1].

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

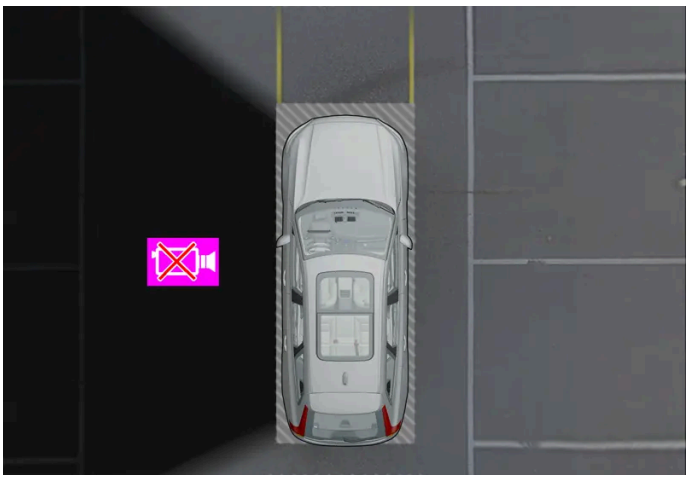
If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Warning

Pay additional attention while reversing when this symbol is shown if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is mounted and electrically connected to the car.

Extinguished symbol indicates that the parking assistance sensors rearward are **switched off** and warn of any obstacles.

Defective park assist camera



Example for showing when the car's left camera is non-operational.

If a camera sector is black it means that the camera is inoperative.

A black camera sector is also shown in the following instances, but then **without** the symbol for defective camera:

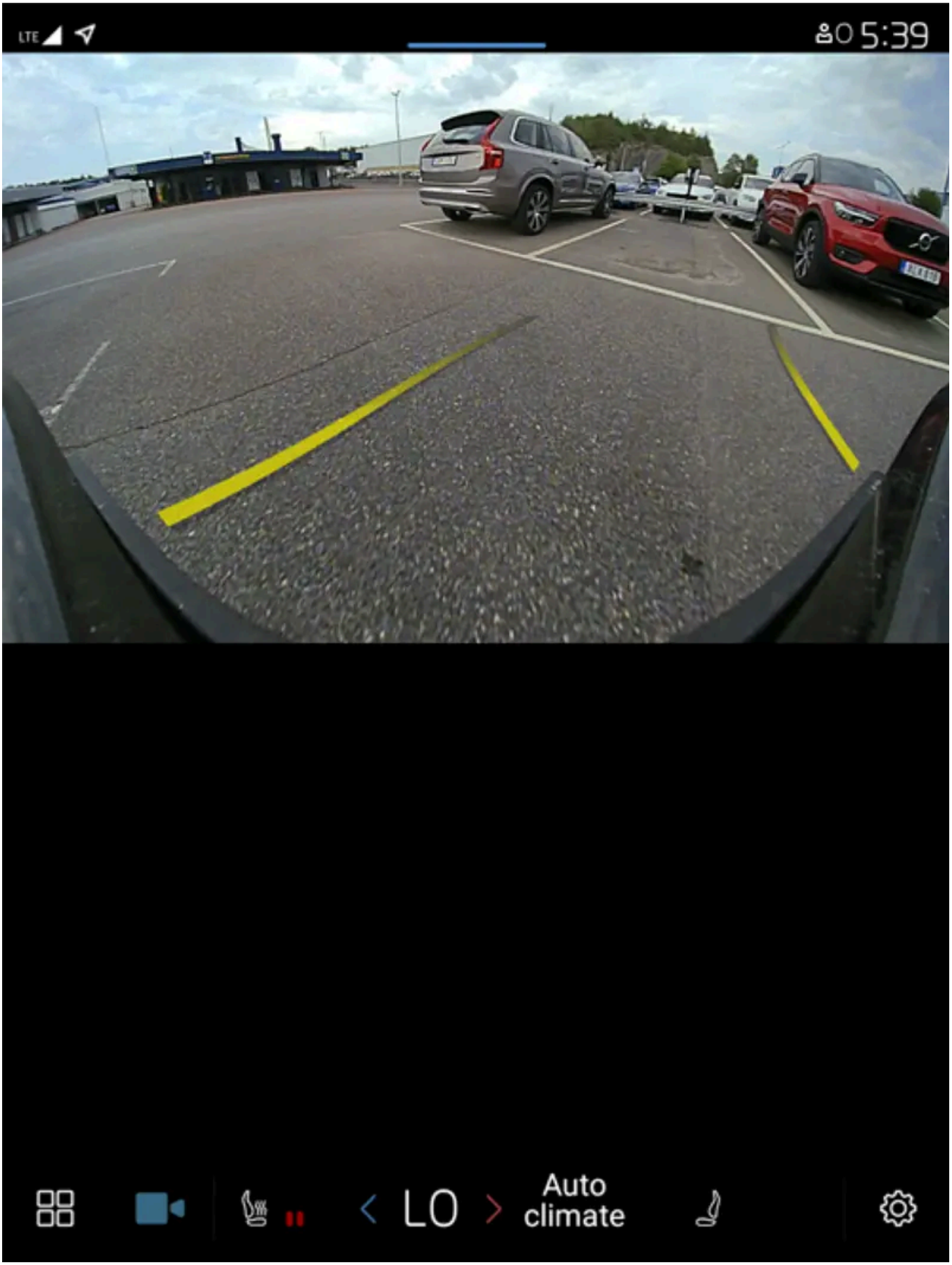
- open door
- open tailgate
- folded-in door mirror.

* Option/accessory.

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

10.13.2.4. Park assist lines for park assist camera*

The Park assist cameras indicate the position of the car in relation to its surroundings by displaying lines on the screen.



Example of park assist lines

Park assist lines show the intended route for the car's external dimensions with the current steering wheel angle - this can facilitate parallel parking, reversing into tight spaces and when connecting a trailer.

The lines on the screen are projected as if they were at ground level behind the car and respond directly to steering wheel movements, showing the driver the path the car will take - also when the car is turning.

These park assist lines include the car's most protruding parts, e.g. towbar, door mirrors and corners.

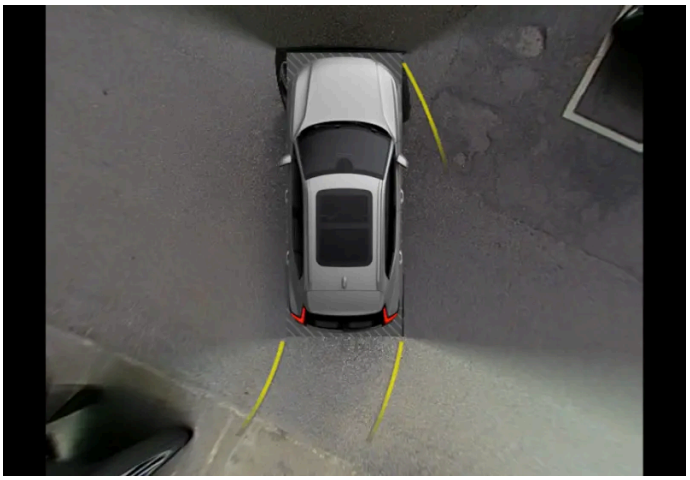
Note

- When reversing with a trailer which is not connected electrically to the car, the park assist lines on the display show the route the **car** will take – not the trailer.
- The screen shows no park assist lines when a trailer is connected electrically to the car's electrical system.

Important

- Remember, that with the rear camera view selected, the monitor only displays the area behind the car. Be aware of the sides and front of the car when manoeuvring in reverse.
- The same applies vice versa - note what happens to the rear parts of the car when the front camera view is selected.
- Note that the park assist lines show the **shortest** route. Therefore, pay extra attention to the car's sides so that they do not go against/over something when the steering wheel is turned when driving forward or that the front sweeps against/over something when the steering wheel is turned when reversing.

Park assist lines in 360° view*



360° view with park assist lines

With the 360° view, park assist lines are shown behind, in front of and at the side of the car (depending on the direction of travel):

- When driving forwards: Front lines
- When reversing: Side lines and reversing lines

With front or rear camera selected, the park assist lines appear regardless of the car's direction of travel.

With one side camera selected, the park assist lines only appear when reversing.

Towbar assist line

A park assist line for the towbar's intended trajectory can be shown and provide assistance when connecting a trailer. The function is activated in the settings for the parking camera.

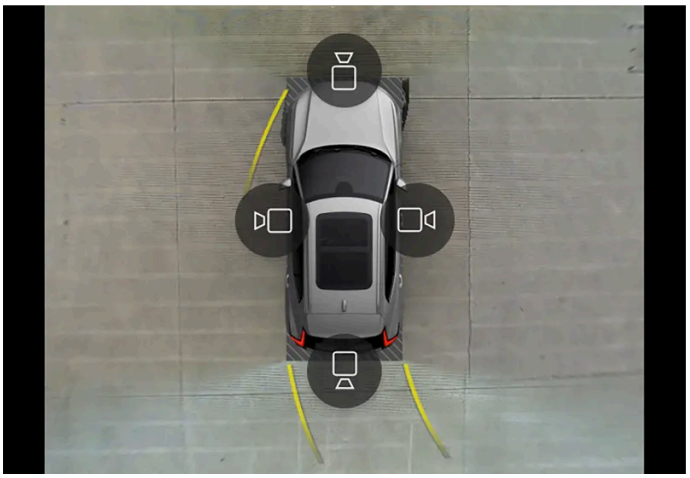
Park assist lines for the towbar and the whole of the car cannot be shown at the same time.

* Option/accessory.

10.13.2.5. Park assist camera locations and surveillance areas*

The Park Assist cameras can show rear, front, left or right camera view individually. You can also have a composite 360° view that shows all sides.

360° view*



Example of how all camera symbols are shown in the 360° view.

The 360° view function activates all parking cameras, whereupon the four sides of the car are shown simultaneously in the centre display, which helps the driver to observe what is around the car when manoeuvring at low speed. From the 360° view, each camera view can be activated separately. Tap on the screen to show the camera symbols and select the desired view. The camera symbols will disappear after a short time without the screen being touched.

The cameras can be activated automatically or manually.

Backwards

The backwards-facing camera is fitted above the registration plate.

The backward-facing camera shows a wide area behind the car. For certain models, part of the bumper can be seen as well as the towbar in some cases.

Objects shown in the centre display may appear slightly tilted – this is normal.

Forwards

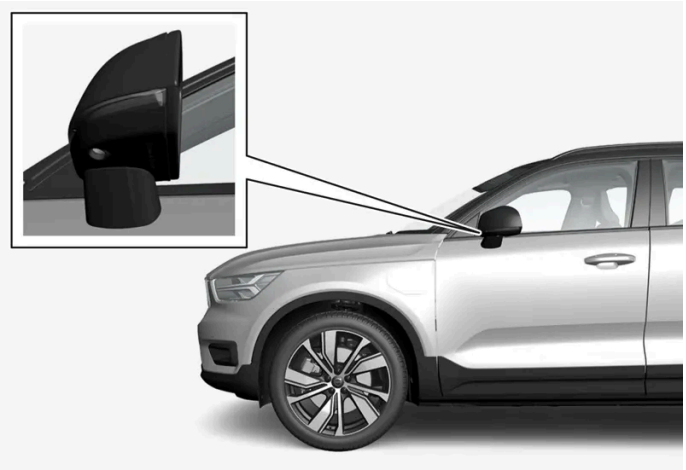
The forwards parking camera is located in the grille.

The front camera can be helpful on an exit road with limited visibility to the sides, e.g. when driving out of a garage. It is active at speeds up to 25 km/h (16 mph) - following which, the front camera is switched off.

If the car does not reach 50 km/h (30 mph) and the speed falls below 22 km/h (14 mph) within 1 minute after the forward-facing camera has been extinguished, the camera is reactivated.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

The sides



The side cameras are positioned in each door mirror.

The side cameras can show what is along each side of the car.

* Option/accessory.

10.13.2.6. Sensor fields for park assist system*

If the car is equipped with the Park Assist System then the distance is shown in the Park Assist camera's 360° view with coloured fields for each sensor that registers an obstacle.

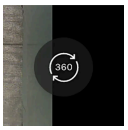
Sensor fields backwards and forwards

The fields for the front and reversing sensors change colour as the distance to the obstacle decreases – from yellow through orange to red.	
Field colour reverse	**Distance in metres (feet)**
Yellow	0.6-1.5 (2.0-4.9)
Orange	0.3–0.6 (1.0–2.0)
Red	0-0.3 (0-1.0)

Field colour forwards	**Distance in metres (feet)**
Yellow	0.6–0.8 (2.0–2.6)
Orange	0.3–0.6 (1.0–2.0)
Red	0-0.3 (0-1.0)

For red sensor fields, the pulsating acoustic signal changes over to a constant tone.

Warning



The sensor fields on the 360° symbol only show the direction to an obstacle. They do not show the distance to the obstacle.

* Option/accessory.

10.14. Camera and radar unit

10.14.1. Recommended maintenance for camera units, detector units and radar units

In order that the cameras, parking sensors, and radar units shall function correctly, they must be kept clear of dirt, ice and snow, and be cleaned regularly with water and car shampoo.

- Do not affix any objects, tape or decals in the areas described below.
- Clean camera lenses regularly with lukewarm water and car shampoo - be careful not to scratch the lenses.
- Do not install auxiliary lamps or similar in the grille as this can affect the performance of the front radar unit.

Radar unit locations

Location of front radar unit

Location of rear radar units

Location of the parking sensors

Location of the parking sensors around the car

> **Note**
>
> Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may cause incorrect warning signals, reduced or no function.

Camera location

Location of the camera unit

> **Important**
>
> Maintenance of driver support components must only be performed at a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

10.14.2. Symbols and messages for camera and radar units

Here are examples of some of the display messages and symbols regarding the camera and radar that can be shown in the driver display.

Detector blocked

If the driver display shows this symbol and a message, this means that the camera and radar units cannot detect other vehicles, cyclists, pedestrians and large animals in front of the car, and that the car's camera-based and radar-based functions may be disrupted.

The following table presents examples of possible causes for a message being shown, along with the appropriate action:

Cause	Action
The surface area in front of the radar unit is dirty or covered with ice or snow.	Clean the surface area in front of the radar unit from dirt, ice and snow.
The windscreen surface in front of the camera unit is dirty or covered with ice or snow.	Clean dirt, ice and snow from the windscreen surface in front of the camera unit.
Thick fog and heavy rain or snow block the radar signals or the camera view.	No action. Sometimes the unit does not work during heavy rain or snowfall.
Water or snow from the road surface swirls up and blocks the radar signals or camera view.	No action. Sometimes the unit does not work on a very wet or snow-covered road surface.
Strong oncoming light	No action. The camera unit is reset automatically in more favourable light conditions.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

10.14.3. Limitations for camera and radar units

The camera and radar have certain limitations – which in turn also limits those functions that use the units. A driver should be aware about the following examples of limitations.

Common limitations for camera and radar

The camera and radar are aids for intelligent driving that cannot be called upon to achieve intelligent driving, and the necessary safety management must be implemented in order to avoid road safety risks or accidents caused by the driver's incorrect use of the camera and radar.

Blocked unit

Do not position, stick or install anything in front of or around the camera and radar units – this may disrupt camera and radar-based functions. This may result functions being reduced, being switched off completely or giving incorrect function responses.

Damaged windscreen

The following rules are also applicable when a camera is fitted in the windscreen:

- If a scratch, crack or stone chip appears in front of the unit and covers an area of approx. 0.5 × 3.0 mm (0.02 × 0.12 inches) or more, a workshop[1] must be contacted so that the windscreen can be replaced.
- Volvo recommends **not** repairing cracks, scratches or stone chips in the area in front of the unit – the entire windscreen should be replaced instead.
- Before replacing a windscreen, contact a workshop[1] to verify that the correct windscreen has been ordered and will be fitted.
- The same type of windscreen wipers or windscreen wipers approved by Volvo must be fitted when the windscreen is replaced.
- When replacing the windscreen, the camera unit must be recalibrated by a workshop[1] to ensure the functionality of all the camera-based systems in the car.

> **Note**
>
> If not rectified, it can lead to reduced performance for the driver support systems that use the camera and/or radar units. This may result functions being reduced, being switched off completely or giving incorrect function responses.

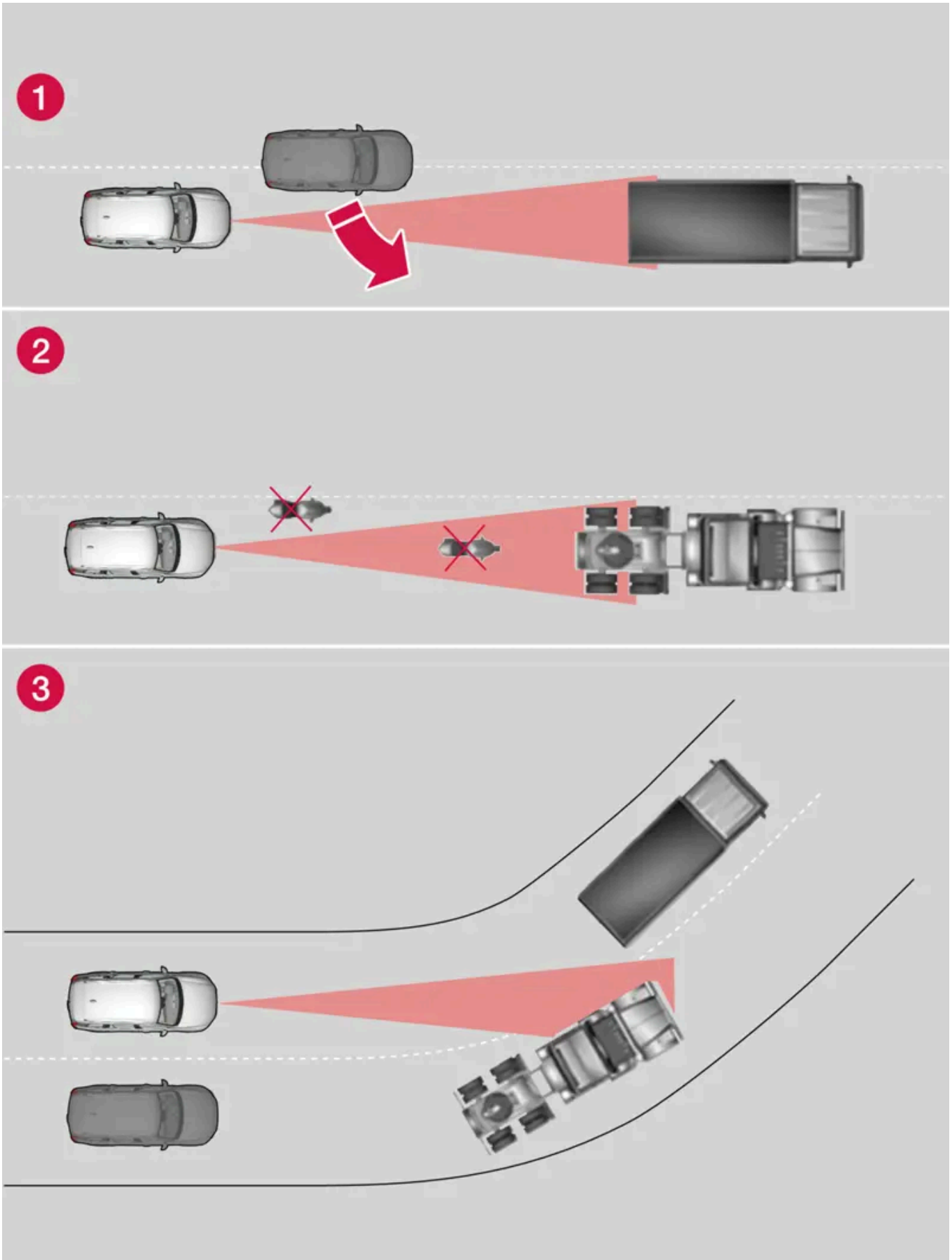
Further limitations for radar

Vehicle speed

The radar unit's ability to detect a vehicle ahead is greatly reduced if the speed of the vehicle ahead is very different to the speed of your own car.

Limited field of vision

The radar unit has a limited field of vision. In some situations another vehicle is not detected, or the detection is made later than expected.



The radar unit's field of vision

1. Sometimes the radar unit is late at detecting vehicles at close distances - e.g. a vehicle that drives in between your car and the vehicle ahead.
2. Small vehicles, such as motorcycles, or vehicles not driving in the centre of the lane can remain undetected.
3. In bends, the radar unit may detect a different vehicle than intended or lose a detected vehicle from view.

Reduced function

In the event of heavy rain or slush or ice on the emblem, radar unit functions may be reduced, completely deactivated, or give incorrect function response.

Further limitations for camera

Impaired vision

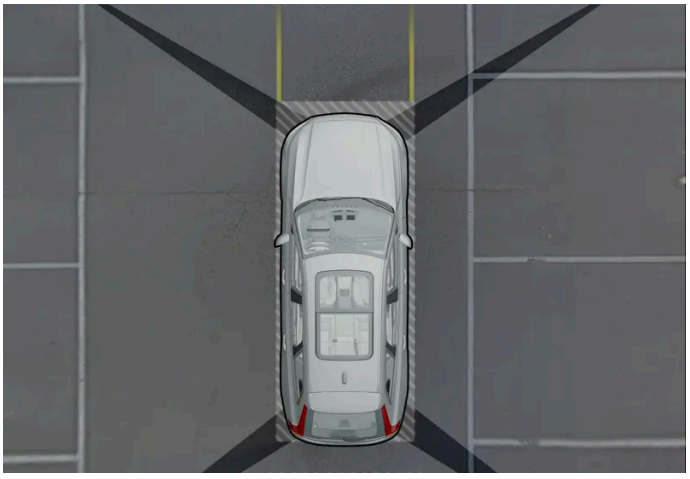
The cameras have limitations similar to the human eye, i.e. may "see" worse in for example intense snowfall or rain, dense fog, heavy dust storms and snow flurries. Under such conditions, the functions of camera-dependent systems could be significantly reduced or temporarily disengaged.

Strong oncoming light, reflections in the carriageway, snow or ice on the road surface, dirty road surfaces or unclear lane markings can also significantly reduce camera function when it is used to scan the carriageway to detect pedestrians, cyclists, large animals and other vehicles.

Bicycle racks or other accessories mounted at the rear of the car may obscure the camera's view.

Further limitations for Park assist camera*

Blind sectors



There are "blind" sectors between the cameras' fields of vision.

In the park assist camera's 360° view* obstacles/objects may "vanish" in the gaps between the individual cameras.

> **Warning**
>
> Pay attention to the possibility that, even if it only looks like a relatively small part of the image is obscured, a relatively large sector could be hidden from view. An obstacle could thereby go undetected until the car is very close to it.

Light conditions

The camera image is adjusted automatically according to prevailing light conditions. Because of this, the image may vary slightly in brightness and quality. Poor light conditions can result in reduced image quality.

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

10.14.4. Camera unit

The camera unit is used by several driver support systems and has the task of for example detecting lane lines or traffic signs.

Location of the camera unit

The camera unit is used by the following functions:

- Pilot Assist*
- Lane assistance*
- Assistance at risk of collision
- Driver Alert*
- Road Sign Information*
- Active main beam*
- Park Assist*
- Ready to drive notification

> **Important**
>
> Do not attempt to access the camera using sharp or foreign objects through the air vents as this may damage the equipment.

* Option/accessory.

10.14.5. Radar units

The radar units are used by several driver support systems and monitor various areas around the car.

Location of front radar unit

Location of rear radar units

Modifying radar units may make them illegal to use.

Do not install auxiliary lamps or similar in front of the grille as this can affect the function of the radar unit.

10.14.6. Type approval for radar device

Here you can find type approval for the car's radar units for Pilot Assist* and BLIS* [1].

Market	PA	BLIS	Symbol	Type approval
Botswana	✓		BTA REGISTERED No: XXXXX/XX/XXXX/XXXX	BOCRA/TA2019/4981

Market	PA	BLIS	Symbol	Type approval
		✓		BOCRA/TA/2017/3372
Brazil	✓			Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados. 06354-19-12386
		✓		Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados. 03563-17-05364
Europe	✓			Hereby, Veoneer US, Inc. declares that the radio equipment type 77V12FLR is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. Operational frequency band: 76-77 GHz Maximum Output Power: <55dBm EIRP The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory Manufacturer: Veoneer US, Inc. 26360 American Drive Southfield, MI 48034 USA Phone: +1-248-223-0600
		✓		Hereby, Hella KgaA Hueck & Co. Declares that the radio equipment type RS4 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: www.hella.com/vcc. Technical information: Frequency range: 24.05 ... 24.25 GHz Transmission power: 20 dBm (maximum) EIRP Manufacturer and Address: Manufacturer: Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. Address: Rixbecker Straße 75, 59552 Lippstadt, Germany
The United Arab Emirates (UAE)	✓			REGISTERED No: ER72325/19 DEALER No: 0020858/10
		✓		Registered No: ER53878/17 Dealer No: DA44932/15
Ghana	✓			NCA Approved: ZRO-1H-7E3-145
		✓		NCA Approved: 1R3-1M-7E1-0B7
Indonesia		✓		Certificate number: 50459/SDPPI/2017 Country of origin Germany Certificate number: 53578/SDPPI/2017 Country of origin China PLG ID: 6051
Japan	✓			This device is granted pursuant to the Japanese Radio Law under the grant ID n° : R 215-JRA003 This device should not be modified (otherwise the granted designation number will become invalid). 本製品は、電波法に基づく特定無線設備の技術基準適合証明などを 受けております。 認証番号: R 215-JRA003 本製品の改造は禁止されています。（適合証明番号などが無効とな ります。）
		✓		This device is granted pursuant to the Japanese Radio Law under the grant ID n° : R 204-750001 This device should not be modified (otherwise the granted designation number will become invalid). 本製品は、電波法に基づく特定無線設備の技術基準適合証明などを 受けております。 認証番号: R 204-750001 本製品の改造は禁止されています。（適合証明番号などが無効とな ります。）
China		✓		车辆驾驶辅助雷达系统型号： RS4型 微功率短距无线电传送设备分类：H类 频率范围：24.05-24.25GHz 放射功率: 20mW （等效全向辐射功率） 天线类型：集成型微带贴片阵列天线 用户控制：不可 不得擅自更改发射频率、加发射功率（包括额外加装射频功率放大器），不得擅自外接天线或改用其它发射天线 使用时不得对各种合法的无线电通信业务产生有害干扰；一旦发现有干扰现象时，应立即停止使用，并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续使用 使用微功率无线电设备，必须耐受各种无线电业务的干扰或工业、科学及医疗应用设备的辐射干扰 不得在飞机和机场附近使用。
Malaysia	✓			HIDF15000171 Model: 77V12FLR Brand: Veoneer US, Inc.
		✓		CID F 15000578 RDBV/42A/1019/S(19-4114)
Morocco	✓			AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d´agrément: MR_20098_ANRT_2019 Date d´agrément: 2019_06_14
		✓		AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC NUMÉRO D'AGRÉMENT: MR 9929 ANRT 2014 DATE D'AGRÉMENT: 26/12/2014

Market	PA	BLIS	Symbol	Type approval
Mexico	✓			IFT: RLVVE7719-1064 La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones: (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.
		✓		Radar de corto alcance RS4 Hella KGaA Hueck & Co IFETEL: RLVHERS17-0286 La operación de este equipo esta sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones: (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.
Moldova	✓	✓	024	
Nigeria	✓	✓		Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission.
Oman	✓		OMAN TRA R/####/## #######	Registered No: R/7713/19 Dealer No: D172338
		✓		Registered No: R/3957/17 Dealer No: D080134
Paraguay	✓		CONATEL NR: XXXX-XX-X-XXXX	NR: 2019-07-I-0397
Serbia	✓			И011 19
		✓		И011 17
Singapore	✓		Complies with IMDA Standards DAXXXXXX	DA 106706
		✓		DA 103238
South Africa	✓		ICASA	TA-2019/1378APPROVED
		✓		TA-2016/3407APPROVED
South Korea	✓			R-C-1VN-77V12FLR
		✓		R-CMM-HLA-RS4 이 기기는 업무용(A급) 전자파 적합기기로서 판 매자 또는 사용 자는 이 점을 주의하시기 바 라며, 가정외의 지역에서 사용 하는 것을 목적으 로 합니다
Taiwan	✓			CCAI19LP2310T1 警語 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機,非經許可,公司、商號或使用者均不得擅 自變更頻率、加 大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信;經發現有干擾現象 時,應立即停用 ,並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前項合法通信,指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合 法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾
		✓		CCAB17LP0470T5 警語 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機,非經許可,公司、商號或使用者均不得擅 自變更頻率、加 大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信;經發現有干擾現象 時,應立即停用 ,並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前項合法通信,指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合 法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾

Market	PA	BLIS	Symbol	Type approval
Thailand	✓	✓		1) [illegible]. 2) [illegible]
Ukraine	✓			UA RF: 1VEON2FLR справжнім VEONEER US, INC. заявляє, що тип радіообладнання 77V12FLR відповідає Технічному регламенту радіообладнання; повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою: https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory
		✓		Цим HELLA GmbH & Co. KGaA заявляє, що радіотехнічне обладнання типу RS4 відповідає Технічному регламенту радіотехнічного обладнання та Директиві 2014/53/ЄС. Повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний за адресою: www.hella.com/vcc Частотний діапазон: 24,05 – 24,25 ГГц Потужність передачі: 20 дБм (макс.) EIRP
Vietnam	✓			77V12FLR
		✓		C0173191017AF04A2
Zambia	✓		ZICTA	ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2019/6/61
		✓		ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2017/6/7

Type approval for radio equipment

Market	Symbol	Type approval
Europe	CE	Hereby, Volvo cars, declares that all radio equipment's are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU.

For detailed information on type approval, go to volvocars.com/intl/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support] .

* Option/accessory.

[1] Blind Spot Information

10.15. Driving support systems

The car is equipped with different driver support systems which can assist the driver in different situations, either actively or passively.

For example, the systems can help the driver to:

- maintain a set speed
- maintain a certain time interval to the vehicle ahead
- prevent a collision by giving a warning to the driver and braking the car
- help the driver to park.

Some of the systems are fitted as standard while others are options – which alternative applies is market dependent.

Some of the systems have improved functionality when Google Maps is used.

> **Warning**
>
> The driver support systems are only supplementary aids - they cannot handle all situations in all conditions.
>
> The driver always bears responsibility that the vehicle is driven safely and that applicable road traffic rules and regulations are followed.

10.16. Warnings from various driver support systems

If you notice that the car acts in an unexpected way then this may be due to one of the car's safety-related functions being activated.

What is happening in your car?

There are several functions in your car that can contribute actively to increasing safety in traffic, both for yourself and other road users. You have the option of viewing a list of some of the functions and what they may do – the aim of this is to ensure you are not surprised by the activation of any of the functions. If a function should be activated, you can also be informed of this via a text message in the driver display.

> **Note**
>
> Read the individual sections on each system in order to fully understand the functions and learn about important warnings.

Warning with the symbol, acoustic signals, visual signals or vibration

The driver support functions in your car can alert you in different ways. For example, with vibration in the steering wheel, brake pulse, with visual or acoustic signals or via symbols in the driver display.

Assistance at risk of collision

Assistance at risk of collision [1] can assist the driver to avoid or mitigate a collision with a warning, automatic braking and steering assistance.

Your experience of the function may therefore differ depending on which subfunction is activated.

Assistance at risk of collision can perform the following steps if necessary:

- Collision warning
- Assisted braking
- Automatic braking
- Steering assistance

Lane Keeping Aid (LKA [2])

Lane assistance can help you to reduce the risk of the car unintentionally leaving its own lane.

- Steering assistance: If the function detects that the car is approaching a lane line, you will feel a gentle steering action applied to the steering wheel. You must have both hands on the steering wheel for the function to work.
- Warning: If the function detects that the car is approaching a lane line, you will be alerted by vibration in the steering wheel.
- Both: You are alerted with vibration and a gentle steering action applied to the steering wheel.

Rear Collision Warning (RCW) *

Rear Collision Warning is a system that can help you avoid being hit by a vehicle approaching from behind. If the system detects a risk of rear-end collision, it can give a warning and take the following action, depending on the conditions.

- Intensive flashing with the direction indicators.
- At low speeds the function can tension the seatbelts by activating the seatbelt tensioners, and also activate the Whiplash Protection System.
- If the car is stationary, the foot brake can be activated.

Blind Spot Information (BLIS)

BLIS is designed to give a warning of rapidly approaching vehicles as well as vehicles diagonally behind and to the side of your vehicle so as to give you assistance in heavy traffic on roads with several lanes in the same direction.

- Alerts with an indicator lamp in the side mirror, with fixed glow and flashing light.

Driver Alert

The function is intended to attract the driver's attention if he/she starts to drive less consistently, e.g. if he/she becomes distracted or starts to fall asleep.

- Acoustic signal combined with a symbol in the driver display and a message.

Warning and auto-brake when reversing

There are two functions that can assist the driver to prevent a collision while reversing.

- Cross Traffic Alert (CTA)* is designed to alert for crossing traffic when the car is being reversed.
- Rear Auto Brake (RAB) is intended to help the driver detect stationary obstacles that may be directly behind the car when it is being reversed.

If obstacles are detected:

1. A warning signal and the graphic for parking assistance illuminate to indicate the position of the obstacle.
2. If the driver does not pay attention to the warning and a collision is unavoidable, the car is auto-braked and an explanatory text message is shown for why the car was braked.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

Electronic Stability Control (ESC[3]) helps the driver to avoid skidding and improves the car's traction. When the system intervenes, the symbol appears in the driver display with a flashing light. If a fault has occurred and the system is unavailable, the symbol appears permanently lit together with a text message.

> **Warning**
>
> The functions described are supplementary aids - they cannot handle all situations in all conditions.
>
> The driver always bears responsibility that the vehicle is driven safely and that applicable road traffic rules and regulations are followed.

[1] Collision Avoidance

[2] Lane Keeping Aid

* Option/accessory.

[3] Electronic Stability Control

10.17. Speed-dependent steering force

Speed related power steering causes the steering wheel force to increase with the speed of the car so as to be able to give the driver enhanced sensitivity. On motorways the steering is firmer. When parking and at low speed steering is light and requires less effort.

Reduced power

In rare situations, the power steering may need to work at reduced power, and turning the steering wheel may then seem slightly heavier. This may occur when the power steering becomes too hot and it then needs temporary cooling. It may also occur if the power supply is disrupted.

In the event of reduced power, the message **Power steering assistance Temporarily reduced** is shown, as well as this symbol in the driver display.

While the power steering is working at reduced power, the driver support functions and steering assistance systems are not available.

> **Warning**
>
> If the temperature increases too much, the servo may be forced to switch off completely. In such a situation, the driver display shows the **Stop safely Power steering failure** message, combined with a symbol.

Change the steering force level

1. Press ⚙ in the centre display.
2. Then tap on **Driving**.
3. Activating or deactivating **Steering feel firm**.

Steering wheel resistance selection can only be accessed if the car is stationary or is moving at low speed and in a straight line.

10.18. Ready to drive notification

The car's system can help the driver to notice that the vehicle ahead is continuing to drive.

In order not to be stationary for too long and hold up the traffic, the **Ready to drive notification** function gives an acoustic signal and shows a symbol and message in the driver's display. The notification may not be given if the system detects pedestrians or cyclists in the vicinity of the car.

> **Warning**
>
> However, the system cannot detect pedestrians and cyclists in all situations. The driver always bears responsibility for ensuring that the car is driven safely.

To activate or deactivate the function:

1 Press ⚙ in the centre display.

2 Tap on **Driving** and change the desired setting.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Note

This function uses the car's radar and/or camera units, which have some general limitations.

10.19. Auto braking after a collision

In the event of a collision in which the activation level is reached for the pyrotechnic seatbelt tensioners or airbags, or if a collision with a large animal is detected, the car's brakes are automatically applied. This function is to prevent or reduce the effects of any subsequent collision.

After a serious collision there is a risk that it is no longer possible to control and steer the car. In order to avoid or mitigate a possible further collision with a vehicle or an object in the vehicle's path, the auto braking system is activated automatically and brakes the car in a safe manner.

Brake lights and hazard warning lights are activated during braking. When the car has stopped, the hazard warning lights continue to flash and the parking brake is applied.

If braking is not appropriate, e.g. if there is a risk of being hit by following traffic, the system can be overridden by the driver depressing the accelerator pedal.

The function assumes that the brake system is intact after the collision.

---

11. Electric operation and charging

11.1. Charging the high voltage battery

11.1.1. Charging status in the car's driver display

The driver display shows the status for charging with both image and text. The information is shown for as long as the driver display is operating.

Colour	Status	Specification
Pulsating green	The frame of the driver display is shown with a green pulsing light.	Charging continues and an approximate time is shown for when the car will be fully charged.
Green	The frame of the driver display is shown with a fixed green light.	The car is fully charged.
Red	The frame of the driver display is shown with a fixed red light.	A fault has arisen. Check the charging cable's connection to the car's charging input socket and power source. Then restart charging in the following steps: 1. Unplug the charging cable from the charging input socket. 2. Wait for a short time. 3. Plug the charging cable into the charging input socket again. 4. If the problem persists – contact your Volvo dealer.
Blue	The frame of the driver display is shown with a fixed blue light.	Scheduled Charging activated.
Yellow	The frame of the driver display is shown with a fixed yellow light.	Charging is waiting to start or paused charging.

In addition to showing charging status, the driver display includes the following:

- Existing and set amperage, as well as number of phases [1]
- Charging power
- Battery percentage
- time until the car is fully charged.

> **Note**
>
> If the driver display is not used for a while then it is dimmed. Reactivate the display by means of one of the following:
>
> - depress the brake pedal
> - open one of the doors
> - press one of the steering wheel buttons.

[1] Existing and set amperage applies per phase from the alternating current source.

11.1.2. Charging status in the car's charging input socket

The LED lamp in the car's charging input socket shows the current status for charging in progress. The table below gives explanations for the different shades of the LED lamp.

LED lamp's glow	Specification
White	LED light
Flashing yellow	The charging process is about to be interrupted.
Yellow	Waiting mode[1] - waiting for charging to start.
Flashing green	Charging in progress[2].
Green	Charging complete[3]
Red	A fault has arisen. Check the charging cable's connection to the car's charging input socket and power source. Then restart charging in the following steps: 1. Unplug the charging cable from the charging input socket. 2. Wait for a short time. 3. Plug the charging cable into the charging input socket again. 4. If the problem persists – contact your Volvo dealer.
Flashing red	The car is locked and does not detect a key when unlocking the charging cable via the button next to the charging input socket.
Blue	Scheduled Charging activated.

Note

The charging input socket's LED lamp indicates status for charging the high voltage battery and not whether the car is consuming power, such as when the climate control is in use.

[1] For example, after a door has been opened or if the charging cable's handle is not locked in.

[2] The slower the flashing, the closer to fully charged.

[3] Extinguishes after a while.

11.1.3. General information on the charging cable

Use a mode 3 charging cable for charging at a charging station. Some charging stations have a permanent charging cable that you use instead.

Note

The information in this section only refers to charging with a mode 3 charging cable or a charging station with a permanent charging cable.

Warning

Only use the charging cable provided with your vehicle or a replacement cable purchased from a Volvo retailer.

Charging with permanent charging cable in accordance with Mode 3 [1]

In certain locations, the charging cable is installed within a charging station connected to the mains power circuit. Therefore, use the charging station's charging cable and follow the instructions at the charging station.

Specifications, charging cable	
Ambient temperature	-32 °C to 50 °C(-25 °F to 122 °F)

Warning

- Children should be supervised when in the vicinity of the charging cable when it is plugged in.
- High voltage in the charging cable. Contact with high voltage can cause death or serious personal injury.
- Do not use the charging cable if it is damaged in any way. A damaged or inoperative charging cable must only be repaired by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
- Always position the charging cable so that it will not be driven over, stepped on, tripped over or damaged in some other way, or cause personal injury.
- Do not connect one or more adapters of any type between charging cable and car.

Also, refer to the manufacturer's instructions for using the charging cable and its components.

Important

Always stop charging first before unplugging the charging cable from the car's charging input socket and then from the charging station.

Important

Clean the charging cable with a clean cloth, moistened with water or a mild detergent. Do not use chemicals or solvents.

Warning

The charging cable and its associated parts must not be swamped or immersed in water.

[1] **European standard - EN 61851-1.**

11.1.4. Ground fault breaker in charging cable

The charging cable's control unit[1] has a built-in ground fault breaker that protects the car and the user from electric shocks caused by system faults.

Warning

Charging the car must only take place with approved, grounded wall sockets. If the capacity of the electric circuit or electrical socket is unknown, contact a qualified electrician to check the capacity of the electric circuit. Using a state of charge that exceeds the capacity of the electric circuit or electrical socket may cause fire or damage the electric circuit.

Warning

- The charging cable's ground fault breaker helps to protect the car's charging system, but cannot guarantee that overload will never occur.

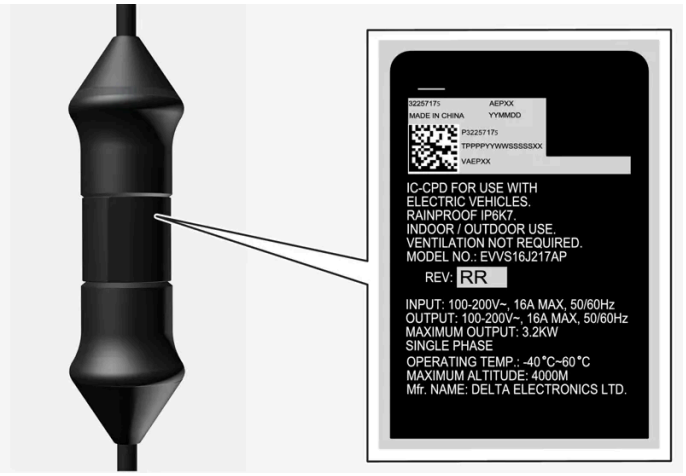
Important

The ground fault breaker does not protect the wall socket/electrical installation.

Control unit LED[2] lamp.

1 LED lamp

If the control unit's built-in ground fault breaker is tripped then the LED lamp illuminates with a red constant glow - check the wall socket. Ask a licensed electrician to check the socket or try to use another electrical socket.



Important

- Check the capacity of the socket.
- Other electronic equipment connected to the same fuse circuit must be disconnected if the total load is exceeded.
- Do not connect the charging cable if the socket is damaged.

[1] Refers to charging with a mode 2 charging cable.

[2] LED (Light Emitting Diode)

11.1.5. Charging status in the charging cable's control unit

The LED lamp on the charging cable's control unit shows the status of charging in progress as well as status after completed charging[1].

Control unit LED[2] lamp.

1 LED lamp

LED	Status	Specification	Recommended action
Extinguished	Charging is not possible.	No power supply to charging cable.	1. Unplug the charging cable from the wall socket. 2. Plug the charging cable into the wall socket again or use another wall socket. 3. If the problem persists – contact your Volvo dealer.
White light	Charging possible.	The charging cable is ready to be plugged into the car.	If the LED lamp is white but charging is not possible: 1. Unplug the charging cable from the charging input socket. 2. Plug the charging cable into the charging input socket again. 3. If the indicator does not flash white within approx. 10 seconds – first unplug the charging cable from the charging input socket and then from the wall socket. 4. Plug the charging cable into the wall socket again and then into the charging input socket in the car. 5. If the problem persists – contact your Volvo dealer.
Flashes white	Charging in progress.	The car's electronics have started charging Charging in progress.	Wait until the car is fully charged.
Illuminates in red	Charging is not possible.	Temporary fault.	1. Unplug the charging cable from the charging input socket. 2. Wait for a short time. 3. Plug the charging cable into the charging input socket again. 4. If the problem persists – contact your Volvo dealer.
Flashes red	Charging is not possible.	Critical fault.	1. Unplug the charging cable from the charging input socket and then from the wall socket. 2. Wait for a short time. 3. Plug the charging cable into the wall socket again and then into the charging input socket in the car. 4. If the problem persists – contact your Volvo dealer.

[1] Refers to charging with a mode 2 charging cable.

[2] LED (Light Emitting Diode)

11.1.6. Charging cable temperature monitoring

For the car's battery to be charged safely every time[1], the control unit for the charging cable and the plug have built-in monitoring devices for the temperature.

Temperature monitoring takes place in the control unit and the plug.

Monitoring in the control unit

Charging is switched off if the temperature of the control unit is too high. This is to protect the electronics. This may take place in a high outside temperature, for example, or when strong sunlight shines directly on the control unit.

Monitoring at the plug

The charging current is reduced if the temperature at the plug is too high. If the temperature exceeds a critical level, charging is stopped completely.

Warning

The charging cable's temperature monitoring helps to protect the car's charging system, but cannot guarantee that overheating will never occur.

Important

If the temperature monitoring has automatically lowered the charging current repeatedly and charging has been interrupted then the cause of the overheating must be investigated and rectified.

Important

Avoid exposing the control unit and its plug to direct sunlight. In such cases, the overheating protection in the plug is at risk of reducing or interrupting the charging of the car.

Important

If charging is unintentionally stopped, both the charging cable and the car's charging system should be checked by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician. The wall socket should also be checked by a licensed electrician.

[1] Refers to charging with a mode 2 charging cable.

11.1.7. Charging an electric car via a wall socket

The car can be charged via a wall socket if no other charging options are available.

Note

The information in this section refers to charging via a wall socket and a mode 2 charging cable.

Charging cable (mode 2)

When charging via a wall socket, use a charging cable with a control unit than can limit the amperage (mode 2).

Note

Volvo recommends a charging cable in accordance with IEC 62196 and IEC 61851 which supports temperature monitoring.

Warning

Only use the charging cable provided with your vehicle or a replacement cable purchased from a Volvo retailer.

Warning

The charging cable and its associated parts must not be swamped or immersed in water.

Warning

- The charging cable has a built-in circuit breaker. Charging must only take place with grounded and approved sockets.
- Children should be supervised when in the vicinity of the charging cable when it is plugged in.
- High voltage in the charging cable. Contact with high voltage can cause death or serious personal injury.
- Do not use the charging cable if it is damaged in any way. A damaged or inoperative charging cable must only be repaired by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
- Always position the charging cable so that it will not be driven over, stepped on, tripped over or damaged in some other way, or cause personal injury.
- Disconnect the charger from the wall outlet before cleaning it.
- Never connect the charging cable to an extension cord or a multiple plug socket.
- Do not use one or more adapters between the charging cable and the electrical socket.
- Do not connect one or more adapters of any type between charging cable and car.
- Do not use an external timer between the charging cable and the electrical socket.

Also, refer to the manufacturer's instructions for using the charging cable and its components.

Important

Avoid exposing the control unit and its plug to direct sunlight. In such cases, the overheating protection in the plug is at risk of reducing or interrupting the charging of the high-voltage battery.

Starting charging

Always park the car before you start charging.

1. Plug the charging cable into a 230 V socket[1].
2. Open the charging hatch.
3. Remove the protective cover on the charging handle and then push the handle all the way into the car's charging input socket.
4. The charging cable's handle locks, then charging starts within 5 seconds.

> **Note**
>
> Read more about how charging is started in the section on Charging electric cars.

> **Important**
>
> If the fuse of the wall socket has too low a current capacity, the fuse could blow while the car is charging. Set the lowest amperage for charging in the car's centre display before reconnecting charging. If the problems persist, contact a qualified electrician for investigation of further measures.

> **Warning**
>
> - The electric car must only be charged at maximum permitted charging current or lower in accordance with applicable local and national recommendations for charging from wall sockets/plugs.
> - The electric car must only be charged from approved grounded wall sockets.
> - Avoid visible worn or damaged mains sockets since they may lead to fire damage and/or personal injury if used.

> **Important**
>
> Never connect the charging cable when there is a risk of thunderstorm or lightning strike.

Finish charging

End charging by pressing the button next to the car's charging input socket, or via the button in the centre display, and unplug the charging cable from the car's charging input socket and then from the 230 V socket[1].

> **Note**
>
> Read more about how charging is ended in the section on Ending charging of electric cars.

Important

Charging must be ended before unplugging the charging cable from the car's charging input socket. If charging is not ended before the charging cable is disconnected, this may lead to damage to the charging cable or to the system.

Important

- Never unplug the charging cable from the wall socket while charging is in progress – there is then a risk of damaging the wall socket.
- Note that the charging cable must be unplugged from the car's charging input socket before being unplugged from the wall socket, partly to avoid damage to the system, and partly to avoid stopping the charging unintentionally.

Fuse

Charging an electric car via a wall socket corresponds to a high load on the fuse.

Important

Ensure that the wall socket fuse can handle the specified amperage for the charging cable.

Normally several 230 V consumers are included in a fuse circuit, so additional consumers (e.g. lighting, vacuum cleaner, electric drill, etc.) can be on the same fuse.

Important

Check that the 230 V socket has adequate power capacity for charging electric vehicles – in the event of uncertainty, the socket must be checked by a qualified professional. If the power capacity of the socket is unknown – set the lowest amperage in the centre display.

[1] The voltage in the socket may vary depending on market.

11.1.8. Charging an electric car

Charge the car via a charging station at home or via a public charging station.

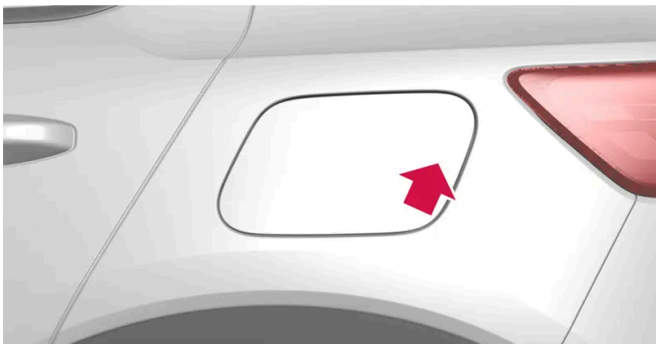
Location of charging input socket

Charging via charging station (mode 3)[1]

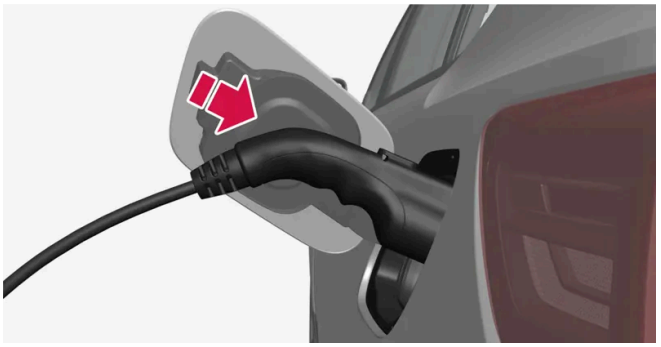
1. Detach the charging cable from the charging station's storage socket or take out the charging cable. Note that the car must be switched off prior to charging.
2. Plug the charging cable into the charging station. If the charging station has a permanent charging cable, skip to step 3.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

> **Important**
>
> Avoid plugging in the charging cable when there is a risk of a thunderstorm or lightning strikes.

3 

Press in the rear section of the cover to open the charging hatch [2].

4 

Remove the charging handle's protective cover and press the charging handle the whole way into the charging input socket.

> **Important**
>
> To avoid damage to the paint, e.g. in the event of high winds, position the charging handle's protective cover so that it does not touch the car.

5 The charging cable's charging handle is fastened/locked in, and charging starts within 5 seconds.

> When charging has started, the LED lamp in the charging input socket flashes green.

The driver display and the centre display show the remaining estimated charging time or whether charging is not working as intended.

Condensation from the air conditioning may drip under the car during charging. This takes place due to cooling the high voltage battery.

Warning

- Children should be supervised when in the vicinity of the charging cable when it is plugged in.
- High voltage in the charging cable. Contact with high voltage can cause death or serious personal injury.
- Do not use the charging cable if it is damaged in any way. A damaged or inoperative charging cable must only be repaired by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
- Always position the charging cable so that it will not be driven over, stepped on, tripped over or damaged in some other way, or cause personal injury.
- Do not use one or more adapters between the charging cable and the electrical socket.
- Do not connect one or more adapters of any type between charging cable and car.

Also, refer to the manufacturer's instructions for using the charging cable and its components.

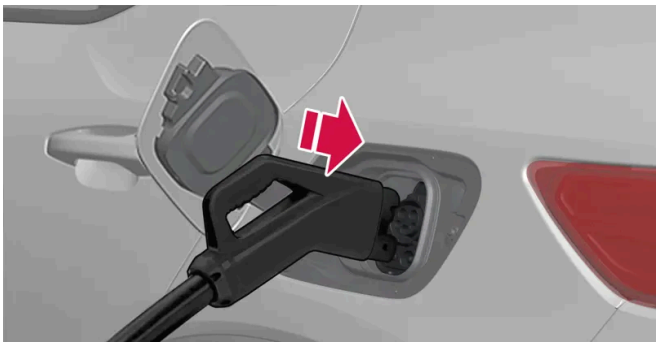
Important

Do not wash the car when the charging cable is connected or when the charging hatch is open.

Fast charging (direct current)

1 Detach the charging cable from the charging station's storage socket. Note that the car must be switched off prior to charging.

2 Open the charging hatch and remove the protective cover for the charging input socket.

3 

Grasp the charging cable with both hands and press the charging cable all the way into the car's charging input socket. Hold the charging handle upwards for several seconds. The charging cable is automatically locked into the charging input socket after a couple of seconds. Ensure that the charging cable is properly locked so that charging can start.

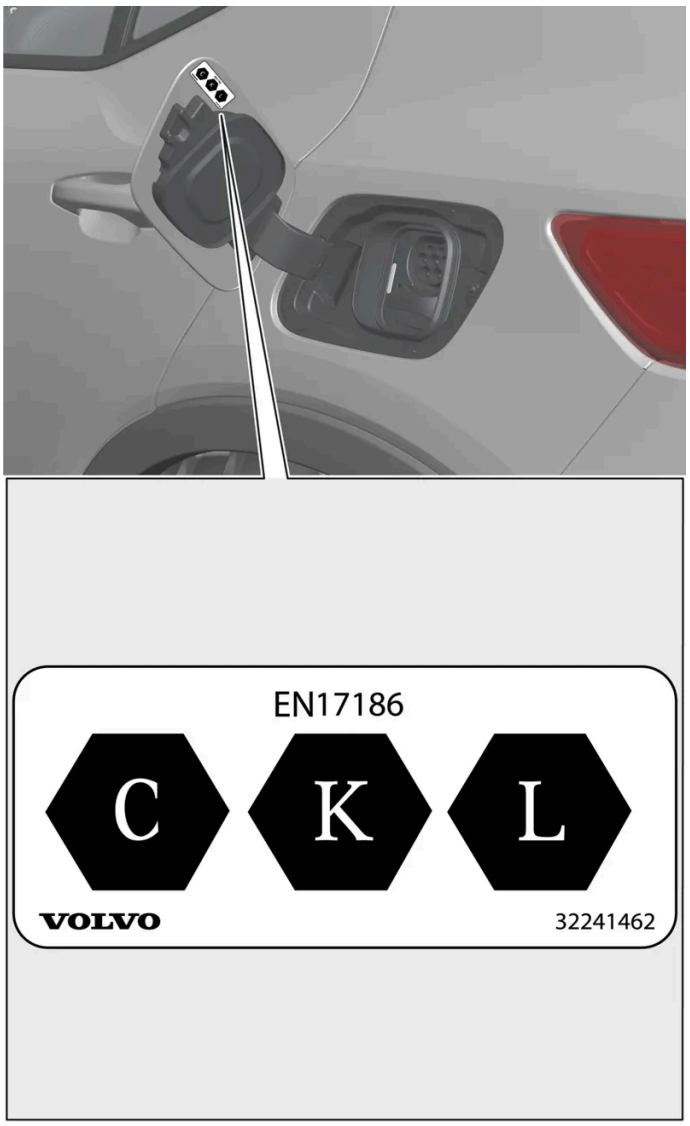
4 Follow the instructions in the charging station's interface to authorise the charging. Charging begins when the charging station has executed an isolation test. This can take around one minute.

> When charging has started, the LED lamp in the charging input socket flashes with a green glow. The driver display and the centre display show the remaining estimated charging time or whether charging is not working as intended.

Note

Charging stations with support for CCS are normally clearly marked CCS or Combo.

Decal on the inside of the charging flap



Identifiers that comply with CEN standard EN 17186 can be found on the inside of the charging flap.

- C: Type 2 charging with alternating current (AC)
- K and L: charging with direct (DC), including Combined Charging System (CCS)

[1] Refers to charging with a mode-3 charging cable, or a charging station with a permanent charging cable.

[2] The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on model.

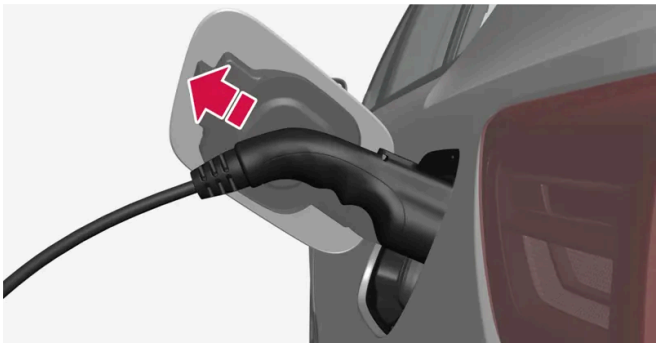
11.1.9. Ending charging of an electric car

End charging at any time by pressing the button next to the charging input socket or via the button in the centre display.

Ending charging (alternating current) [1]

1 Press the button next to the charging input socket, or via the button in the centre display – the charging cable's locked handle releases/is unlocked.

> **Important**
>
> Charging must be ended before unplugging the charging cable from the car's charging input socket. If charging is not ended before the charging cable is disconnected, this may lead to damage to the charging cable or to the system.

2 

Unplug the charging cable from the car's charging input socket and close the hatch.

3 Unplug the charging cable from the charging station, or plug the permanent charging cable into the charging station's storage socket.

The charging cable is locked automatically

If the charging cable is not unplugged from the charging input socket, it is automatically locked in again shortly after unlocking in order to maximise the charging. The charging cable can be unplugged again using the button next to the charging input socket or via the button in the centre display.

Ending fast charging (direct current)

> **Important**
>
> Never try to unplug the charging cable from the car while charging is in progress. Always end charging first by pressing the button next to the charging input socket or via the button in the centre display. Then disconnect the charging cable when the lock in the car's charging input socket has been automatically unlocked.

1. End fast charging by pressing the button next to the car's charging input socket, via the button in the centre display, or via the charging station's user interface.

> Charging is ended and the lock in the charging input socket is unlocked automatically. This may take a couple of seconds.

2. Unplug the charging cable from the car's charging input socket and close the hatch.
3. Connect the charging cable to the charging station's storage socket or hang it back in the designated location.

Unlocking the car during fast charging

Fast charging will not normally be interrupted if the car is unlocked. If fast charging is interrupted, it is not resumed automatically as the charging station requires charging to be reauthorised via the user interface. The charging cable will not lock automatically into place if fast charging is interrupted. To restart interrupted fast charging, unplug the charging cable from the car's charging input socket, plug it in again and follow the instructions in the charging station's user interface.

In the event of problems releasing the charging handle

If the charging handle does not release, the following steps can be taken.

1. Make sure that the key is within range and that the car is unlocked. End charging.
2. End the charging from the charging station or wall socket and try Step 1 again.
   a. Charging via charging station: contact the customer service of the charging station for help to end charging.
   b. Charging via own charging station: disconnect the power supply to the charging station in a safe manner.
   c. Charging via wall socket: disconnect the power supply to the wall socket in a safe manner.
3. Wiggle the charging handle and try Step 1 again.
4. Lock and unlock the car. Then try Step 1 again.
5. Lock the car and wait until the LED lamp at the car's charging input socket extinguishes. This can take up to 7 minutes. Then unlock the car and try Step 1 again.

If the problem persists, contact your Volvo dealer.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

[1] Refers to charging with a mode-3 charging cable, or a charging station with a permanent charging cable.

11.1.10. Charging time

The following charging times are approximate and apply when air conditioning or any other consumer is not affecting charging. Charging time may also vary depending on battery size. If charging time seems long, it should be investigated.

Charging time (alternating current)

Single-phase charging[1]		
Current (A)[2]	Charging power (kW)[3]	Charging time (hours)[4]
6	1,3	72
10	2.2	40
16	3,6	24
32	7.2	12
48	11	8

Three-phase charging		
Current (A)	Charging power (kW)[3]	Charging time (hours)
6	4	22
10	6.8	14
16	11	8

Charging time when fast charging (direct current)

Charging power (kW)[5]	Charging time[6] (minutes)
50	65
150	35

> **Note**
>
> To reduce the charging time for fast charging in cold weather, the battery needs to be preconditioned, which is done by adding a fast charging station as a destination in Google Maps.

Note

- It may take longer to charge the high voltage battery in cold or hot weather. Part of the charging current is then used to heat/cool the high voltage battery.
- If preconditioning is selected, the charging time may be affected.
- Fast charging at up to 150 kW power output is possible in good conditions for high voltage battery and charging station. The charging power is limited towards the end of fast charging.

[1] **Applies to charging using a 200-240 V socket.**

[2] Maximum charging current may vary depending on market.

[3] The maximum charging power that the car can achieve is 11 kW.

[4] From 0–100%

[5] Maximum power that the charging station can supply.

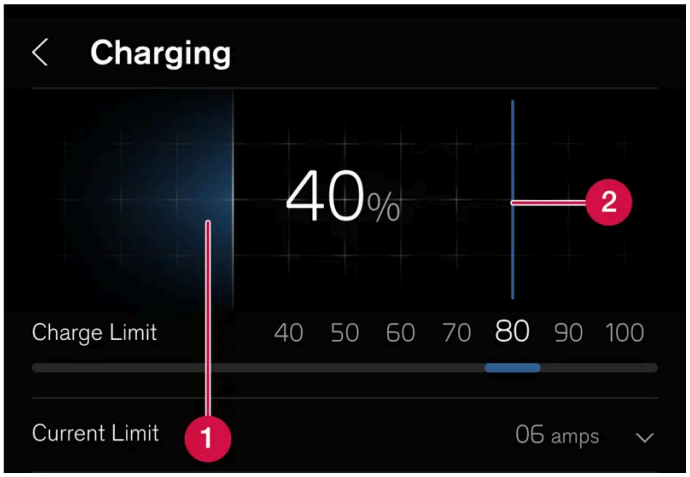
[6] Applies at 10–80% state of charge (SoC) provided that the temperature of the battery is approximately 35°C (95°F).

11.2. Charging in the car's centre display

From the centre display it is possible to set the state of charge (SoC), unlock the charging cable and set amperage.

To access the charging view in the car's centre display, tap on ⚙ and then on **Charging**. When charging is started, the view for charging is also activated in the car's centre display.

Setting the state of charge (SoC)



1. The battery's current charge status.
2. Swipe to set the preferred state of charge (SoC). The state of charge (SoC) remains unchanged until next time, unless it is changed in the centre display.

Schedule charging

When charging with alternating current, it is possible to schedule charging and set start and stop times for when charging should take place. Tap on **Set timer** to schedule charging.

Unlocking the charging cable

Tap on **Unlock cable** in the centre display to unlock the charging cable and end the charging in progress.

Setting the amperage

When charging with alternating current[1], it is possible to limit the maximum amperage the car can be charged with. Tap on + to increase the amperage or - to reduce the amperage[2].

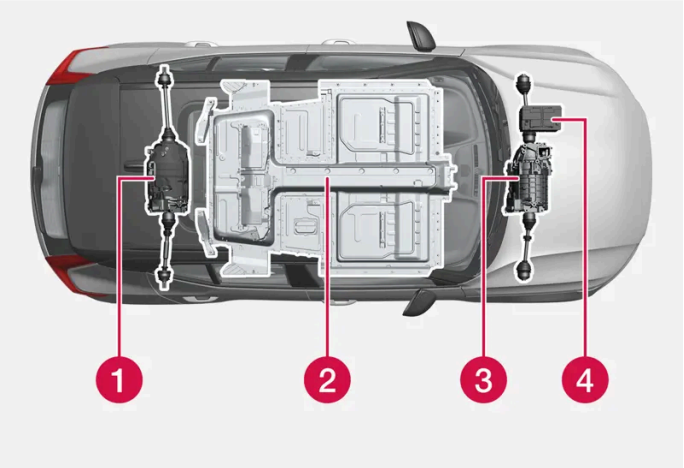
> **Note**
>
> The amperage may be limited by the charging station or charging cable. There is no guarantee that the car can be charged with the specified amperage if it is higher than permitted by the charging station or charging cable.

[1] Refers to charging via charging station (mode 3) and charging via wall socket (mode 2).

[2] The set amperage applies per phase from the alternating current source.

11.3. Drive systems

The car's electric motor drives the car.



1. Electric motor[1] – The car contains two electric motors that drive the car and recover brake energy to create electrical energy.
2. High voltage battery – The car contains a high voltage battery. The function of the high voltage battery is to store energy. This receives energy by charging from the mains power circuit and by means of regenerative braking.
3. Electric motor – The car's electric motor drives the car and recycles brake energy to electrical energy.

4 12 V battery – The car contains a 12 V battery that starts up the car's electrical systems and powers the electrical equipment in the car.

[1] Applies to cars with two electric motors.

11.4. General information on charging

An electrically powered car is driven in the same way as a car with internal combustion engine, but certain functions differ. The car is equipped with a rechargeable high voltage battery [1].

Different types of charging

The time it takes for the high voltage battery to be charged depends on the charging power that is used. The 12 V battery is also charged when the car is charged.

Charging via a wall socket (AC charging)

The car can be charged via a normal wall socket. This type of charging is suitable as an additional charging for an electric car but is not recommended for regular charging.

Charging via a charging station (AC charging)

The charging station can either be equipped with a permanent charging cable or with a socket where a mode 3 charging cable can be connected. This type of charging is recommended for regular charging.

Fast charging via a charging station (DC charging)

The car supports fast charging with direct current via charging stations that support the CCS (Combined Charging System) standard. A higher charging power can normally be achieved by charging with direct current, and the charging time can therefore be reduced. Highest charging power is normally reached when the battery's state of charge is 0–30%. After that, the charging power gradually decreases.

Effect of temperature

The high voltage battery with associated electrical drive systems will work better at the correct operating temperature.

High voltage battery performance may be reduced if the temperature in the battery is too low or high.

> ! **Important**
>
> The performance of the high voltage battery may be reduced if the car is left for any length of time in environments where the temperature is below –10 °C (14 °F) or above 40 °C (104 °F). Avoid the battery becoming too hot or too cold by connecting the car to a charger.

Important to know

Note

The capacity of the high voltage battery is reduced slightly with age and use.

Warning

Charging the car can affect the function of an implanted pacemaker or other medical equipment. People with an implanted pacemaker are recommended to consult a doctor before starting charging.

Warning

Replacing the high voltage battery must only be performed by a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Exterior engine noise

Warning

Remember that the car does not emit any engine noise when it is only powered by an electric motor and may therefore be difficult to notice by children, pedestrians, cyclists and animals. This is especially true at low speeds, such as in car parks.

High-voltage current

Warning

Several components in the car work with high-voltage current that could be dangerous in the event of incorrect intervention. These components, and all orange-coloured cables, must only be handled by qualified personnel.

Do not touch anything that is not clearly described in the owner's manual.

[1] Of the lithium-ion type.

11.5. Problems unplugging the charging cable

In the event of problems with a key, charging can be ended using the detachable key blade.

Manual release of the charging cable for a key that does not respond

1. Unlock the car using the key blade. Read carefully through the article on how to lock and unlock the car using the detachable key blade and follow the instructions for how to unlock the car.
2. When the door is opened after unlocking the car using the key blade, the alarm is triggered. Read carefully through the article on how to arm and disarm the alarm and follow the instructions for how to disarm the alarm.
3. Press **Unlock cable** in the centre display.

> Unplug the charging cable. In the event of problems, repeat steps **2** to **3**.

11.6. Symbols and messages relating to electric drive in the driver display

If a fault should occur for the car's electric drive, a symbol and a message are shown in the driver display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Specification
	Fault in the 12V battery. Read the message in the driver display. Contact a workshop [1].
	Fault in the drive system. Read the message in the driver display. Contact a workshop [1].
	Temporary limitation of performance. Read the message in the driver display.
	Information regarding the high voltage battery's battery level Read the message in the driver display.
	Remove the charging cable before starting.

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

11.7. Long-term storage of cars with high voltage battery

To minimise the risk of damage to the high voltage battery during long-term storage (longer than 1 month) it is recommended that the state of charge (SoC) is maintained within a certain interval. Check the state of charge (SoC) in the driver display on a regular basis.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Before long-term storage

Recommended state of charge (SoC) for long-term storage is 40-50%.

- If the state of charge is high – drive the car until it reaches the recommended interval.
- If the state of charge is low – charge the car until it reaches the recommended interval.

During long-term storage

Check the state of charge regularly. If it is below 20%, the car must be charged.

If storage is expected to last longer than 3 months it is advisable to have a constant AC charge connected to the car. Choose a maximum state of charge of 40% or 50%. Regularly check that the AC charge is working.

> **Note**
>
> Store the car in a cool place and avoid extreme temperatures during long-term storage in order to minimise the risk of battery damage. Select a storage location indoors or in the shade, depending on where the temperature is lowest, particularly in a hot climate.

11.8. Range

The car's range depends on several factors. The ability to achieve a long range varies according to the circumstances and conditions under which the car is being driven.

The certified value for the car's mileage should not be interpreted as an expected range. The certified value should primarily be used to compare different cars and is obtained during special test cycles.

> **Note**
>
> The Driving Journal calculates the electric consumption based on actual consumption during a journey. If you see a different value in your car's trip meter, it is because it also takes electric regeneration into account.

Range in the driver display

When the car is delivered from the factory, the range is based on the certified value. When the car has been driven for a while, the range is based on historical driving patterns.

The amount of history used depends on the battery's state of charge. Therefore, the less charge there is in the battery, the faster the range adapts to a changed driving pattern.

Short range

The estimated range of the car is shorter when the battery's state of charge (SoC) decreases. The driver display shows a number of symbols and messages as the range becomes shorter.

Symbol	Message/meaning
	When the range of the car falls to 50 km, the battery symbol next to the battery gauge changes colour to orange and the message **Low rangeDo you want to find a charging station?** is shown in the driver display. The message is not shown if a destination is set in the navigation system.
	When the range of the car falls to 20 km, the battery symbol next to the battery gauge changes colour to red and the message **Low rangeDo you want to find a charging station?** is shown in the driver display.
	When the battery level is low, an orange tortoise is shown in the upper part of the driver display.
	The message **Reduced power due to low battery charge** is shown together with an orange battery symbol. If the tortoise was not shown earlier, it will be visible in the driver display in connection with this message being shown.
	The message **Empty battery. Charge battery.** is shown together with an empty battery symbol.

Factors that affect the range

In addition to historical trip data, there are several different factors that affect the range. The longest range is achieved under extremely favourable conditions when all factors have a positive impact.

Examples of factors that affect the range:

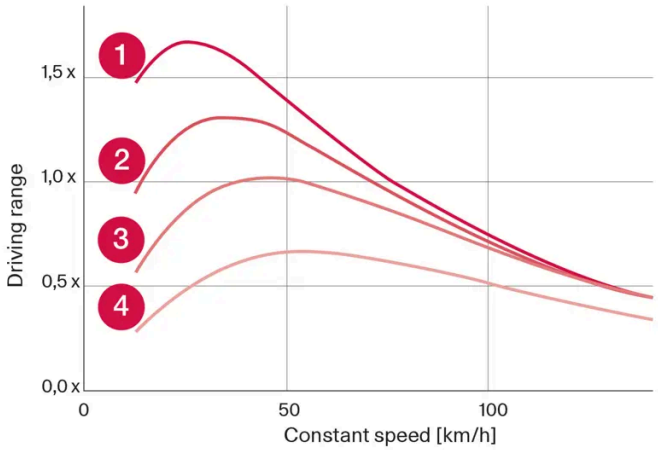
- speed
- climate settings
- topography
- preconditioning
- tyres and tyre pressure
- traffic situation
- temperature and weather
- road conditions.

Range in cold temperatures

In cold ambient temperatures there is a risk that the battery will become too cold, which has a negative effect on the range. This symbol is shown in the driver display if the battery temperature falls to a critically low level. If the car is parked in cold ambient temperatures there is a risk that the range will be reduced dramatically. To avoid substantially reduced range after parking in cold ambient temperatures, the car should be charged while it is parked.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Range based on speed and outside temperature



1 20 °C (68 °F) outside temperature and passenger compartment climate Off.

2 20 °C (68 °F) outside temperature and passenger compartment climate On.

3 35 °C (95 °F) outside temperature and passenger compartment climate On.

4 -10 °C (14 °F) outside temperature and passenger compartment climate On.

The diagram shows the approximate relationship between constant speed and range.

The graph shows that a lower speed gives a longer range. The outside temperature also affects the range, so that very cold or very hot ambient temperatures result in a shorter range.

Lines 1 and 2 show the approximate difference in range affected by the climate functions. Turning off the climate control is more beneficial for range.

11.9. Range assistant

The range assistant provides the driver with overview information and assistance in order to facilitate more economical driving.

Factors that the driver can primarily influence in order to extend the range include speed, driving style, and climate settings. Each factor has a meter that indicates current energy usage. When the gauge changes colour from blue to orange the driver should review his/her energy usage in order to adopt more economical driving behaviour.

Speed: The car's average speed during the last minute.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Driving style: The acceleration and braking behaviour during the last few minutes.

Climate control: The estimated average consumption based on the current climatization settings.

Next to the estimated range, there are two numbers that indicate expected short and long range based on high and low consumption, respectively. These values are defined as:

Long range: Assumes typical city driving with climate system off.

Short range: Assumes motorway driving at high speed with the climate system on.

Consumption is shown in kWh/100 km when the vehicle is in motion and as kW (kWh/h) when stationary. The value is instantaneous and will therefore indicate high values during accelerations and up hills.

Optimising range

The range optimisation function adjusts the climate settings in order to save energy and therefore extend the range of the car.

Activate or deactivate range optimisation via the centre display

1. Press ⊞.
2. Select **Range assistant**.
3. Activating or deactivating range optimisation.

> **Note**
>
> Range optimisation is automatically deactivated at 50% or higher State of Charge (SoC).

> **Note**
>
> In cold ambient temperatures, the output of the heater is reduced. If the climate feels too cold, deactivate range optimisation.
>
> In hot ambient temperatures, cooling is limited. If the climate feels too hot, deactivate range optimisation.
>
> Problems with misting may occur since the AC function that adjusts humidity is limited.
>
> Since the AC function is limited, air recirculation increases, which may lead to a less comfortable feeling of air quality, especially in the rear seat.

11.10. Recycling the batteries

Used batteries must be recycled in an environmentally sound manner.

Consult a workshop in the event of uncertainty about how this type of waste should be discarded - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. The high voltage battery must only be handled by authorised workshop personnel.

12. Starting and driving

12.1. Starting and switching off the car

12.1.1. Immobiliser

The electronic immobiliser is a theft protection system that prevents an unauthorised person from starting the car.

The car can only be started with the correct key.

The following error message in the driver display is related to the electronic immobiliser:

Symbol	Message	Specification
	The car key is not detected. See Owner's Manual for more information.	Error reading the key during starting - place the key on the key symbol in the storage compartment and try again.

12.1.2. Starting the car

To start the car, a key needs to be in the car.

> **Warning**
>
> Before starting:
>
> - Fasten the seatbelt.
> - Adjust the seat, steering wheel and mirrors.
> - Make sure that the brake pedal can be fully depressed.

Make sure the key is in the car.

1. Put the seatbelt on.
2. Depress the brake pedal.
3. Change gear to D or R.

> The car is now in Drive mode.

4 Release the brake pedal.

> If **One Pedal Drive** has been activated, the car will not drive forwards, but may roll away if the surface is sloping in the same direction as the selected gear position.
If **One Pedal Drive** is deactivated, the car will drive slowly in the selected direction with gentle pressure on the accelerator pedal.

> **Important**
>
> The car cannot be started if the charging cable is still connected. Make sure the charging cable is unplugged and the charging hatch is closed before the starting the car.

12.1.3. Using jump starting with another battery

If the car does not start, it may be due to the 12V battery being discharged. It can then be charged with the assistance of another car or an external charger.

Under normal conditions, the 12V battery is charged at the same time as the car is charged, as well as via current transmission from the high voltage battery when the car is not connected for charging.

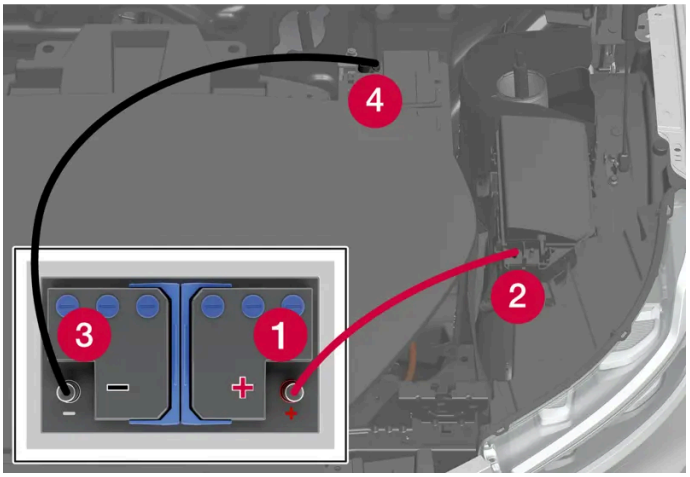
If the 12V battery is discharged for any reason, jump-starting can still be used. This may be caused by the car not being used for a long time, a temporary fault, or a blown fuse in the car's charging circuit, for example. A discharged 12V battery needs to be charged sufficiently in order to be able to start the car's electrical system. After starting, it is possible to start charging the car using the charging cable, which will be necessary if the high voltage battery is also discharged. If the car is out of reach for charging in such a situation, it may need recovery.

Using jump-starting requires jump leads, which are connected to the charging points for the 12V battery.

Important

The car's charging points are only intended for jump starting the car itself. The charging points are not intended for jump starting another car. Using the charging points for jump starting another car may cause a fuse to blow, which means the charging points will stop working.

If the message **12 V battery fuse failure Service required** is shown in the driver display then a fuse has blown and needs to be changed. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.



Several of the panels around the storage area need to be loosened for access to the charging points under the bonnet.

When jump starting the car, the following steps are recommended to avoid short circuits or other damage:

1. Set the car's electrical system in Passive usage mode.
2. Check that the donor battery has a voltage of 12 V.
3. If the battery is installed in another car – switch off its engine and make sure that the cars do not touch each other.
4. Connect one of the red jump lead's clamps to the donor battery's positive terminal (1).

   Important

   Handle the jump leads with care. A short circuit may occur if the ends come into contact with surfaces other than the charging points.

5. Open the cover (2) for the positive charging point by pressing on its side. This disengages a hook and you can lift the cover up at the same time. There are two connection points under the cover. Use it closest to the centre of the car.
6. Connect the red jump lead's other clamp onto the car's positive charging point (2).
7. Connect one of the black jump lead's clamps to the donor battery's negative terminal (3).
8. Connect the black jump lead's other clamp onto the car's negative charging point (4).
9. Check that the jump lead clamps are affixed securely so that there are no sparks during the starting attempt.
10. Start the engine of the donor car.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

11 Start the car that has the discharged battery by keeping your foot on the brake and selecting gear position D or R.

> **Important**
>
> Do not touch the connections between cable and car during the starting attempt. There is a risk of sparks forming.

> **Note**
>
> Full starting is indicated by means of the driver display's indicator lamps extinguishing and its preset theme illuminating.

12 If the high voltage battery is also discharged, start charging the car with the charging cable.

13 Remove the jump leads in reverse order - first the black and then the red.

Make sure that none of the clamps on the black jump lead come into contact with the positive charging point on the car, the positive terminal on the donor battery, or the clamps on the red jump lead.

> **Note**
>
> A discharged 12 V battery needs to be charged for a period of time to reach a sufficiently high State Of Charge (SoC) in order to power the car's electrical system. In an outside temperature of approx. +15 °C (approx. 60 °F), the battery needs to be charged for at least 30 minutes by the car. In a lower outside temperature, the charging time may increase to 3–4 hours. If possible, it is recommended to use an external battery charger to charge the battery.

> **Warning**
>
> - The 12 V battery can generate oxyhydrogen gas, which is highly explosive. A spark can be formed if a jump lead is connected incorrectly, and this can be enough for the battery to explode.
> - The 12 V battery contains sulphuric acid, which can cause serious burns.
> - If sulphuric acid comes into contact with eyes, skin or clothing, flush with large quantities of water. If acid splashes into the eyes - seek medical attention immediately.
> - Never smoke near the battery.

12.1.4. Switching off the car

The car is switched off automatically from Drive mode when the driver leaves the car and it is parked.

Automatic deactivation

1 Select gear position P.

2 Open the driver's door.

> The car is now not in Drive mode.

Manual closing via the centre display

It is possible to switch off the car manually.

1 Select gear position P.

2 Press ⚙.

3 Select **Controls**.

4 Press **Power off car**.

5 Follow the instructions in the screen.

> The car is now not in Drive mode.

12.1.5. Usage modes

The car has three different usage modes that make various car functions available.

The car is set automatically to different modes: passive, comfort and drive. The table shows which functions are available in the various modes.

Position	Functions
Passive	When the car is unlocked, the following functions become available: • The driver display shows charging information, for example. • Power seats can be adjusted. In this mode, the functions are controlled by time and are switched off automatically after a short while.
Comfort	When someone is sitting in the driver seat or when the centre display is used or started via the media button in the tunnel console [1]: • The centre display can be used. • The infotainment system starts automatically (the same as when driving). • The climate system starts automatically (the same as when driving). • Power seats can be adjusted. • Power windows, Bluetooth, navigation, phone and windscreen wipers can be used. • 12 V power sockets in the cargo area can be used. • The USB ports can be used.
Drive	When the driver sits in the driver seat and engages a gear: All functions are available and the car can be driven.

[1] Comfort mode is switched off when someone leaves the driver seat. Use the centre display to set the car back to comfort mode. Comfort mode is switched off again when the front passenger door is opened.

12.2. Alcohol lock

12.2.1. Alcohol lock*

The function of the alcohol lock is to prevent the car from being driven by individuals under the influence of alcohol. Before the car can be started, a breath test must be performed to ensure that the driver is not under the influence of alcohol.

The car's system adapts when an alcohol lock is connected to the car. This way, the driver can easily receive messages from the alcohol lock directly in the driver display. Alcohol lock calibration takes place in accordance with each market's limit value in force for driving legally.

For information about a specific alcohol lock, please refer to the relevant alcohol lock manufacturer.

> **Warning**
>
> The alcohol lock is an aid and does not exempt the driver from responsibility. It is always the responsibility of the driver to be sober and to drive the car safely.

Using an alcohol lock

The alcohol lock is activated automatically and is then ready for use when the car is unlocked.

In order to obtain correct function and as accurate a measurement result as possible:

- Avoid eating or drinking approx. 5 minutes before the breath test.
- Avoid excess windscreen washing - the alcohol in the washer fluid may result in an incorrect measurement result.

> **Note**
>
> After a completed period of driving, the car can be restarted within 30 minutes without a new breath test.

Bypassing the alcohol lock

In the event of an emergency situation or if the alcohol lock is out of order, it is possible to bypass the alcohol lock in order to drive the car.

To deactivate the alcohol lock, see the alcohol lock manufacturer's instructions.

* Option/accessory.

12.3. Gearbox

12.3.1. Gear positions

Select an appropriate gear position depending on the direction in which the car is to travel.

Changing gear

Change gear position by pressing the spring-loaded lever forwards or backwards. The brake pedal must be depressed to be able to change gear.

Gear positions

The driver display shows which gear position is currently in use.

The car has three different gear positions and a button for the parking brake:

R, N, D or the P button for parking brake.

Parking brake – P

1 Press the button.

> The symbol in the driver display illuminates when the parking brake is activated.

Important

Check that the symbol for parking brake is illuminated when leaving the car.

Note

The parking brake must be activated in order to be able to lock the car and arm the alarm.

In an emergency, the parking brake can be activated when the car is in motion by pressing and holding the button depressed.

The car is then braked heavily with the foot brake. Braking stops when the button is released, or if the accelerator pedal is depressed.

Note

An acoustic signal sounds while emergency braking is active at high speeds.

Reverse position - R

1 Put the seatbelt on.

2 Depress the brake pedal.

3 Move the lever all the way forwards.

> The car can now be reversed.

Neutral position - N

1. Put the seatbelt on.
2. Depress the brake pedal.
3. Move the lever one step forward or one step back.

> The car now rolls freely when the brake pedal is not depressed.

Drive position - D

1. Put the seatbelt on.
2. Depress the brake pedal.
3. Move the lever all the way back.

> The car can now be driven.

> **Important**
>
> The car cannot be started if the charging cable is still connected. Make sure the charging cable is unplugged and the charging hatch is closed before the starting the car.

12.3.2. Symbols and messages for the transmission

If a fault should occur in the gearbox, a symbol and a message are shown in the driver display.

Symbol	Specification
	An error has occurred in the transmission. Read the message in the driver display.
	Temporary fault on drivetrain. Read the message in the driver display.

12.3.3. Gear selector inhibitor

The gear selector inhibitor prevents accidental changing between different gear positions in an automatic gearbox.

To switch gear position, the brake pedal has to be depressed.

The lever can always be moved back and forth, but the brake pedal has to be depressed to change gear position.

Message in the driver display

If the gear selector is inhibited a message is shown in the driver display, e.g. **Press brake pedal to activate gear lever**.

The gear selector is not inhibited mechanically.[1]

[1] Applies to cars with small gear lever

12.4. Brakes

12.4.1. Foot brake

12.4.1.1. Brake assistance

The brake assist system (BAS[1]) helps to increase brake force during braking, and can thereby shorten the braking distance.

The system detects the way in which the driver brakes and increases brake force where necessary. The brake force can be boosted up to the level when the ABS system is engaged.

[1] Brake Assist System

12.4.1.2. Braking on gritted roads

When driving on salted roads, a layer of salt may form on the brake discs and brake linings.

This may extend braking distance. You should therefore maintain a greater safety distance to vehicles in front. In addition, make sure you do the following:

- Brake now and again to remove any layer of salt. Make sure that other road users are not put at risk by the braking.
- Gently depress the brake pedal after finishing driving and before starting your next trip.

12.4.1.3. Braking on wet roads

When driving for a prolonged period of time in heavy rain without braking, the braking effect may be delayed slightly when next using the brakes.

This may also be the case after a car wash. It is then necessary to depress the brake pedal more forcefully. You should therefore maintain a greater distance to the vehicles in front.

Brake the car firmly after driving on wet roads or using a car wash. This warms up the brake discs, enabling them to dry faster and protecting them against corrosion. Bear in mind the current traffic situation when braking.

12.4.1.4. Foot brake

The foot brake is part of the brake system.

The car is equipped with two brake circuits. If a brake circuit is damaged, the brake pedal may engage deeper. Higher pressure on the pedal will therefore be needed to produce the normal braking effect.

If the foot brake is used when the car is switched off, the brake pedal needs to be depressed passed the normal braking position using a higher pressure to brake the car.

Anti-lock braking system

The car has anti-lock brakes (ABS [1]), which prevents the wheels from locking while braking and allows maintained steering control. Vibration may be felt in the brake pedal when this is engaged and this is normal.

A short test of the ABS system is made automatically after the car has been started when the driver releases the brake pedal. A further automatic test of the system may be made at low speed. The test may be felt as pulses in the brake pedal.

Symbols in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	Check the brake fluid level. If the level is low, fill with brake fluid and check for the cause of the brake fluid loss.
	Fault in pedal sensor.
	Constant glow for 2 seconds when the car is started: Automatic function check. Constant glow for more than 2 seconds: Fault in the ABS system. The car's normal brake system is still working, but without the ABS function.
	In the event of the message: **Brake pedal characteristics changed Service required** The brake pedal needs to be depressed past the normal braking position using a higher pressure to brake the car.

Warning

If both the warning lamps for brake fault and ABS fault illuminate at the same time, a fault has occurred in the brake system.

- If the level in the brake fluid reservoir is normal at this stage, drive carefully to the nearest workshop and have the brake system checked - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
- If the brake fluid is below the MIN level in the brake fluid reservoir, do not drive further before topping up the brake fluid. The reason for the loss of brake fluid must be investigated.

[1] Anti-lock Braking System

12.4.1.5. Brake system maintenance

Check brake system components regularly for wear.

To keep the car as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service intervals as specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet. After replacing brake linings and brake discs, braking effect is only adapted after they have been "worn in" for a few hundred kilometres (miles). Compensate for the reduced braking effect by depressing the brake pedal harder. Volvo recommends only fitting brake linings that are approved for your Volvo.

Important

The wear on the brake system's components must be checked regularly.

Contact a workshop for information about the procedure or engage a workshop to carry out the inspection - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

12.4.2. Parking brake

12.4.2.1. Parking brake

The parking brake prevents the car from rolling away from stationary by means of mechanically locking/blocking two wheels.

A faint electric motor noise can be heard when the electrically-operated parking brake is being applied. The noise can also be heard during the automatic function checking of the parking brake.

If the car is stationary when the parking brake is activated, it only acts on the rear wheels. If it is activated when the car is moving then the normal foot brake is used, i.e. the brake acts on all four wheels. Brake function changes over to the rear wheels when the car is almost stationary.

> **Note**
>
> The driver always bears responsibility for ensuring that the car is parked in a safe manner. Always check that the symbols for parking brake illuminate with a constant glow when parking.

12.4.2.2. Activating and deactivating the parking brake

Use the parking brake to prevent the car from rolling from stationary. An activated parking brake locks both rear wheels.

Activating the parking brake

The button for the parking brake is located next to the gear selector.

1 Press the button.

> The symbol in the driver display illuminates when the parking brake is activated.

Automatic activation

The parking brake is activated automatically

- if the car is switched off.
- when the driver unbuckles the seatbelt and/or opens the driver's door.
- if the function Hold (brake when stationary) is activated and the car has been stationary for a while (approx. 5–10 minutes).

> **Important**
>
> Check that the symbol for parking brake is illuminated when leaving the car.

Emergency brake

In an emergency, the parking brake can be activated when the car is in motion by pressing and holding the button depressed.

The car is then braked heavily with the foot brake. Braking stops when the button is released, or if the accelerator pedal is depressed.

> **Note**
>
> An acoustic signal sounds while emergency braking is active at high speeds.

Deactivating the parking brake

The parking brake is deactivated automatically when a gear is selected.

1. Put the seatbelt on.
2. Depress the brake pedal.
3. Select gear position D or R

> The parking brake releases automatically and the symbol in the driver display extinguishes.

4. Release the brake pedal.

> If **One Pedal Drive** has been activated, the car will not drive forwards, but may roll away if the surface is sloping in the same direction as the selected gear position.
> If **One Pedal Drive** is deactivated, the car will drive slowly in the selected direction with gentle pressure on the accelerator pedal.

> **Note**
>
> For automatic deactivation, either the driver has to have put on their seatbelt or the driver door has to be closed.

Symbol in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	Light illuminated permanently: The parking brake is activated. Flashing: an error has occurred with the parking brake. Read the message in the driver display.

12.4.2.3. Parking on a hill

Always make sure that the parking brake has been activated when parking on a hill.

If the car is parked facing uphill:

- Turn the wheels **away from** the kerb.

If the car is parked facing downhill:

- Turn the wheels **towards** the kerb.

> **Warning**
>
> Avoid parking on a hill in winter road conditions as there would be a risk of the car sliding.

12.4.2.4. In the event of a fault in the parking brake

Contact an authorised Volvo workshop if it is not possible to deactivate or activate the parking brake after several attempts.

An acoustic warning signal sounds when driving with the parking brake activated.

If the car has to be parked before a possible fault can be rectified, the car must be secured to prevent it from rolling away.

The car can be secured by parking on level ground and:

- Block one or more of the wheels using suitable objects as chocks.
- Turn the front wheels towards the kerb or similar.

Replacing the brake linings

The rear brake linings must be replaced at a workshop due to the design of the electrically-operated parking brake - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Symbols in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	If the symbol flashes, it indicates a fault has occurred. See the message in the driver display.
	Fault in brake system. See the message in the driver display.
	Information message in driver display.

12.4.3. Brake fluid – specifications

Brake fluid is the medium in a hydraulic brake system that is used to transfer pressure from e.g. a brake pedal via a master brake cylinder, which in turn acts on the brake callipers.

Prescribed grade: Volvo Original or equivalent fluid compliant with a combination of Dot 4, 5.1 and ISO 4925 class 6.

> **Note**
>
> It is recommended that brake fluid is changed or filled by an authorised Volvo workshop.

12.4.4. Brake functions

The car's brakes are used to reduce the speed or prevent the car from rolling.

Besides the foot brake and parking brake, the car is equipped with several automatic brake assist functions. These can assist the driver by not needing to keep his/her foot on the brake pedal when at a traffic light, or when starting on an uphill gradient.

Depending on the car's equipment, the following auto braking functions are available:

- Brake when stationary (Hold)
- Auto braking after a collision
- Regenerative braking
- Warning and auto-brake when reversing
- Assistance at risk of collision
- Off road mode

12.4.5. Auto braking after a collision

In the event of a collision in which the activation level is reached for the pyrotechnic seatbelt tensioners or airbags, or if a collision with a large animal is detected, the car's brakes are automatically applied. This function is to prevent or reduce the effects of any subsequent collision.

After a serious collision there is a risk that it is no longer possible to control and steer the car. In order to avoid or mitigate a possible further collision with a vehicle or an object in the vehicle's path, the auto braking system is activated automatically and brakes the car in a safe manner.

Brake lights and hazard warning lights are activated during braking. When the car has stopped, the hazard warning lights continue to flash and the parking brake is applied.

If braking is not appropriate, e.g. if there is a risk of being hit by following traffic, the system can be overridden by the driver depressing the accelerator pedal.

The function assumes that the brake system is intact after the collision.

12.4.6. Brake assistance when stationary

Brake assist can be automatically activated to hold the car stationary in certain situations.

Brake assist is available even when braking when stationary (Hold) is deactivated.

Brake assist is activated:

- When stationary if gear position D or R is selected and the car is at risk of starting to move in the opposite direction to selected direction of travel
- When stationary if creep mode is deactivated

Brake assist is deactivated:

- When gear position D or R is selected and the driver depresses the accelerator pedal
- When the driver selects gear position N

The parking brake is activated automatically

- if the car is switched off.
- when the driver unbuckles the seatbelt and/or opens the driver's door.
- if the function Hold (brake when stationary) is activated and the car has been stationary for a while (approx. 5–10 minutes).

12.4.7. Brake when stationary

Brake when stationary (Hold) means that the driver can release the brake pedal while maintaining braking when the car has stopped at traffic lights, for example.

Activating brake when stationary (Hold)

The function is activated automatically when stationary if gear position D or R is selected and

- **One Pedal Drive** is activated
- the car is at risk of starting to move.

or

- **One Pedal Drive** is deactivated
- the car is already stationary and the brake pedal fully depressed before being released.

Deactivating brake when stationary (Hold)

The function is released when the driver drives off with a gear selected and the accelerator pedal depressed.

> **Note**
>
> Braking when stationary is also deactivated when the driver changes to neutral position.

The parking brake is activated automatically

- if the car is switched off
- when the driver unbuckles the seatbelt and/or opens the driver's door.
- if the function is activate and the car has been stationary for a while (approx. 5–10 minutes).

Brake when stationary (Hold) can also change over to the parking brake in other situations.

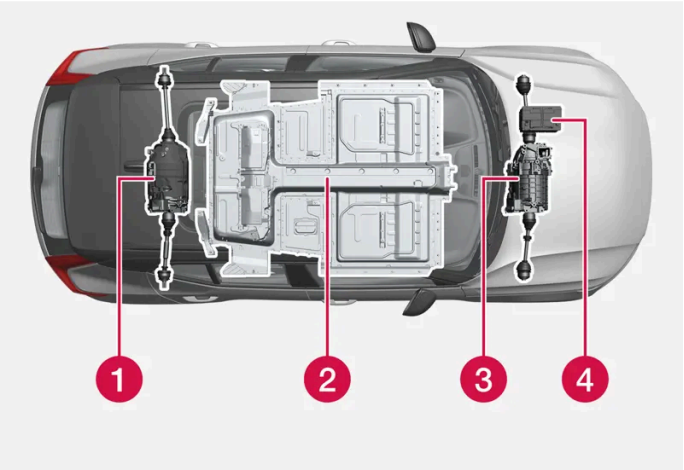
Symbols in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	The symbol is illuminated when brake when stationary (Hold) is activated and holds the car stationary. Note that brake when stationary (Hold) can be activated without the symbol being lit.
	The symbol is illuminated when the function uses the parking brake to keep the car stationary.

12.5. Drive system

12.5.1. Drive systems

The car's electric motor drives the car.



1 Electric motor[1] – The car contains two electric motors that drive the car and recover brake energy to create electrical energy.

2 High voltage battery – The car contains a high voltage battery. The function of the high voltage battery is to store energy. This receives energy by charging from the mains power circuit and by means of regenerative braking.

3 Electric motor – The car's electric motor drives the car and recycles brake energy to electrical energy.

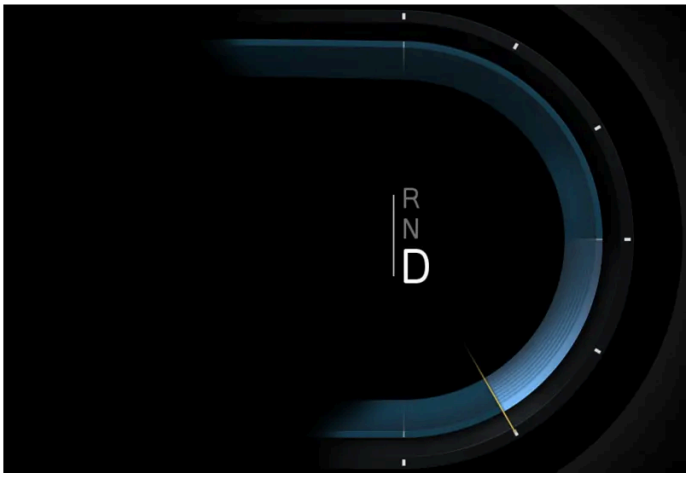
4 12 V battery – The car contains a 12 V battery that starts up the car's electrical systems and powers the electrical equipment in the car.

[1] Applies to cars with two electric motors.

12.6. Drive modes

12.6.1. Regenerative braking

The car recovers the brake energy and regenerates current to the battery when the driver releases the accelerator pedal or when the foot brake is used.



Indication in the driver display during regenerative braking.

Regeneration with the accelerator pedal

1 Release the accelerator pedal.

> The car brakes and charging is indicated in the driver display.

> **Note**
>
> The brake lights are activated if the braking force exceeds a certain level.

Regeneration with the brake pedal

1 Depress the brake pedal.

> The car brakes and charging is indicated in the driver display.

12.6.2. One Pedal Drive

One Pedal Drive is ideal for city driving. Using One Pedal Drive the car can be driven in a smooth way by simply depressing and releasing the accelerator pedal without the need to use the brake pedal.

> **Important**
>
> The driver is responsible for using the brake pedal as necessary even when One Pedal Drive is enabled.

> **Important**
>
> One Pedal Drive is not recommended in slippery driving conditions.

Activating or deactivating One Pedal Drive

1. Press ⚙ in the centre display.
2. Select **Driving**.
3. Activating or deactivating **One Pedal Drive**.

> **Note**
>
> - One Pedal Drive cannot be enabled when driving mode **Off-road** is enabled and the button is shown as grey.
> - When **Off-road** is enabled, One Pedal Drive is automatically set to **Off** and Creep is changed to **On**.
> - When **Off-road** is disabled, the settings for One Pedal Drive reset to those used before **Off-road** was enabled.

12.6.3. Creep mode

Creep mode can facilitate progress at low speed, e.g. in traffic queues or in car parks.

When the function is active the car will move slowly in the selected travel direction without the accelerator pedal being used.

Activating creep mode

1. Press ⚙ in the centre display.
2. Select **Driving**.
3. Deactivate **One Pedal Drive**.

> Creep mode is now activated.

Deactivating creep mode

1 Press ⚙ in the centre display.

2 Select **Driving**.

3 Activate **One Pedal Drive**.

> Creep mode is now deactivated.

12.6.4. Off road mode

An adapted low speed mode that increases the car's traction when driving in difficult off road conditions, on steep hills, and on a poor surface.

The **Off-road** drive mode provides high ground clearance*, light steering, enhanced all-wheel drive* and activated low speed control function with hill descent control. This provides enhanced engine braking, which makes it possible to increase or reduce the speed of the car on steep hills by using only the accelerator pedal, without using the foot brake.

The speed is controlled using the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the car slows down to creep, regardless of the gradient of the hill and without the need for the foot brake to be used.

The brake lights are switched on when the car is braked/speed is reduced. The driver can also use the foot brake to reduce creep or to stop the car.

Remember the following:

- The mode is only available at low speeds, up to 40 km/h (25 mph). Off road drive mode is deactivated if the speed is exceeded.

> **Note**
>
> Off road mode is not designed to be used on public roads.

Activating or deactivating Off road

1. Press ⚙ in the centre display.
2. Select **Driving**.
3. Activating or deactivating **Off-road mode**.

The function is deactivated when the car is switched off.

* Option/accessory.

12.6.5. Range

The car's range depends on several factors. The ability to achieve a long range varies according to the circumstances and conditions under which the car is being driven.

The certified value for the car's mileage should not be interpreted as an expected range. The certified value should primarily be used to compare different cars and is obtained during special test cycles.

> **Note**
>
> The Driving Journal calculates the electric consumption based on actual consumption during a journey. If you see a different value in your car's trip meter, it is because it also takes electric regeneration into account.

Range in the driver display

When the car is delivered from the factory, the range is based on the certified value. When the car has been driven for a while, the range is based on historical driving patterns.

The amount of history used depends on the battery's state of charge. Therefore, the less charge there is in the battery, the faster the range adapts to a changed driving pattern.

Short range

The estimated range of the car is shorter when the battery's state of charge (SoC) decreases. The driver display shows a number of symbols and messages as the range becomes shorter.

Symbol	Message/meaning
	When the range of the car falls to 50 km, the battery symbol next to the battery gauge changes colour to orange and the message **Low rangeDo you want to find a charging station?** is shown in the driver display. The message is not shown if a destination is set in the navigation system.
	When the range of the car falls to 20 km, the battery symbol next to the battery gauge changes colour to red and the message **Low rangeDo you want to find a charging station?** is shown in the driver display.
	When the battery level is low, an orange tortoise is shown in the upper part of the driver display.
	The message **Reduced power due to low battery charge** is shown together with an orange battery symbol. If the tortoise was not shown earlier, it will be visible in the driver display in connection with this message being shown.
	The message **Empty battery. Charge battery.** is shown together with an empty battery symbol.

Factors that affect the range

In addition to historical trip data, there are several different factors that affect the range. The longest range is achieved under extremely favourable conditions when all factors have a positive impact.

Examples of factors that affect the range:

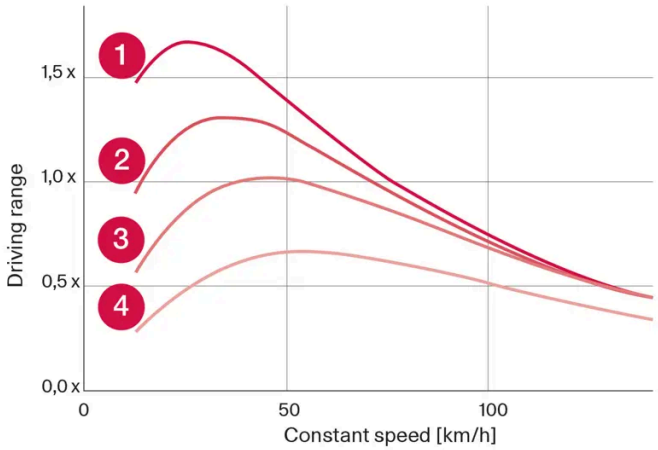
- speed
- climate settings
- topography
- preconditioning
- tyres and tyre pressure
- traffic situation
- temperature and weather
- road conditions.

Range in cold temperatures

In cold ambient temperatures there is a risk that the battery will become too cold, which has a negative effect on the range. This symbol is shown in the driver display if the battery temperature falls to a critically low level. If the car is parked in cold ambient temperatures there is a risk that the range will be reduced dramatically. To avoid substantially reduced range after parking in cold ambient temperatures, the car should be charged while it is parked.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Range based on speed and outside temperature



1 20 °C (68 °F) outside temperature and passenger compartment climate Off.

2 20 °C (68 °F) outside temperature and passenger compartment climate On.

3 35 °C (95 °F) outside temperature and passenger compartment climate On.

4 -10 °C (14 °F) outside temperature and passenger compartment climate On.

The diagram shows the approximate relationship between constant speed and range.

The graph shows that a lower speed gives a longer range. The outside temperature also affects the range, so that very cold or very hot ambient temperatures result in a shorter range.

Lines 1 and 2 show the approximate difference in range affected by the climate functions. Turning off the climate control is more beneficial for range.

12.6.6. Range assistant

The range assistant provides the driver with overview information and assistance in order to facilitate more economical driving.

Factors that the driver can primarily influence in order to extend the range include speed, driving style, and climate settings. Each factor has a meter that indicates current energy usage. When the gauge changes colour from blue to orange the driver should review his/her energy usage in order to adopt more economical driving behaviour.

Speed: The car's average speed during the last minute.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Driving style: The acceleration and braking behaviour during the last few minutes.

Climate control: The estimated average consumption based on the current climatization settings.

Next to the estimated range, there are two numbers that indicate expected short and long range based on high and low consumption, respectively. These values are defined as:

Long range: Assumes typical city driving with climate system off.

Short range: Assumes motorway driving at high speed with the climate system on.

Consumption is shown in kWh/100 km when the vehicle is in motion and as kW (kWh/h) when stationary. The value is instantaneous and will therefore indicate high values during accelerations and up hills.

Optimising range

The range optimisation function adjusts the climate settings in order to save energy and therefore extend the range of the car.

Activate or deactivate range optimisation via the centre display

1. Press ⊞.
2. Select **Range assistant**.
3. Activating or deactivating range optimisation.

> **Note**
>
> Range optimisation is automatically deactivated at 50% or higher State of Charge (SoC).

> **Note**
>
> In cold ambient temperatures, the output of the heater is reduced. If the climate feels too cold, deactivate range optimisation.
>
> In hot ambient temperatures, cooling is limited. If the climate feels too hot, deactivate range optimisation.
>
> Problems with misting may occur since the AC function that adjusts humidity is limited.
>
> Since the AC function is limited, air recirculation increases, which may lead to a less comfortable feeling of air quality, especially in the rear seat.

12.6.7. All-wheel drive*

All-wheel drive (AWD[1]) means that the car is driving all four wheels at the same time, which improves traction.

The electric motor that drives the rear wheels enables electric all-wheel drive functionality[2].

* Option/accessory.

[1] All-wheel drive

[2] Applies to cars with two electric motors.

12.7. Recommendations for driving

12.7.1. Brake assistance when stationary

Brake assist can be automatically activated to hold the car stationary in certain situations.

Brake assist is available even when braking when stationary (Hold) is deactivated.

Brake assist is activated:

- When stationary if gear position D or R is selected and the car is at risk of starting to move in the opposite direction to selected direction of travel
- When stationary if creep mode is deactivated

Brake assist is deactivated:

- When gear position D or R is selected and the driver depresses the accelerator pedal
- When the driver selects gear position N

The parking brake is activated automatically

- if the car is switched off.
- when the driver unbuckles the seatbelt and/or opens the driver's door.
- if the function Hold (brake when stationary) is activated and the car has been stationary for a while (approx. 5–10 minutes).

12.7.2. Braking on gritted roads

When driving on salted roads, a layer of salt may form on the brake discs and brake linings.

This may extend braking distance. You should therefore maintain a greater safety distance to vehicles in front. In addition, make sure you do the following:

- Brake now and again to remove any layer of salt. Make sure that other road users are not put at risk by the braking.
- Gently depress the brake pedal after finishing driving and before starting your next trip.

12.7.3. Braking on wet roads

When driving for a prolonged period of time in heavy rain without braking, the braking effect may be delayed slightly when next using the brakes.

This may also be the case after a car wash. It is then necessary to depress the brake pedal more forcefully. You should therefore maintain a greater distance to the vehicles in front.

Brake the car firmly after driving on wet roads or using a car wash. This warms up the brake discs, enabling them to dry faster and protecting them against corrosion. Bear in mind the current traffic situation when braking.

12.7.4. Parking on a hill

Always make sure that the parking brake has been activated when parking on a hill.

If the car is parked facing uphill:

- Turn the wheels **away from** the kerb.

If the car is parked facing downhill:

- Turn the wheels **towards** the kerb.

> **Warning**
>
> Avoid parking on a hill in winter road conditions as there would be a risk of the car sliding.

12.7.5. Range

The car's range depends on several factors. The ability to achieve a long range varies according to the circumstances and conditions under which the car is being driven.

The certified value for the car's mileage should not be interpreted as an expected range. The certified value should primarily be used to compare different cars and is obtained during special test cycles.

> **Note**
>
> The Driving Journal calculates the electric consumption based on actual consumption during a journey. If you see a different value in your car's trip meter, it is because it also takes electric regeneration into account.

Range in the driver display

When the car is delivered from the factory, the range is based on the certified value. When the car has been driven for a while, the range is based on historical driving patterns.

The amount of history used depends on the battery's state of charge. Therefore, the less charge there is in the battery, the faster the range adapts to a changed driving pattern.

Short range

The estimated range of the car is shorter when the battery's state of charge (SoC) decreases. The driver display shows a number of symbols and messages as the range becomes shorter.

Symbol	Message/meaning
	When the range of the car falls to 50 km, the battery symbol next to the battery gauge changes colour to orange and the message **Low rangeDo you want to find a charging station?** is shown in the driver display. The message is not shown if a destination is set in the navigation system.
	When the range of the car falls to 20 km, the battery symbol next to the battery gauge changes colour to red and the message **Low rangeDo you want to find a charging station?** is shown in the driver display.
	When the battery level is low, an orange tortoise is shown in the upper part of the driver display.
	The message **Reduced power due to low battery charge** is shown together with an orange battery symbol. If the tortoise was not shown earlier, it will be visible in the driver display in connection with this message being shown.
	The message **Empty battery. Charge battery.** is shown together with an empty battery symbol.

Factors that affect the range

In addition to historical trip data, there are several different factors that affect the range. The longest range is achieved under extremely favourable conditions when all factors have a positive impact.

Examples of factors that affect the range:

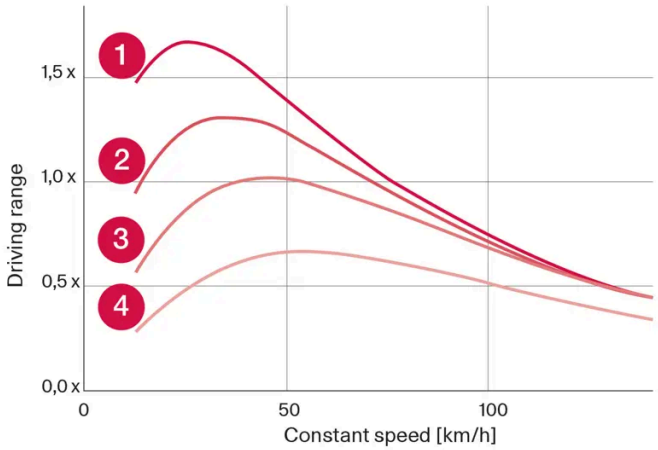
- speed
- climate settings
- topography
- preconditioning
- tyres and tyre pressure
- traffic situation
- temperature and weather
- road conditions.

Range in cold temperatures

In cold ambient temperatures there is a risk that the battery will become too cold, which has a negative effect on the range. This symbol is shown in the driver display if the battery temperature falls to a critically low level. If the car is parked in cold ambient temperatures there is a risk that the range will be reduced dramatically. To avoid substantially reduced range after parking in cold ambient temperatures, the car should be charged while it is parked.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Range based on speed and outside temperature



1 20 °C (68 °F) outside temperature and passenger compartment climate Off.

2 20 °C (68 °F) outside temperature and passenger compartment climate On.

3 35 °C (95 °F) outside temperature and passenger compartment climate On.

4 -10 °C (14 °F) outside temperature and passenger compartment climate On.

The diagram shows the approximate relationship between constant speed and range.

The graph shows that a lower speed gives a longer range. The outside temperature also affects the range, so that very cold or very hot ambient temperatures result in a shorter range.

Lines 1 and 2 show the approximate difference in range affected by the climate functions. Turning off the climate control is more beneficial for range.

12.7.6. Economical driving

To achieve the longest possible range, the driver should plan driving and adapt driving style and speed to the prevailing situation.

Before driving

- Precondition the car before driving if possible using the charging cable connected to the mains power circuit.
- If preconditioning is not possible when it is cold outside, use seat heating and steering wheel heating first of all. Avoid warming up the whole of the interior which takes energy from the battery.
- Choice of tyres and tyre pressure can affect energy consumption - seek advice on suitable tyres from an authorised Volvo workshop.
- Remove unnecessary items from the car - the greater the load the higher the consumption.

While driving

- Drive at a steady speed and keep a good distance to other vehicles and objects in order to avoid braking.
- When braking, the battery is recharged by:

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

    - braking gently using the brake pedal.
    - release the accelerator pedal and make sure that regenerative braking is activated.
- High speed results in increased energy consumption since the wind resistance increases with speed.
- In a cold climate, reduce electrical heating of windows, mirrors, seats and steering wheel, if possible.
- Avoid driving with open windows.
- Do not hold the car stationary on a hill with the accelerator pedal. Instead, activate the function for braking when stationary.
- If possible, deactivate the climate control while driving a short distance after preconditioning.

After driving

- If possible, park in an acclimated garage with charging facilities.

12.7.7. Range assistant

The range assistant provides the driver with overview information and assistance in order to facilitate more economical driving.

Factors that the driver can primarily influence in order to extend the range include speed, driving style, and climate settings. Each factor has a meter that indicates current energy usage. When the gauge changes colour from blue to orange the driver should review his/her energy usage in order to adopt more economical driving behaviour.

Speed: The car's average speed during the last minute.

Driving style: The acceleration and braking behaviour during the last few minutes.

Climate control: The estimated average consumption based on the current climatization settings.

Next to the estimated range, there are two numbers that indicate expected short and long range based on high and low consumption, respectively. These values are defined as:

Long range: Assumes typical city driving with climate system off.

Short range: Assumes motorway driving at high speed with the climate system on.

Consumption is shown in kWh/100 km when the vehicle is in motion and as kW (kWh/h) when stationary. The value is instantaneous and will therefore indicate high values during accelerations and up hills.

Optimising range

The range optimisation function adjusts the climate settings in order to save energy and therefore extend the range of the car.

Activate or deactivate range optimisation via the centre display

1. Press ⊞.
2. Select **Range assistant**.
3. Activating or deactivating range optimisation.

Note

Range optimisation is automatically deactivated at 50% or higher State of Charge (SoC).

Note

In cold ambient temperatures, the output of the heater is reduced. If the climate feels too cold, deactivate range optimisation.

In hot ambient temperatures, cooling is limited. If the climate feels too hot, deactivate range optimisation.

Problems with misting may occur since the AC function that adjusts humidity is limited.

Since the AC function is limited, air recirculation increases, which may lead to a less comfortable feeling of air quality, especially in the rear seat.

12.7.8. Preparations for a long trip

Before a driving holiday or some other type of long journey, it is important to check the car's functions and equipment particularly carefully.

Check that

- braking effect on braking works as intended
- the tyres have sufficient tread depth and pressure. Change to winter tyres when driving to areas where there is a risk of snowy or icy road surfaces
- battery charging is good
- the wiper blades are in good condition
- a warning triangle and high-visibility vest are located in the car - legally required in certain countries

---

12.7.9. Driving in water

Wading means the car being driven through water e.g. on a flooded road. Driving in water must be performed with great caution.

While driving in water

Observe the following to prevent damage to the car when driving through water:

- The car can be driven through water to a maximum depth of 45 cm (17 inches).
- Do not drive faster than walking pace.
- Do not stop the car in the water. Drive forward carefully or reverse the car back out of the water.
- Extra caution should be exercised when passing through flowing water.

- Do not let the car stand with water over the sills for any long period of time - this could cause electrical malfunctions.

After driving in water

When the water has been passed, depress the brake pedal lightly and check that full brake function is achieved. Water and mud for example can make the brake linings wet resulting in delayed brake function.

If necessary, clean the contacts for the electric heater and trailer coupling after driving in water and mud.

12.7.10. Winter driving

For winter driving it is important to perform certain checks of the car in order to ensure that it can be driven safely.

Check the following in particular before a cold season:

- The condition of the battery and its charge level must be inspected. Cold weather places higher demands on the battery and its capacity is reduced by the cold.
- Use washer fluid with antifreeze to avoid ice forming in the washer fluid reservoir.

Slippery driving conditions

Volvo recommends that **One Pedal Drive** is deactivated while driving in slippery or icy conditions.

To achieve optimum roadholding Volvo recommends using winter tyres on all wheels if there is a risk of snow or ice.

> **Note**
>
> The use of winter tyres is a legal requirement in certain countries. Studded tyres are not permitted in all countries.

Practise driving on slippery surfaces under controlled conditions to learn how the car reacts.

12.8. Towbar and trailer

12.8.1. Towing capacity and towball load

Towing capacity and towball load for driving with a trailer can be read in the tables.

Max. weight braked trailer

Note

Use of vibration dampers on the towbar is recommended for trailers heavier than 1800 kg.

Braked trailer	Recharge Twin	Recharge
Max. weight (kg)	1800	1500
Max. towball load (kg)	100	100

Important

When driving with a trailer, it is permitted to exceed the vehicle's gross vehicle weight (including towball load) by a maximum of 100 kg (220 lbs), provided that speed is limited to 100 km/h (62 mph). National legal requirements for the vehicle combination, such as speed, etc. must be observed.

Note

If weight data is missing in the table, it will be updated at a later date.

Max. weight unbraked trailer

Unbraked trailer	
Max. weight (kg)	750
Max. towball load (kg)	50

12.8.2. Towbar*

The car can be equipped with a towbar that makes it possible to tow e.g. a trailer behind the car.

There may be different towbar variants available for the car. Contact a Volvo dealer for more information.

Important

When the car is switched off, the constant battery voltage to the trailer connector can be switched off automatically in order not to drain the starter battery.

Important

The towball needs regular cleaning and lubrication with grease in order to prevent wear.

Note

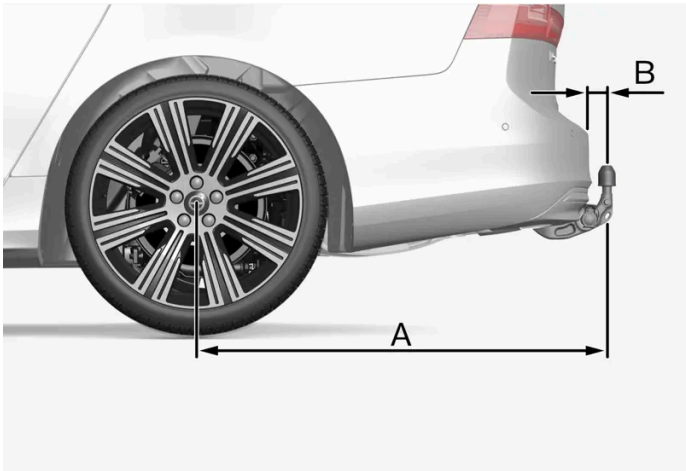
When a hitch with a vibration damper is used, the towball must not be lubricated.

This also applies when fitting a bicycle rack that is clamped in around the towball.

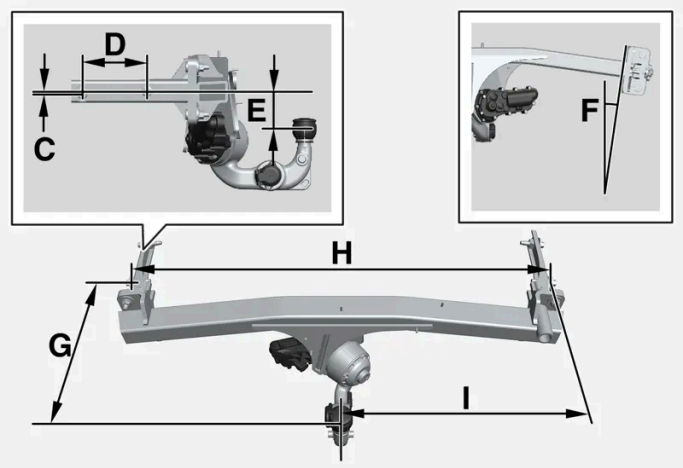
* Option/accessory.

12.8.3. Specifications for towbar*

Dimensions and mounting points for towbar.



The illustration is generic and may vary depending on model.



Dimensions, mounting points in mm (inches)	
A	939 (37)
B	72 (2.8)
C	6 (0.24)
D	145 (5.7)

Dimensions, mounting points in mm (inches)	
E	88 (3.5)
F	Side beam tilts 8 degrees
G	353 (13.9)
H	1048 (41.3)
I	524 (20.6)

* Option/accessory.

12.8.4. Towbar-mounted bicycle rack*

When using a bicycle rack, the bicycle racks that Volvo has developed are recommended.

This is in order to avoid damage to the car and in order to achieve the maximum possible safety during a journey. Volvo's bicycle racks are available for purchase at authorised Volvo dealers.

Carefully follow the instructions enclosed with the bicycle rack.

- Bicycle rack including load must weigh a maximum of 75 kg (165 pounds).
- Rear Auto Brake should be deactivated before driving with a bicycle rack.

Warning

Incorrect use of the bicycle rack may cause damage to the towbar and car.

The bicycle rack can loosen from the towbar if it

- is incorrectly fitted on the towball
- is overloaded, see the bicycle rack's instructions for maximum load weight
- is used for carrying something other than bicycles.

The car's driving characteristics are affected when a bicycle rack is fitted on the towbar. For example due to:

- increased weight
- reduced acceleration capacity
- reduced ground clearance
- changed braking capacity.

Recommendations for loading bicycles on the bicycle rack

The larger the distance between the load's centre of gravity and the towball, the greater the load on the towbar.

Load according to the following recommendations:

- Fit the heaviest bicycle furthest in, closest to the car.
- Keep the load symmetrical and as close to the centre of the car as possible e.g. by loading the bicycles facing alternately if several bicycles are loaded.
- Remove loose objects from the bicycle for transportation, e.g. bicycle basket, battery, child seat. Partly to reduce the load on the towbar and bicycle rack, and partly to reduce the wind resistance, which affects range.
- Do not use protective covers on the bicycles. This may affect manoeuvrability, impair visibility and increase energy consumption. It may also lead to an increased load on the towbar.

* Option/accessory.

12.8.5. Extendable and retractable towbar*

The retractable tow hook[1] is easy to retract or extend as required. In the retracted position, the towbar is completely concealed.

> **Warning**
>
> Follow the instructions for retracting and extending the towbar carefully.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not press the extend/retract button if a trailer or accessory is attached to the tow bar.

A button for extending/retracting the towbar is located on the right-hand side at the rear of the cargo area. The indicator lamp in the button flashes or illuminates with a constant orange glow when retracting and extending are active.

Extending the towbar

1 Press and release the button in the cargo area – extending might not start if the button is pressed for too long.

> The towbar is extended outward and downward in an unlocked position - the indicator lamp flashes orange.

2 Manoeuvre the towbar to its end position where it is secured and locked in.

> The indicator lamp illuminates with a constant glow when the towbar is ready for use.

Warning

Avoid standing close to the bumper in the centre behind the car when extending the towing hitch.

Important

When the tow bar is activated by pressing a key and has been placed in the unlocked position:

Wait at least 2 seconds before the tow bar is moved to the locked position. If the tow bar does not remain in the locked position, wait another few seconds and try again.

Do not kick the tow bar.

Warning

Take care to secure the trailer's safety cable in the intended bracket.

Note

Power save mode activates after a while and the indicator lamp goes out. The system is reactivated by closing and opening the tailgate. This applies when retracting or extending the towbar.

If the car detects a connected trailer electrically, the indicator lamp stops illuminating with a constant glow. Towbar retraction and extension are then not possible.

Retracting the towbar

1 Press and release the button in the cargo area – retracting might not start if the button is pressed for too long.

> The towbar is extended downward in an unlocked position - the indicator lamp flashes orange.

2 Lock the towbar by moving it back to its retracted position, where it is locked.

> The indicator lamp will illuminate with a constant glow when the towbar is correctly retracted.

Important

Make sure that there is no plug or adapter in the electrical socket when retracting the towbar.

> **Important**
>
> When the tow bar is activated by pressing a key and has been placed in the unlocked position:
>
> Wait at least 2 seconds before the tow bar is moved to the locked position. If the tow bar does not remain in the locked position, wait another few seconds and try again.
>
> Do not kick the tow bar.

> **Important**
>
> The towbar must always be retracted when not in use.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only available on certain markets.

12.8.6. Driving with a trailer

When driving with a trailer, there are a number of points that are important to think about regarding the towbar, the trailer and how the load is positioned in the trailer.

Payload depends on the car's kerb weight. The total of the weight of the passengers and all accessories, e.g. towbar, reduces the car's payload by a corresponding weight.

The car is supplied with the necessary equipment for towing a trailer.

- The car's towbar must be of an approved type.
- Distribute the load on the trailer so that the weight on the towbar complies with the specified maximum towball load. Towball load is calculated as part of the car's payload.
- Increase the tyre pressure to the recommended pressure for a full load.
- The electric motor is loaded more heavily than usual when driving with a trailer.
- Do not tow a heavy trailer when the car is brand new. Wait until it has been driven at least 1000 km (620 miles).
- Follow the regulations in force for the permitted speeds and weights.
- Maintain a low speed when driving with a trailer up long, steep ascents.
- Avoid driving with a trailer on inclines of more than 12%.

- Rear Auto Brake should be deactivated before driving with a trailer.

Trailer weights

Warning

Follow the stated recommendations for trailer weights. Otherwise, the car and trailer may be difficult to control in the event of sudden movement and braking.

Note

The stated maximum permitted trailer weights are those permitted by Volvo. National vehicle regulations can further limit trailer weights and speeds. Towbars can be certified for higher towing weights than the car can actually tow.

When driving in hilly terrain

Under certain circumstances, there may be a risk of overheating when towing a trailer. If the electric motor and drive system overheat, a warning symbol comes on in the driver display and a message is displayed.

Parking on a hill

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Activate the parking brake.
3. Release the brake pedal.

Block the wheels with chocks when parking a car with hitched trailer on a hill.

Starting on a hill

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Select gear position D or R and accelerate.

> The parking brake releases and the symbol in the driver display extinguishes. The car can now be driven.

12.8.7. Trailer stability assist*

The function of trailer stability assist (TSA[1]), which is included in the stability system ESC[2], is to stabilise cars towing trailers in situations where they begin snaking. The function is available with towbar installation, contact a Volvo dealer for more information.

Reasons for snaking

The snaking phenomenon can occur with any car/trailer combination. Snaking normally occurs at high speeds. However, there is a risk of it occurring at lower speeds if the trailer is overloaded or the load is improperly distributed, e.g. too far back.

Triggering factors for snaking may, for example, include:

- Car with trailer subjected to a sudden and powerful side wind.
- Car with trailer drives on an uneven road surface or in a pothole.
- Sweeping steering wheel movements.

If snaking has started, it could be difficult or even impossible to suppress. This makes the car/trailer combination difficult to control and there is a risk that you could end up in the wrong lane or leave the carriageway.

Trailer stability assist function

The trailer stability assist function continually monitors the car's movements, particularly lateral movements. If snaking is detected, the front wheels are individually braked. This serves to stabilise the car/trailer combination. This is often enough to help the driver regain control of the car.

If snaking is not eliminated the first time that trailer stability assist intervenes, the car/trailer combination is braked with all wheels and the car's traction is reduced. Once snaking has been gradually suppressed and the car/trailer combination is stable once again, the system stops regulating and the driver once again has full control of the car.

Trailer stability assist may fail to intervene if the driver uses severe steering wheel movements to try to rectify the snaking because in such a situation the system cannot determine whether it is the trailer or the driver causing the snaking.

When Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) is operating, the ESC symbol flashes in the driver display.

> **Note**
>
> Retrofitting a towbar requires an update of the car's software, contact a Volvo dealer.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Trailer Stability Assist

[2] Electronic Stability Control

12.8.8. Checking trailer lamps*

When connecting a trailer – check that the trailer lamps work before departure.

Checking trailer lamps*

Automatic checking

After a trailer is connected electrically, it is possible to ensure that the trailer lamps are working via an automatic lamp activation. The function helps the driver check that the trailer lamps are working before starting off.

1 When a trailer is connected to the towbar, the **Perform a trailer lamp check?** message is shown in the driver display.

2 Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's O button.

> The lamp check starts.

3 Exit the car to check lamp functionality.

> All trailer lamps start to flash - then the lamps are switched on one at a time.

4 Visually check that all lamps available on the trailer are operational.

5 After a moment, all lamps on the trailer flash again.

> The check is complete.

Rear fog lamp on trailer

When connecting the trailer, the rear fog lamp may not light up on the car. In such cases, the rear fog lamp function switches to the trailer. Upon activation of the rear fog lamp, check therefore that the trailer is equipped with a rear fog lamp to travel safely.

Symbols and messages in the driver display

If one or more of the trailer's direction indicators or brake light bulbs is broken, the driver display shows a symbol and a message. Other lights on the trailer must be checked manually by the driver before setting off.

Symbol	Message
	Right trailer turn indicator malfunction Left trailer turn indicator malfunction
	Trailer brake light malfunction

If any lamp for the trailer's direction indicators is broken, the driver display symbol for direction indicators will also flash more quickly than normal.

* Option/accessory.

12.9. Electric operation and charging

12.9.1. Charging the high voltage battery

12.9.1.1. Charging status in the car's driver display

The driver display shows the status for charging with both image and text. The information is shown for as long as the driver display is operating.

Colour	Status	Specification
Pulsating green	The frame of the driver display is shown with a green pulsing light.	Charging continues and an approximate time is shown for when the car will be fully charged.
Green	The frame of the driver display is shown with a fixed green light.	The car is fully charged.
Red	The frame of the driver display is shown with a fixed red light.	A fault has arisen. Check the charging cable's connection to the car's charging input socket and power source. Then restart charging in the following steps: 1. Unplug the charging cable from the charging input socket. 2. Wait for a short time. 3. Plug the charging cable into the charging input socket again. 4. If the problem persists – contact your Volvo dealer.
Blue	The frame of the driver display is shown with a fixed blue light.	Scheduled Charging activated.
Yellow	The frame of the driver display is shown with a fixed yellow light.	Charging is waiting to start or paused charging.

In addition to showing charging status, the driver display includes the following:

- Existing and set amperage, as well as number of phases [1]
- Charging power
- Battery percentage
- time until the car is fully charged.

> **Note**
>
> If the driver display is not used for a while then it is dimmed. Reactivate the display by means of one of the following:
>
> - depress the brake pedal
> - open one of the doors
> - press one of the steering wheel buttons.

[1] Existing and set amperage applies per phase from the alternating current source.

12.9.1.2. Charging status in the car's charging input socket

The LED lamp in the car's charging input socket shows the current status for charging in progress. The table below gives explanations for the different shades of the LED lamp.

LED lamp's glow	Specification
White	LED light
Flashing yellow	The charging process is about to be interrupted.
Yellow	Waiting mode[1] - waiting for charging to start.
Flashing green	Charging in progress[2].
Green	Charging complete[3]
Red	A fault has arisen. Check the charging cable's connection to the car's charging input socket and power source. Then restart charging in the following steps: 1. Unplug the charging cable from the charging input socket. 2. Wait for a short time. 3. Plug the charging cable into the charging input socket again. 4. If the problem persists – contact your Volvo dealer.
Flashing red	The car is locked and does not detect a key when unlocking the charging cable via the button next to the charging input socket.
Blue	Scheduled Charging activated.

Note

The charging input socket's LED lamp indicates status for charging the high voltage battery and not whether the car is consuming power, such as when the climate control is in use.

[1] For example, after a door has been opened or if the charging cable's handle is not locked in.

[2] The slower the flashing, the closer to fully charged.

[3] Extinguishes after a while.

12.9.1.3. General information on the charging cable

Use a mode 3 charging cable for charging at a charging station. Some charging stations have a permanent charging cable that you use instead.

Note

The information in this section only refers to charging with a mode 3 charging cable or a charging station with a permanent charging cable.

Warning

Only use the charging cable provided with your vehicle or a replacement cable purchased from a Volvo retailer.

Charging with permanent charging cable in accordance with Mode 3 [1]

In certain locations, the charging cable is installed within a charging station connected to the mains power circuit. Therefore, use the charging station's charging cable and follow the instructions at the charging station.

Specifications, charging cable	
Ambient temperature	-32 °C to 50 °C(-25 °F to 122 °F)

Warning

- Children should be supervised when in the vicinity of the charging cable when it is plugged in.
- High voltage in the charging cable. Contact with high voltage can cause death or serious personal injury.
- Do not use the charging cable if it is damaged in any way. A damaged or inoperative charging cable must only be repaired by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
- Always position the charging cable so that it will not be driven over, stepped on, tripped over or damaged in some other way, or cause personal injury.
- Do not connect one or more adapters of any type between charging cable and car.

Also, refer to the manufacturer's instructions for using the charging cable and its components.

Important

Always stop charging first before unplugging the charging cable from the car's charging input socket and then from the charging station.

Important

Clean the charging cable with a clean cloth, moistened with water or a mild detergent. Do not use chemicals or solvents.

Warning

The charging cable and its associated parts must not be swamped or immersed in water.

[1] **European standard - EN 61851-1.**

12.9.1.4. Ground fault breaker in charging cable

The charging cable's control unit[1] has a built-in ground fault breaker that protects the car and the user from electric shocks caused by system faults.

Warning

Charging the car must only take place with approved, grounded wall sockets. If the capacity of the electric circuit or electrical socket is unknown, contact a qualified electrician to check the capacity of the electric circuit. Using a state of charge that exceeds the capacity of the electric circuit or electrical socket may cause fire or damage the electric circuit.

Warning

- The charging cable's ground fault breaker helps to protect the car's charging system, but cannot guarantee that overload will never occur.

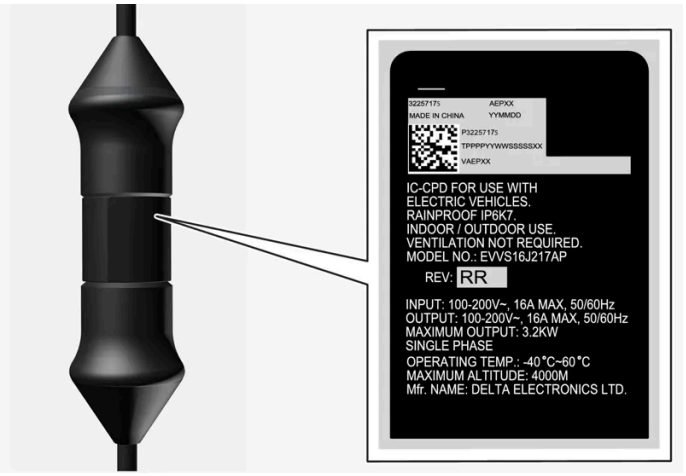
Important

The ground fault breaker does not protect the wall socket/electrical installation.

Control unit LED[2] lamp.

1 LED lamp

If the control unit's built-in ground fault breaker is tripped then the LED lamp illuminates with a red constant glow - check the wall socket. Ask a licensed electrician to check the socket or try to use another electrical socket.



Important

- Check the capacity of the socket.
- Other electronic equipment connected to the same fuse circuit must be disconnected if the total load is exceeded.
- Do not connect the charging cable if the socket is damaged.

[1] Refers to charging with a mode 2 charging cable.

[2] LED (Light Emitting Diode)

12.9.1.5. Charging status in the charging cable's control unit

The LED lamp on the charging cable's control unit shows the status of charging in progress as well as status after completed charging[1].

Control unit LED[2] lamp.

1 LED lamp

LED	Status	Specification	Recommended action
Extinguished	Charging is not possible.	No power supply to charging cable.	1. Unplug the charging cable from the wall socket. 2. Plug the charging cable into the wall socket again or use another wall socket. 3. If the problem persists – contact your Volvo dealer.
White light	Charging possible.	The charging cable is ready to be plugged into the car.	If the LED lamp is white but charging is not possible: 1. Unplug the charging cable from the charging input socket. 2. Plug the charging cable into the charging input socket again. 3. If the indicator does not flash white within approx. 10 seconds – first unplug the charging cable from the charging input socket and then from the wall socket. 4. Plug the charging cable into the wall socket again and then into the charging input socket in the car. 5. If the problem persists – contact your Volvo dealer.
Flashes white	Charging in progress.	The car's electronics have started charging Charging in progress.	Wait until the car is fully charged.
Illuminates in red	Charging is not possible.	Temporary fault.	1. Unplug the charging cable from the charging input socket. 2. Wait for a short time. 3. Plug the charging cable into the charging input socket again. 4. If the problem persists – contact your Volvo dealer.
Flashes red	Charging is not possible.	Critical fault.	1. Unplug the charging cable from the charging input socket and then from the wall socket. 2. Wait for a short time. 3. Plug the charging cable into the wall socket again and then into the charging input socket in the car. 4. If the problem persists – contact your Volvo dealer.

[1] Refers to charging with a mode 2 charging cable.

[2] LED (Light Emitting Diode)

12.9.1.6. Charging cable temperature monitoring

For the car's battery to be charged safely every time[1], the control unit for the charging cable and the plug have built-in monitoring devices for the temperature.

Temperature monitoring takes place in the control unit and the plug.

Monitoring in the control unit

Charging is switched off if the temperature of the control unit is too high. This is to protect the electronics. This may take place in a high outside temperature, for example, or when strong sunlight shines directly on the control unit.

Monitoring at the plug

The charging current is reduced if the temperature at the plug is too high. If the temperature exceeds a critical level, charging is stopped completely.

Warning

The charging cable's temperature monitoring helps to protect the car's charging system, but cannot guarantee that overheating will never occur.

Important

If the temperature monitoring has automatically lowered the charging current repeatedly and charging has been interrupted then the cause of the overheating must be investigated and rectified.

Important

Avoid exposing the control unit and its plug to direct sunlight. In such cases, the overheating protection in the plug is at risk of reducing or interrupting the charging of the car.

Important

If charging is unintentionally stopped, both the charging cable and the car's charging system should be checked by a trained and qualified Volvo service technician. The wall socket should also be checked by a licensed electrician.

[1] Refers to charging with a mode 2 charging cable.

12.9.1.7. Charging an electric car via a wall socket

The car can be charged via a wall socket if no other charging options are available.

Note

The information in this section refers to charging via a wall socket and a mode 2 charging cable.

Charging cable (mode 2)

When charging via a wall socket, use a charging cable with a control unit than can limit the amperage (mode 2).

Note

Volvo recommends a charging cable in accordance with IEC 62196 and IEC 61851 which supports temperature monitoring.

Warning

Only use the charging cable provided with your vehicle or a replacement cable purchased from a Volvo retailer.

Warning

The charging cable and its associated parts must not be swamped or immersed in water.

Warning

- The charging cable has a built-in circuit breaker. Charging must only take place with grounded and approved sockets.
- Children should be supervised when in the vicinity of the charging cable when it is plugged in.
- High voltage in the charging cable. Contact with high voltage can cause death or serious personal injury.
- Do not use the charging cable if it is damaged in any way. A damaged or inoperative charging cable must only be repaired by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
- Always position the charging cable so that it will not be driven over, stepped on, tripped over or damaged in some other way, or cause personal injury.
- Disconnect the charger from the wall outlet before cleaning it.
- Never connect the charging cable to an extension cord or a multiple plug socket.
- Do not use one or more adapters between the charging cable and the electrical socket.
- Do not connect one or more adapters of any type between charging cable and car.
- Do not use an external timer between the charging cable and the electrical socket.

Also, refer to the manufacturer's instructions for using the charging cable and its components.

Important

Avoid exposing the control unit and its plug to direct sunlight. In such cases, the overheating protection in the plug is at risk of reducing or interrupting the charging of the high-voltage battery.

Starting charging

Always park the car before you start charging.

1. Plug the charging cable into a 230 V socket[1].
2. Open the charging hatch.
3. Remove the protective cover on the charging handle and then push the handle all the way into the car's charging input socket.
4. The charging cable's handle locks, then charging starts within 5 seconds.

> **Note**
>
> Read more about how charging is started in the section on Charging electric cars.

> **Important**
>
> If the fuse of the wall socket has too low a current capacity, the fuse could blow while the car is charging. Set the lowest amperage for charging in the car's centre display before reconnecting charging. If the problems persist, contact a qualified electrician for investigation of further measures.

> **Warning**
>
> - The electric car must only be charged at maximum permitted charging current or lower in accordance with applicable local and national recommendations for charging from wall sockets/plugs.
> - The electric car must only be charged from approved grounded wall sockets.
> - Avoid visible worn or damaged mains sockets since they may lead to fire damage and/or personal injury if used.

> **Important**
>
> Never connect the charging cable when there is a risk of thunderstorm or lightning strike.

Finish charging

End charging by pressing the button next to the car's charging input socket, or via the button in the centre display, and unplug the charging cable from the car's charging input socket and then from the 230 V socket[1].

> **Note**
>
> Read more about how charging is ended in the section on Ending charging of electric cars.

Important

Charging must be ended before unplugging the charging cable from the car's charging input socket. If charging is not ended before the charging cable is disconnected, this may lead to damage to the charging cable or to the system.

Important

- Never unplug the charging cable from the wall socket while charging is in progress – there is then a risk of damaging the wall socket.
- Note that the charging cable must be unplugged from the car's charging input socket before being unplugged from the wall socket, partly to avoid damage to the system, and partly to avoid stopping the charging unintentionally.

Fuse

Charging an electric car via a wall socket corresponds to a high load on the fuse.

Important

Ensure that the wall socket fuse can handle the specified amperage for the charging cable.

Normally several 230 V consumers are included in a fuse circuit, so additional consumers (e.g. lighting, vacuum cleaner, electric drill, etc.) can be on the same fuse.

Important

Check that the 230 V socket has adequate power capacity for charging electric vehicles – in the event of uncertainty, the socket must be checked by a qualified professional. If the power capacity of the socket is unknown – set the lowest amperage in the centre display.

[1] The voltage in the socket may vary depending on market.

12.9.1.8. Charging an electric car

Charge the car via a charging station at home or via a public charging station.

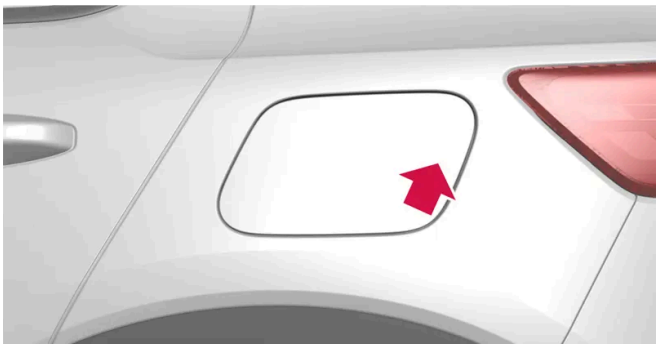
Location of charging input socket

Charging via charging station (mode 3) [1]

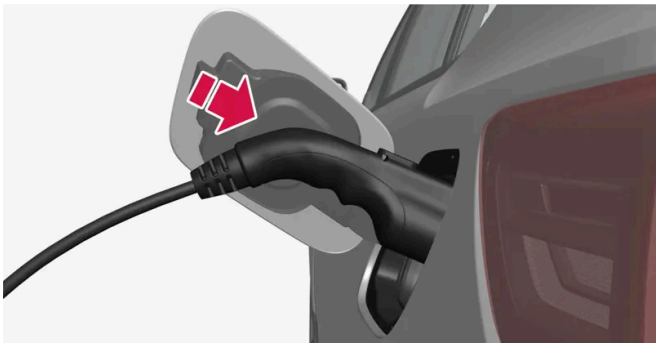
1. Detach the charging cable from the charging station's storage socket or take out the charging cable. Note that the car must be switched off prior to charging.
2. Plug the charging cable into the charging station. If the charging station has a permanent charging cable, skip to step 3.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

> **Important**
>
> Avoid plugging in the charging cable when there is a risk of a thunderstorm or lightning strikes.

3 

Press in the rear section of the cover to open the charging hatch [2].

4 

Remove the charging handle's protective cover and press the charging handle the whole way into the charging input socket.

> **Important**
>
> To avoid damage to the paint, e.g. in the event of high winds, position the charging handle's protective cover so that it does not touch the car.

5 The charging cable's charging handle is fastened/locked in, and charging starts within 5 seconds.

> When charging has started, the LED lamp in the charging input socket flashes green.

The driver display and the centre display show the remaining estimated charging time or whether charging is not working as intended.

Condensation from the air conditioning may drip under the car during charging. This takes place due to cooling the high voltage battery.

Warning

- Children should be supervised when in the vicinity of the charging cable when it is plugged in.
- High voltage in the charging cable. Contact with high voltage can cause death or serious personal injury.
- Do not use the charging cable if it is damaged in any way. A damaged or inoperative charging cable must only be repaired by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
- Always position the charging cable so that it will not be driven over, stepped on, tripped over or damaged in some other way, or cause personal injury.
- Do not use one or more adapters between the charging cable and the electrical socket.
- Do not connect one or more adapters of any type between charging cable and car.

Also, refer to the manufacturer's instructions for using the charging cable and its components.

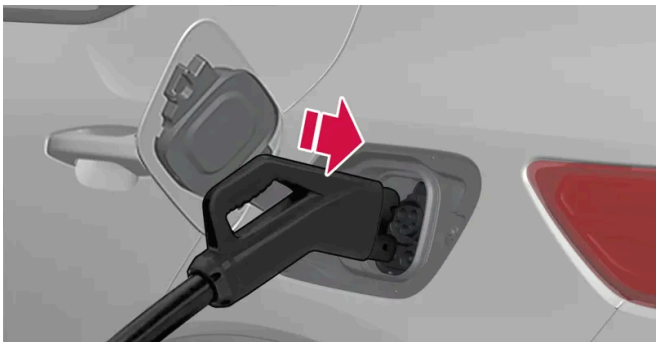
Important

Do not wash the car when the charging cable is connected or when the charging hatch is open.

Fast charging (direct current)

1 Detach the charging cable from the charging station's storage socket. Note that the car must be switched off prior to charging.

2 Open the charging hatch and remove the protective cover for the charging input socket.

3 

Grasp the charging cable with both hands and press the charging cable all the way into the car's charging input socket. Hold the charging handle upwards for several seconds. The charging cable is automatically locked into the charging input socket after a couple of seconds. Ensure that the charging cable is properly locked so that charging can start.

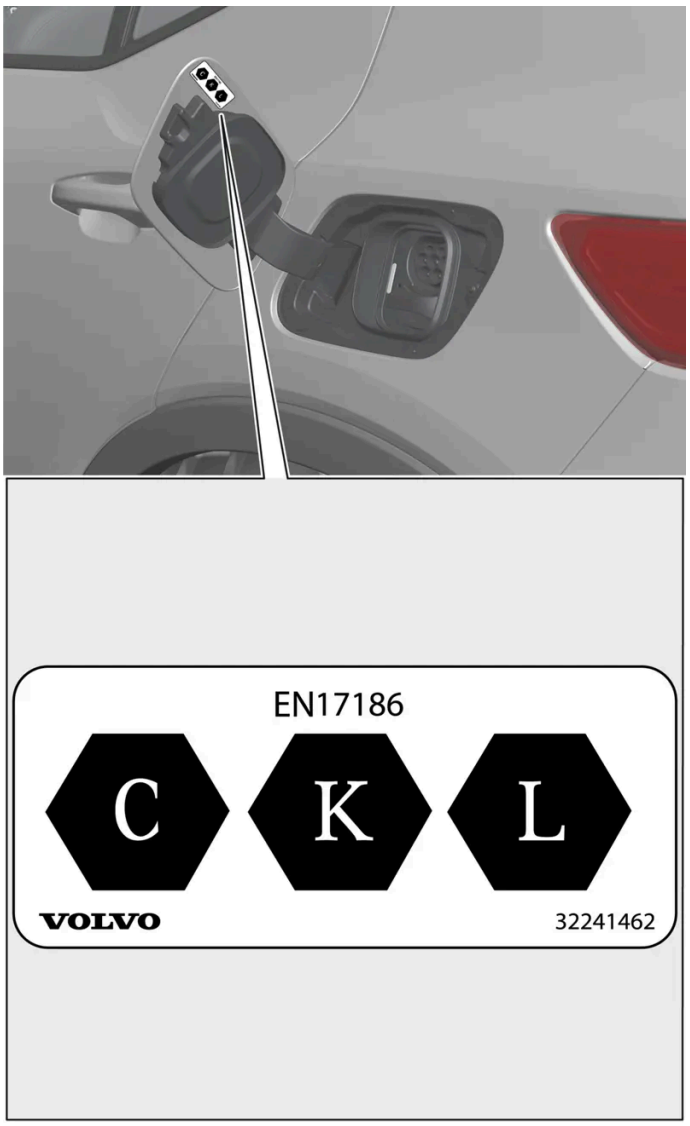
4 Follow the instructions in the charging station's interface to authorise the charging. Charging begins when the charging station has executed an isolation test. This can take around one minute.

> When charging has started, the LED lamp in the charging input socket flashes with a green glow. The driver display and the centre display show the remaining estimated charging time or whether charging is not working as intended.

Note

Charging stations with support for CCS are normally clearly marked CCS or Combo.

Decal on the inside of the charging flap



Identifiers that comply with CEN standard EN 17186 can be found on the inside of the charging flap.

- C: Type 2 charging with alternating current (AC)
- K and L: charging with direct (DC), including Combined Charging System (CCS)

[1] Refers to charging with a mode-3 charging cable, or a charging station with a permanent charging cable.

[2] The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on model.

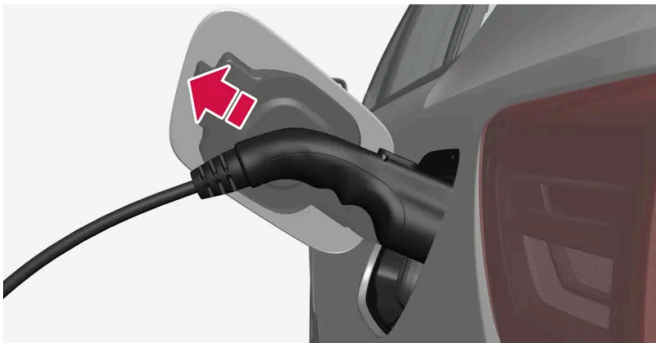
12.9.1.9. Ending charging of an electric car

End charging at any time by pressing the button next to the charging input socket or via the button in the centre display.

Ending charging (alternating current) [1]

1 Press the button next to the charging input socket, or via the button in the centre display – the charging cable's locked handle releases/is unlocked.

> **Important**
>
> Charging must be ended before unplugging the charging cable from the car's charging input socket. If charging is not ended before the charging cable is disconnected, this may lead to damage to the charging cable or to the system.

2 

Unplug the charging cable from the car's charging input socket and close the hatch.

3 Unplug the charging cable from the charging station, or plug the permanent charging cable into the charging station's storage socket.

The charging cable is locked automatically

If the charging cable is not unplugged from the charging input socket, it is automatically locked in again shortly after unlocking in order to maximise the charging. The charging cable can be unplugged again using the button next to the charging input socket or via the button in the centre display.

Ending fast charging (direct current)

> **Important**
>
> Never try to unplug the charging cable from the car while charging is in progress. Always end charging first by pressing the button next to the charging input socket or via the button in the centre display. Then disconnect the charging cable when the lock in the car's charging input socket has been automatically unlocked.

1. End fast charging by pressing the button next to the car's charging input socket, via the button in the centre display, or via the charging station's user interface.

> Charging is ended and the lock in the charging input socket is unlocked automatically. This may take a couple of seconds.

2. Unplug the charging cable from the car's charging input socket and close the hatch.
3. Connect the charging cable to the charging station's storage socket or hang it back in the designated location.

Unlocking the car during fast charging

Fast charging will not normally be interrupted if the car is unlocked. If fast charging is interrupted, it is not resumed automatically as the charging station requires charging to be reauthorised via the user interface. The charging cable will not lock automatically into place if fast charging is interrupted. To restart interrupted fast charging, unplug the charging cable from the car's charging input socket, plug it in again and follow the instructions in the charging station's user interface.

In the event of problems releasing the charging handle

If the charging handle does not release, the following steps can be taken.

1. Make sure that the key is within range and that the car is unlocked. End charging.
2. End the charging from the charging station or wall socket and try Step 1 again.
   a. Charging via charging station: contact the customer service of the charging station for help to end charging.
   b. Charging via own charging station: disconnect the power supply to the charging station in a safe manner.
   c. Charging via wall socket: disconnect the power supply to the wall socket in a safe manner.
3. Wiggle the charging handle and try Step 1 again.
4. Lock and unlock the car. Then try Step 1 again.
5. Lock the car and wait until the LED lamp at the car's charging input socket extinguishes. This can take up to 7 minutes. Then unlock the car and try Step 1 again.

If the problem persists, contact your Volvo dealer.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

[1] Refers to charging with a mode-3 charging cable, or a charging station with a permanent charging cable.

12.9.1.10. Charging time

The following charging times are approximate and apply when air conditioning or any other consumer is not affecting charging. Charging time may also vary depending on battery size. If charging time seems long, it should be investigated.

Charging time (alternating current)

Single-phase charging[1]		
Current (A)[2]	Charging power (kW)[3]	Charging time (hours)[4]
6	1,3	72
10	2.2	40
16	3,6	24
32	7.2	12
48	11	8

Three-phase charging		
Current (A)	Charging power (kW)[3]	Charging time (hours)
6	4	22
10	6.8	14
16	11	8

Charging time when fast charging (direct current)

Charging power (kW)[5]	Charging time[6] (minutes)
50	65
150	35

> **Note**
>
> To reduce the charging time for fast charging in cold weather, the battery needs to be preconditioned, which is done by adding a fast charging station as a destination in Google Maps.

Note

- It may take longer to charge the high voltage battery in cold or hot weather. Part of the charging current is then used to heat/cool the high voltage battery.
- If preconditioning is selected, the charging time may be affected.
- Fast charging at up to 150 kW power output is possible in good conditions for high voltage battery and charging station. The charging power is limited towards the end of fast charging.

[1] **Applies to charging using a 200-240 V socket.**

[2] Maximum charging current may vary depending on market.

[3] The maximum charging power that the car can achieve is 11 kW.

[4] From 0–100%

[5] Maximum power that the charging station can supply.

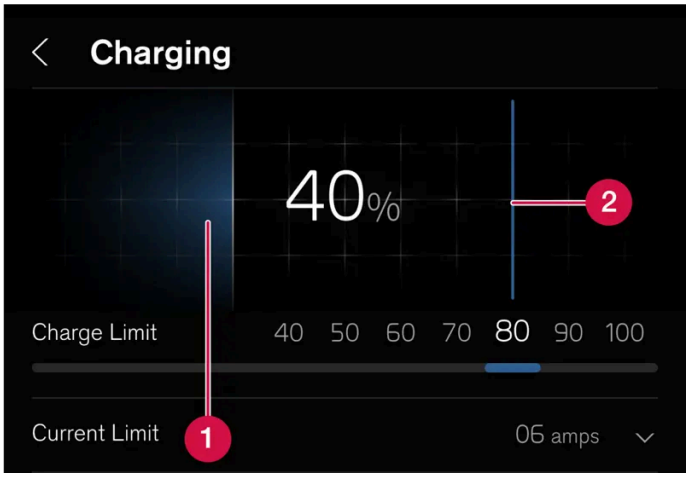
[6] Applies at 10–80% state of charge (SoC) provided that the temperature of the battery is approximately 35°C (95°F).

12.9.2. Charging in the car's centre display

From the centre display it is possible to set the state of charge (SoC), unlock the charging cable and set amperage.

To access the charging view in the car's centre display, tap on ⚙ and then on **Charging**. When charging is started, the view for charging is also activated in the car's centre display.

Setting the state of charge (SoC)



1. The battery's current charge status.
2. Swipe to set the preferred state of charge (SoC). The state of charge (SoC) remains unchanged until next time, unless it is changed in the centre display.

Schedule charging

When charging with alternating current, it is possible to schedule charging and set start and stop times for when charging should take place. Tap on **Set timer** to schedule charging.

Unlocking the charging cable

Tap on **Unlock cable** in the centre display to unlock the charging cable and end the charging in progress.

Setting the amperage

When charging with alternating current[1], it is possible to limit the maximum amperage the car can be charged with. Tap on + to increase the amperage or - to reduce the amperage[2].

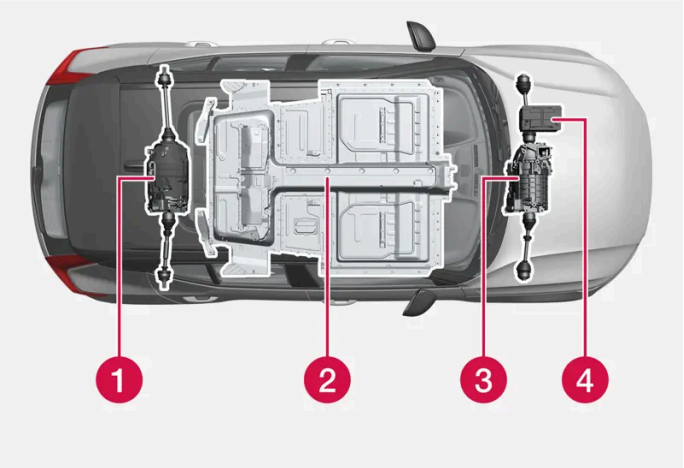
> **Note**
>
> The amperage may be limited by the charging station or charging cable. There is no guarantee that the car can be charged with the specified amperage if it is higher than permitted by the charging station or charging cable.

[1] Refers to charging via charging station (mode 3) and charging via wall socket (mode 2).

[2] The set amperage applies per phase from the alternating current source.

12.9.3. Drive systems

The car's electric motor drives the car.



1. Electric motor[1] – The car contains two electric motors that drive the car and recover brake energy to create electrical energy.
2. High voltage battery – The car contains a high voltage battery. The function of the high voltage battery is to store energy. This receives energy by charging from the mains power circuit and by means of regenerative braking.
3. Electric motor – The car's electric motor drives the car and recycles brake energy to electrical energy.

4 12 V battery – The car contains a 12 V battery that starts up the car's electrical systems and powers the electrical equipment in the car.

[1] Applies to cars with two electric motors.

12.9.4. General information on charging

An electrically powered car is driven in the same way as a car with internal combustion engine, but certain functions differ. The car is equipped with a rechargeable high voltage battery [1].

Different types of charging

The time it takes for the high voltage battery to be charged depends on the charging power that is used. The 12 V battery is also charged when the car is charged.

Charging via a wall socket (AC charging)

The car can be charged via a normal wall socket. This type of charging is suitable as an additional charging for an electric car but is not recommended for regular charging.

Charging via a charging station (AC charging)

The charging station can either be equipped with a permanent charging cable or with a socket where a mode 3 charging cable can be connected. This type of charging is recommended for regular charging.

Fast charging via a charging station (DC charging)

The car supports fast charging with direct current via charging stations that support the CCS (Combined Charging System) standard. A higher charging power can normally be achieved by charging with direct current, and the charging time can therefore be reduced. Highest charging power is normally reached when the battery's state of charge is 0–30%. After that, the charging power gradually decreases.

Effect of temperature

The high voltage battery with associated electrical drive systems will work better at the correct operating temperature.

High voltage battery performance may be reduced if the temperature in the battery is too low or high.

> ! **Important**
>
> The performance of the high voltage battery may be reduced if the car is left for any length of time in environments where the temperature is below –10 °C (14 °F) or above 40 °C (104 °F). Avoid the battery becoming too hot or too cold by connecting the car to a charger.

Important to know

Note

The capacity of the high voltage battery is reduced slightly with age and use.

Warning

Charging the car can affect the function of an implanted pacemaker or other medical equipment. People with an implanted pacemaker are recommended to consult a doctor before starting charging.

Warning

Replacing the high voltage battery must only be performed by a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Exterior engine noise

Warning

Remember that the car does not emit any engine noise when it is only powered by an electric motor and may therefore be difficult to notice by children, pedestrians, cyclists and animals. This is especially true at low speeds, such as in car parks.

High-voltage current

Warning

Several components in the car work with high-voltage current that could be dangerous in the event of incorrect intervention. These components, and all orange-coloured cables, must only be handled by qualified personnel.

Do not touch anything that is not clearly described in the owner's manual.

[1] Of the lithium-ion type.

12.9.5. Problems unplugging the charging cable

In the event of problems with a key, charging can be ended using the detachable key blade.

Manual release of the charging cable for a key that does not respond

1. Unlock the car using the key blade. Read carefully through the article on how to lock and unlock the car using the detachable key blade and follow the instructions for how to unlock the car.
2. When the door is opened after unlocking the car using the key blade, the alarm is triggered. Read carefully through the article on how to arm and disarm the alarm and follow the instructions for how to disarm the alarm.
3. Press **Unlock cable** in the centre display.

> Unplug the charging cable. In the event of problems, repeat steps **2** to **3**.

12.9.6. Symbols and messages relating to electric drive in the driver display

If a fault should occur for the car's electric drive, a symbol and a message are shown in the driver display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Specification
	Fault in the 12V battery. Read the message in the driver display. Contact a workshop [1].
	Fault in the drive system. Read the message in the driver display. Contact a workshop [1].
	Temporary limitation of performance. Read the message in the driver display.
	Information regarding the high voltage battery's battery level Read the message in the driver display.
	Remove the charging cable before starting.

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

12.9.7. Long-term storage of cars with high voltage battery

To minimise the risk of damage to the high voltage battery during long-term storage (longer than 1 month) it is recommended that the state of charge (SoC) is maintained within a certain interval. Check the state of charge (SoC) in the driver display on a regular basis.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Before long-term storage

Recommended state of charge (SoC) for long-term storage is 40-50%.

- If the state of charge is high – drive the car until it reaches the recommended interval.
- If the state of charge is low – charge the car until it reaches the recommended interval.

During long-term storage

Check the state of charge regularly. If it is below 20%, the car must be charged.

If storage is expected to last longer than 3 months it is advisable to have a constant AC charge connected to the car. Choose a maximum state of charge of 40% or 50%. Regularly check that the AC charge is working.

> **Note**
>
> Store the car in a cool place and avoid extreme temperatures during long-term storage in order to minimise the risk of battery damage. Select a storage location indoors or in the shade, depending on where the temperature is lowest, particularly in a hot climate.

12.9.8. Range

The car's range depends on several factors. The ability to achieve a long range varies according to the circumstances and conditions under which the car is being driven.

The certified value for the car's mileage should not be interpreted as an expected range. The certified value should primarily be used to compare different cars and is obtained during special test cycles.

> **Note**
>
> The Driving Journal calculates the electric consumption based on actual consumption during a journey. If you see a different value in your car's trip meter, it is because it also takes electric regeneration into account.

Range in the driver display

When the car is delivered from the factory, the range is based on the certified value. When the car has been driven for a while, the range is based on historical driving patterns.

The amount of history used depends on the battery's state of charge. Therefore, the less charge there is in the battery, the faster the range adapts to a changed driving pattern.

Short range

The estimated range of the car is shorter when the battery's state of charge (SoC) decreases. The driver display shows a number of symbols and messages as the range becomes shorter.

Symbol	Message/meaning
	When the range of the car falls to 50 km, the battery symbol next to the battery gauge changes colour to orange and the message **Low rangeDo you want to find a charging station?** is shown in the driver display. The message is not shown if a destination is set in the navigation system.
	When the range of the car falls to 20 km, the battery symbol next to the battery gauge changes colour to red and the message **Low rangeDo you want to find a charging station?** is shown in the driver display.
	When the battery level is low, an orange tortoise is shown in the upper part of the driver display.
	The message **Reduced power due to low battery charge** is shown together with an orange battery symbol. If the tortoise was not shown earlier, it will be visible in the driver display in connection with this message being shown.
	The message **Empty battery. Charge battery.** is shown together with an empty battery symbol.

Factors that affect the range

In addition to historical trip data, there are several different factors that affect the range. The longest range is achieved under extremely favourable conditions when all factors have a positive impact.

Examples of factors that affect the range:

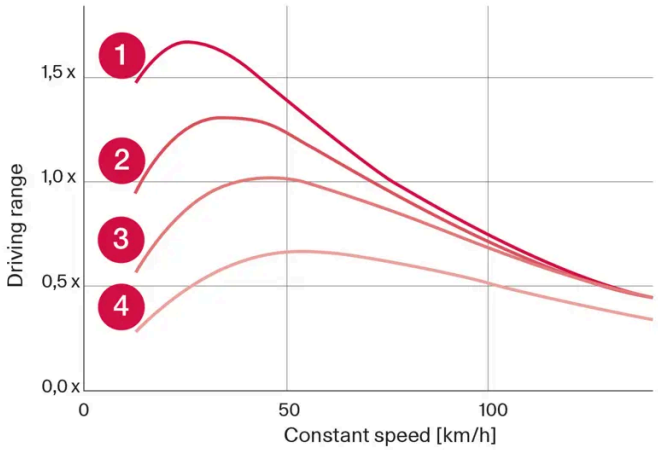
- speed
- climate settings
- topography
- preconditioning
- tyres and tyre pressure
- traffic situation
- temperature and weather
- road conditions.

Range in cold temperatures

In cold ambient temperatures there is a risk that the battery will become too cold, which has a negative effect on the range. This symbol is shown in the driver display if the battery temperature falls to a critically low level. If the car is parked in cold ambient temperatures there is a risk that the range will be reduced dramatically. To avoid substantially reduced range after parking in cold ambient temperatures, the car should be charged while it is parked.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Range based on speed and outside temperature



1 20 °C (68 °F) outside temperature and passenger compartment climate Off.

2 20 °C (68 °F) outside temperature and passenger compartment climate On.

3 35 °C (95 °F) outside temperature and passenger compartment climate On.

4 -10 °C (14 °F) outside temperature and passenger compartment climate On.

The diagram shows the approximate relationship between constant speed and range.

The graph shows that a lower speed gives a longer range. The outside temperature also affects the range, so that very cold or very hot ambient temperatures result in a shorter range.

Lines 1 and 2 show the approximate difference in range affected by the climate functions. Turning off the climate control is more beneficial for range.

12.9.9. Range assistant

The range assistant provides the driver with overview information and assistance in order to facilitate more economical driving.

Factors that the driver can primarily influence in order to extend the range include speed, driving style, and climate settings. Each factor has a meter that indicates current energy usage. When the gauge changes colour from blue to orange the driver should review his/her energy usage in order to adopt more economical driving behaviour.

Speed: The car's average speed during the last minute.

Driving style: The acceleration and braking behaviour during the last few minutes.

Climate control: The estimated average consumption based on the current climatization settings.

Next to the estimated range, there are two numbers that indicate expected short and long range based on high and low consumption, respectively. These values are defined as:

Long range: Assumes typical city driving with climate system off.

Short range: Assumes motorway driving at high speed with the climate system on.

Consumption is shown in kWh/100 km when the vehicle is in motion and as kW (kWh/h) when stationary. The value is instantaneous and will therefore indicate high values during accelerations and up hills.

Optimising range

The range optimisation function adjusts the climate settings in order to save energy and therefore extend the range of the car.

Activate or deactivate range optimisation via the centre display

1. Press ⊞.
2. Select **Range assistant**.
3. Activating or deactivating range optimisation.

> **Note**
>
> Range optimisation is automatically deactivated at 50% or higher State of Charge (SoC).

> **Note**
>
> In cold ambient temperatures, the output of the heater is reduced. If the climate feels too cold, deactivate range optimisation.
>
> In hot ambient temperatures, cooling is limited. If the climate feels too hot, deactivate range optimisation.
>
> Problems with misting may occur since the AC function that adjusts humidity is limited.
>
> Since the AC function is limited, air recirculation increases, which may lead to a less comfortable feeling of air quality, especially in the rear seat.

12.9.10. Recycling the batteries

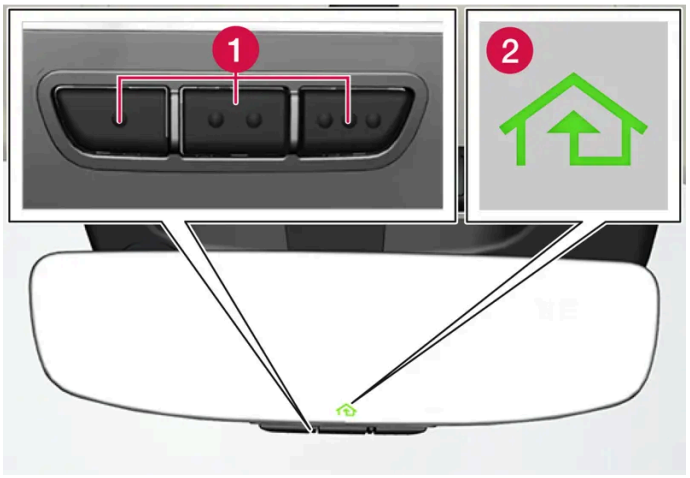
Used batteries must be recycled in an environmentally sound manner.

Consult a workshop in the event of uncertainty about how this type of waste should be discarded - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. The high voltage battery must only be handled by authorised workshop personnel.

12.10. HomeLink

12.10.1. HomeLink® * [1]

HomeLink® [2] is a programmable remote control integrated into the car's electrical system.
It can control up to three different devices remotely, e.g. a garage door opener or alarm system, and hence replace the remote controls for these.



The figure is schematic - the version may vary.

1 Programmable buttons

2 Indicator lamp

HomeLink® is built into the interior rearview mirror and consists of three programmable buttons and one indicator lamp in the mirror glass.

> **Note**
>
> Save the original remote controls for future reprogramming (e.g. when changing to another car or for use in another vehicle).
>
> It is also recommended that the programming for the buttons should be deleted when the car is sold.

More information

Visit homelink.com or call 00 8000 466 354 65 (or premium charge number +49 6838 907 277)[3].

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

[2] HomeLink and the HomeLink house symbol are registered trademarks of Gentex Corporation.

[3] Note that the toll-free number may not be available depending on operator.

12.10.2. Using HomeLink® * [1]

When HomeLink® is fully programmed it can be used in place of the separate original remote controls.

Depress the programmed button. The garage door, gate, alarm system or similar is activated (may take a few seconds). If the button is depressed for more than 20 seconds then the reprogramming is started. The indicator lamp illuminates or flashes when the button has been depressed. Naturally the original remote controls can still be used in parallel with HomeLink® if required.

> **Note**
>
> When the ignition has been switched off, HomeLink® works for at least 7 minutes.

> **Note**
>
> HomeLink® cannot be used if the car is locked and the alarm is armed* from the outside.

> **Warning**
>
> - If HomeLink® is used to control a garage door or gate, ensure that nobody is near the door or gate while it is in motion.
> - Do not use HomeLink® for any garage door that does not have safety stop and safety reverse.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

12.10.3. Programming HomeLink® * [1]

Program HomeLink®, reset programming or reprogram individual buttons.

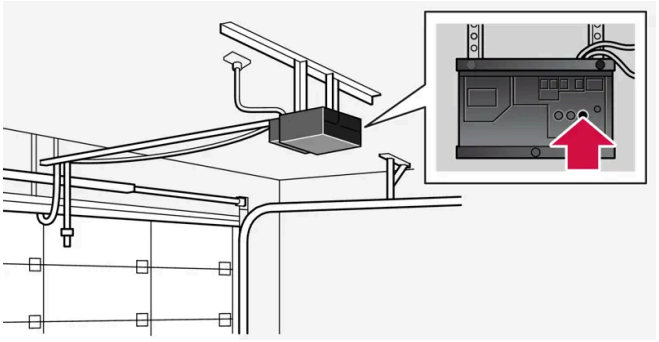
Programming

1 Aim the remote control towards the HomeLink® button to be programmed and hold it approx. 2-8 cm (approx. 1-3 inches) from the button. Do not obstruct the indicator lamp on HomeLink®.

2 Press and hold depressed both the button on the remote control and the button to be reprogrammed on HomeLink®.

3 Do not release the buttons until the indicator lamp has switched from flashing slowly (approx. once per second) to either flashing quickly (approx. 10 times per second) or illuminating with a constant glow.

> **If the indicator lamp illuminates with a constant glow:** Indication that the programming has finished.
Press the programmed button twice to activate.
If the indicator lamp flashes quickly: The device to be programmed to HomeLink® may have a security function that requires extra steps.
Test by pressing the programmed button twice to see whether the programming is working. Otherwise, continue with the following steps.

4 

Locate programming button [2] on the receiver for the garage door or similar. It is normally located close to the antenna's bracket on the receiver.

5 Depress and release the receiver's programming button once.

The programming must be completed within 30 seconds of the button being depressed.

6 Press and release the button on HomeLink® that you want to program. Repeat the sequence of pressing/holding/releasing a second time and, depending on the receiver model, even a third time.

> Programming is finished.

Note

The ability of some remote controls to program HomeLink® is improved at a distance of approx. 15–20 cm (approx. 6–12 inches).

Reprogramming individual buttons

1 Press the desired button and hold it depressed for approx. 20 seconds.

2 Once the indicator lamp on HomeLink® starts to flash slowly, programming can continue as normal.

> **Note**
>
> If the button to be reprogrammed is not programmed with a new unit, it will resume the previously saved programming.

Resetting the HomeLink® buttons

It is only possible to reset all HomeLink® buttons at the same time. Individual buttons can only be reprogrammed.

1 Press and hold depressed the outer buttons on HomeLink® for approx. 10 seconds.

> When the indicator lamp changes over from a constant glow to starting to flash, the buttons are reset and ready to be reprogrammed.

Problems with programming

Visit homelink.com or call 00 8000 466 354 65 (or premium charge number +49 6838 907 277) [3].

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

[2] Button designation and colour varies between manufacturers.

[3] Note that the toll-free number may not be available depending on operator.

12.10.4. Type approval for HomeLink® * [1]

The type approval for HomeLink® can be read below.

Country/Area	Type approval
USA and Canada	This device complies with FCC rules part 15 and Industry Canada RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Country/Area	Type approval
Europe	Gentex Corporation hereby declares that HomeLink® Model UAHL5 complies with the Radio equipment directive 2014/53/EU. Wavelength within which the radio equipment functions: • 433.05MHz-434.79MHz <10mW E.R.P. • 868.00MHz-868.60MHz <25mW E.R.P. • 868.70MHz-868.20MHz <25mW E.R.P. • 869.40MHz-869.65MHz <25mW E.R.P. • 869.70MHz-870.00MHz <25mW E.R.P. Certificate holder address: Gentex Corporation, 600 North Centennial Street, Zeeland MI 49464, USA

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

12.11. Towing and recovery

12.11.1. Towing

It is only possible to tow the car on a recovery vehicle's platform.

To make it possible to tow the car, it needs to be set to towing mode. This is set via the centre display.

> **Important**
>
> Towing should only take place in active towing mode. If the mode is not active, the car may start charging and then there is a great risk that the car's systems will be damaged.

> **Important**
>
> It is only permitted to tow the car up onto a flatbed. It is not permitted to tow the car with its wheels rolling on the ground.

Towing types

The type of towing must be selected when activating towing mode.

Towing using a recovery vehicle

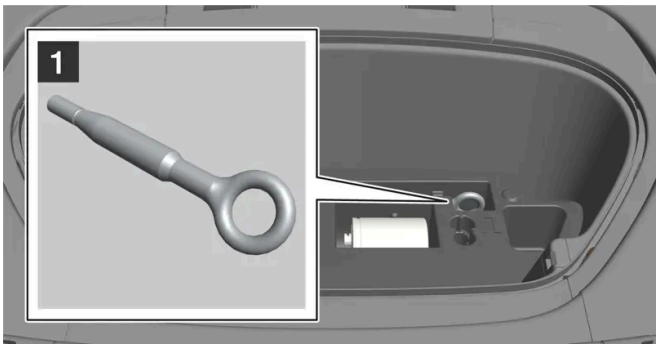
The car is towed up onto a recovery vehicle, which then recovers the car with none of its wheels rotating.

12.11.2. Fitting and removing the towing eye

Use the towing eye for towing. The towing eye is screwed into a threaded socket behind a cover on the right-hand side of the bumper, front or rear.

Fitting the towing eye

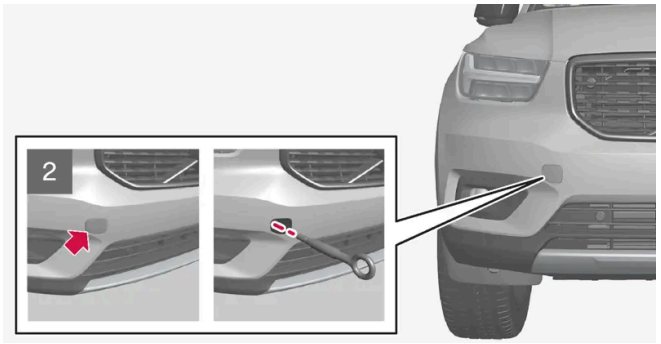
1

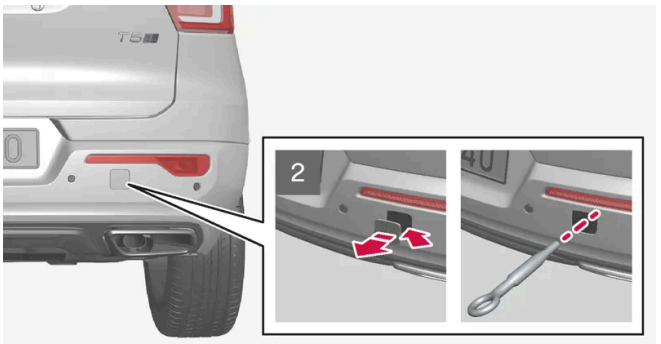


1

Take out the towing eye from the foam block under the bonnet.

2





2

Front: Remove the cover – press the lid. The cover pivots around its centre line and can then be removed.

Rear: Remove the cover – Use a coin, key or similar to pry the lid out using the marking. Fold out the cover completely and detach.

3 Screw in the towing eye until it reaches its end stop.

Screw the eye in firmly. For example, thread through the wheel bolt wrench* and use it as a lever.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

> **Important**
>
> It is important that the towing eye is firmly screwed into place - right in until it stops.

Removing the towing eye

1 Unscrew and remove the towing eye after use and return it to its foam block.

Finish by refitting the cover onto the bumper.

* Option/accessory.

12.11.3. Activating and deactivating towing mode

Towing mode is used when the car has to roll freely in order to pull it up onto a recovery vehicle's platform, for example.

Activating towing mode

1 Press ⊞ in the centre display.

2 Press **Car status**.

3 Select **Service**.

4 Press **Activate Tow Mode**.

5 Follow the instructions in the screen.

> The car is now in towing mode and rolls freely.

> **Important**
>
> It is only permitted to tow the car up onto a flatbed. It is not permitted to tow the car with its wheels rolling on the ground.

Deactivating towing mode

1. Make sure that the car is stationary.
2. Activate the parking brake.

> Towing mode is now terminated.

12.11.4. Recovery

For recovery, the car is taken away with the help of another vehicle.

Call a recovery service for recovery.

During recovery, the car may be towed up onto a recovery vehicle's platform if the car is set to towing mode. Alternatively, the car can be lifted directly up onto the recovery vehicle's platform.

> **Important**
>
> Note that the car must always be transported raised up with all the wheels on the recovery vehicle's platform.

> **Warning**
>
> No one/nothing is allowed to remain behind the recovery vehicle while the car pulled up onto the flatbed platform.

12.11.5. Safety mode

Safety mode is a protective state that is triggered when a collision may have damaged any of the car's vital functions, such as the high voltage system, sensors for any of the safety systems, or the brake system.

If the car has been in a collision, the message **Safety mode See Owner's manual** may be shown on the driver display with a warning symbol as long as the display is not damaged and the car's electrical system is still in working order. This message means that the car has reduced functionality.

If the car is in safety mode, it is possible to attempt to reset the system in order to start and move the car for a short distance, if in a dangerous traffic situation for example.

Warning

Never attempt to repair your car or reset the electronics yourself if the car has been in safety mode. This could result in personal injury or the car not functioning as normal. Volvo recommends engaging an authorised Volvo workshop to check and restore the car to normal status after **Safety mode See Owner's manual** has been shown.

Warning

If the car is in safety mode it must not be towed. It must be transported from its location. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.

12.11.6. Starting and moving the car after safety mode

If the car is in safety mode, it is possible to attempt to reset the system in order to start and move the car for a short distance, if in a dangerous traffic situation for example.

Reset and start the car after safety mode

1. Check the general damage situation of the car.

   If there is only minor damage, starting can be attempted.

2. Switch off the car manually.
3. Then try to start the car.

> The car's electronics carry out a systems check and then try to resume normal status. The driver display shows the message **Car start System check, wait** during this time. This can take up to one minute.

4. Then try to start the car again when the message **Car start System check, wait** is no longer shown in the driver's display.

Important

If the message **Safety mode See Owner's manual** is still shown on the display the car must not be driven or towed but a vehicle recovery service must then be used instead. Even if the car appears to be driveable, hidden damage may make the car impossible to control once moving.

Moving the car after safety mode

1. If the driver display shows the message **The car is now in normal mode** after a start attempt, the car can be carefully moved if standing in a dangerous position.

2 Do not move the car further than necessary.

> **Warning**
>
> If the car is in safety mode it must not be towed. It must be transported from its location. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.

12.12. Operational disruption

If you experience an operational disruption or deviation from the car's normal function then it may be due to a fault or the specific circumstances of the situation.

Some functions have limitations in particular situations and require that certain conditions are fulfilled in order to work. The driver display and centre display may show messages in order to inform about such a situation.

Find out more about fault-tracing and the limitations of various functions in related articles below.

If the car is not drivable

Activate the hazard warning flashers if the car has broken down or been forced to stop unexpectedly in a trafficked environment. Think about safety. If possible, move the car out of danger from traffic. Put on a reflective vest and then position the warning triangle so that other road users are warned in good time. Call roadside assistance if the cause cannot be remedied at your location.

12.13. Traffic accident

If your car is involved in a traffic accident, activate the hazard warning flashers and move the car into a safer position if possible.

Call the emergency services or roadside assistance as necessary.

Depending on the car's equipment, the car itself can detect an accident and contact the nearest emergency call centre. If the car does not have Volvo Assistance*, there is a European legal requirement, Pan-European eCall, that provides access to an automatic collision alarm and urgent assistance in emergency situations[1].

- Think about safety when exiting the car!
- Use a reflective vest and position the warning triangle so that other road users are warned.

If you collide with a wild animal

Be careful, injured animals can feel trapped and then defend themselves.

Call the police to get help with humane killing if the animal is seriously injured, or move a dead animal away from the road so that it is not a danger to other road users.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

---

13. Sound, media and Internet

13.1. Radio

13.1.1. Radio*

It is possible to listen to both FM and DAB channels.

The radio can be operated via the centre display, the steering wheel keypad or voice control.

More radio apps can be downloaded from Google Play.

Linking between DAB and FM

The function makes it possible to change from an FM or DAB channel with poor or no reception to the same channel in another channel group (ensemble) with better reception, within DAB and/or between DAB and FM. DAB to DAB, DAB to FM and FM to DAB are all supported. Linking can be activated under Settings in the radio app.

Sorting

When DAB/FM linking is activated, the channel list only contains channels with good reception, and duplicates with poorer reception are removed, irrespective of whether it is an FM or DAB broadcast. When DAB/FM linking is not activated, DAB and FM channels are located in their own tabs.

Quick commands

When the app is used, it can also be controlled via quick commands in the home view.

Radio messages [1]

Different types of radio messages, e.g. traffic news and societally important information, can be set under settings in the radio app.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

13.1.2. Start radio*

The radio app can be started via the centre display or with voice control.

Starting from the centre display

1

Start the radio app from the home view[1] or app view ⊞.

2 Select the desired radio channel from the list of available radio channels, or from your favourites.

Starting with voice control

It is also possible to start FM radio using voice control by stating a frequency[2].

* Option/accessory.

[1] The app can be accessed from the home view if it is one of the last apps used.

[2] When using voice control, only FM frequencies can be stated, not names of radio channels.

13.1.3. RDS radio*

RDS (Radio Data System) means that the radio automatically changes to the strongest transmitter. RDS provides the ability to receive e.g. traffic information and to search for certain programme types.

RDS links FM transmitters into a network. An FM transmitter in such a network sends information that gives an RDS radio the following functions:

- Switch automatically to a stronger transmitter if reception in the area is poor.
- Search for programme category, e.g. programme types or traffic information.
- Receive text information on current radio programme.

> ⓘ **Note**
>
> Some radio stations do not use RDS or only selected parts of its functionality.

When broadcasting news or traffic messages, the radio can switch stations, interrupting the audio source currently in use. The radio returns to the previous audio source and volume when the set programme type is no longer broadcast.

* Option/accessory.

13.1.4. Setting radio favourites*

It is possible to add a radio channel to the list of radio favourites that are shown as a separate tab in the radio app.

Radio Favourites

To save radio channels to your list of favourites, proceed as follows:

1 Open the radio app from the home view or app view.

2 Tap on the star ☆ next to the radio channel that you want to add to your list of radio favourites. The star is then filled in blue to confirm the selection.

> The radio channel is added to your list of favourites.

DAB channels sort into alphabetical order from the top, followed by the FM channels sorted by frequency.

To delete a radio channel from your list of favourites, tap on the star again. The blue fill disappears to confirm that the radio channel has been deleted from the list of favourites.

It is also possible to select and deselect favourites via the Now playing view which is accessed by expanding the Now playing field to full screen mode.

* Option/accessory.

13.2. Media player

13.2.1. Bluetooth Media Player

If a phone or other device is connected to the car via Bluetooth, media from the devices can be played back in the Bluetooth Media Player.

Start the Bluetooth Media Player app from the home view or the app view ⊞. When the app is used, it can also be controlled via quick commands in the home view.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

> **Note**
>
> In order to stream media from a phone via Bluetooth, you must first start the Bluetooth Media Player.

Other third party apps for media playback can also be downloaded to the car.

Starting the Bluetooth Media Player via voice control

You can also control the media player using voice control.

13.3. Phone

13.3.1. Phone connection

13.3.1.1. Connecting a phone to the car

Connect a phone to the car with Bluetooth to make calls, send and receive messages, and play back media.

Search phone from car

1. Activate Bluetooth in the phone and check in the settings that the phone is visible to other devices.
2. Go to settings at the bottom of the centre display and then tap on **Connectivity** and **Bluetooth**. If the phone is not already listed[1], select **Pair new device**.

> Available Bluetooth devices are listed. The list is updated as new devices are detected.

3. Tap on the name of the phone to be connected.
4. Check that the numerical code shown in the car matches the code in the phone and, if so, confirm.
5. On the phone, choose to accept or reject any options for phone contacts and messages.

> The phone is connected for both media and telephony as standard[2].

6. Press **Done**.

Note

- The message function must be activated in certain phones.
- If contacts and messages are not shown in the car despite activation of the function, disconnect the phone and then reconnect it.
- Not all phones are fully compatible and may therefore not show contacts and messages in the car.

Note

If the phone's operating system is updated then the connection may be broken. In which case, delete the phone from the car and then connect again.

[1] The phones previously connected are directly visible under Bluetooth and can then be selected from there.

[2] Later, it will be possible to choose which device should be used for telephony and/or media, such as if a passenger wants to use his/her phone as media device to play back music.

13.3.1.2. Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone

It is possible to disconnect a phone connected to Bluetooth, and it will then no longer be connected to the car.

- When the phone is out of range of the car it is automatically disconnected. If disconnection occurs during an active call, then the call will be continued on the phone.
- It is also possible to disconnect the phone by manually deactivating Bluetooth.

Disconnecting via the centre display

1 Tap on settings at the bottom of the display.

2 Press **Connectivity**.

3 Under **Bluetooth**, tap on the row with the phone's name to disconnect both telephony and media.

> The phone is no longer connected to the car.

It is also possible to select whether the phone should be connected as only phone or media device by tapping on the respective icon.

13.3.1.3. Switch between Bluetooth-connected phones

It is possible to switch between a number of Bluetooth-connected phones.

1. Tap on settings at the bottom of the display.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Under **Bluetooth**, tap on the name of the phone to be connected.
4. Select whether it should be used for both telephony and media.

13.3.1.4. Removing devices connected to Bluetooth

It is possible to remove phones from the list of registered Bluetooth devices, for example.

1. Tap on settings at the bottom of the display.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Under **Bluetooth**, tap on the arrow after the phone's name.
4. Press **Forget device**.

> The phone is no longer registered to the car.

13.3.2. Apple CarPlay

13.3.2.1. Apple®CarPlay®*

CarPlay[1] gives you the option to listen to music, make phone calls, get directions, send/receive messages and use Siri®, all while you stay focused on your driving.

CarPlay works with selected iPhone®[2] models. If the car does not already have support for CarPlay then it is possible to install it afterwards. Contact a Volvo dealer to install CarPlay.

Information about which apps are supported and which iPhone models are compatible is available on Apple's website: www.apple.com/ios/carplay/ [https://www.apple.com/ios/carplay/] . Please note that Volvo does not accept responsibility for the content of CarPlay.

When using map navigation via CarPlay, directions are shown in the driver display. A route description must be active for the map to be displayed.

When navigation is started through Apple CarPlay, ongoing native turn-by-turn route guidance will be ended.

The CarPlay apps can be controlled via the centre display, your iPhone or with the steering wheel's right-hand keypad. The apps can be voice-controlled using Siri. A long press on the steering wheel button starts voice control using Siri and a short press activates the car's own voice control. If Siri breaks off too early, hold the steering wheel button depressed.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

[2] Apple, CarPlay, iPhone and Siri are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.

13.3.2.2. Using Apple® CarPlay® *

To use CarPlay [1], Siri® voice control must be activated in your iPhone® [2]. The device also needs an Internet connection for all functions to work.

Connect an iPhone and start CarPlay

> **Note**
>
> CarPlay can only be used if Bluetooth is deactivated in the car. A phone or media player connected to the car via Bluetooth will therefore not be available when CarPlay is active.

1. Connect an iPhone with support for CarPlay to the USB port with a white frame [3]. If CarPlay has been used from the phone previously then CarPlay is opened automatically.
2. If it is the first time that the phone is connected, read and accept the conditions for connection.

> CarPlay opens and compatible apps are shown.

3. Tap on the desired app.

> The app starts.

CarPlay runs in the background if another app is started. To show CarPlay again – tap on the CarPlay app in the app view.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

[2] Apple, CarPlay, iPhone and Siri are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.

[3] A USB-C to lightning cable is required.

13.3.2.3. Tips for using Apple®CarPlay®*

Here are some useful tips for using CarPlay®[1].

- Update your iPhone®[2] with the latest version of the iOS operating system and ensure that the apps have been updated.
- In the event of a problem with CarPlay, disconnect your iPhone from the USB port and reconnect. Otherwise, try to close the app on the device that is not working and then restart the app, or try closing all apps and restart your device.
- Using Siri® it is possible to write/dictate and read out messages. Messages are read out and dictated in the language selected in the settings for Siri. When you write/dictate messages, no text will be shown in the centre display, but the text is shown in your iPhone.
- If the device is connected to the car via Bluetooth, the connection will be interrupted when CarPlay is used.
- CarPlay only works with iPhone.

> **Note**
>
> Availability and functionality may vary depending on market.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

[2] Apple, CarPlay, iPhone and Siri are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.

13.3.3. Connecting to the Internet via Bluetooth

Create an Internet connection via Bluetooth by tethering your phone.

1. Make sure that your phone supports tethering and that this function is activated.
2. Connect your phone to the car via Bluetooth. Go to settings at the bottom of the centre display and then tap on **Connectivity** and select **Bluetooth**.
3. If the phone has been connected previously, tap on the icon for tethering via Bluetooth for the phone you want to use. Otherwise, first select **Pair new device**.
4. Approve, via the message shown, that connection should take place.

> The car is connected to the Internet.

Note

The telephone and network provider must support tethering (Internet connection sharing), and the subscription must include data.

13.3.4. Phone

A phone with Bluetooth can be connected wirelessly to the car.

When a phone has been connected and linked to the car as a phone device, it can be used make calls, send/receive messages, and play back media wirelessly.

The phone is operated from the centre display, but also partly via voice control.

13.3.5. Managing contacts

When a phone is connected to the car, contacts can be managed directly in the centre display.

When a phone is connected to the car using Bluetooth and is selected as phone device, contacts are shown in the phone app under their own tab.

Before the contacts are shown in the car, sharing of contacts must be accepted in the phone.

Browse through your contacts by swiping up or down.

It is possible to show the phone's favourites in the car.[1]

The contacts are not shown

It may take a while before the contacts are loaded. If they are still not shown after a while, try disconnecting and reconnecting the phone.

Note

Not all phones are fully compatible with the car. In such cases, contacts cannot be displayed in the car.

[1] Some phones cannot synch favourites. In which case, it is possible to manually add favourites in the car.

13.3.6. Managing phone calls

It is possible to make and receive calls when the phone is connected to the car via Bluetooth. The phone must be connected as phone device.

Making a call from the phone app

1. Open the phone app from the home view or app view ⊞.
2. Choose a contact from **Favourites**, **Recents** or **Contacts**. Alternatively, enter a telephone number using the keypad.
3. Tap on the contact to make a call.
4. Tap on ✆ to end the call.

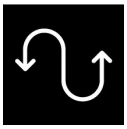
You can also make calls using voice control.

Receiving a call

Incoming phone calls are shown and managed via the centre display.

1. Tap on ✆ or ✆ to answer or decline a phone call.
2. Tap on ✆ to end the call.

Receiving a new call during a current call



If a new call comes in during a current call, the new call can be answered via the centre display. The original call is parked when the new call is answered. Switch between the calls by tapping on the symbols that represent them.

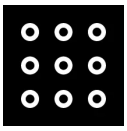
Switching off the microphone

Tap on the microphone symbol to switch off the microphone. The person on the call will not hear what is being said in the car.

Toggling between car and phone speakers

Tap on **CarPhone** to toggle the sound between the speakers in the car and the phone speaker.

Using the keypad during a current call



If the keypad needs to be used during a current call, it can be opened by tapping on its symbol in the centre display. To exit the keypad view and return to call view, tap on the same symbol again.

Missed calls

Missed calls are shown in the home view where it is also possible to call back. Missed calls are also shown in the notification view at the top of the centre display.

13.3.7. Managing text messages

It is possible to receive and send text messages, in the form of SMS, when the phone is connected to the car.

To be able to manage text messages in the car, the phone must be connected via Bluetooth [1] as phone device and the user must have approved in the phone's Bluetooth settings that notifications should be shown.

Sending text messages

You can dictate a new message by asking the voice control system to send a message to a named contact or a phone number.

Receiving text messages

When the phone is connected to the car, a notification is shown at the top of the centre display when a new text message is received. Choose whether to play back the message by tapping on the screen or using voice control.

It is also possible to choose to mute the conversation. In which case, no more notifications for the conversation are shown while driving.

Replying to text messages

When a text message has been read out, it is possible to dictate a reply [2]. Follow the instructions given by the voice control system.

Text messages are not shown

If new text messages are shown on the phone but not in the centre display, try disconnecting and reconnecting the phone.

[1] Text messages can only be managed in the car if the phone is compatible.

[2] Only applies to phones with Android or iOS 13 or later.

13.3.8. Wireless phone charger*

There is a charging plate for wireless phone charging located in the tunnel console.

A condition for being able to charge the phone is that it supports wireless charging (Qi). Phones not equipped with wireless charging receivers can often be supplemented with a shell that makes wireless charging possible.

Warning

Wireless charging may affect the operation of an implanted pacemaker or other medical devices. If you have one, it is recommended to consult with your doctor before using the wireless charging system.

* Option/accessory.

13.3.9. Using the wireless phone charger*

The rubber plate under the centre display makes it possible to charge phones without the need to use the phone's cable.

Activating and deactivating the wireless charger

The wireless charger is activated during factory setting. Sometimes, it can help to deactivate the charger, for example when you want to put your phone on the rubber panel without also charging it. To deactivate and activate it:

1. Go to settings at the bottom of the centre display and then tap on **Controls**.
2. Adjust the controls next to **Wireless phone charger**.

Charging a unit with the wireless charger

Wireless phone charger in front of gear lever

Warning

Wireless charging may affect the operation of an implanted pacemaker or other medical devices. If you have one, it is recommended to consult with your doctor before using the wireless charging system.

1 Check that the charger is activated.

2 Remove all other objects from the charger.

3 Place the unit to be charged in the middle of the charger.

> The unit starts to charge and the symbol is shown at the top of the centre display.

Important

Avoid storing cards or other objects with NFC (Near Field Communication), e.g. bank cards for contactless payment, with the unit to be charged. It can damage these types of objects and interfere with the charging.

Note

- The charging process may vary depending on the type of unit to be charged. For example, the time before charging starts or before the unit is fully charged can vary.
- Units may become hot during charging. This is normal.

If the phone does not charge:

- Check in the centre display that the charger is activated.
- Check that the charging plate is free from other objects.

- Check that the phone supports wireless charging (Qi).
- Remove the case from the phone if one is fitted.
- Lift the phone and position it in the centre of the charging plate once again.
- Check that the car is running.
- Check that your phone has not slid off the charging pad while driving.
- If battery temperature becomes too high during charging, the charging function is deactivated.
- If any of the doors are opened, charging is interrupted for several seconds.

If objects prevent charging on the charging plate, a message is shown in the centre display.

> **Important**
>
> Keep the phone and charging plate free of other objects while charging to avoid overheating.

* Option/accessory.

13.3.10. Certificate for wireless charger

Country/Area	
China:	[illegible]
Mexico:	RCPVAPVO 18-1919 [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/VOLVO_Mexico_57442C.pdf]
Paraguay:	CONATEL NR: 2018-11-1-000541 2018-11-1-000541 [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/Volvo_Paraguay_57442C.pdf]
Taiwan:	[illegible]

Country/Area	
Ukraine:	Ци Діапазон частот: 107 кГц - 115 кГц Максимальна потужність радіосигналу: 5 Вт (сполучена), 63 Вт наномасштабів (випромінюється) Коефіцієнт викидів: N / A Модуляції: 2 кГц NFC Діапазон частот: 13,56 МГц, у межах +/- 0,01% Максимальна вихідна потужність РФ: 10 мВт – виробник: Ел-Джі Електронікс Інк.(LG Electronics Inc) 10, Магок'юнганг 10-ро, Гангсео-гу, Сеул, 07796, Корея Frequency range 111 кГц / Максимальна потужність РЧ: 42 дБмк А / м справжнім Ел-Джі Електронікс Інкзаявляє, що тип радіообладнання WC510MVV20 відповідає Технічному регламенту радіообладнання; повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою:https://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc. імпортер : Віннер Імпортс Україна Вул. Дачна, 5-А, с.Капітанівка, Київська область, 08112, Україна Тел.: +38(044) 585 63 00 Контактна особа : Alla Haidai (ahaidai@winner.ua)
USA/Canada	FCC ID : BEJWC510MVV20 IC : 2703H-WC510MVV20 This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-Gen,RSS-216 rules of Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. Any changed or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment. FCC RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 15cm between the radiator and your body. – IDéclaration d'avertissement ISED Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) Cet appareil ne doit pas provoquerd'interferences nuisibles, et (2) Cet appareil doit accepter toute interference recue, y compris les interferences pouvant entrainerun fonctionnement indesirable. Les changements ou modifications non expressement approuves par LG Vehicle Components Company pourraient annuler l'autorite de l'utilisateura utiliser l'equipement. Déclaration d'exposition aux radiations RF de l'ISED: Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements RF de l'ISED définies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet appareil et son antenne ne doivent pas être situés ou fonctionner conjointement avec une autre antenne ou un autre émetteur. Cet équipement doit être installé pour fonctionner avec une distance minimale de 10cm entre le radiateuret le corps de l'utilisateur final.

13.4. Apps

13.4.1. Apps

The app view provides access to the car's pre-installed and downloaded apps.

Tap on the app view icon ⊞ at the bottom of the centre display to access the app view and start the radio*, navigation system and phone[1], for example.

Some basic apps are always available. More apps such as web radio and music services can be downloaded when the car is connected to the Internet.

Certain apps are only available for use if the car is connected to the Internet.

All the apps used should be updated to the latest version. This gives access to the latest updates and functions.

Apps close down

If an app closes down unexpectedly, try the following:

- open the app again
- check whether an update is available for the app:
  - Open the app view and tap on Google Play. Tap on and select your apps to see if any of them need to be updated. If so, update to the latest version.
- restart the system with a long press (approximately 20 seconds) on the home button
- uninstall and reinstall the app.

* Option/accessory.

[1] The last apps used can always be accessed from the home view.

13.4.2. Downloading apps

New apps can be downloaded and installed when the car is connected to the Internet.

Google Play offers a range of different apps suitable for use in the car.

The car must be stationary in order to download apps, that is, it must be in the Comfort usage mode.

1 Open app view .

2 Press Google Play.

> A Google account must be linked to the current user profile in order for Google Play to open.

3 Search for the app[1] you want, then select it.

4 Press **Install**.

5 Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the installation.

> **Note**
>
> Sometimes the app needs access to different functions such as address book or positioning in order for the app to work as intended. In which case, a prompt to authorise this will be shown.

[1] Only car-adapted apps are available.

13.4.3. Deleting apps

There are different options for uninstalling apps[1].

Uninstalling apps via the app view

1. Open app view.
2. Tap on and hold down the app to be deleted so that a wastepaper basket is displayed at the bottom.
3. Drag the app to the wastepaper basket, then release it.
4. Confirm the deletion.

Uninstalling apps via Settings

1. Go to Settings at the bottom of the centre display.
2. Go to **Applications**.
3. Choose to show all installed apps and then select the app to be uninstalled.
4. Select to uninstall the app and confirm the removal.

> **Note**
>
> If the app to be removed is alone in the tile, it must be uninstalled via Settings.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Apps provided with the car, so-called basic apps, cannot be uninstalled. For example, the phone or radio* apps.

13.4.4. Volvo ID

Volvo ID is a personal ID that gives access to a wide range of services via a single username and password.

One example of a service when Volvo ID is needed is when checking the car on your phone using the Volvo Cars app.

Volvo ID is created from the car, volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/] or the Volvo Cars app.

> **Note**
>
> The services available may vary over time and depend on equipment level and market.

13.4.5. Creating a Volvo ID

A Volvo ID needs to created in order to use the Volvo services connected to the car, e.g. via the Volvo Cars app.

Create a Volvo ID with the Volvo Cars app

1. Download the latest version of the Volvo Cars app to the phone[1].
2. Select to create Volvo ID.
3. The web page for creating a Volvo ID is shown.
4. Enter a personal email address or mobile number.
5. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address/mobile number.

> A Volvo ID has now been created and is ready for use.

Create a Volvo ID via the Volvo Cars website

1. Go to volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/]. Select to create a Volvo ID.
2. Enter a personal email address or mobile number.
3. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address/mobile number.

> A Volvo ID has now been created and is ready for use.

[1] Available to download via e.g. Apple App Store or Google Play.

13.5. Internet connection

13.5.1. Online services

13.5.1.1. Connected Safety

Connected Safety[1] communicates information between your own car and other vehicles via a cloud service[2]. The function is intended to make a driver aware that there may be a potentially dangerous traffic situation further ahead on the same road.

The function can inform the driver whether another vehicle further ahead on the same road has activated its hazard warning flashers or detected slippery driving conditions. Information about slippery driving conditions is also given if your own car detects slippery surfaces.

Connected Safety can help the driver with the following:

- Alarm on hazard warning flashers
- Alarm on slippery driving conditions

Connected Safety communication between vehicles only works for vehicles equipped with the function. Connected Safety also needs to be approved via **Volvo privacy settings**.

Alarm on hazard warning flashers

If your own car's hazard warning flashers are activated, information about this can be sent to vehicles approaching your own car's position.

When your own car is approaching a vehicle with flashing hazard warning flashers, this symbol is shown on the driver display.

Alarm on slippery driving conditions

If your car detects reduced friction between its tyres and the road, this symbol is shown in the driver display. The information can then be forwarded to vehicles that approach the position of your car.

If your car receives information about slippery conditions from another vehicle, this symbol is shown in the driver display.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

[1] Not available on all markets.

[2] Data is transferred (data traffic) when using the cloud service, and this may involve a cost.

13.5.1.2. Apps

The app view provides access to the car's pre-installed and downloaded apps.

Tap on the app view icon at the bottom of the centre display to access the app view and start the radio*, navigation system and phone[1], for example.

Some basic apps are always available. More apps such as web radio and music services can be downloaded when the car is connected to the Internet.

Certain apps are only available for use if the car is connected to the Internet.

All the apps used should be updated to the latest version. This gives access to the latest updates and functions.

Apps close down

If an app closes down unexpectedly, try the following:

- open the app again
- check whether an update is available for the app:
  - Open the app view and tap on Google Play. Tap on and select your apps to see if any of them need to be updated. If so, update to the latest version.
- restart the system with a long press (approximately 20 seconds) on the home button
- uninstall and reinstall the app.

* Option/accessory.

[1] The last apps used can always be accessed from the home view.

13.5.1.3. Volvo ID

Volvo ID is a personal ID that gives access to a wide range of services via a single username and password.

One example of a service when Volvo ID is needed is when checking the car on your phone using the Volvo Cars app.

Volvo ID is created from the car, volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/] or the Volvo Cars app.

> **Note**
>
> The services available may vary over time and depend on equipment level and market.

13.5.1.4. Creating a Volvo ID

A Volvo ID needs to created in order to use the Volvo services connected to the car, e.g. via the Volvo Cars app.

Create a Volvo ID with the Volvo Cars app

1. Download the latest version of the Volvo Cars app to the phone[1].
2. Select to create Volvo ID.
3. The web page for creating a Volvo ID is shown.
4. Enter a personal email address or mobile number.
5. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address/mobile number.

> A Volvo ID has now been created and is ready for use.

Create a Volvo ID via the Volvo Cars website

1. Go to volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/]. Select to create a Volvo ID.
2. Enter a personal email address or mobile number.
3. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address/mobile number.

> A Volvo ID has now been created and is ready for use.

[1] Available to download via e.g. Apple App Store or Google Play.

13.5.2. Connecting to the Internet via Bluetooth

Create an Internet connection via Bluetooth by tethering your phone.

1. Make sure that your phone supports tethering and that this function is activated.
2. Connect your phone to the car via Bluetooth. Go to settings at the bottom of the centre display and then tap on **Connectivity** and select **Bluetooth**.
3. If the phone has been connected previously, tap on the icon for tethering via Bluetooth for the phone you want to use. Otherwise, first select **Pair new device**.
4. Approve, via the message shown, that connection should take place.

> The car is connected to the Internet.

Note

The telephone and network provider must support tethering (Internet connection sharing), and the subscription must include data.

13.5.3. Internet connection

When the car is connected to the Internet, you can listen to Internet radio and music services via apps, for example.

The car can be connected to the Internet via a Bluetooth connected telephone or a Wi-Fi network. For certain markets, the car can also be connected via the car's built-in modem[1]. If the car is connected via several different sources at the same time, the connection is firstly via Wi-Fi; secondly via Bluetooth-connected phone; and lastly via the car's built-in modem.

[1] Certain markets require the terms and conditions to be accepted for connection via modem.

13.5.4. Problems with Internet connection

If the car loses its Internet connection, you can try the following.

Switching the mobile data off and on

Switching the mobile data off and on may be of assistance if the car's Internet connection disappears suddenly and without explanation.

1 Go to settings at the bottom of the centre display and then tap on **Connectivity**.

2 Then switch **Car SIM data**, **Wi-Fi** and **Bluetooth** off and on in order to restart the connection.

Restarting the system

Restart the system by depressing the home button for 20 seconds.

In the event of problems with connection via Bluetooth-connected phone

If you experience difficulties when connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth

- Check that the phone battery is sufficiently charged and that the phone is switched on.
- Check that you have Bluetooth switched on in both the phone and the car.
- Check that you have established a Bluetooth connection and have connected the car to the phone to be used.
- If possible, try to connect another phone to the car via Bluetooth in order to check whether the problem is in the device or in the car.

If the problem persists:

1. Clear all previously added phones in the Bluetooth settings in the car.
2. Restart the phone you want to connect.
3. Try to connect the phone again.

In the event of problems with connection via the car's built-in modem [1]

If connection via the car's built-in modem works poorly due to poor coverage, for example, try connecting via Wi-Fi networks or Bluetooth-connected phone instead.

> **Note**
>
> If you connect to the Internet through several different sources at the same time, such as if the car has Internet via built-in modem, and you access the Internet via a Bluetooth-connected phone, these sources are used in the following order of priority. Firstly, the connection via Wi-Fi networks is used; secondly, via Bluetooth-connected phone; and thirdly, via the car's built-in modem.

[1] Connection via the built-in modem is only available in certain markets.

13.5.5. Connecting to the Internet via Wi-Fi

The car can be connected to a Wi-Fi network if required.

If the car is, for example, parked outside a house with a Wi-Fi network, or if you share the Internet via a mobile phone, it is possible to connect the car to the network.

If you share the Internet via the mobile phone, remember to first enable internet sharing on the phone.

To connect the car to a Wi-Fi network, proceed as follows:

1. Go to settings at the bottom of the centre display and then tap on **Connectivity**.
2. Tap on the row for **Wi-Fi** in order to show a list of available networks. Not all networks are allowed to connect. If the network you want to connect is not on the list of available networks, see below for details.
3. Select the desired network, enter the password and connect.

Note

These are the identified requirements for making the Wi-Fi access points available for use with Android:

- WPA2 with password (CCMP).
  - A password is required.
- Not allowed/possible:
  - Network without encryption (open network).
  - WPA3.
  - WEP.
  - WPA (with TKIP).
  - WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) enabled routers. Also possible with a WPA2 connection (most home routers are WPS enabled). If your home router has WPS functionality enabled, it will not be available due to limited security when managing WPS access. To connect to a WPA2 network with WPS, disable WPS on the router.

13.5.6. Markets with Car Modem Internet

Listed here are the markets that provide Internet via the built-in car modem.

The markets listed offer Internet via the car's built-in modem for 4 years[1] from the date of purchase of the car. Data roaming works within the EU.

Country
Australia
Belgium
Denmark
Finland
France
Hong Kong
India
Indonesia
Ireland
Italy
Japan
Canada
China
Korea
Malaysia
Mexico
Netherlands
Norway
New Zealand
Poland
Portugal
Puerto Rico
Switzerland
Singapore
Spain
UK
Sweden
Taiwan[2]
Thailand[2]
Czech Republic
Germany
USA
Austria

[1] The time may vary depending on market and car model.

[2] The offer is valid for 4 years for XC40 Recharge Pure Electric model year 2022 and 2023, as well as C40 Recharge model year 2023. For other car models, it is 1 year.

13.6. Audio and media

The car's audio system takes account of, for example, the position of the listener and the speed of the car. The centre display provides access to radio* and music apps, and additional third-party apps in music and media can be downloaded via Google Play.

Connect a phone or other device via Bluetooth. Choose whether you want it as a media device to play back music and/or as a phone device to, for example, make calls and show contacts.

Overview of audio and media

Control the functions with your voice, steering wheel keypad or the centre display.

Use the USB ports to charge devices.

* Option/accessory.

13.7. Storage space on hard disk

It is possible to view how much free space there is on the car's hard disk.

Check available space by means of the following:

1. Tap on settings at the bottom of the display.
2. Select **System**.
3. Continue to **Storage**.

13.8. Sound settings

The sound reproduction quality is preset, but can be adjusted as well.

Volume

The volume is normally adjusted using the volume control underneath the centre display or with the right-hand steering wheel keypad. This applies, for example, during playback of music, radio*, ongoing phone calls and active traffic messages.

When adjusting the volume, an expandable menu opens in the centre display. The volume for incoming calls, notifications and media player, for example, can be changed here.

For more sound settings, go to settings and tap on **Sound**.

Sound reproduction

The sound system is pre-calibrated by means of digital signal processing. This calibration takes into account speakers, amplifiers, passenger compartment acoustics, listener position, etc. There is also dynamic calibration that takes into account the position of the volume control and the speed of the car.

* Option/accessory.

13.9. Media playback

Regardless of the media app used, a Now playing field is shown in the centre display.

Among other things, it is possible to pause and change track in the Now playing field. Additional settings are possible if the Now playing field is expanded to full screen mode.

Opening the Now Playing view

Tap on the arrow in the Now Playing field to expand the field to the Now Playing view. This view gives access to more settings, which may vary depending on the type of app being used. Minimise the Now playing view by tapping on the arrow again.

13.10. Online connectivity and entertainment

The car has an intelligent interface and offers online connectivity with the digital world. An intuitive navigation structure makes it possible to receive relevant support, information and entertainment when it is necessary.

It covers all solutions in the car that are connected with entertainment, online connectivity, navigation and the user interface between driver and car.

Fair Use Policy

Your use of connectivity services that is part of your vehicle is subject to this Fair Use Policy.

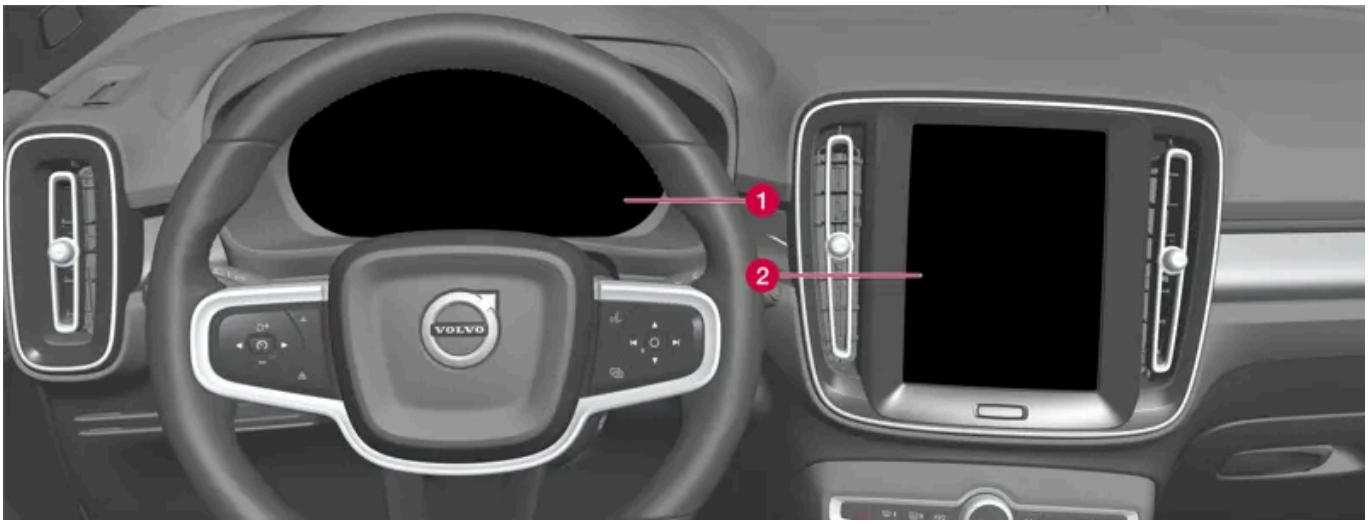
When using this Service you agree not to

- submit content that is unlawful, obscene, libellous, threatening, harassing, hateful, racially or ethnically offensive or otherwise inappropriate
- use the Service in breach of any applicable law
- use the Service for commercial purposes.

Your access to the Service is part of a shared access. Volvo reserves the right to suspend your access to or use of the Service if your use involves very high volumes of data, disproportionate to other users. Volvo may also suspend your access for technical reasons or to protect other functions of your vehicle. Your access to connectivity services is covered by third party terms and conditions from the mobile network service provider.

Information when it is needed, where it is needed

The different displays in the car provide information at the right time. The information is shown in different locations based on how it should be prioritised by the driver.



Different types of information are shown in different displays depending on how the information should be prioritised.

1. The driver display shows information on speed, road sign information, warning and indicator symbols, and information on the battery, for example. The driver display can also show incoming calls or information on what song tracks are being played back. The display is operated via the two steering wheel keypads.
2. Many of the car's primary functions are controlled from the centre display, e.g. the climate control system, the entertainment system and the seat position. The centre display also shows information on navigation and road sign information, for example. The information that is shown in the centre display can be acted on by the driver or someone else in the car when the opportunity arises.

> **Note**
>
> Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touch screen response.

Voice control system

The voice control system can be used without the driver needing to take his/her hands off the steering wheel. The system can understand natural speech. Use voice control to, for example, play back a song, call someone, increase the temperature or read out a text message.

13.11. Approval of terms and conditions and data collection

Messages about different terms and conditions and data collection can be shown in the centre display. Collection of data takes place to provide better car, safety and app functions, for example.

The first time you use your car, a guide opens in the centre display to assist you to make various settings. In connection with the guide, you are also prompted to give your agreement to different types of terms and conditions and the collection of information.

Prompts to give consent can also be shown in the event of, for example:

- First-time use of apps and services
- New user profiles
- Logging out from and deleting user profiles
- Change of ownership
- Resetting the settings

To access privacy settings:

1. Press ⚙ in the centre display.
2. Then press on **Privacy**.
3. Then select **Volvo privacy settings**, **Data sharing with Google** or **Legal information from Google**.

Some settings can only be made from a profile with administrative privileges.

Accept the internet terms of use [1]

1. Press ⚙.
2. Select **Privacy**.
3. Select **Internet terms of service** and follow the instructions.

The terms of use must be accepted once per car in order to use the internet.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

14. The Volvo Cars app and assistance

14.1. Assistance

14.1.1. Volvo Assistance

The ON CALL and SOS buttons in the roof can provide extra security and assistance, such as if the car doesn't start, in the event of a puncture, or in the event of an accident, for example.

The functions are available via the ON CALL and SOS buttons in the car's roof.

In the event of an accident, emergency assistance such as ambulance or police can be sent to the car. Roadside assistance can be called for less urgent problems, such as a puncture.

> **Note**
>
> The SOS button must only be used in the event of accident, illness or an external threat against the car and its passengers. The SOS function is only intended for emergency situations. Abuse may lead to supplementary charges.
>
> You can use the ON CALL button for other assistance, e.g. questions on the use of the car or if you need roadside assistance.

System for Volvo Assistance

The buttons in the roof are linked to the car's safety and alarm systems as well as other systems in the car, such as locking and climate control. The car has a built-in modem for communication with Volvo Assistance and the Volvo Cars app. GNSS (Global Navigation Satellite System) is used to locate the car.

Processing of personal data

Certain information, including personal data, will need to be processed in order for you to be able to make use of all the functions in connection with the service. Read more about terms and conditions and privacy at volvocars.com/intl/legal [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/legal] .

Contacting Volvo Assistance

To contact Volvo Assistance, use the car's ON CALL button or the Volvo Cars app.

> **Note**
>
> All calls with Volvo Assistance may be recorded.

14.1.2. Emergency assistance with Volvo Assistance

Press the SOS button to contact Volvo Assistance, or an emergency call centre, in an emergency situation.

Volvo Assistance [1]

To summon help in case of illness, external threats to the car or passengers, Volvo Assistance can be alerted manually by depressing the SOS button for at least 2 seconds. The car calls Volvo Assistance and a message is sent containing the car's position, among other things.

1. Volvo Assistance tries to establish verbal contact with the car's driver and to find out the extent of the emergency situation and the need for help.
2. Volvo Assistance then contacts the necessary assistance (police, ambulance, recovery, etc.).

If verbal contact cannot be established, Volvo Assistance contacts the relevant authorities that assist with appropriate action.

Prioritise public emergency number [1]

It is possible to set up the system so that the car calls a public emergency call centre instead of Volvo Assistance. See the separate instructions.

Emergency call centre [2]

To summon help in case of illness, external threats to the car or passengers, an emergency call centre can be alerted manually by depressing the SOS button for at least 2 seconds.

1. The emergency call centre tries to establish verbal contact with the car's driver and to find out the extent of the emergency situation and the need for help.
2. The emergency call centre sends the necessary assistance (police, ambulance, towing, etc.).

> **Note**
>
> The SOS button must only be used in the event of accident, illness or an external threat against the car and its passengers. The SOS function is only intended for emergency situations. Abuse may lead to supplementary charges.
>
> You can use the ON CALL button for other assistance, e.g. questions on the use of the car or if you need roadside assistance.

> **Note**
>
> If the SOS lamp flashes despite the button being pressed, this indicates that the car is trying to find and connect to a mobile network. The flashing continues until the car has made its connection.

Emergency number

When the collision alarm is activated the system attempts to establish contact with the country's Volvo Assistance. If this is not possible, then the call is routed to the designated emergency number for the area where the car is located.

[1] Available services vary depending on market.

[2] Applies to markets where Volvo Assistance is not offered.

14.1.3. Automatic collision alarm with Volvo Assistance

If a collision occurs, the car reports this automatically to Volvo Assistance, or an emergency call centre, which can send out emergency assistance.

Volvo Assistance [1]

When the car's safety system is triggered, e.g. in an accident in which the activation level is reached for seatbelt pretensioners or airbags, the car automatically calls Volvo Assistance and a message is sent containing the position of the car, among other things.

1 Volvo Assistance tries to establish verbal contact with the car's driver and to find out the extent of the collision and the need for help.

2 Volvo Assistance then contacts the necessary assistance (police, ambulance, recovery, etc.).

If verbal contact cannot be established, Volvo Assistance contacts the relevant authorities that assist with appropriate action.

Prioritise public emergency number[1]

It is possible to set up the system so that the car calls a public emergency call centre instead of Volvo Assistance. See the separate instructions.

Emergency call centre [2]

When the car's safety system is triggered, e.g. in an accident in which the activation level is reached for seatbelt tensioners or airbags, a signal will be automatically sent directly to an emergency call centre.

1. The emergency call centre tries to establish verbal contact with the car's driver and to find out the extent of the collision and the need for help.
2. The emergency call centre sends the necessary assistance (police, ambulance, towing, etc.).

Emergency number

When the collision alarm is activated the system attempts to establish contact with the country's Volvo Assistance. If this is not possible, then the call is routed to the designated emergency number for the area where the car is located.

[1] Available services vary depending on market.

[2] Applies to markets where Volvo Assistance is not offered.

14.1.4. Prioritising between Volvo Assistance and the emergency call centre

Choose whether the car should call Volvo Assistance or the emergency call centre in an emergency situation. [1]

It is possible to set whether the car should contact Volvo Assistance or the public emergency call centre when the automatic collision alarm is triggered or when the SOS button is pressed.

The car's factory setting is to primarily contact Volvo Assistance.

To change this:

1 Tap on ⚙ at the bottom of the centre display and select **Controls**.

2 Under **More**, deactivate **SOS button calls Volvo Cars emergency services**.

> **Note**
>
> When contact with Volvo Assistance is given priority, more information is transmitted from the car and more extensive help can be given than if the public emergency call centre is the primary contact. If contact with Volvo Assistance cannot be established, the car contacts the public emergency call centre instead.
>
> If, on the other hand, the public emergency call centre is given priority and it is not possible to establish contact, no attempt is made to reach Volvo Assistance instead.

[1] Available services vary depending on market.

14.1.5. Stolen Vehicle Tracking with Volvo Assistance

If car theft is suspected, Volvo Assistance can b e contacted via the Volvo Cars app to attempt to locate the car. [1]

If theft or other unauthorised use of the car has been discovered, then the car's owner along with the police and Volvo Assistance can agree to track the car.

> **Note**
>
> This also applies if the car was opened and stolen with the associated key.

The following needs to be done:

1 Contact Volvo Assistance and tell them you want help tracking the car. The tracking starts.

2 Make a police report.

3 Contact Volvo Assistance again and notify them of the police case number.

4 Volvo Assistance informs the police of the car's position.

> **Note**
>
> A condition for the car to be tracked is that the matter is reported to the police. Volvo Assistance will only give information to the police.

[1] Available services vary depending on market.

14.1.6. Roadside assistance with Volvo Assistance

If you have a puncture or your battery is discharged, for example, you can summon assistance with the ON CALL button or the Volvo Cars app.

If you hold down the ON CALL button in the roof for at least 2 seconds, verbal contact will be established between Volvo Assistance and the driver. The aim of this is to agree on what assistance is required. If data sharing for the roof buttons is activated, a message about the car's position is sent to Volvo Assistance.

> **Note**
>
> The SOS button must only be used in the event of accident, illness or an external threat against the car and its passengers. The SOS function is only intended for emergency situations. Abuse may lead to supplementary charges.
>
> You can use the ON CALL button for other assistance, e.g. questions on the use of the car or if you need roadside assistance.

Roadside assistance costs

Roadside assistance costs are included for the first X[1] years when you buy a new Volvo. After this time has passed, in most of the markets, Roadside Assistance is offered free of charge providing the car has been serviced regularly at an authorised Volvo workshop. A Volvo dealer can inform you about the status of your roadside assistance agreement.

You can get help to get you back on the road even if your Roadside Assistance agreement has expired. In this case, you will be asked to pay the cost for the service that is sent out to you.

> **Note**
>
> If you do not have a valid road assistance agreement, additional recovery costs mat apply.

[1] Varies depending on market.

14.1.7. Customer Service

For questions on using the car, the ON CALL button can be used to make contact with Volvo Assistance.[1]

An operator is available to answer 24 hours a day.

You can also reach Volvo Assistance via the Volvo Cars app's 💬 tab.

[1] Available services vary depending on market.

14.1.8. Standby battery for Volvo Assistance *

If the main battery is de-energised then the standby battery for Volvo Assistance is used so that the system can still be used.

The standby battery has a limited service life. When the battery needs service or replacement, a message, **eCall Service required**, is shown in the driver display.

If the message remains, contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

* Option/accessory.

14.1.9. Volvo Assistance abroad

The assistance services may vary when driving between countries.

When you press the SOS button you are always connected to Volvo Assistance or an emergency call centre in the market where the car is located.

When you press the ON CALL button you are always connected to your home country's Volvo Assistance.

For more information, contact a Volvo dealer.

14.2. Volvo Cars app

14.2.1. Getting started with the Volvo Cars app*

There are certain preparations you need to complete in order to get started with the Volvo Cars app.

Exploring the Volvo Cars app

Before you collect your car from the dealer, we recommend that you download the free Volvo Cars app and test in demo mode. The demo mode allows you to explore the majority of functions and provides information on how the app is used.

Volvo ID and linking the Volvo Cars app to the car

In order to use the Volvo Cars app, you need a Volvo ID. When a Volvo ID has been created, the app needs to be linked to the car.

Buying a used car with digital services

When buying a used car with digital services, it is important to delete data from the previous owner and add your own details to make the service work. Visit a Volvo dealer for assistance.

* Option/accessory.

14.2.2. Devices compatible with the Volvo Cars app*

The Volvo Cars app is compatible with various mobile devices and operating systems.

The Volvo Cars app is available for iPhone, iPad and Apple Watch as well as Android phones. The app can be downloaded free-of-charge from the Apple App Store or Google Play.

For the Volvo Cars app to work as well as possible, ensure that you have updated the app to the latest version available for your device. More information on the technical requirements for the version and operating system as well as compatibility for device models is available from where you download apps.

> **Note**
>
> Volvo reserves the right to stop supporting older versions of apps and discontinue them from existing app stores at any time.

Internet connection

The app communicates with the car via the Internet, and so your mobile device must have an Internet connection [1] to be able to execute your commands.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Data is transferred (data traffic) when using the Internet, and this may involve a cost.

14.2.3. Contact between the Volvo Cars app* and the car

The car's systems that have contact with the Volvo Cars app are programmed to close when the car is not used for a long period.

After a few days, the system is deactivated to save the battery. At which point, it is not possible to use certain app functions. The system will be fully available again as soon as the car has been started.

Warning

The system's services only work in areas where Volvo Assistance's partners have mobile coverage and where the technology permits.

Just as with mobile phones, atmospheric disturbances or sparse transmitter coverage may lead to connection being impossible, e.g. in sparsely populated areas.

* Option/accessory.

14.2.4. Volvo Cars app*

Using the Volvo Cars app[1], you can maintain contact with your car via different app functions.[2]

There is the option to lock or unlock the car and start the climate control in the car before departure, for example.[3]

Downloading the Volvo Cars app

The Volvo Cars app can be downloaded free-of-charge from the Apple App Store or Google Play. You can try out several of the app's functions without linking it to a car by running it in demo mode.

Internet connection required

When you use the Volvo Cars app, your mobile device will send and receive data via the Internet. If you do not have a data plan, then your mobile network operator may charge you for that data. If you use the app abroad, you may be charged for data roaming. For more information, contact your mobile service provider.

Note

Data sharing for the roof buttons needs to be enabled for remote control of car functions, such as climate control and locking/unlocking, to work.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

[2] Requires that both car and mobile device have mobile coverage or other Internet connection.

[3] Available functions may vary depending on market and car model.

14.2.5. Connecting the Volvo Cars app* to the car

To be able to use the services in the Volvo Cars app, the app needs to be connected to the car first.

When a main user (administrator) has linked his/her app to the car, more users of the car can be added.

Connect the Volvo Cars app to the car

Make sure your car is in an area with mobile coverage and that your mobile device has an Internet connection.

Ensure that you have your Volvo ID and the Vehicle Identification Number. A Volvo ID can be created when logging in to the Volvo Cars app, and you can find the Vehicle Identification Number in the windscreen or centre display, for example.

If you are the main user (administrator), all of the car's keys need to be taken with you. For other users, one of the car's keys is sufficient. The first user to link his/her app to the car must be logged-in to the Owner profile and be carrying all of the car's keys.

1. Sit in the car.
2. Sign in to the Volvo Cars app with your Volvo ID and follow the instructions in the app. If you have already a car connected in the app and want to add a further one, select , **Connected cars** and **Add a car**.

   > **Note**
   >
   > It is recommended that every user creates a personal Volvo ID in order to enjoy a more customised experience and support.

3. Make sure that data sharing for the Volvo Cars app is enabled. In the centre display, tap on , select **Privacy**, **Volvo privacy settings** and then **Volvo Cars app**.
4. Go to , select **Profiles** and then **Volvo Cars app devices** in order to access the menu for connecting the app to the car.
5. Follow the instructions in the centre display and the Volvo Cars app.

Difference between administrator and non-administrator in the Volvo Cars app

The car's **Owner** profile must be linked to the app before linking can take place for another profile. To be allocated the administrator role requires that all of the car's keys are in the car when the app is linked.

A user that is administrator in the app can

- see which mobiles or other devices are linked with the car
- remove own and other linked phones/devices from the car.

A user that is not administrator in the app can

- see that own phone/device is linked with the car
- remove own phone/device.

Switching between several connected cars in the Volvo Cars app

If you have connected several cars to the Volvo Cars app, switch between these as follows:

1 Go to the tab.

2 Select **Connected cars**.

3 Highlight the car in question and select **Switch to this car**.

Tips for using the Volvo Cars app

If you experience disruptions with the Volvo Cars app, ensure that the car to which the app is linked is outdoors in an open area with mobile coverage, and that your mobile device has a good Internet connection. If the disruptions persist, read more in the section with frequently asked questions about the Volvo Cars app at volvocars.com/intl/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support] or contact Volvo's Customer Service.

If the car is a used car, you should check that access to Volvo Assistance is activated in the car.

* Option/accessory.

14.2.6. Booking a service with the Volvo Cars app*

Service of the car can be booked via the Volvo Cars app. [1]

Book a service

1 In the tab, tap on **Maintenance**.

2 Select **Book service**.

3 Select which workshop should perform the service.

4 Select whether you want to buy any extra services [2], e.g. to control the air conditioning.

5 Enter date and time for service and whether you require a courtesy car [3]. Some workshops can also offer pick-up and delivery of the car booked for service.

6 Fill in any comments and confirm the booking.

7 Select whether you want to add the booking to the calendar.

Once a service has been booked, this is shown under **Maintenance** in the tab.

Click on the booking in order to:

- see details about the booking

- save the booking to the calendar (with the option to add a reminder)
- cancel the service
- contact the workshop via email or phone.

Messages about service in the Volvo Cars app

When it is time for service for the car, this is shown in the Volvo Cars app

- with a message in the ⌂ tab
- and under **Maintenance** in the 🚗 tab.

While a service is in progress, estimated completion time is shown in the Volvo Cars app.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

[2] Available services depend on workshop.

[3] Applies to certain workshops.

14.2.7. Lock function in the Volvo Cars app*

The Volvo Cars app shows the current lock status, and you can both lock and unlock the car remotely.

You can find the lock function in the ⌂ tab.

> ⓘ **Note**
>
> If the incorrect lock status is shown, open the lock function from the ⌂ tab and wait for 15-20 seconds.

* Option/accessory.

14.2.8. Shortcuts to the Volvo Cars app*

You can create shortcuts to the functions offered in the Volvo Cars app.

3D Touch

Using 3D Touch you have access to shortcuts for some functions in the Volvo Cars app[1].

Press firmly on the app icon on your phone to access, among other things, shortcuts to the following functions: Start climate control and Unlock the doors.

Sharing addresses to the Volvo Cars app

Some third party apps facilitate sharing addresses to the Volvo Cars app[2].

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain iPhone models. See manufacturer's website for more information.

[2] Varies depending on phone model and version of operating system.

14.2.9. Battery and charging functions in the Volvo Cars app*

The Volvo Cars app displays the current battery level and an estimate of how far the car can be driven on the current level of charge. It is also possible to schedule when the car is charged by setting the start and stop times, which is then repeated every 24h.

You can find the battery and charging functions by tapping on the lightning icon in the ⌂ tab.

Push notifications

You can choose to get push notifications on your phone if something goes wrong and charging is interrupted. Set which notifications you want to receive in the notification settings available in the ⌂ tab.

* Option/accessory.

14.2.10. Remote starting climate control using the Volvo Cars app*

You can use the Volvo Cars app to remote start the climate control in order to heat or cool the car to a comfortable temperature.

1 Go to the ⌂ tab and tap on ❀.

2 Press **Start**.

> The climate control starts and runs for 30 minutes.

Setting the timer for climate control

A timer can be set so that the climate control starts automatically in order to heat the passenger compartment prior to departure. There is the option to set up to 8 different timers. Each timer can be set by selecting the time and day of the week, as well as whether the setting should be repeated weekly.

Set the timers from in the tab.

Other climate settings

Heating the driver's seat, passenger seat and steering wheel[1] is automatically activated in cold weather.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to cars equipped with steering wheel heating.

14.2.11. Using the Volvo Cars app* with Apple Watch

You can use an Apple Watch to access some of the Volvo Cars app's functions, e.g. start/stop parking climate control and lock/unlock the car.

If the Volvo Cars app is installed on a phone and connected to the car, the app functions will automatically be available in the Apple Watch that is paired with your phone.

Functions that can be controlled from Apple Watch[1]:

- Parking climate control (start/stop).
- Car remote start (start/stop).
- Doors (lock/unlock).
- Find the car by activating the car's horn and/or direction indicators for a couple of seconds.
- See estimated range.
- See the car's position on a map.

Pairing Apple Watch with your phone

For instructions on how to pair an Apple Watch with your phone, as well as technical requirements for this, see Apple's website.

Technical requirements

Technical requirements for applicable operating system and information about compatibility for different mobile models can be found on the information page in the relevant app store.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Available functions may vary over time.

14.2.12. Disconnecting the link between the Volvo Cars app* and the car

Before the Volvo Cars app is uninstalled, you must ensure that the link between the app and the car is disconnected or that ownership of your car has been terminated in the correct way in the app. If the Volvo Cars app is simply deleted, problems may arise when connecting to the car in the future.

Terminate ownership in the Volvo Cars app

If you sell your car, ownership and the link between the Volvo Cars app and the car must be terminated via the administrator's account in the app. If you do not have access to the app, contact your Volvo dealer and explain that you want to sell your car.

To terminate ownership and remove the link:

1. Go to **Connected cars** in the tab.
2. Select the relevant car.
3. Press **I no longer own this Volvo** and follow the instructions in the app.

> User history and other user accounts will be deleted once you have terminated the ownership. In addition, an automatic factory reset of the car takes place, so that profiles, user data, linked keys and personal settings, etc., are removed.

Volvo ID is personal and therefore does not need to be changed or deleted if the car is sold.

Contact your Volvo dealer if you want to delete your contact details from the dealer's system.

Disconnecting the link between the connected phone and the car

The link between a connected phone and the car can be disconnected either from the Volvo Cars app or from the car's centre display. Users with administrator privileges can view and disconnect all phones connected to the car. Other users can only view and disconnect their own phone.

Via the Volvo Cars app

1. Go to **Connected cars** in the tab.
2. Select the relevant car.
3. Press **Disconnect** next to the unit you want to decouple and follow the instructions in the app.

Via the centre display

1. Go to .

2 Select **Profiles**.

3 Select **Volvo Cars app devices**.

4 Tap on the phone you wish to disconnect and select **Unpair this phone**.

* Option/accessory.

14.2.13. Change of ownership when the Volvo Cars app* is linked to the car

In the event of a change of ownership, there are some steps that need to be taken to unlink the previous owner and give the new owner the option to connect the Volvo Cars app to the car.

Selling the car

The previous owner should take the following steps:

1 Deactivate the connection between the car and the Volvo Cars app.

2 Reset user data - select factory reset.

Buying a car

The new owner needs to connect the Volvo Cars app to the car.

Change of owner when changing country

Further action is necessary when a car is purchased and imported into another country. Contact a dealer for information.

* Option/accessory.

---

15. eCall

15.1. eCall

The car can detect an accident and contact an emergency call centre itself. [1]

For cars without access to Volvo Assistance*, there is a European legal requirement, Pan-European eCall, that provides access to an automatic collision alarm and urgent assistance in emergency situations.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

* Option/accessory.

15.2. Emergency assistance with eCall

Press the SOS button to contact an emergency call centre in an emergency situation. [1]

To summon help in case of illness, external threats to the car or passengers, an emergency call centre can be alerted manually by depressing the SOS button for at least 2 seconds. The emergency call centre is notified and told of the car's position [1], etc., and attempts to establish verbal contact with the driver in order to agree what assistance is needed.

> **Note**
>
> The SOS button is only designed for emergencies and must only be used in the event of an accident, illness or an external threat to the car and its passengers. The ON CALL button must be used in the event of problems with the car.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

15.3. Automatic collision alarm with eCall

If a collision occurs, the car reports this automatically to an emergency call centre, which can send out emergency assistance. [1]

When the car's safety system is triggered, e.g. in an accident in which the activation level is reached for seatbelt tensioners or airbags, a signal will be sent automatically to an emergency call centre.

1. A message, containing car position [1], etc., is sent automatically from the car to the emergency call centre.

2. The emergency call centre establishes verbal contact with the car's driver and tries to find out the extent of the collision and the need for help.
3. The emergency call centre sends the necessary assistance (police, ambulance, towing, etc.).

If verbal contact cannot be established, the emergency call centre knows the car's position and can assist with appropriate action.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

15.4. Roadside assistance

Summon assistance if you have problems with the car by pressing the ON CALL button in the car's roof. [1]

Press the ON CALL button in the car's roof for at least 2 seconds if you have a puncture or your battery runs out of charge, for example. Verbal contact is established with a roadside assistance company that can send help to the car.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

---

16. Navigation

16.1. Map update

16.1.1. Downloading maps

Map data is saved automatically in order to ensure access to maps in Google Maps even when the car has a poor or no online connection.

Maps automatically downloads maps based on the current position and travel pattern of the car. These maps can be used when the car is not online to:

- provide map data to the car's safety and navigation functions
- provide access to Maps in areas with limited or no online connection.

It is also possible to select a map area manually and download.

> **Note**
>
> The instructions above are general descriptions and include third-party suppliers. Availability, procedure and functionality are subject to change or variation.

16.2. Google Maps

The Google Maps app includes maps and provides access to e.g. traffic information, directions and information on where to find suitable charging stations.

It is possible to use Maps when the car is connected to the Internet and when it is not, but more services are available when you are connected to the Internet.

Same information in the car as on other devices

Linking your Google account to the active user profile also personalises the services for you to a greater extent. Destinations set on other devices are shown, such as home, work, favourites and last searches. If anything is changed on a device it is also changed in Maps, provided that the device and the car are logged in to the same Google account.

Voice control

Maps can also be controlled with voice control using the Google assistant[1].

> **Note**
>
> The instructions above are general descriptions and include third-party suppliers. Availability, procedure and functionality are subject to change or variation.

> **Warning**
>
> Observe the following.
>
> - Direct all your attention to the road and make sure that all your concentration is on driving.
> - Follow applicable traffic legislation and drive with good judgment.
> - Due to weather conditions or time of year affecting the road conditions, some recommendations may be less reliable.

[1] The Google assistant is not yet available in all languages.

16.3. Using Google Maps

Maps is shown and is operated in the centre display as well as the driver display using the steering wheel keypad. Maps can also be operated using voice control.

Opening and closing Maps

To open Maps, tap on its icon in the centre display. To close the app, tap on the home button.

Open mode shows the map and current traffic information.

Shortcuts

The navigation tile has shortcuts, each of which initiates a search in Maps: Examples of shortcuts:

- Charging station
- Restaurant

When a route has been entered in Maps, there is an extra shortcut to terminate the ongoing guidance.

> **Note**
>
> The instructions above are general descriptions and include third-party suppliers. Availability, procedure and functionality are subject to change or variation.

Warning

Observe the following.

- Direct all your attention to the road and make sure that all your concentration is on driving.
- Follow applicable traffic legislation and drive with good judgment.
- Due to weather conditions or time of year affecting the road conditions, some recommendations may be less reliable.

16.4. Updating Google Maps

It is advisable to ensure that Maps is updated to the latest version.

When an updated version of Maps is available, this will be found on Google Play. If there are any differences in access rights between two versions of the app, the system will ask the user for approval.

The latest version ensures that you have the latest updates and functions. To update Maps, your car needs to be connected to the Internet and there needs to be an active Google account linked to the user profile.

When an update is available for Maps, a notification will be displayed where you can choose to update.

16.5. Settings in Google Maps

The majority of the settings for Maps are made directly in the app under settings. Here is a list of some examples.

Level of voice guidance

Set the amount of voice guidance, e.g. if you only want to hear traffic information and not the next manoeuvre.

Alternative route

Set so that road tolls and motorways, for example, are avoided in route directions.

Note

The instructions above are general descriptions and include third-party suppliers. Availability, procedure and functionality are subject to change or variation.

Other settings

Volume for voice guidance

Turn the volume control under the centre display or the steering wheel's right-hand keypad. An expandable menu is opened in the centre display. Set the volume for voice guidance.

Language and units

If you want to use other languages or units in Maps, these can be changed from the settings in app view ⊞. This setting will change the language and units in all displays in the car, not just in Maps.

> **Note**
>
> Changing the language in the centre display may mean that some information in the owner's manual is not compliant with national or local laws and regulations. Do not switch to a language that is difficult to understand as this may make it difficult to find your way back through the screen structure.

16.6. Electric car functions with Google Maps

Some functions in Maps are unique to electric cars. Some of them are listed here, with a brief description.

The functions mentioned are only examples. For the latest information on which functions are available as well as how they work, go to g.co/mapsincar [https://g.co/mapsincar] .

The functions related to battery level are based on historical use of the car, where influencing factors include, for example, use of electric equipment, speed and driving style.

Filtering on charging stations

By default, the map only displays compatible charging stations.

Battery level on arrival

Maps can show the estimated battery level on arrival at a destination.

Estimated minimum charging time

When charging stations have been added as intermediate destinations in an itinerary, Maps indicates the estimated minimum charging time at the charging station in question in order to clarify the total travelling time and the ETA [1].

Preconditioning the battery before fast charging

When charging stations have been added into Google Maps, the battery is preconditioned in order to reduce the charging time.

Suggestions for adding charging stations

Guidance is started when the car is estimated as not reaching the final destination with the current battery level, Maps will suggest to add charging stations at suitable locations in order to reach the final destination.

Note

The instructions above are general descriptions and include third-party suppliers. Availability, procedure and functionality are subject to change or variation.

[1] Estimated Time of Arrival

16.7. Google Maps in the driver display

The driver display can show guidance to a destination with instructions as well as a map. A map can still be shown if no destination is set.

Depending on selected display mode in the driver display, different amounts of map and guidance information is shown. Examples of information in the driver display:

- Arrows showing the next manoeuvre
- Distance to manoeuvre
- Name of the next road
- Road number and exit number
- Lane information

Guidance points, known as Turn-by-Turn, result in clear guidance via the driver display and minimise the need for the driver to look away from the road.

16.8. Destination in Google Maps

It is possible to enter several destination types in Maps.

Different destination types can be entered in the search field. Besides addresses, it is possible to enter a specific destination, such as a museum, and ask for directions to the destination. It is also possible to execute more general searches, e.g. for charging stations, restaurants and hotels, and then select one of the search results as a destination and get directions to the destination.

If a Google account is linked to the car, destinations such as home, work, favourites and last searches that are set on other devices can be shown in Maps.

Note

A poorer connection may have a negative effect on the functions.

16.9. Online functions with Google Maps

The car needs an Internet connection for full Maps functionality. A few functions that are accessible when the car is online are listed here.

Maps is updated regularly with traffic information and information from car parks, charging stations and the connected Google account.

The functions mentioned are only examples. For the latest information on which functions are available as well as how they work, go to g.co/mapsincar [https://g.co/mapsincar] .

Traffic information

If the traffic is moving slowly, orange or red lines are shown, depending on how slowly the traffic is moving. If the car loses its Internet connection, the coloured lines disappear after a few minutes as the information is no longer up to date. Updated traffic information is displayed again when the connection has been re-established. The map also shows information on different types of obstacles, such as roadworks or accidents.

In the event of accidents or other obstacles along the ongoing route, and if another faster route is available, Maps will suggest an alternative route.

Alternative route

When a desired destination has been entered, a route is suggested as well as alternative routes. These suggestions are based on factors such as system settings, traffic information, estimated distance and travelling time. An alternative route is selected from the list of suggested routes, or by steering the car as indicated in the alternative route, which is known as decide by steering.

Change route while driving, Google Maps redirects you dynamically based on current traffic patterns, so that you can avoid traffic congestion.

> **Note**
>
> The instructions above are general descriptions and include third-party suppliers. Availability, procedure and functionality are subject to change or variation.

16.10. Getting directions with Google Maps

Enter your destination in the search field and allow Maps to create the directions.

1. Open Maps in home view or app view ⊞.
2. Enter an address or location in the search field.

> A route is suggested and marked blue on the map. Alternative routes are indicated in grey. Road selection may be affected if, for example, road tolls and motorways are set to be avoided.

3 If another road is preferable, tap on the icon for route overview and select an alternative route.

4 Start navigation.

> Instructions in the driver display and voice guidance[1] start.

Maps can also be voice-controlled using Google Assistant[2].

> **Note**
>
> The instructions above are general descriptions and include third-party suppliers. Availability, procedure and functionality are subject to change or variation.

Take a look at g.co/mapsincar [https://g.co/mapsincar] for more information.

> **Warning**
>
> Observe the following.
>
> - Direct all your attention to the road and make sure that all your concentration is on driving.
> - Follow applicable traffic legislation and drive with good judgment.
> - Due to weather conditions or time of year affecting the road conditions, some recommendations may be less reliable.

Adding intermediate destinations in an existing route

1 Select a shortcut.

2 Select intermediate destination.

> The route is reconfigured.

Travel information in the navigation tile

When a route has been entered into Maps, the navigation tile shows the following travel information for the next intermediate destination on the journey:

- Travel time
- Distance to an intermediate destination
- Estimated time of arrival, ETA[3]
- The name of the next intermediate destination
- Unique information for electric cars, e.g. estimated battery level at arrival.

It is possible to terminate ongoing guidance directly from the tile.

The information displayed relates to the next intermediate destination. The trip's final destination is not shown until there are no further intermediate destinations.

[1] Voice guidance can be deactivated in settings in the Maps app via the centre display.

[2] Google Assistant is not yet available in all languages.

[3] Estimated Time of Arrival

---

17. Wheels and tyres

17.1. Changing wheels

17.1.1. Changing wheel

Wheel changes must always be performed correctly. Instructions on how a wheel is removed and mounted and what is important to remember are provided below. Check that the tyre dimension is approved for use on the car.

Warning

- If a wheel must be changed in a trafficked environment, passengers must stand in a safe place.
- Use a jack[1] designed for the car when changing tyres. Use supports to secure the car for all other work.
- Never crawl under the car or reach under with a part of your body when it is raised on a jack.
- Passengers must leave the car when it is raised on the jack.

Important

If a jack[1] is included with the car, it is only designed for occasional, short-term use, such as when changing a wheel after a puncture. Only the jack belonging to the specific model is to be used to jack up the car. If the car is to be jacked up more often, or for a longer time than is required just to change a wheel, use of a garage jack is recommended. In this instance, follow the instructions for use that come with the equipment.

When the jack is not in use it should be stored in its storage space under the cargo area floor. Crank the jack down for it to fit.

Removing a wheel

Read through all instructions before beginning. Take out the tools needed before jacking up the car.

1 Activate the hazard warning flashers and set out a warning triangle if a wheel shall be changed in a trafficked location.

2 Make sure that the parking brake is activated and engage gear position P.

3 Chock in front of and behind the wheels that remain on the ground. Use, for example, heavy wooden blocks or large stones.

4 Screw together the towing eye with the wheel wrench [2] to the stop position.

5 Remove the plastic caps from the wheel bolts with the intended tool.

6 With the car still on the ground, use the wheel bolt wrench/towing eye to undo the wheel bolts ½–1 turn by pressing downwards (anticlockwise). Always start with the lockable wheel bolts*.

7 Follow the instructions for how to safely raise the car with the jack.

8 Raise the car high enough to allow the wheel to be removed to move freely. Remove the wheel bolts and lift off the wheel.

Mounting a wheel

1 Clean the surfaces between wheel and hub.

2 Put on the wheel. Ensure that the correct dimension is fitted in the correct position for cars with different front and rear tyre or wheel dimensions. Tighten the wheel bolts thoroughly.

Do **not** use lubricant on the threads of the wheel bolts.

3 Lower the car so that the wheels cannot rotate.

4 Tighten the wheel bolts crosswise. It is important that the wheel bolts are tightened properly. Tighten to 140 Nm (103 foot-pound). Check the tightening torque with a torque wrench.

5 Refit the plastic caps over the wheel bolts.

6 Check the tyre pressure and save the new tyre pressure in the system for tyre pressure monitoring*.

Warning

The wheel bolts may need to be re-tightened several days after the wheel change. Temperature differences and vibration may mean that they are not attached equally as tightly.

Note

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

[1] For jack recommendations, contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

[2] For wheel bolt wrench recommendations, contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

* Option/accessory.

17.1.2. Jack*

The jack can be used to raise the car, for example, to change to a wheel.

Important

If a jack[1] is included with the car, it is only designed for occasional, short-term use, such as when changing a wheel after a puncture. Only the jack belonging to the specific model is to be used to jack up the car. If the car is to be jacked up more often, or for a longer time than is required just to change a wheel, use of a garage jack is recommended. In this instance, follow the instructions for use that come with the equipment.

When the jack is not in use it should be stored in its storage space under the cargo area floor. Crank the jack down for it to fit.

The jack needs to be cranked together to the correct position in order to have space.

* Option/accessory.

[1] For jack recommendations, contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

17.1.3. Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts are used to attach the wheels to the hubs.

Only use rims that are tested and approved by Volvo and which are Volvo genuine accessories.

Check the tightening torque of the wheel bolts with a torque wrench.

Do **not** use lubricant on the threads of the wheel bolts.

> **Warning**
>
> The wheel bolts may need to be re-tightened several days after the wheel change. Temperature differences and vibration may mean that they are not attached equally as tightly.

> **Important**
>
> The wheel bolts must be tightened to 140 Nm. (103 foot-pound). Overtightening or loose tightening may damage the nuts and the bolts.

Lockable wheel bolt kit*

To loosen or tighten the lockable wheel bolts – turn the wrench in the lock bolt until it fully engages in the code grooves. Always start with the lockable wheel bolts if the wheel shall be removed. When fitting the wheel, finish with the lock screw.

> **Important**
>
> Remember not to use bending force when you loosen/tighten the wheel bolts. This could damage the code groove in the lock bolt and the wheel wrench and so make it impossible to fit/remove the wheel.

When the wheel wrench[1] is not in use it must be stored in its place in the storage compartment under the bonnet. It is important to remember this if the car is due to visit a workshop in order to have the tool available. If you lose the wrench, contact your Volvo dealer.

* Option/accessory.

[1] For wheel bolt wrench recommendations, contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

17.1.4. Spare wheel*

The spare wheel, the Temporary Spare type, can be used to temporarily replace a punctured normal wheel.

The spare wheel is only designed for temporary use. Replace it with a normal wheel as soon as possible.

The car's driving characteristics can be changed when the spare wheel is used and the ground clearance is reduced. Do not wash the car in an automatic car wash if the Temporary Spare is being used.

Recommended tyre pressure must be maintained regardless of the position of the temporary spare wheel on the car.

If the spare wheel is damaged, a new one can be purchased from a Volvo dealer.

Warning

- Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) with a spare wheel fitted on the car.
- The car must never be driven fitted with more than one "Temporary Spare" wheel.
- The car may have different driving characteristics while driving with the spare wheel. The spare wheel must be replaced with a normal wheel as soon as possible.
- The spare wheel is smaller than the normal wheel, which affects the car's ground clearance. Look out for high kerbs and do not machine-wash the car.
- Follow the manufacturer's recommended tyre pressure for the spare wheel.
- On all-wheel drive cars, the drive on the rear axle can be disengaged.
- If the spare wheel is fitted to the front axle then it is not possible to use snow chains at the same time.
- The spare wheel must not be repaired.

Important

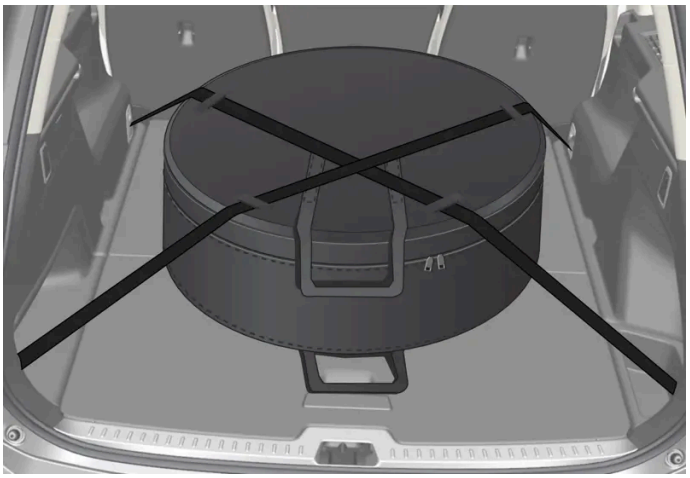
The car must not be driven with tyres of different dimensions or with a spare tyre other than the one the car is approved for. Using tyres of different dimensions can cause serious damage to the car's transmission due to the different rolling circumferences.

Cars designed for different front and rear tyre or wheel dimensions must have the same type and make of tyres on the front and rear axles.

* Option/accessory.

17.1.5. Handling the spare wheel*

Follow these instructions for handling the spare wheel.



The illustration is generic and appearance may differ.

The spare wheel is stored in a bag and must be secured with two straps on the floor of the cargo area while driving. The straps must be tensioned crosswise over the wheel and attached in the car's four load retaining eyelets.

Tools for changing wheels are located under the cargo area floor.

* Option/accessory.

17.1.6. Snow chains

Use of snow chains and/or winter tyres can help to improve the traction in winter conditions.

Volvo recommends that snow chains are not used on wheel dimensions greater than 20 inches.

Warning

Use Volvo genuine snow chains or equivalent chains designed for the car model, and tyre and rim dimensions. Only **single-sided** snow chains are permitted.

In the event of uncertainty about the show chain, Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted. The wrong snow chains may cause serious damage to the car and lead to an accident.

Using snow chains may result in malfunction of the tyre pressure monitoring system* [1].

Important

Snow chains can be used on the car with the following restrictions:

- Always follow the mounting instructions from the manufacturer carefully. Fit the chains as tensioned as possible and tension them at regular intervals.
- Snow chains must only be used on the front wheels (also applies to all-wheel drive cars).
- In some cases, snow chains must NOT be used, such as if accessory, aftermarket or "special" tyres and wheels are fitted that have a different size to the original tyres and wheels. Sufficient distance must be maintained between the chains and brakes, suspension and body components.
- Check local regulations with regard to using snow chains before fitting them.
- Never exceed the chain manufacturer's specified maximum speed. You must never exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) under any circumstances.
- Avoid bumps, holes or sharp turns when driving with snow chains.
- Avoid driving on bare ground as this wears out both the snow chains and tyres.
- Driving with snow chains may have a negative effect on the car's driving characteristics. Avoid fast or sharp turns, as well as braking with locked wheels.
- Some types of chain that are firmly tensioned affect brake components and must therefore NOT be used.

You can obtain more information on snow chains from a Volvo dealer.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (ITPMS)

17.1.7. Winter tyres

Winter tyres are adapted for winter road conditions.

Volvo recommends winter tyres with particular dimensions. Tyre dimensions are dependent on engine variant. When driving on winter tyres, the correct type of tyres must be fitted to all four wheels.

A tyre that meets the minimum values for traction on snow has the following symbol on the tyre label.

The tyre label for a tyre that meets the relevant minimum values for traction on ice must include the following symbol:

Studded tyres are not included in tyre marking.

Tips for changing to winter tyres

When summer and winter wheels are changed, mark which side of the car they were mounted on, for example **L** for left and **R** for right.

Contact a Volvo dealer for advice about which wheel rim and tyre types are most suitable.

Studded tyres

Studded winter tyres should be run in gently for 500-1000 km (300-600 miles), so the studs settle properly into the tyres. This gives the tyre, and especially the studs, a longer service life.

> **Note**
>
> Laws regarding the use of studded tyres may vary. Always follow local laws and regulations.

Tread depth

Road conditions with ice, slush and low temperatures place considerably higher demands on tyres than summer conditions. Volvo therefore recommends not to drive on winter tyres that have a tread depth of less than 4 mm (0.15 inches).

17.1.8. Punctures

Activate the hazard warning flashers if the car has a puncture in a trafficked environment.

Think about safety. If possible, move the car out of danger from traffic. Call roadside assistance if necessary.

If possible, exit the car from the side with least traffic.

Put on a reflective vest and then position the warning triangle so that other road users are warned in good time.

Dealing with a puncture

The car is equipped with either a puncture repair kit for temporary tyre repair or a spare wheel*, see the respective section for user instructions.

* Option/accessory.

17.1.9. Tool kit

Tools that can be useful during towing, wheel changes or similar are stored in the car's storage compartments. The jack and wheel bolt wrench are stored in their space in the car's cargo area. There is space for other tools to be stored in the storage compartment under the bonnet.

Examples of tools that may be in the car[1].

1 Jack

2 Tool for removing the plastic caps from the wheel bolts

3 Emergency puncture repair kit[2]

4 Wheel wrench and towing eye

If the car is fitted with a spare wheel*, there is a jack and a wheel bolt wrench instead of emergency puncture repair kit.

[1] For tool recommendations, contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

[2] Temporary Mobility Kit

* Option/accessory.

17.2. Tyres

17.2.1. Dimension designation for tyre

Designations for tyre dimension, load index and speed rating.

The car has an approval for the complete vehicle with certain combinations of wheel rims and tyres.

Designation of dimensions

All tyres have a dimension designation, such as: 235/50 R19 99 V.

235	Tyre width (mm)
50	Ratio between tyre wall height and tyre width (%)
R	Radial ply
19	Rim diameter in inches
99	Codes for the maximum permitted tyre load, tyre load index (LI)
V	Speed rating for maximum permitted speed, speed rating (SS). (In this case 240 km/h (149 mph).)

Load index

Each tyre has a certain capacity to carry a load, a load index (LI). The car's weight determines the load capacity required of the tyres.

Speed rating

Each tyre can withstand a certain maximum speed. Tyre speed rating, SS (Speed Symbol), must at least correspond with the car's top speed. The table below shows the maximum permitted speed for each speed rating (SS). The only exception to these regulations is winter tyres[1], where a lower speed rating may be used. If such a tyre is selected, the car must not be driven more quickly than the tyre is rated for. For example, cars with Q rating tyres must be driven at speeds not exceeding 160 km/h (100 mph). The road conditions and applicable road traffic rules determine how quickly the car can be driven, not the speed rating of the tyres.

> **Note**
>
> The maximum permitted speed is specified in the table.

Q	160 km/h (100 mph) (used only on winter tyres)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
W	270 km/h (168 mph)
Y	300 km/h (186 mph)

> **Warning**
>
> The lowest permitted load index (LI) and speed rating (SS) for the tyres for each respective engine variant are shown by the specifications. If a tyre with too low a load index or speed rating is used, it may overheat and be damaged.

[1] Both those with metal studs and those without.

17.2.2. Approved tyre pressures

Approved tyre pressures can be found in the table.

> **Note**
>
> All engines, tyres or combinations of these are not always available in all markets.

Tyre size	Speed	Load, 1-3 persons		Max. load		ECO pressure[1]
		Front kPa (psi)[2]	Rear kPa (psi)	Front kPa (psi)	Rear kPa (psi)	Front/rear kPa (psi)
235/50 R19 255/45 R19 235/45 R20 255/40 R20	0-180 km/h (0-112 mph)	280 (41)	280 (41)	280 (41)	280 (41)	280 (41)
Temporary Spare Tyre	max 80 km/h (max 50 mph)	420 (60)	420 (60)	420 (60)	420 (60)	420 (60)

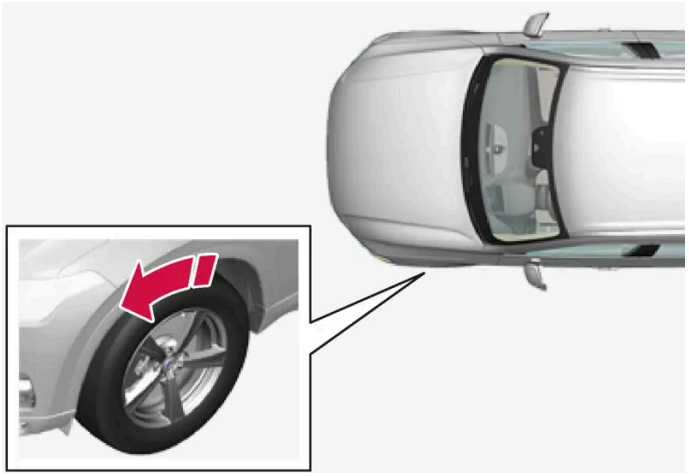
> **Important**
>
> Front wheels must not change place with rear wheels and vice versa.

[1] Economical driving.

[2] In certain countries the "bar" unit is used alongside the SI unit "Pascal": 1 bar = 100 kPa.

17.2.3. Tyres' rotation direction

Tyres with a tread pattern which are designed to only turn in one direction have the direction of rotation marked with an arrow.



The arrow shows the tyre's direction of rotation.

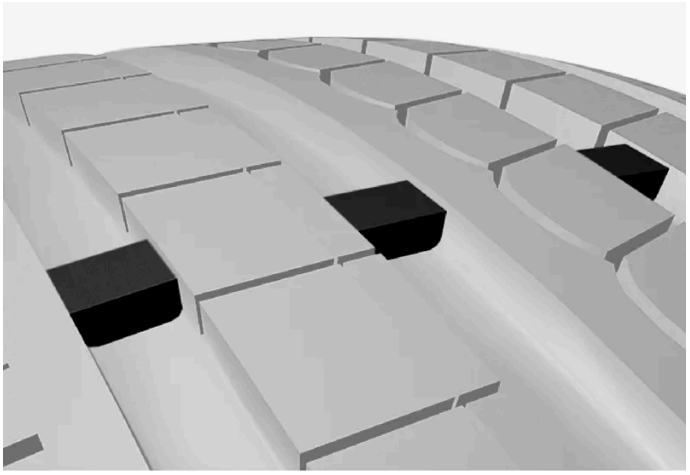
- Tyres must rotate in the same direction during their entire service life.
- Tyres should only be switched between front and rear positions, never between left and right-hand sides, or vice versa.

- If the tyres are fitted incorrectly, the car's braking characteristics and capacity to force rain and slush out of the way are adversely affected.
- The tyres with the deepest tread depth should always be fitted to the rear of the car in order to reduce the risk of oversteer skidding.
- On cars with different front and rear tyre or wheel dimensions, it is not permitted to change position between front and rear wheels.
- Volvo recommends that the rear tyres do not have substantially less tread depth than the front tyres in order to reduce the risk of oversteer skidding when driving on wet roads.

> **Note**
>
> Make sure that the front and rear axles have the same type, dimension and make of tyres.
>
> Cars with different front and rear tyre dimensions must have the same type and make of tyres on the front and rear axles.

17.2.4. Tread wear indicators on the tyres

Tread wear indicators show the status of the tyre's tread depth.



A tread wear indicator is a narrow elevation across the longitudinal grooves of the tyre's tread pattern. On the side of the tyre are the letters TWI (Tread Wear Indicator). When the tyre's tread depth is down to 1.6 mm (1/16 inch), the tread will be level in height with the tread wear indicators. Change to new tyres as soon as possible. Remember that tyres with little tread depth provide very poor grip in rain and snow.

17.2.5. Dimension designation for wheel rim

Wheel and rim dimensions are designated in accordance with the examples in the table below.

The car has an approval for the complete vehicle with certain combinations of wheel rims and tyres.

All wheel rims have a dimension designation, for example: 7.5Jx18x50.5.

7.5	Rim width in inches
J	Rim flange profile
18	Rim diameter in inches
50.5	Off-set in mm (distance from wheel centre to wheel contact surface against the hub)

17.2.6. Minimum permitted tyre load index and speed rating for tyres

The table below shows minimum permitted load index (LI) and speed rating (SS) for tyres.

Minimum permitted load index (LI) [1]	100
Minimum permitted speed rating (SS) [2]	H

[1] The tyre's load index must be at least equal to or greater than indicated in the table.

[2] The tyre's speed rating must be at least equal to or greater than indicated in the table.

17.3. Tyre pressure

17.3.1. Tyre pressure monitoring

17.3.1.1. Tyre pressure monitoring system*

The tyre pressure monitoring system [1], gives a warning with an indicator symbol in the driver display when the pressure in one or more of the car's tyres is too low.

This symbol illuminates to indicate low tyre pressure. Check the tyre pressure in the **Car status** app in the centre display.

If there is a fault in the system the tyre pressure warning symbol flashes for approximately one minute and then remains illuminated.

System description

The tyre pressure monitoring system measures differences in rotation speed between the different wheels via the ABS system in order to be able to determine whether they have the correct tyre pressure. If the tyre pressure is too low, the tyre's diameter is

changed and, as a result, so is its rotation speed. By comparing the tyres with each other the system can determine whether one or more tyres have pressure that is too low.

General information on the tyre monitoring system

In the information below, the tyre monitoring system is generally referred to as TPMS.

Each tyre, including the spare tyre*, should be checked once a month. When checking, the tyre should be cold and have the air pressure recommended by the car manufacturer specified on the tyre pressure label or in the tyre pressure table. If the car has tyres of a different size than that recommended by the manufacturer, find out what the correct air pressure level is for these.

As an extra safety feature, the car is equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS), which shows when the air pressure in one or more tyres is too low. When the indicator symbol for low air pressure is lit, stop and check the tyres as soon as possible and inflate to the correct air pressure.

Driving with tyres that have tyre pressure that is too low may cause the tyre to overheat, which can cause a tyre failure. Low tyre pressure also reduces fuel efficiency as well as tyre service life, and can affect car handling and stopping ability. Note that TPMS does not replace regular tyre maintenance. It is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if the limit for low tyre pressure has not been reached so that the indicator symbol illuminates.

The car is also equipped with a TPMS system fault indicator, which indicates when the system is not functioning correctly. The TPMS system fault indicator is combined with the indicator symbol for low tyre pressure. When the system detects a fault, the symbol in the driver display will flash for about one minute and then remain illuminated. This procedure will be repeated when the car is started until the fault has been rectified. When the symbol is illuminated, the system's ability to detect or warn of low tyre pressure may be affected.

A TPMS system fault can occur for several reasons, such as after changing to a spare tyre, or changing tyres or wheels that prevent TPMS from functioning correctly.

Always check the indicator symbol for TPMS after changing one or more tyres in order to ensure the new tyre or wheel is working correctly with TPMS.

To bear in mind

- Always save a new tyre pressure in the system after changing a tyre or adjusting tyre pressure.
- The use of snow chains may affect the tyre pressure monitoring system. This is indicated by a symbol and message in the driver display. When the snow chains are removed, all tyres should be checked and adjusted to the recommended tyre pressure. After that, the new tyre pressure needs to be saved in the tyre pressure monitoring system.
- If you change to tyres of a different size to the ones fitted at the factory, the system must be reset by storing a new tyre pressure for these tyres to avoid false warnings.
- If a spare wheel* is used, it is possible that the tyre pressure monitoring system will not work correctly due to the differences between the wheels.
- The system does not replace the need for regular tyre inspection and maintenance.
- It is not possible to switch off the tyre pressure monitoring system.

Warning

- Incorrect tyre pressure may lead to tyre failure, which could result in the driver losing control of the car.
- The system cannot indicate sudden tyre damage in advance.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (ITPMS)

17.3.1.2. See tyre pressure status in the centre display*

With the system for tyre pressure monitoring[1], tyre pressure status can be viewed in the centre display.

Checking status

Several minutes driving above 35 km/h (22 mph) are required for the system to become active.

1 Press ⊞ in the centre display.

2 Tap on **Car status** to view the tyre pressure status.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (ITPMS)

17.3.1.3. Action in the event of warning for low tyre pressure

When the system for tyre pressure[1] warns that tyre pressure is too low, action is required.

Check and rectify the tyre pressure when the indicator symbol for the system is illuminated and the message for low tyre pressure message is shown.

1 Switch off the car.

2 Check the tyre pressure in all four tyres with a tyre pressure gauge.

3 Inflate the tyres to the correct pressure, see the decal on the door pillar on the driver's side showing the recommended pressure for factory fitted tyres.

4 Always save a new tyre pressure in the system via the centre display after the tyre pressure has been adjusted. This can only be done when the car is running and stationary.

Note that the indicator symbol does not extinguish until the low tyre pressure has been rectified and storing a new tyre pressure has been started.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Several minutes of driving are required at a speed above 35 km/h (22 mph) in order for the system to be able to store the new reference value.

Note

To avoid incorrect tyre pressure, the pressure should be checked on cold tyres. "Cold tyres" means the tyres are the same temperature as the ambient temperature (approx. 3 hours after the car has been driven). After a few kilometres of driving, the tyres warm up and the pressure increases.

Note

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

Warning

- Incorrect tyre pressure may lead to tyre failure, which could result in the driver losing control of the car.
- The system cannot indicate sudden tyre damage in advance.

[1] Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (ITPMS)

17.3.1.4. Saving a new reference value for tyre pressure monitoring*

In order for the system for tyre pressure monitoring[1] to work correctly, a reference value for the tyre pressure must be saved. This must take place every time the tyres are changed or the tyre pressure is changed so that the system can warn about low pressure correctly.

Perform the following procedure to store a new tyre pressure as a reference value in the system:

1. Switch off the car.
2. Inflate the tyres to the correct pressure, see the decal on the door pillar on the driver's side showing the recommended pressure for factory fitted tyres.
3. Start the car.
4. Press ⊞ in the centre display.

   Press **Car status**.

5
6 Press **Store pressure**. The car must be running and stationary when storing a tyre pressure.

If storing fails, a message is shown.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (ITPMS)

17.3.1.5. Messages for tyre pressure monitoring*

A number of messages for the tyre pressure monitoring system[1] can be shown. Here are some examples.

Centre display: **Storing pressure is required due to updated software**	The software has been updated and the tyre pressure needs to be saved again. Check the tyre pressures and inflate if necessary.
Driver display: **Tyre pressure low Check Car Status app in center display**	The indicator symbol switches on to indicate that there is low tyre pressure in one or more tyres. See car status in the centre display for more information.
Driver display: **Tyre pressure system Temporarily unavailable**	The indicator symbol flashes and changes to constant glow after approx. 1 minute. The system is currently unavailable, activated shortly.
Driver display: **Tyre pressure system Service required**	The indicator symbol flashes and changes to constant glow after approx. 1 minute. The system is not working correctly, contact a workshop[2].

* Option/accessory.

[1] Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (ITPMS)

[2] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

17.3.2. Checking tyre pressure

Correct tyre pressure helps to improve driving stability, save energy consumption and extend the service life of the tyres.

Tyre pressure decreases over time, this is a natural phenomenon. Tyre pressure also varies depending on ambient temperature. Driving on tyres with tyre pressure that is too low could result in the tyres overheating and being damaged. Tyre pressure affects travelling comfort, road noise and driving characteristics.

Check the tyre pressures monthly. Use the recommended tyre pressure for cold tyres in order to maintain good tyre performance. Tyre pressure that is too low or too high may cause uneven wear on the tyres.

Warning

- Under-inflation is the most common cause of tyre failure. This may result in severe tyre cracking, tread separation, or "blow-out", with reduced control of the vehicle, which may lead to increased risk of injury.
- Tyres with pressure that is too low reduce the load capacity of the car.

Cold tyres

The tyre pressure must be checked when the tyres are cold. Tyres are considered cold when they have the same temperature as the surrounding air. This temperature is normally reached when the car has been parked for at least three hours.

After having driven approximately 1.6 km (1 mile) these tyres are considered as warm. If you have to drive further than this to inflate the tyres, first check and record the tyre pressure. Then inflate to a suitable tyre pressure when you arrive at the pump.

When the outside temperature changes, the tyre pressure also changes. A decrease in temperature of 10 degrees causes the tyre pressure to decrease 7 kPa (1 psi). Check the tyre pressure regularly and adjust to the correct pressure, which is specified on the car's tyre information decal or certification label.

If you check the tyre pressure when the tyres are warm then you must never release any air. The tyres are warm due to driving and it is normal for the pressure to increase above the recommended pressure for cold tyres. A warm tyre with tyre pressure equal to or below the recommendation for cold tyres may have a pressure that is far too low.

17.3.3. Adjusting tyre pressure

Tyre pressure decreases over time, this is a natural phenomenon. The tyre pressure must therefore sometimes be adjusted in order to maintain the recommended tyre pressure.

Use the recommended tyre pressure for cold tyres in order to maintain good tyre performance and even tread wear.

Note

To avoid incorrect tyre pressure, the pressure should be checked on cold tyres. "Cold tyres" means the tyres are the same temperature as the ambient temperature (approx. 3 hours after the car has been driven). After a few kilometres of driving, the tyres warm up and the pressure increases.

1. Remove the cap from the valve on one tyre and then press down the tyre pressure gauge firmly onto the valve.
2. Inflate the tyres to the correct pressure, see the decal on the door pillar on the driver's side showing the recommended pressure for factory fitted tyres.
3. Refit the dust cap.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Note

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

4 Check the tyres visually for any implanted nails or other objects that could puncture the tyre and cause leakage.

5 Check the sidewalls for any cavities, cuts, bumps or other irregularities.

6 Repeat this for all tyres, including the spare tyre*.

Note

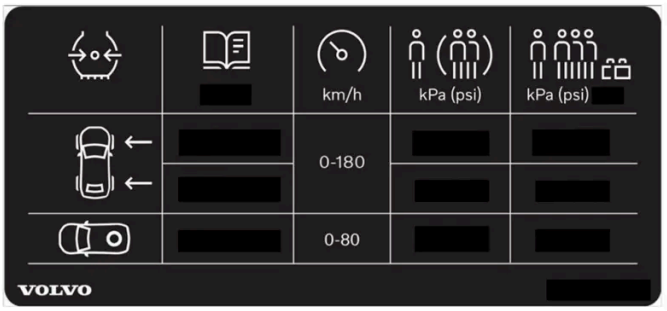
If you have over-inflated, release air by pressing in the metal pin in the centre of the valve. Then check the pressure again using the tyre pressure gauge.

Some spare tyres require a higher tyre pressure than other tyres. Check in the tyre pressure table or on the tyre pressure label.

* Option/accessory.

17.3.4. Location of tyre pressure label

The tyre pressure label on the driver's side door pillar (between frame and rear door) shows which pressures the tyres should have at different loads and speed conditions.



Tyre pressure label location

The decal displays the designation for the factory-fitted tyres on the car, as well as load limits and tyre pressure.

Note

It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and locations in the car. The information that applies to your particular car can be found on the decal on the car.

Improved fuel economy with ECO pressure

For a light load (max. 3 people) and a speed of up to 180 km/h (112 mph), the ECO pressures can be chosen for more economic electric consumption. However, the lower comfort pressures are recommended instead if improved noise and travelling comfort are desired.

17.4. Emergency puncture repair

17.4.1. Emergency puncture repair kit

The emergency puncture repair kit (TMK[1]) is used to seal a puncture as well as to check and adjust the air pressure in the tyre.
Cars equipped with spare tyre* do not have the emergency puncture repair kit.

The puncture repair kit consists of a compressor and a bottle with sealing fluid. The sealing works as a temporary repair.

Note

The sealing fluid is effective at sealing tyres with tread punctures but has limited ability to seal tyres with sidewall punctures. Do not use the emergency puncture repair kit on tyres displaying larger slits, cracks or similar damage.

Note

The compressor is intended for temporary emergency puncture repair and is approved by Volvo.

Location

The emergency puncture repair kit is located in the foam block under the cargo area floor under the bonnet.

Sealing fluid expiry date

The bottle of sealing fluid must be replaced if the bottle's expiry date has passed (see the decal on the bottle). Treat the old bottle as environmentally hazardous waste.

[1] Temporary Mobility Kit

* Option/accessory.

17.4.2. Inflating tyres with the compressor from the puncture repair kit

The car's original tyres can be inflated using the compressor in the emergency puncture repair kit.

1. The compressor must be switched off. Make sure that the switch is in position 0 (Off), and take out the electrical cable and the air hose.
2. Attach the air hose directly into the compressor's bottle bracket and then turn clockwise 90 degrees.

   Move the warning decal to the side of the compressor. It does not need to be attached to the wheel cover unless the sealing fluid is used.
3. Unscrew the tyre's dust cap and screw in the air hose's valve connection to the bottom of the thread on the tyre's air valve.
4. Connect the electrical cable to the closest 12 V socket and start the car.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not leave children in the car without supervision when the car is running.

5 Start the compressor by flicking the switch to position I (On).

6

> **Important**
>
> Risk of overheating. The compressor must not run for more than 10 minutes.

Inflate the tyre to the pressure specified on the tyre pressure label on the driver side door pillar. Release air using the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.

7 Switch off the compressor. Detach the air hose and the electrical cable.

8 Refit the dust cap on the tyre.

> **Note**
>
> - After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
> - Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

> **Note**
>
> The compressor is an electrical device. Follow local regulations related to waste management.

17.4.3. Using a puncture repair kit

The emergency puncture repair kit (TMK[1]) can be used to seal a puncture. Read through all instructions before use.

Overview

1 Label, maximum permitted speed

2 Switch

3 Electrical cable

4 Bottle bracket

5 Pressure gauge

6 Pressure reducing valve

7 Decal, warning for wheel cover

8 Sealing fluid bottle

9 Bottle opening

10 Connection for bottle

11 Air hose

12 Connection valve

Connecting

Warning

Please keep the following points in mind when using the tyre sealing system:

- The sealing fluid bottle contains natural rubber latex. This substance is harmful if swallowed.
- The contents of this bottle may cause allergic skin reactions or otherwise be potentially harmful to the respiratory tract, the skin, the central nervous system, and the eyes.

Precautions:

- Store out of the reach of children.
- Harmful if ingested.
- Avoid prolonged or repeated contact with the skin. If sealing fluid has come into contact with your clothes, remove them.
- Wash thoroughly after handling.

First aid:

- Skin: Wash affected areas of skin with soap and water. Get medical attention if symptoms occur.
- Eyes: Flush with plenty of water for least 15 minutes, occasionally lifting the upper and lower eyelids. Get medical attention if symptoms occur.
- Inhalation: Move the exposed person to fresh air. If irritation persists, get medical attention.
- Ingestion: Get medical attention.
- Disposal: Dispose of this material and its container at a hazardous or special waste collection point. Always follow state and local environmental regulations.

Warning

Do not remove the bottle or air hose while the puncture repair kit is being used.

Note

If the puncture was caused by a nail or similar, leave it in the tyre. It helps to seal the hole.

1 **Preparations**

Set up the warning triangle and activate the hazard warning lights if a tyre is being sealed in a trafficked location.

2 Detach the decal for maximum permitted speed that is affixed on one side of the compressor. Affix it visibly on the windscreen as a reminder to observe the speed limit. You should not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) after the emergency tyre repair kit has been used.

In addition, remove the warning decal and attach it firmly to the side of the wheel so that it doesn't fall off.

3 Check that the switch is in position 0 (Off) and locate the electrical cable and the air hose.

4 Fit the sealing fluid bottle in the compressor and then turn clockwise 90 degrees.

The bottle is equipped with a non-return valve which means that the fluid does not come out unless it is fitted in the compressor.

5 Attach the air hose to the bottle's opening and turn clockwise 90 degrees.

6 Unscrew the tyre's dust cap and screw in the air hose's valve connection to the bottom of the thread on the tyre's air valve.

7 **Begin puncture repair**

Connect the electrical cable to the closest 12 V socket and start the car.

> **Note**
>
> Make sure that none of the other 12 V sockets is in use when the compressor is operating.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not leave children in the car without supervision when the car is running.

8 Start the compressor by flicking the switch to position I (On).

When the compressor starts, the pressure can increase up to 7 bar (102 psi), but the pressure drops after about 30 seconds.

> **Warning**
>
> Never stand next to the tyre when the compressor is running. If cracks or unevenness arise then the compressor must be switched off immediately. The journey should not be continued. Call roadside assistance for recovery to a tyre centre. Volvo recommends an authorised tyre centre.

9 Inflate the tyre for 7 minutes.

> **Important**
>
> The compressor must not be operated for longer than 10 minutes - risk of overheating.

10 Switch off the compressor to check the pressure on the pressure gauge. Minimum pressure is 1.8 bar (26 psi) and maximum is 2.5 bar (36 psi). Release air using the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.

To access the pressure reducing valve, the sealing fluid bottle must first be removed. Remove the bottle in the following order:

1. Remove the air hose from the tyre valve.
2. Remove the air hose from the bottle.
3. Remove the bottle from the compressor.
4. Refit the air hose directly in the compressor.
5. Refit the air hose to the tyre valve.

6. Release air by pressing the pressure reducing valve.

> **Warning**
>
> If the pressure is below 1.8 bar (26 psi) then the hole in the tyre is too big. The journey should not be continued. Call roadside assistance for recovery to a tyre centre. Volvo recommends an authorised tyre centre.

11 Switch off the compressor and detach the electrical cable.

12 Unscrew the air hose from the tyre valve and refit the dust cap on the tyre.

> **Note**
>
> - After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
> - Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

13 Clean the air hose before putting it away and be careful that there is no leakage of sealing fluid.

14 As soon as possible, drive at least 3 km (2 miles) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) so that the sealing fluid can seal the tyre, and then perform a follow-up check.

> **Warning**
>
> Sealant will spurt out of the puncture during the first few rotations of the tyre. Make sure that nobody is standing near the car and gets the sealing fluid splashed onto them when the car is driven away. The distance should be at least 2 metres (7 feet).

15 **Follow-up inspection**

Connect the air hose on the tyre valve and screw in the valve connection to the bottom of the tyre valve's thread. The compressor must be switched off.

16 Read the tyre pressure on the pressure gauge.

- If it is below 1.3 bar (19 psi) then the tyre is insufficiently sealed. The journey should not be continued. Call roadside assistance for recovery.
- If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar (19 psi), the tyre must be inflated to the pressure specified in accordance with the tyre pressure label on the driver's side door pillar (1 bar = 100 kPa = 14.5 psi). Release air using the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.

> **Warning**
>
> Check the tyre pressure regularly.

Volvo recommends that the car is driven to the nearest authorised Volvo workshop for the replacement/repair of the damaged tyre. Advise the workshop that the tyre contains sealing fluid.

The sealing fluid bottle and hose must be replaced after use. Volvo recommends that these replacements be performed by an authorised Volvo workshop.

> **Warning**
>
> Maximum mileage with tyres containing sealing fluid is 200 km (120 miles).

> **Note**
>
> The compressor is an electrical device. Follow local regulations related to waste management.

[1] Temporary Mobility Kit

17.5. Winter driving

17.5.1. Snow chains

Use of snow chains and/or winter tyres can help to improve the traction in winter conditions.

Volvo recommends that snow chains are not used on wheel dimensions greater than 20 inches.

> **Warning**
>
> Use Volvo genuine snow chains or equivalent chains designed for the car model, and tyre and rim dimensions. Only **single-sided** snow chains are permitted.
>
> In the event of uncertainty about the show chain, Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted. The wrong snow chains may cause serious damage to the car and lead to an accident.
>
> Using snow chains may result in malfunction of the tyre pressure monitoring system* [1].

Important

Snow chains can be used on the car with the following restrictions:

- Always follow the mounting instructions from the manufacturer carefully. Fit the chains as tensioned as possible and tension them at regular intervals.
- Snow chains must only be used on the front wheels (also applies to all-wheel drive cars).
- In some cases, snow chains must NOT be used, such as if accessory, aftermarket or "special" tyres and wheels are fitted that have a different size to the original tyres and wheels. Sufficient distance must be maintained between the chains and brakes, suspension and body components.
- Check local regulations with regard to using snow chains before fitting them.
- Never exceed the chain manufacturer's specified maximum speed. You must never exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) under any circumstances.
- Avoid bumps, holes or sharp turns when driving with snow chains.
- Avoid driving on bare ground as this wears out both the snow chains and tyres.
- Driving with snow chains may have a negative effect on the car's driving characteristics. Avoid fast or sharp turns, as well as braking with locked wheels.
- Some types of chain that are firmly tensioned affect brake components and must therefore NOT be used.

You can obtain more information on snow chains from a Volvo dealer.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (ITPMS)

17.5.2. Winter tyres

Winter tyres are adapted for winter road conditions.

Volvo recommends winter tyres with particular dimensions. Tyre dimensions are dependent on engine variant. When driving on winter tyres, the correct type of tyres must be fitted to all four wheels.

A tyre that meets the minimum values for traction on snow has the following symbol on the tyre label.

The tyre label for a tyre that meets the relevant minimum values for traction on ice must include the following symbol:

Studded tyres are not included in tyre marking.

Tips for changing to winter tyres

When summer and winter wheels are changed, mark which side of the car they were mounted on, for example **L** for left and **R** for right.

Contact a Volvo dealer for advice about which wheel rim and tyre types are most suitable.

Studded tyres

Studded winter tyres should be run in gently for 500-1000 km (300-600 miles), so the studs settle properly into the tyres. This gives the tyre, and especially the studs, a longer service life.

> **Note**
>
> Laws regarding the use of studded tyres may vary. Always follow local laws and regulations.

Tread depth

Road conditions with ice, slush and low temperatures place considerably higher demands on tyres than summer conditions. Volvo therefore recommends not to drive on winter tyres that have a tread depth of less than 4 mm (0.15 inches).

17.5.3. Preparations for a long trip

Before a driving holiday or some other type of long journey, it is important to check the car's functions and equipment particularly carefully.

Check that

- braking effect on braking works as intended
- the tyres have sufficient tread depth and pressure. Change to winter tyres when driving to areas where there is a risk of snowy or icy road surfaces
- battery charging is good
- the wiper blades are in good condition
- a warning triangle and high-visibility vest are located in the car - legally required in certain countries

---

17.5.4. Winter driving

For winter driving it is important to perform certain checks of the car in order to ensure that it can be driven safely.

Check the following in particular before a cold season:

- The condition of the battery and its charge level must be inspected. Cold weather places higher demands on the battery and its capacity is reduced by the cold.
- Use washer fluid with antifreeze to avoid ice forming in the washer fluid reservoir.

Slippery driving conditions

Volvo recommends that **One Pedal Drive** is deactivated while driving in slippery or icy conditions.

To achieve optimum roadholding Volvo recommends using winter tyres on all wheels if there is a risk of snow or ice.

> **Note**
>
> The use of winter tyres is a legal requirement in certain countries. Studded tyres are not permitted in all countries.

Practise driving on slippery surfaces under controlled conditions to learn how the car reacts.

17.6. Tyres

The function of the tyres is to carry load, provide grip on the road surface, dampen vibration and protect the wheel from wear.

The tyres greatly affect the car's driving characteristics. The type of tyre, dimensions, tyre pressure and speed rating are important for how the car performs.

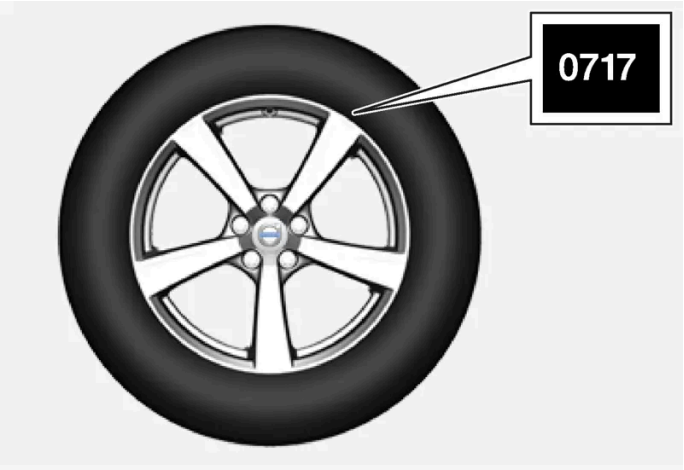
The car is fitted with tyres according to the tyre information sticker found on the driver's side door pillar (between the front door and the rear door).

> **Warning**
>
> A damaged tyre may lead to loss of control over the car.

Recommended tyres

On delivery, the car is equipped with Volvo original tyres that have the VOL[1] marking on the side of the tyres. These tyres are carefully adapted to the car. In the event of changing tyres, it is therefore important that the new tyres also have this marking in order for the car's driving characteristics, comfort and electric consumption to be maintained.

New tyres



Tyres are perishable. After a few years they begin to harden at the same time as the friction capacity/characteristics gradually deteriorate. For this reason, aim to get as fresh tyres as possible when you replace them. This is especially important with regard to winter tyres. The last four digits in the sequence mean the week and year of manufacture. This is the tyre's DOT marking (Department of Transportation), and this is stated with four digits, for example 0717. The tyre is then manufactured in week 07, year 2017.

Tyre age

All tyres older than 6 years old should be checked by an expert even if they seem undamaged. Tyres age and decompose, even if they are hardly ever or never used. The function can therefore be affected. This applies to all tyres that are stored for future use. Examples of external signs which indicate that the tyre is unsuitable for use are cracks or discolouration.

Tyre economy

- Maintain the correct tyre pressure.
- Avoid fast starts, heavy braking and squealing tyres.
- Tyre wear increases with speed.
- Correct wheel alignment is very important.
- Unbalanced wheels worsen tyre economy and travelling comfort.
- The tyres should rotate in the same direction during their entire service life.
- When you change tyres, the tyres with the deepest tyre tread can be fitted on the rear axle in order to reduce the risk of oversteer skidding during aquaplaning, cornering or sudden braking on wet roads.
- If you drive over kerbstones or deep holes you can damage the tyres and/or wheel rims permanently.
- On cars with different front and rear tyre or wheel dimensions, it is not permitted to change position between front and rear wheels.

Tyre rotation

It is not possible to change originally fitted tyres between front and rear axles.

Driving style, tyre pressure, climate and road condition affect how quickly the tyres age and wear. Correct tyre pressure results in more even wear.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Important

Cars with different tyre or wheel dimensions on the front and rear axles must always have the wider tyres and/or wheels on the rear axle. It is therefore not permitted to change between front and rear wheels in order to obtain a more even tyre wear between front and rear tyres, for example.

Storing wheels and tyres

When you store complete wheels (tyres fitted on wheel rims) they should be hung up or positioned lying on their sides on the floor.

Tyres not fitted on rims must be stored lying on their sides or standing upright, but not hung up.

Important

Tyres should be stored in a cool, dry and dark place. They should never be stored near solvents, petrol, oils, etc.

Warning

- Wheel rim size and tyre size for your Volvo are specified to meet stringent requirements for stability and driving characteristics. Unapproved combinations of wheel rim size and tyre size may have a negative effect on the car's stability and driving characteristics.
- Any damage caused by the fitting of unapproved combinations of wheel rim size and tyre size is not covered by the new car warranty. Volvo accepts no liability for death, personal injury or any costs caused by such installations.

[1] There may be deviations for certain tyre dimensions.

17.7. Approved wheel and tyre sizes

In certain countries not all approved sizes are indicated by the registration document or other documents. The following table shows all approved combinations of wheel rims and tyres.

Front:	235/50 R19 7,5x19x50,5	235/45 R20 8x20x50.5
Rear:	255/45 R19 8.5x19x56	255/40 R20 9x20x58.5

Important

Front wheels must not change place with rear wheels and vice versa.

---

18. Loading, storage and passenger compartment

18.1. Loading

18.1.1. Recommendations for loading

There are a number of things that are important to bear in mind when loading the car.

Payload depends on the car's kerb weight. The total of the weight of the passengers and all accessories reduces the car's payload by a corresponding weight.

> **Warning**
>
> The car’s driving properties change depending on the weight and positioning of the load.

Loading in the cargo area

Good things to remember when loading:

- Position the load firmly against the rear seat's backrest.
- Heavy objects should be placed as low as possible. Avoid placing heavy loads on lowered backrests.
- Cover sharp edges with something soft to avoid damaging the upholstery.
- Secure all loads to the load retaining eyelets with straps or web lashings.

> **Warning**
>
> A loose object weighing 20 kg (44 pounds) can, in a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h (30 mph) carry the impact of an item weighing 1000 kg (2200 pounds).

> **Warning**
>
> Leave 10 cm (4 inches) space between the load and the side windows if the car is loaded to above the top edge of the door windows. Otherwise, the intended protection of the inflatable curtain, which is concealed in the headlining, may be compromised.

> **Warning**
>
> Always secure the load. Always secure the load. During heavy braking the load may otherwise shift, causing personal injury to the car's occupants.
>
> Cover sharp edges and sharp corners with something soft.
>
> Apply the parking brake when loading/unloading.

Increasing the space in the cargo area

To expand the cargo area and simplify loading, the rear seat's backrest can be lowered. Note that objects must not prevent the function of the WHIPS system for the front seats if any of the rear seat's backrests is folded down.

A through-load hatch* in the rear seat can be folded down for carrying long and narrow loads.

* Option/accessory.

18.1.2. Bag hooks

Bag hooks keep carrier bags in place and prevent them from overturning and spreading their contents across the cargo area.

Along the sides

There is a bag hook in the side panel on each side of the cargo area.

> **Important**
>
> The bag hooks may be loaded with a maximum of 5 kg (11 lbs).

Under the floor hatch*

1 Lift the handle in the centre of the cargo area floor and fold up the floor.

2 Move the cargo area floor forward to upright position and fit it in the adjustment groove on each side.

> It is now possible to hang bags with handles at a suitable height on the hooks.

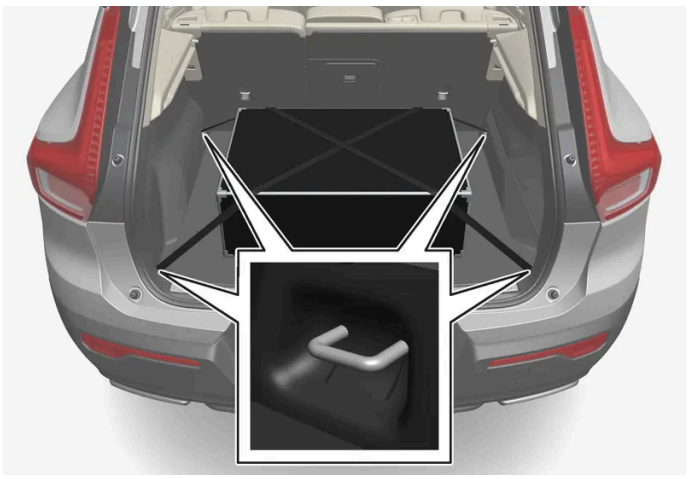
In glovebox

There is also an extensible hook in the glovebox that can be used for hanging up a bag.

* Option/accessory.

18.1.3. Load retaining eyelets

Use the load retaining eyelets to attach straps in order to anchor items in the cargo area.



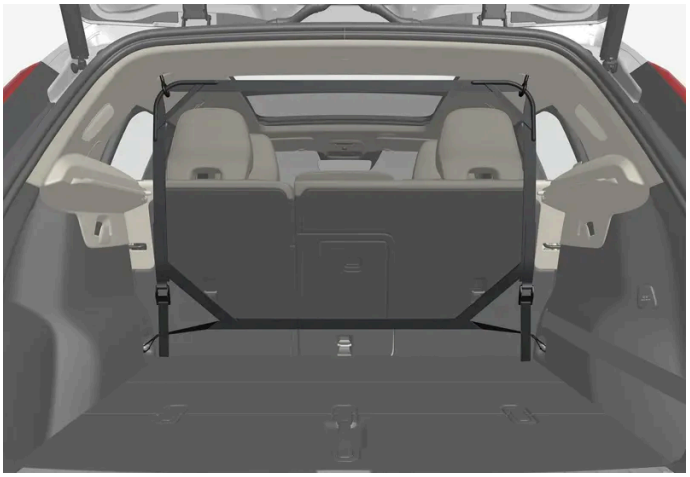
The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

> **Warning**
>
> Hard, sharp and heavy objects that are loose or protrude may cause injury during heavy braking.
>
> Always secure large and heavy objects with a seatbelt or cargo retaining straps.

18.1.4. Fitting and removing the safety net*

The safety net prevents loads from being thrown forward in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden braking.

The safety net is fitted into four mounting points.



For reasons of safety, the safety net must always be fastened and anchored as described below.

The net is made of a strong nylon fabric and can be secured two different locations in the car:

- Rear fitting - behind the rear seat.
- Front fitting - behind the front seats.

> **Warning**
>
> Loads in the luggage compartment must be anchored well, and also using a correctly fitted safety net.

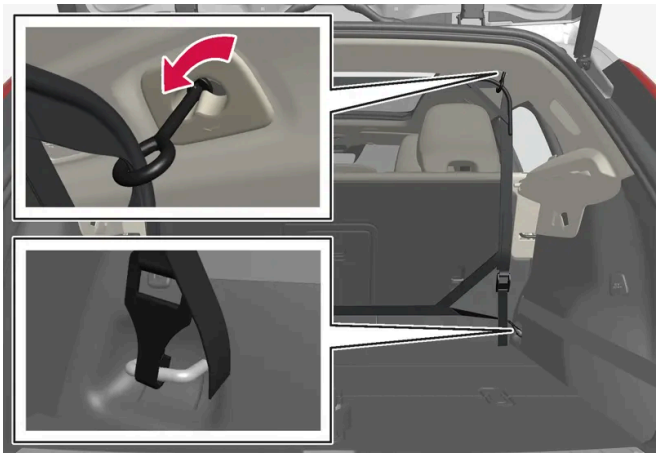
Fitting the safety net

> **Warning**
>
> Check that the safety net's upper mountings are correctly fitted and that the puller-straps are securely hooked on.
>
> Damaged safety nets must not be used.

Note

With forward mounting, the safety net is most easily mounted via the rear doors.

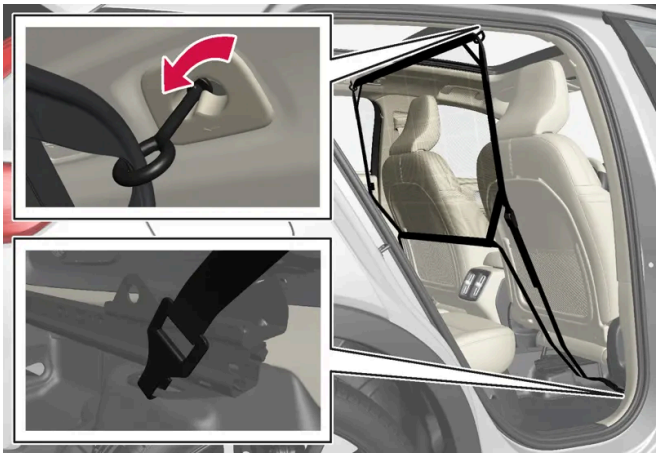
1. Unfold the safety net with the upper attachment hooks facing up.
2. Hook one retaining hook of the net into the front or rear roof mounting with the anchoring strap locks turned towards you.
3. Hook the net's second attachment hook to the roof bracket on the opposite side.

   Take care to press forward the net's retaining hooks for each respective roof mounting's front end position.
4. 

   Rear fitting.

   For rear fitting:

   With the net fitted in the rear roof mountings, hook the safety net's puller-straps into the front load retaining eyelets in the cargo area.

   Front fitting.

   For front fitting:

   With the net fitted in the front roof mountings, hook the puller-straps into the outer eyes on the rear of all seat slide rails. The procedure is facilitated if the backrests are straightened and the seats are moved forward slightly.

   Pay attention to make sure that you do not exert hard pressure on the net when the seat and backrest are moved back again. Only adjust until the seat or backrest makes contact with the net.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

> **Important**
>
> If a seat or backrest is pushed backwards hard into the safety net, the net and roof mounts may be damaged.

5 Tension the safety net with the anchoring straps.

Removing the safety net

The safety net can be easily removed and folded up.

1 Reduce safety net tension by pressing the button in the anchoring strap lock and feeding out a little of the anchoring strap on each side.

2 Press in the catches and detach both of the anchoring strap's hooks.

3 Undo the upper attachments and release the net from the roof mountings.

4 Fold up the net and store it in its case.

* Option/accessory.

18.1.5. Roof load and loading on load carriers

For loading on the car's roof, the load carriers that Volvo have developed are recommended.

This is to reduce the risk of damage to the car. Volvo's load carriers are available for purchase at authorised Volvo retailers.

Carefully follow the installation instructions supplied with the carriers.

- Distribute the load evenly over the load carriers. Put the heaviest objects at the bottom.
- Check periodically that the load carriers and load are properly secured. Lash the load securely with retaining straps.
- If the load is longer than the car at the front, e.g. a canoe or kayak, fit the towing eye to its front socket and attach the bungee to this.
- The size of the area exposed to the wind, and therefore energy consumption, increase with the size of the load.
- Drive gently. Avoid quick acceleration, heavy braking and hard cornering.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

> **Warning**
>
> The car's centre of gravity and driving characteristics are altered by roof loads.
>
> Follow the car's specifications with regard to weights and maximum permitted load.

18.1.6. Towbar-mounted bicycle rack*

When using a bicycle rack, the bicycle racks that Volvo has developed are recommended.

This is in order to avoid damage to the car and in order to achieve the maximum possible safety during a journey. Volvo's bicycle racks are available for purchase at authorised Volvo dealers.

Carefully follow the instructions enclosed with the bicycle rack.

- Bicycle rack including load must weigh a maximum of 75 kg (165 pounds).
- Rear Auto Brake should be deactivated before driving with a bicycle rack.

> **Warning**
>
> Incorrect use of the bicycle rack may cause damage to the towbar and car.
>
> The bicycle rack can loosen from the towbar if it
>
> - is incorrectly fitted on the towball
> - is overloaded, see the bicycle rack's instructions for maximum load weight
> - is used for carrying something other than bicycles.

The car's driving characteristics are affected when a bicycle rack is fitted on the towbar. For example due to:

- increased weight
- reduced acceleration capacity
- reduced ground clearance
- changed braking capacity.

Recommendations for loading bicycles on the bicycle rack

The larger the distance between the load's centre of gravity and the towball, the greater the load on the towbar.

Load according to the following recommendations:

- Fit the heaviest bicycle furthest in, closest to the car.
- Keep the load symmetrical and as close to the centre of the car as possible e.g. by loading the bicycles facing alternately if several bicycles are loaded.
- Remove loose objects from the bicycle for transportation, e.g. bicycle basket, battery, child seat. Partly to reduce the load on the towbar and bicycle rack, and partly to reduce the wind resistance, which affects range.

- Do not use protective covers on the bicycles. This may affect manoeuvrability, impair visibility and increase energy consumption. It may also lead to an increased load on the towbar.

* Option/accessory.

18.2. Cargo area

18.2.1. Safety net, safety grille and cargo cover

18.2.1.1. Fitting and removing the safety net*

The safety net prevents loads from being thrown forward in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden braking.

The safety net is fitted into four mounting points.

For reasons of safety, the safety net must always be fastened and anchored as described below.

The net is made of a strong nylon fabric and can be secured two different locations in the car:

- Rear fitting - behind the rear seat.
- Front fitting - behind the front seats.

Warning

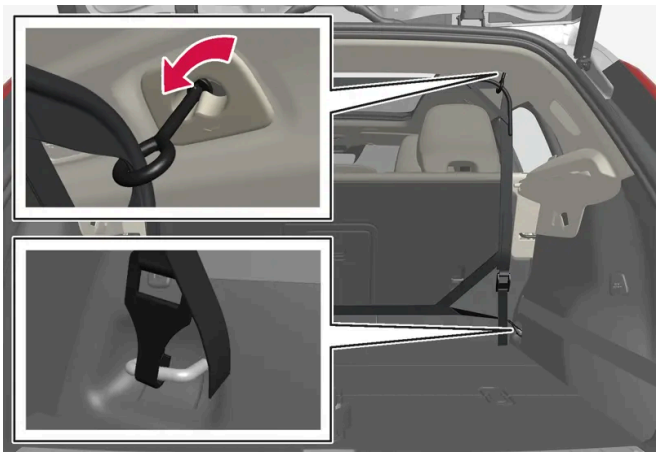
Loads in the luggage compartment must be anchored well, and also using a correctly fitted safety net.

Fitting the safety net

> **Warning**
>
> Check that the safety net's upper mountings are correctly fitted and that the puller-straps are securely hooked on.
>
> Damaged safety nets must not be used.

> **Note**
>
> With forward mounting, the safety net is most easily mounted via the rear doors.

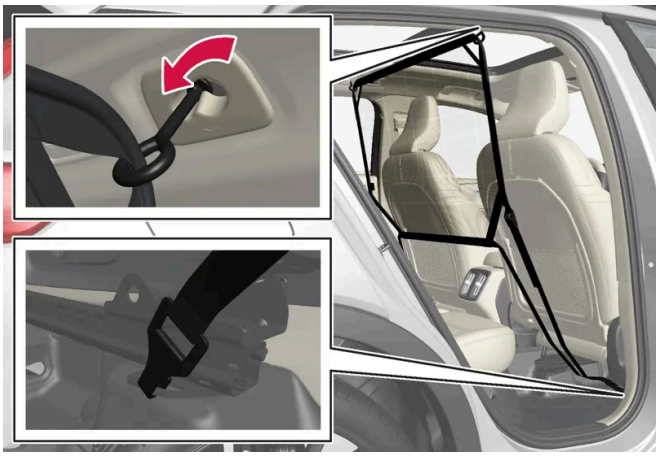
1. Unfold the safety net with the upper attachment hooks facing up.
2. Hook one retaining hook of the net into the front or rear roof mounting with the anchoring strap locks turned towards you.
3. Hook the net's second attachment hook to the roof bracket on the opposite side.

   Take care to press forward the net's retaining hooks for each respective roof mounting's front end position.
4. 

   Rear fitting.

   For rear fitting:

With the net fitted in the rear roof mountings, hook the safety net's puller-straps into the front load retaining eyelets in the cargo area.



Front fitting.

For front fitting:

With the net fitted in the front roof mountings, hook the puller-straps into the outer eyes on the rear of all seat slide rails. The procedure is facilitated if the backrests are straightened and the seats are moved forward slightly.

Pay attention to make sure that you do not exert hard pressure on the net when the seat and backrest are moved back again. Only adjust until the seat or backrest makes contact with the net.

> **Important**
>
> If a seat or backrest is pushed backwards hard into the safety net, the net and roof mounts may be damaged.

5 Tension the safety net with the anchoring straps.

Removing the safety net

The safety net can be easily removed and folded up.

1 Reduce safety net tension by pressing the button in the anchoring strap lock and feeding out a little of the anchoring strap on each side.

2 Press in the catches and detach both of the anchoring strap's hooks.

3 Undo the upper attachments and release the net from the roof mountings.

4 Fold up the net and store it in its case.

* Option/accessory.

18.2.2. Cargo area

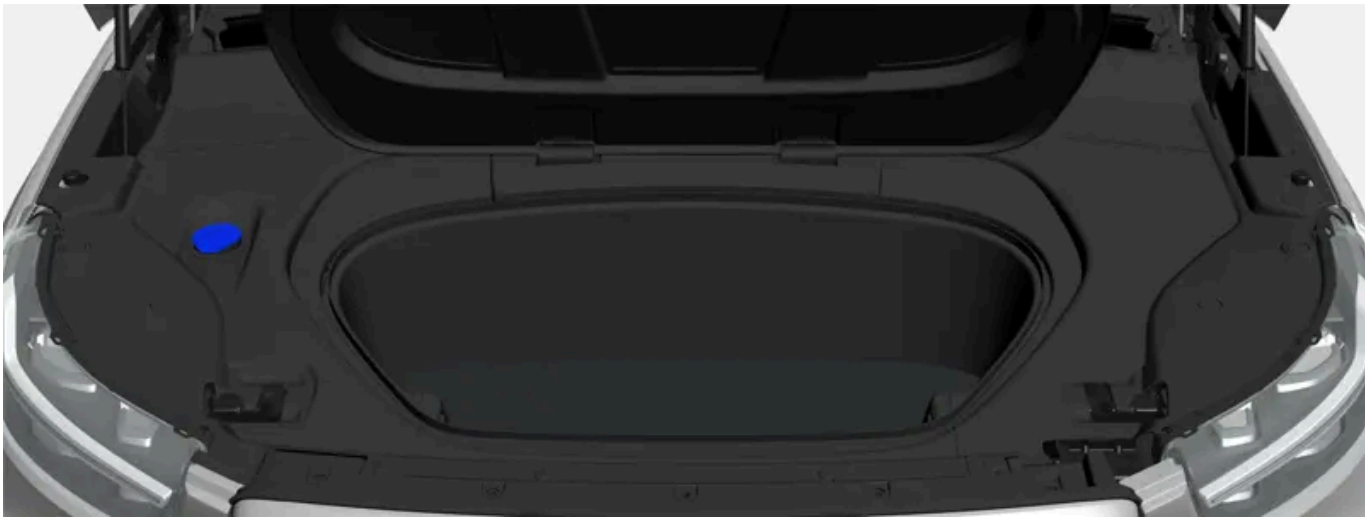
The car has a flexible cargo area that makes it possible to transport and secure large objects. There is also a front luggage compartment under the bonnet.

Cargo area with storage space under the cargo floor.

By folding down the backrests in the rear seat, the cargo area can become quite spacious. Use the load retaining eyelets or bag holders available for holding the load securely in place. The parcel shelf can be removed easily to make room for bulky loads.

If the car is equipped with a spare wheel then this is attached on the cargo area floor.

Front luggage compartment



There is additional storage space under the bonnet. The car's towing eye and emergency puncture repair kit are also stored in the cargo area.

18.2.3. Bag hooks

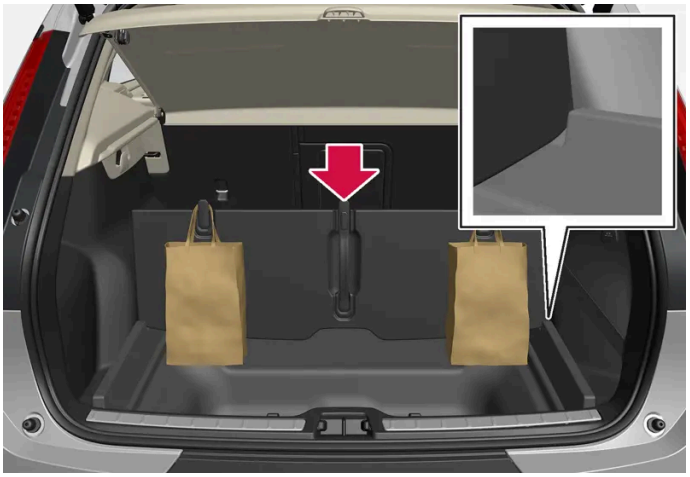
Bag hooks keep carrier bags in place and prevent them from overturning and spreading their contents across the cargo area.

Along the sides

There is a bag hook in the side panel on each side of the cargo area.

> **Important**
>
> The bag hooks may be loaded with a maximum of 5 kg (11 lbs).

Under the floor hatch*



1. Lift the handle in the centre of the cargo area floor and fold up the floor.
2. Move the cargo area floor forward to upright position and fit it in the adjustment groove on each side.

> It is now possible to hang bags with handles at a suitable height on the hooks.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

In glovebox

There is also an extensible hook in the glovebox that can be used for hanging up a bag.

* Option/accessory.

18.2.4. First aid kit*

The first aid kit contains first aid equipment.

Store the first aid kit in a suitable place in the cargo area.

* Option/accessory.

18.2.5. Remove and store the parcel shelf

The parcel shelf can be removed to increase the size of the cargo area.

Removing parcel shelf

1 1

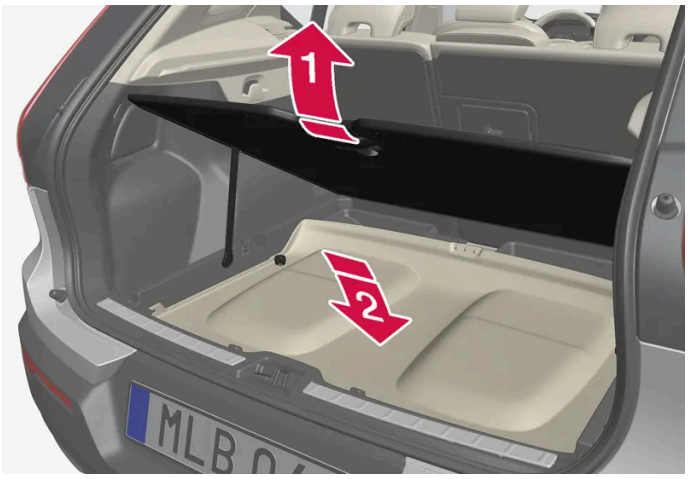
Detach the parcel shelf's lifting eyes on both sides.

2 2

Unhook the parcel shelf at the front edge and remove it.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Parcel shelf storage beneath the cargo area floor



The removed parcel shelf can be stored under the cargo area floor.

1 1

Fold up the cargo area floor and secure it in raised position with the support arm.

2 2

Turn the upper side of the parcel shelf downwards and lower it into the space with the rear part facing forwards.

With folding cargo area floor*:

1

Fold up the folding cargo area floor forwards to be able to lower the parcel shelf downwards with the upper side turned down and the rear part facing forwards.

2 Fold the cargo area floor back to level position.

* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

18.2.6. Folding up the cargo area floor

The cargo area floor can be secured in raised position using the support arm.

1 Grip the handle to fold up the cargo area floor.

2 Fold up the support arm and secure the end in the socket on the underside of the cargo area floor.

> The cargo area floor remains in raised position.

With folding cargo area floor*

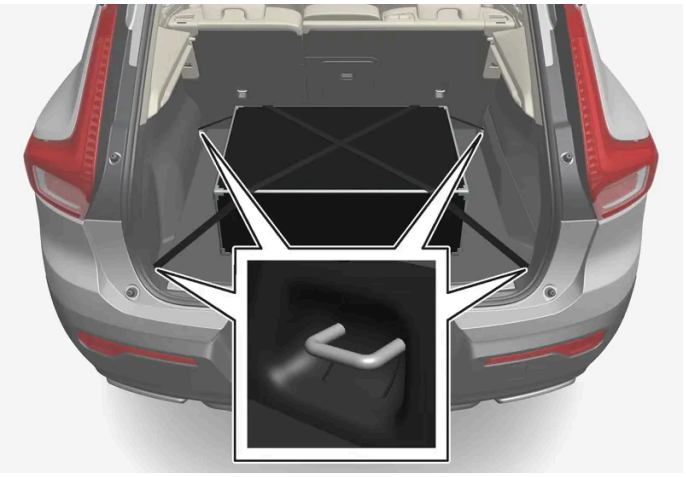
1 Lift the handle in the middle of the folding cargo area floor and fold it forwards.

* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

18.2.7. Load retaining eyelets

Use the load retaining eyelets to attach straps in order to anchor items in the cargo area.



Warning

Hard, sharp and heavy objects that are loose or protrude may cause injury during heavy braking.

Always secure large and heavy objects with a seatbelt or cargo retaining straps.

18.2.8. Warning triangle

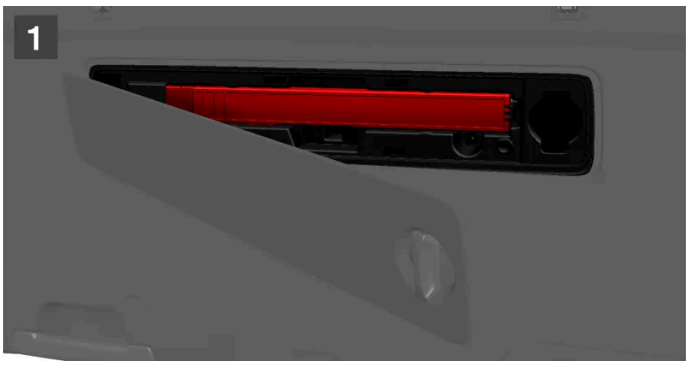
Use the warning triangle to warn other road users if the car is stationary in traffic.

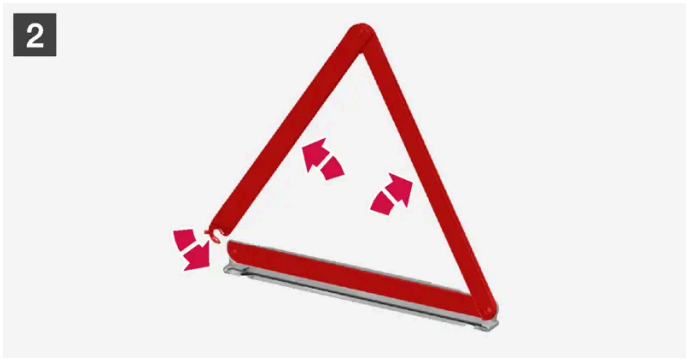
Also activate the hazard warning flashers.

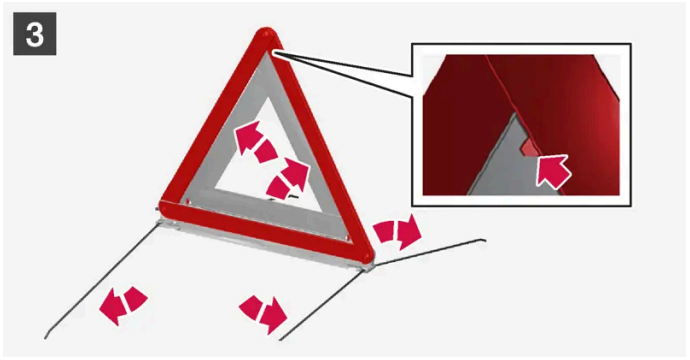
Storage spaces

The warning triangle is located in the compartment on the inside of the tailgate.

Folding up the warning triangle







1 1

Open the hatch by first turning the knob a quarter turn and then pulling the hatch from its brackets in the top and bottom edges.

Press the latch that secures the warning triangle slightly to the right and remove the case.

2 2

Remove the warning triangle from the case, unfold it and put the ends together.

3 3

Fold out the warning triangle's support legs.

Follow the regulations for the use of a warning triangle. Position the warning triangle in a suitable place with regard to traffic.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Make sure that the warning triangle and case are properly secured in their storage space and that the hatch is fully closed after use.

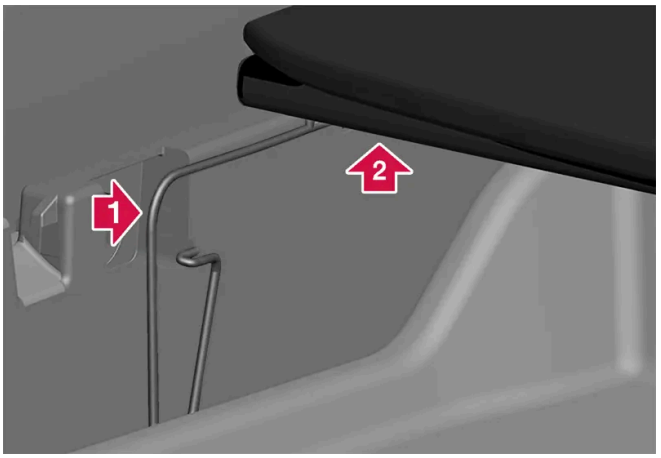
18.2.9. Release folding cargo area floor*

The folding cargo area floor can be detached for easier access to the lower storage area.

1

Fold the folding cargo area floor forwards.

2



1 Press the lock spring as indicated by the arrow until it stops. Maintain the pressure.

2 At the same time, lift the cargo area floor a few millimetres up from the base.

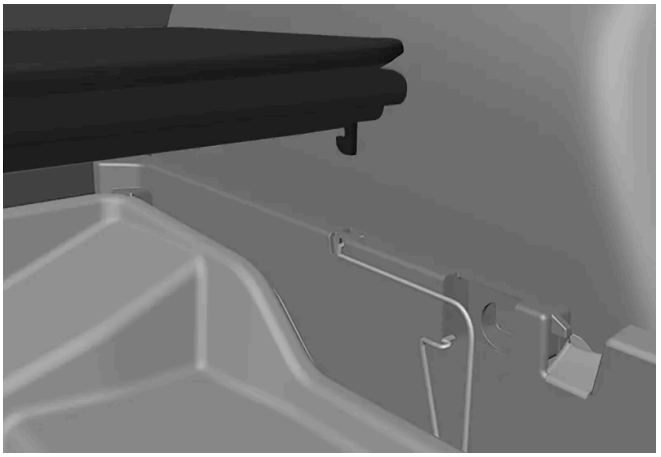
The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

3 Release the pressure from the lock spring, but continue holding up the cargo area floor.

4

Carry on holding up the cargo area floor and press the lock spring on the other side as indicated by the arrow.

> If the actions in section 2 have been completed correctly, the cargo area floor should now have been released from its side brackets.



The cargo area floor can be placed carefully back onto the lock springs without being locked in position.

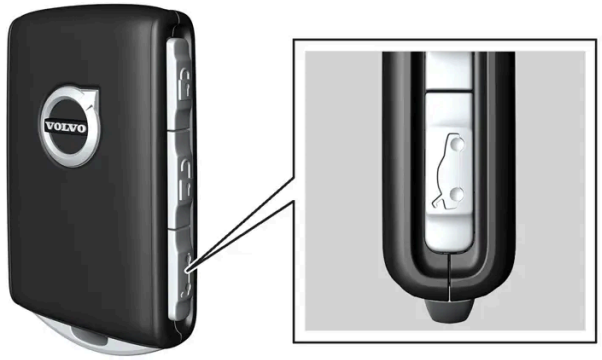
> **Note**
>
> The cargo area floor is also secured with hinges at the front.
>
> Volvo recommends leaving the cargo area floor in its front hinges.

5 Press on the cargo area floor to lock it back into its brackets.

* Option/accessory.

18.2.10. Unlocking the tailgate with a key button

There is a button on the key to unlock the tailgate only.



1 Press the key's button.

> The tailgate is unlocked but remains closed.
The side doors are still locked and the alarm is armed*. The lock and alarm indicator on the instrument panel extinguishes in order to show that the entire car is not locked.
You can open the tailgate by gripping the rubberised pressure plate underneath its lower edge.
If the tailgate is not opened within 2 minutes then it is relocked and the alarm is re-armed.

Power operated tailgate*

1 Hold the key's button depressed for a couple of seconds.

> The tailgate is unlocked and opened, while the side doors remain locked and their alarm functions armed*.

Note

If the system for the power operated tailgate* works continuously for a long time, it is deactivated in order not to overload it. It can be used again after a few minutes.

* Option/accessory.

18.2.11. Setting the max. opening for electrically operated tailgate*

Set the amount the tailgate should be opened if the car is, for example, parked in a garage with limited headroom.

To adjust max. opening

1 Open the tailgate manually - and stop it in the desired opening position.

2 Press and hold button on the bottom of the tailgate for approx. 3 seconds.

> Two acoustic signals sound to indicate that the set position has been saved.

Note

It is not possible to program an opening position lower than half-open tailgate.

Reset max. opening

1 Open the tailgate manually to the fully open position.

2 Press and hold the button on the underside of the tailgate for approx. 3 seconds.

> Two acoustic signals sound to indicate that the set position has been cleared.

* Option/accessory.

18.2.12. Operating the tailgate with foot movement*

Being able to open and close the tailgate with a foot movement* under the rear bumper makes things easier when your hands are full.

If the car is equipped with keyless locking and unlocking* then you can unlock the tailgate with a foot movement.

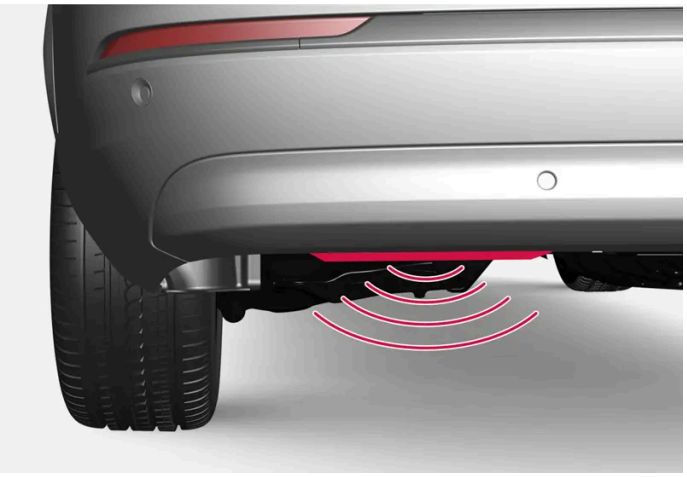
The function with both opening and closing of the tailgate is also available when the car is equipped with power operated tailgate*.

Note

The foot-operated tailgate function is available in two versions:

- Opening and closing with foot movement
- Only unlocking with foot movement (lift up the tailgate manually to open it)

Note that the function for opening and closing with foot movement requires power operated tailgate*.



The sensor is located slightly to the left of the bumper.

One of the car's keys must be within range behind the car, approx. 1 metre (3 feet), for opening and closing to be possible. This also applies to an already unlocked car in order to avoid accidental opening e.g. in a car wash.

Opening and closing with foot movement

1

Make **one** forward kicking motion in the sensor area under the rear bumper. Then take a step back. The bumper must not be touched.

> A short acoustic signal sounds when opening or closing is activated - the tailgate is opened/closed.

If several kicking motions take place without a key sufficiently close, opening will not be possible until after a certain delay.

Do not leave your foot positioned under the car during the kicking motion. This could cause activation to fail.

Cancelling opening or closing with foot movement

1 Make **one** forward kicking motion while opening or closing is in progress.

> Opening or closing the tailgate is stopped.

The key does not need to be in the vicinity of the car to cancel opening or closing of the tailgate.

If the tailgate is stopped close to closed position, the next activation will open the tailgate.

> **Note**
>
> Make sure you keep the area around the foot movement detector clean. A build-up of dirt, ice or snow may disrupt its function.

> **Note**
>
> Pay attention to the possibility that the system may be activated in a car wash if the key is within range.

* Option/accessory.

18.2.13. Unlocking the tailgate from the inside of the car

The tailgate can be unlocked from inside the car using a button beside the steering wheel on the instrument panel.

1 Press the button on the instrument panel.

> The tailgate is unlocked and can be opened from the outside.

With the power operated tailgate option*:

1 Hold the instrument panel's button depressed for a couple of seconds.

> The tailgate is opened.
The same button can then be used to close the tailgate.

Note

If the system for the power operated tailgate* works continuously for a long time, it is deactivated in order not to overload it. It can be used again after a few minutes.

* Option/accessory.

18.2.14. Keyless unlocking of the tailgate*

With keyless locking and unlocking, it is sufficient to press lightly on the rubberised pressure plate underneath by the tailgate's handle to unlock.

Note

One of the car's keys must be within range behind the car for unlocking to work.

The tailgate is held closed by an electrical lock.

To open:

1 Press gently on the rubberised pressure plate beneath the tailgate handle.

> The lock is released.

2 Lift by the outside handle in order to open the tailgate.

Important

- Handle the rubber panel with care to avoid damage to its electrical contact. Minimal force is required for activation.
- Do not exert the lifting force on the rubber panel when opening – lift the handle.

It is also possible to unlock the tailgate with a foot movement* under the rear bumper, see separate section.

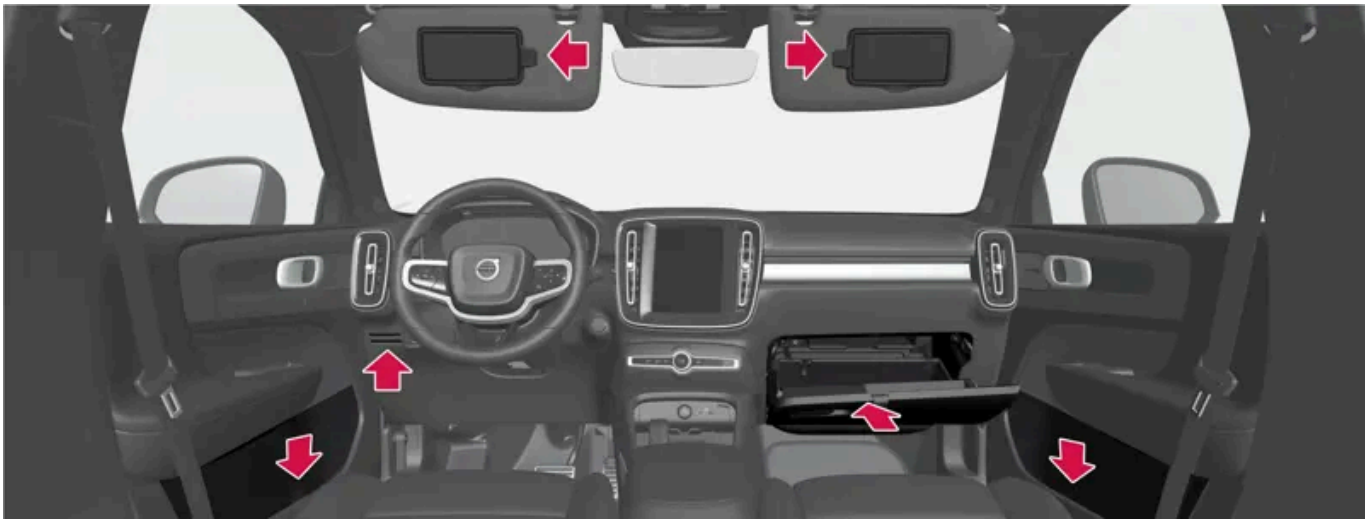
* Option/accessory.

18.3. Storage and passenger compartment

18.3.1. Passenger compartment interior

Overview of the passenger compartment's interior and storage locations.

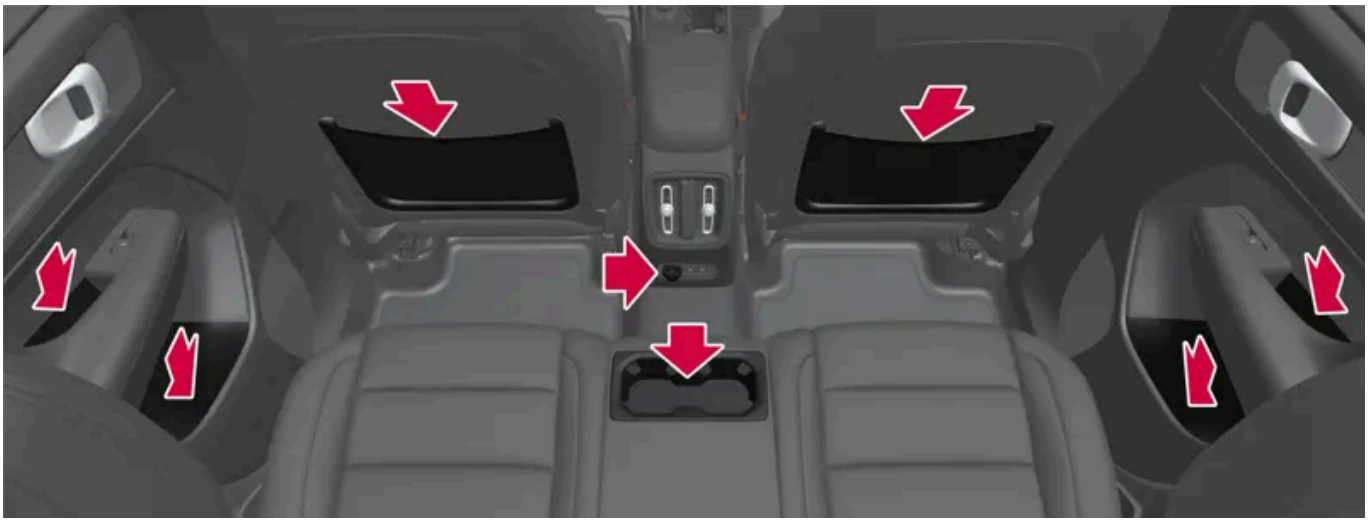
Front seat



Storage compartment in door panel, card holder* beside the steering wheel, sun visor and glovebox with extensible hook.

Storage compartment for legroom, electrical socket and USB ports above the wireless phone charger*, cup holder and storage under armrest in the tunnel console.

Rear seat



Storage compartment in the door panel, cup holder* in the centre seat backrest, storage pocket on the front seat backrest*, as well as USB ports in the tunnel console.

Warning

Keep loose objects such as phones, cameras, remote controls for accessories, etc. in the glove compartment or other compartments. Otherwise they may injure people in the car in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

Important

Keep in mind that high gloss surfaces, for example, are easily scratched by metal objects. Do not place keys, phones and other items on sensitive surfaces.

* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

18.3.2. Emptying the ashtray*

When there is a cigarette lighter fitted in the car there is a detachable ashtray in the tunnel console.

1 Detach the ashtray by pulling it straight up and empty the contents.

2 Refit the ashtray in the tunnel console.

> **Warning**
>
> Exercise caution with smouldering glow and ash so that they do not damage the interior or injure passengers, for example. Only extinguish cigarettes on the intended surface.

* Option/accessory.

18.3.3. Electrical sockets

If a problem occurs with an electrical socket, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

12 V electrical socket

12 V electrical socket in tunnel console, front seat.

The 12 V sockets can be used for various accessories designed for this, such as music players, cooler boxes and mobile phones.

18.3.4. Using electrical sockets

12 V sockets can be used for various accessories designed for this, such as music players, cooler boxes and mobile phones.

In order for the socket to supply current, the car must be in Comfort or Drive mode.

The socket is switched off automatically when the driver leaves the car. If the car remains unlocked or is locked with reduced alarm level, the socket is active for approximately a further 10 minutes.

Note

Accessories that are connected to the electrical sockets may be activated even when the car's electrical system is disconnected or if preconditioning is used. For this reason, unplug the plugs when they are not in use.

Warning

- Do not use accessories with large or heavy connectors - they can damage the socket or come loose when driving.
- Do not use accessories that can cause interference to the car's radio receiver or electrical system for example.
- Position the accessory so that it is not at risk of injuring the driver or passengers in the event of heavy braking or collision.
- Keep an eye on connected accessories as they can generate heat that can burn passengers or the interior.

Using 12 V sockets

Important

Maximum socket output is 120 W (10 A) per socket.

18.3.5. Using the glovebox

The glovebox is located on the passenger side. Among other things, the car's printed owner's information can be stored in the glovebox. There is also space for a pen and card holder.

Glovebox with extensible hook.

The hook on the glovebox can be extended when the glovebox is open so that it can be used after the glovebox has been closed.

Important

The hook must be either fully retracted or fully extended otherwise it will be broken when the glovebox is closed.

18.3.6. Sun visors

There are sun visors in the roof in front of the driver seat and the front seat passenger seat which can be folded down and angled out to the side when necessary.

The figure is schematic - the design may vary.

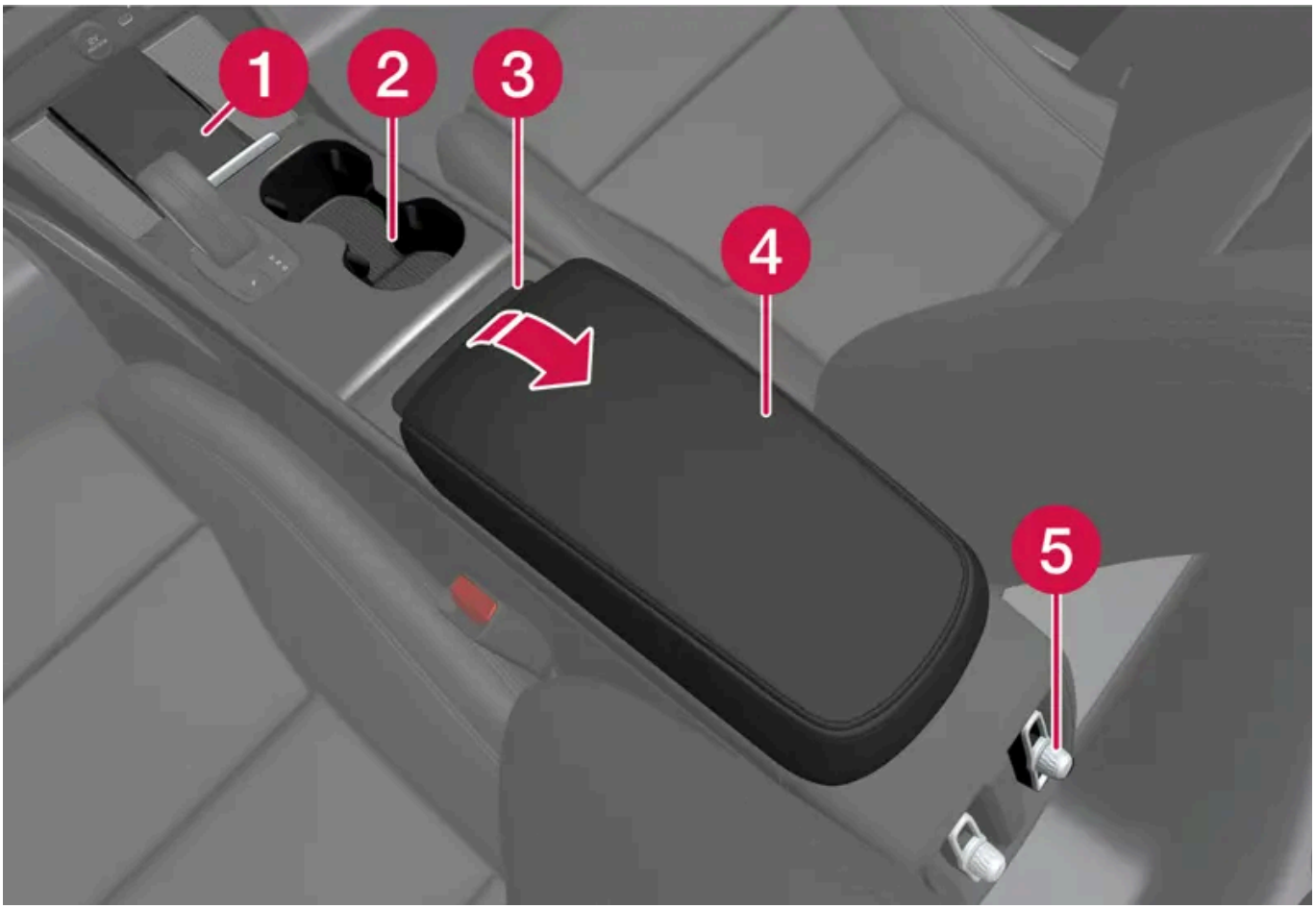
The mirror lighting* is switched on automatically when the guard is lifted up.

The mirror frame incorporates a holder for e.g. cards or tickets.

* Option/accessory.

18.3.7. Tunnel console

The tunnel console is located between the front seats.



1. Wireless phone charger*
2. Storage compartment with cup holder.
3. Detachable waste paper basket.
4. Storage compartment under the armrest.
5. Climate controls for the rear seat climate functions* or storage compartment. There are also USB ports underneath.

Warning

Keep loose objects such as phones, cameras, remote controls for accessories, etc. in the glove compartment or other compartments. Otherwise they may injure people in the car in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

Important

Keep in mind that high gloss surfaces, for example, are easily scratched by metal objects. Do not place keys, phones and other items on sensitive surfaces.

Note

One of the detectors for the alarm* is located under the tunnel console's cup holder. Avoid leaving coins, keys and other metal objects in the cup holder, since this may trigger the alarm.

Note

The USB ports can be used for charging a mobile phone or tablet, for example.

* Option/accessory.

18.3.8. USB ports

There are two USB ports (type C) under the centre display. There are also two USB ports (type C) in the rear part of the tunnel console.

USB ports (type C), front seat.

USB ports (type C) in the tunnel console, rear seat.

The USB ports can be used to charge a phone or tablet, for example.

18.3.9. Use USB ports to charge devices

The USB ports can be used to charge a phone or tablet, for example.

The USB ports can be used when the car is in Comfort or Drive mode.

The ports are switched off automatically when the driver leaves the car. If the car remains unlocked or is locked with a reduced alarm level, the ports remain active for a further approx. 10 minutes.

> **Note**
>
> Accessories that are connected to the ports may be activated even when the car's electrical system is disconnected or if preconditioning is used. For this reason, unplug accessories when they are not in use.
>
> Some devices may become hot during charging. This is normal.

> **Warning**
>
> Position the accessory so that it is not at risk of injuring the driver or passengers in the event of heavy braking or collision.

Use USB ports to charge devices

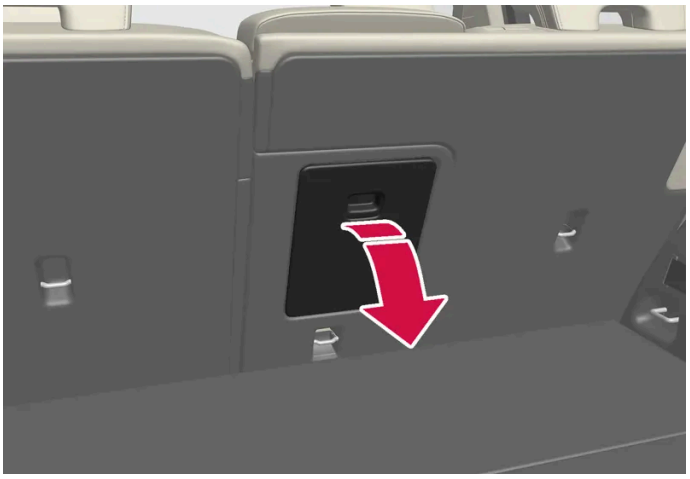
1. Fold down the cover in front of the port and plug in the accessory's connector.
2. Unplug the accessory's connector and fold up the cover when the port is not in use or is left unattended.

Technical specification for USB-C port

- Type C socket
- Version 3.1
- Voltage supply 5 V
- Current supply max. 3.0 A

18.4. Through-load hatch in the rear seat*

The hatch in the rear seat's backrest can be opened to transport long narrow items, e.g. skis.



1. In the cargo area, grip the hatch's handle and fold down the hatch.
2. Fold forward the armrest in the rear seat.
3. Adjust the centre seat's head restraint upwards so that the steel tubes do not block the hatch opening.

* Option/accessory.

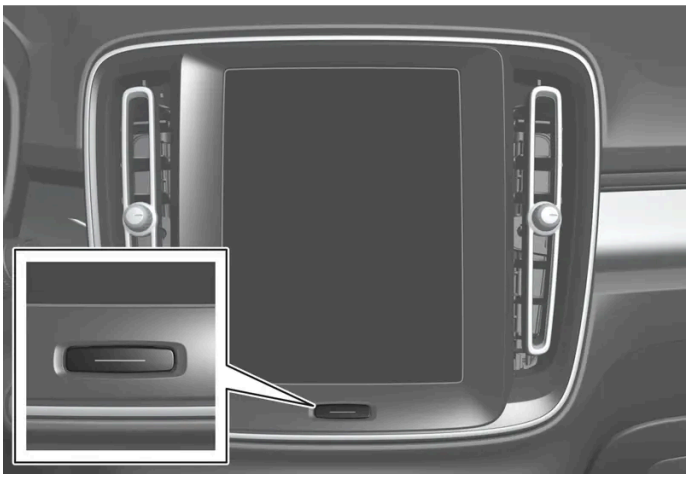
19. Maintenance and service

19.1. Car care

19.1.1. Interior cleaning

19.1.1.1. Cleaning the centre display

Dirt, stains and grease from fingers can affect the centre display's performance and readability. Clean the screen frequently with a microfibre cloth.



1. Turn off the centre display with a long press on the home button.
2. Wipe the screen with a clean and dry microfibre cloth using small circular movements. If necessary, lightly moisten the microfibre cloth with clean water.
3. Activate the display with a short press on the home button.

> **Important**
>
> The microfibre cloth used to clean the centre display must be free from sand and dirt.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Important

When cleaning the centre display, only use gentle pressure on the screen. Heavy pressure can damage the screen.

Important

Do not spray any liquid or caustic chemicals directly on the centre display. Do not use window cleaning agent, other cleaning agents, aerosol spray, solvents, alcohol, ammonia or cleaning agent containing abrasive.

Never use abrasive cloths, paper towels or tissue paper, since they may scratch the centre display.

19.1.1.2. Cleaning the driver display

Gently wipe the display's cover glass with a clean and dry microfibre cloth. If necessary, lightly moisten the microfibre cloth.

Never use cleaning agent. A special cleaning agent available from Volvo dealers can be used for more difficult cleaning.

19.1.1.3. Cleaning the leather steering wheel

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly, and deal with stains straight away. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

Leather needs to breathe. Never cover the leather steering wheel with protective plastic. We recommend Volvo Leather Care Kit/Wipes for cleaning the leather steering wheel. First remove dirt, dust, etc. with a damp sponge or cloth.

Important

Sharp objects, e.g. rings, can damage the leather on the steering wheel.

19.1.1.4. Cleaning the seatbelts

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly, and deal with stains straight away. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

Use water and a synthetic detergent. A special textile cleaning agent is available from Volvo retailers. Ensure that the seatbelt is dry before allowing it to retract.

19.1.1.5. Cleaning the interior

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly, and deal with stains straight away. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

Important

- Certain items of coloured clothing (e.g. dark jeans and suede garments) may stain the upholstery. If this occurs, it is important to clean and treat these parts of the upholstery as soon as possible.
- Never use strong solvents such as washer fluid, pure petrol or white spirit or concentrated alcohol to clean the interior, since this may damage the upholstery as well as other interior materials.
- Never spray the cleaning agent directly onto components that have electrical buttons and controls. Wipe them instead using a moistened cloth containing the cleaning agent.
- Sharp objects and Velcro may damage the fabric upholstery.
- Only use cleaning agents on the type of material for which they were intended.

19.1.1.6. Cleaning textile floor and entrance mats

It is recommended to use a fabric cleaning agent when cleaning mats. Clean regularly, and deal with stains straight away. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

Remove inlaid carpets for separate cleaning of the floor carpet and the inlaid carpets. Each inlay mat is secured with pins.

1. Remove the inlay mat by taking hold of the inlay mat at each pin and lifting the mat straight up.
2. Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust and dirt.

   Note

   The inlay mats must not be swung around without care or hit against objects to remove dirt since this can crack the inlay mats.
3. A textile cleaner is recommended for stains on the floor mat, after vacuuming.
4. After cleaning, fit the inlay mat in place by pressing it in at each pin.

Warning

Only use one inlaid mat at each seat, and check before setting off that the mat by the driver's seat is firmly affixed and secured in the pins so that it does not get caught adjacent to and under the pedals.

19.1.1.7. Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood parts

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly, and deal with stains straight away.

A fibrillated fibre or microfibre cloth, lightly moistened with water, available from Volvo dealers, is recommended for cleaning interior parts and surfaces.

Do not scrape or rub stains. Never use strong stain removers, either.

> **Important**
>
> Do not use solvent that contains alcohol when cleaning the glass for the driver display.

> **Important**
>
> Keep in mind that high gloss surfaces are easily scratched. Clean these surfaces with a clean, dry microfibre cloth using small, circular motions. If needed, dampen the microfibre cloth with a little clean water.

19.1.1.8. Cleaning leather upholstery*

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly, and deal with stains straight away. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

Volvo's leather upholstery* is treated to preserve its original appearance.

Leather upholstery* is a natural product that changes and acquires a beautiful patina over time. Regular cleaning and treatment are required in order that the properties and colours of the leather shall be preserved. Volvo offers a comprehensive product, Volvo Leather Care KitWipes, for cleaning and treatment of leather upholstery. The protective outer layer of the leather is preserved when this is used according to the instructions.

To achieve results that are as good as possible, Volvo recommends cleaning and application of the protective cream one to four times per year (or more frequently if required). Volvo Leather Care Kit/Wipes is available from Volvo dealers.

Cleaning the leather upholstery

1. Apply the leather cleaner to a damp sponge and squeeze until a foam is created.
2. Use the sponge on the stain in a circular motion.
3. Thoroughly dampen the stain using the sponge, allow the sponge to absorb the stain without scrubbing.
4. Wipe the stain with a soft cloth and allow the leather to dry thoroughly.

Protecting the leather upholstery

1. Apply a small amount of leather protective agent to a cloth and then apply it to the leather in light circular motions.
2. Allow to dry for about 20 minutes.

> Protecting the leather upholstery makes it more resistant to the stresses from the sun's UV radiation.

* Option/accessory.

19.1.1.9. Cleaning the Microtech upholstery*

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly, and deal with stains straight away. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

Volvo's Microtech upholstery is treated to preserve its original appearance.

Regular cleaning and treatment are required in order that the properties and colours of the upholstery shall be preserved.

Cleaning the Microtech upholstery

1. Vacuum the upholstery.
2. Apply a mild alcohol-free cleaner to a damp sponge and squeeze until it produces foam.
3. Move the sponge over the stain in a circular motion. Thoroughly dampen the stain using the sponge, allow the sponge to absorb the stain without scrubbing.
4. Dry with a soft cloth or rag and then leave the upholstery to dry properly.

Protecting the Microtech upholstery

1. Apply a small amount of leather protective agent to a cloth and then apply it to the leather in light circular motions.
2. Allow to dry for about 20 minutes.

> Protecting the vinyl upholstery makes it more resistant to the stresses from the sun's UV radiation.

* Option/accessory.

19.1.1.10. Cleaning fabric upholstery and headlining

It is recommended to use fabric cleaning agent when cleaning textile fabric and Nubuck textile. Clean if necessary, and treat stains straight away.

> **Important**
>
> Never scrape or rub a stain since this may damage the upholstery.

> **Important**
>
> Never use stain removing agent or strong solvents, they could damage the upholstery.

Cleaning fabric upholstery

1. Start by vacuum cleaning the upholstery.
2. Follow the instructions for the fabric cleaning agent.

3. When cleaning fabric, a spray extraction cleaner is recommended for suction of the washing fluid and subsequent water rinsing.

> **Important**
>
> Some coloured clothing (such as jeans and suede garments) may stain the fabric upholstery. Heavy stains such as oil may be difficult to remove.

> **Important**
>
> Always clean the entire upholstery, even there are only individual stains. This is to avoid water rings.

> **Note**
>
> Do not remove the upholstery for cleaning.

Cleaning the headlining

1. Brush the headlining carefully using a soft brush.
2. Follow the instructions for the fabric cleaning agent.
3. Then use a soft and lint-free cloth to wipe the headlining.

> **Important**
>
> Careless cleaning can damage the headlining.

19.1.2. Exterior cleaning

19.1.2.1. Cleaning the exterior lamps

Dirty lamps have impaired functionality. Clean them regularly, e.g. when charging.

Clean the exterior lamps, such as headlamps and rear lamps, with a soft and clean sponge together with mild soap and luke-warm water.

Temporary condensation on the inside of the lens in connection with cleaning is quite normal. All exterior lamps are designed to withstand this. Condensation is normally vented out from the lamp housing after the lamp has been illuminated for a while.

Important

Do not use any strong cleaning agent or chemicals for cleaning the lamps. Such products, e.g. cleaning agents with alcohol content, may cause the lens to crack.

Important

Do not rub with a dry sponge or rag as it may cause electric discharges that damage components in the lamp.

19.1.2.2. Cleaning the wiper blades

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. The longer the car is left dirty, the more difficult it will be to get it completely clean and there is a risk of scratching the paintwork. Wash the car in a car wash with oil separator. Use car shampoo that is recommended by Volvo.

Asphalt, dust and salt residue on wiper blades, as well as insects, ice etc. on the windscreen, impair the service life of wiper blades.

When cleaning, set the wiper blades in service position.

Note

Wash the wiper blades and windscreen regularly with a lukewarm soap solution or car shampoo. Do not use any strong solvents.

19.1.2.3. Car paintwork

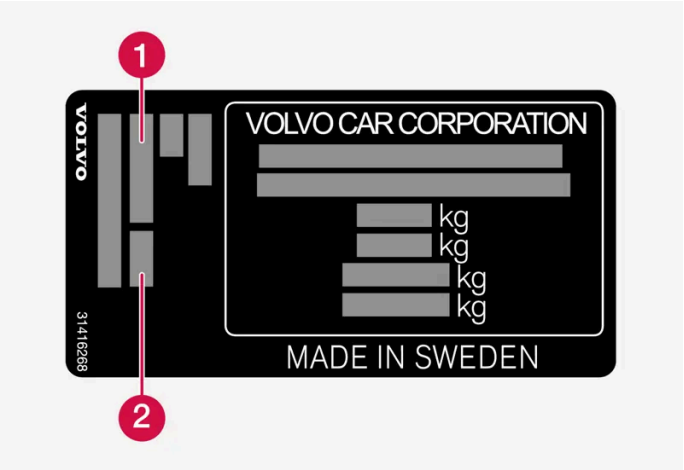
The paintwork consists of several layers and is an important part of the car's rustproofing, and should therefore be checked regularly.

The most common types of paintwork damage are stone chips, scratches, and marks on the edges of wings, doors and bumpers. To avoid the onset of rust, damaged paintwork should be rectified immediately.

19.1.2.4. Colour codes

The decal for the colour code is positioned on the car's right-hand door pillar between the front and rear door and will be visible when the right-hand rear door is opened.

Colour code



1 Exterior colour code

2 Any secondary exterior colour code

19.1.2.5. Touching up minor paintwork damage

Paint is an important part of the car's rustproofing and should therefore be checked regularly. The most common types of paintwork damage are stone chips, scratches, and marks on e.g. the edges of wings, doors and bumpers.

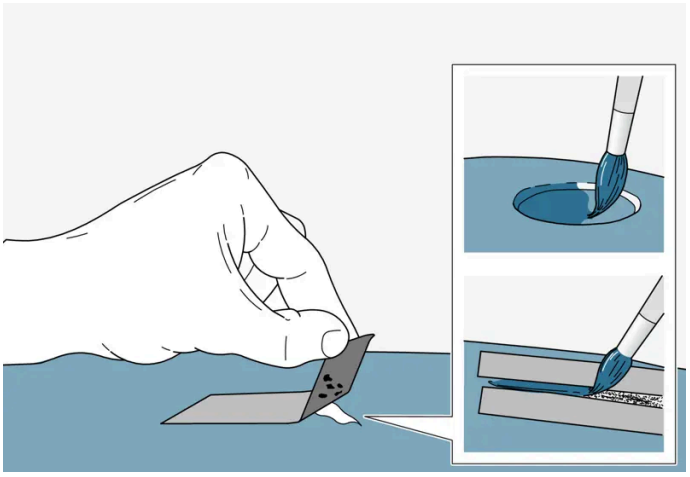
To avoid the onset of rust, damaged paintwork should be rectified immediately.

> **Note**
>
> When paint is repaired the surface must be clean and dry. The temperature of the surface should be at least 15 °C (59 °F).

Materials that may be needed

- Primer – a special adhesive primer in a spray can is available for e.g. plastic-coated bumpers.
- Basecoat and clearcoat - available in spray cans or as touch-up pens/sticks [1].
- Masking tape.
- Fine sand paper.

Applying touch-up paint to the damaged surface



If the damage has not reached down to the metal, the touch-up paint can be applied directly after the surface has been cleaned.

1. Apply a piece of masking tape over the damaged surface. Then remove the tape to remove any loose paint.

   If the damage is down to the metal, use of a primer is appropriate. In the event of damage to a plastic surface, an adhesive primer should be used to give better results - spray into the lid of the spray can and brush on thinly.

2. Before painting, gentle polishing using a very fine abrasive cloth may be carried out locally if required (e.g. if there are any uneven edges). The surface is thoroughly cleaned (grease and salt should be removed) and left to dry.

3. Stir the primer well and apply using a fine brush, a matchstick or similar. Finish off with a basecoat and clearcoat once the primer has dried.

For scratches, implement the same procedure but mask around the damaged area to protect the undamaged paintwork.

Touch-up pens and spray paints for touching up paintwork are available from Volvo dealers.

> **Note**
>
> If the stone chip has not penetrated down to the meal and an undamaged layer of paint remains in place, fill in with base coat and clear coat as soon as the surface has been cleaned.

[1] Follow the instructions that are included with the package for the touch-up pen/stick.

19.1.2.6. Cleaning the exterior

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. This means that the car is easier to clean since the dirt does not attach as firmly. It also reduces the risk of scratches and keeps the car fresh. Wash the car in a

cleaning area with an oil separator, and use car shampoo. Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo.

Important points to remember when washing the car

- Avoid washing the car in direct sunlight[1]. This can cause the detergent or wax to dry and have an abrasive effect.
- Remove bird droppings and tree sap and resin from paintwork as soon as possible. They can contain substances that can very quickly affect and discolour paintwork. For example, use soft paper or sponge soaked in plenty of water. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended for the removal of any discolouration.
- After the car has been washed, there may be tar residue from asphalt. Use tar remover as recommended by Volvo to remove the residual stains.

[1] Does not apply to washing in an automatic car wash.

19.1.2.7. Rustproofing

The car has protection against corrosion.

Anti-corrosion protection for the body consists of metallic protective coatings on the sheet metal, a high-quality painting process, corrosion-protected and minimised metal overlap, and shielding plastic components, abrasion protection and supplemental rust inhibitor on exposed areas. In the chassis, exposed components of the wheel suspension are made of corrosion-resistant cast aluminium.

Inspection and maintenance

The car's anti-corrosion protection normally requires no maintenance, but a good way to reduce the risk of corrosion is to keep the car clean. Strong alkaline or acidic cleaning solutions must be avoided on glossy trim components. Any stone chips should be rectified as soon as they are discovered.

19.1.2.8. Automatic car wash

It is important to prepare the car if it shall be washed in an automatic car wash. Follow the instructions carefully for how to handle the car before and during washing.

An automatic car wash may be a quick and easy way to clean the car, but will not reach all the parts of the car that need to be cleaned on a regular basis. Volvo recommends supplementing automatic car washing with hand washing.

> **Note**
>
> Avoid washing a brand new car in an automatic car wash during the first few months. This would allow the paintwork to fully harden.

Preparations before washing

In an automatic car wash where the car is pulled through the car wash, it is important to switch off functions that prevent the car from rolling freely.

- Secure or remove protruding exterior parts such as retrofitted auxiliary lamps and antennas.
- Make sure that the automatic rain sensor function is deactivated. The windscreen wipers must be switched off the whole time the car is being washed to avoid the risk of damage.
- Deactivate the warning and auto-brake when reversing functions in the centre display's parking camera view. They may be reactivated if the car is restarted, and must be deactivated again.

During washing

> **Important**
>
> Keep the windows, doors and tailgate closed the whole time the car is being washed.
>
> If the car is equipped with keyless locking and unlocking*:
>
> Take out the key and store it openly in the front part of the car while the car is being washed. This minimises the risk of opening the tailgate unintentionally by pressing a button, or that the key is incorrectly detected outside the car.

1. Drive into the car wash and stop at the designated location.
2. Select gear position N.
3. The car travels through the automatic car wash.

   Keep the seatbelt fastened the whole time the car is being washed.

> Do not forget to restore the adjustments that were made before the car wash.

After washing

Press the brake pedal gently for a short time while driving after the brake linings have been exposed to the wetness. This heats the brakes with friction so that they dry more quickly and reduces the risk of corrosion.

> **Warning**
>
> Always test the foot brake and parking brake after washing the car in order to restore their function.

* Option/accessory.

19.1.2.9. Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. The longer the car is left dirty, the more difficult it will be to get it completely clean and there is a risk of scratching the paintwork. Use car shampoo that is recommended by Volvo.

A special cleaning agent available from Volvo dealers is recommended for the cleaning and care of coloured plastic parts, rubber and trim components, e.g. glossy trim mouldings. When using such a cleaning agent the instructions must be followed carefully.

Avoid washing the car with detergent with a pH value below 3.5 or above 11.5. This can cause discolouration of anodised aluminium components*, as illustrated. We advise against use of abrasive polishing agents, as illustrated.

Parts that should be washed using a cleaning agent with a pH value between 3.5 and 11.5.

Important

Avoid waxing and polishing on plastic and rubber.

When using degreasant on plastic and rubber, only rub with light pressure if it is necessary. Use a soft washing sponge.

Polishing glossy trim mouldings could wear away or damage the glossy surface layer.

Polishing agent that contains abrasive must not be used.

Important

Avoid washing the car with cleaning agent with a pH value lower than 3.5 or higher than 11.5. This may result in discolouration of anodised aluminium parts such as roof rack and around the side windows.

Never use metal polishing agent on anodised aluminium parts, this can result in discolouration and destroy the surface treatment.

* Option/accessory.

19.1.2.10. Cleaning wheel rims

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. The longer the car is left dirty, the more difficult it will be to get it completely clean and there is a risk of scratching the paintwork. Perform the cleaning in a car wash with oil separator. Use car shampoo that is recommended by Volvo.

Use rim cleaning agent recommended by Volvo.

Strong rim cleaning agents can damage the surface and cause stains on chrome-plated aluminium rims.

19.1.2.11. Handwashing

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. This means that the car is easier to clean since the dirt does not attach as firmly. It also reduces the risk of scratches and keeps the car fresh. Wash the car in a cleaning area with an oil separator, and use car shampoo. Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo.

Important points to remember when handwashing the car

- Wash the underbody, including wheel housings and bumpers.
- Rinse the entire car until the dissolved dirt has been removed so as to reduce the risk of scratches from washing. Do not spray directly onto the locks.
- If necessary, use cold degreasing agent on very dirty surfaces. Note that in this case, the surfaces must not be hot from the sun.
- Wash using a sponge, car shampoo and plenty of lukewarm water. Ensure that the sponge is dirt-free. Dirt on the sponge may cause you to scratch the car during washing.
- Clean the wiper blades with a lukewarm soap solution or car shampoo.
- Dry the car using a clean, soft chamois or a water scraper. If you avoid allowing drops of water to dry in strong sunlight, you reduce the risk of water drying stains which may need to be polished out.

Important

Dirty headlamps have impaired functionality. Clean them regularly, e.g. when charging.

Do not use any corrosive cleaning agents but use water and a non-scratching sponge instead. See separate section for more information.

Note

Outside lighting such as headlamps and rear lamps may temporarily have condensation on the inside of the lens. This is normal, all exterior lighting is designed to withstand this. Condensation is normally vented out of the lamp housing when the lamp has been switched on for a time.

Important

- Make sure that the panoramic roof* and sun visor are closed before washing the car.
- Never use polishing agent with abrasive properties on the panoramic roof.
- Never use wax on the rubber mouldings around the panoramic roof.

Important

Remember to remove dirt from the drain holes in the doors, the sills, and in the panoramic roof after washing the car.

* Option/accessory.

19.1.2.12. High-pressure washing

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. The longer the car is left dirty, the more difficult it will be to get it completely clean and there is a risk of scratching the paintwork. Wash the car in a car wash with oil separator. Use car shampoo that is recommended by Volvo.

When using high-pressure washing, use sweeping movements and make sure that the nozzle does not come closer than 30 cm (13 in.) to the surface of the car. Do not spray directly onto the locks or within the charging hatch.

Important

Do not rinse water hotter than 60 °C onto the exterior lamps, such as headlamps and rear lamps. See separate section for more information.

19.1.2.13. Polishing and waxing

Polish and wax the car if the paintwork is dull or to give the paintwork extra protection. The car does not need to be polished until it is at least one year old. However, the car can be waxed during this time. Do not polish or wax the car in direct sunlight, the surface being polished should be a maximum of 45 °C (113 °F).

- Wash and dry the car thoroughly before you begin polishing or waxing. Clean off asphalt and tar stains using tar remover or white spirit. More stubborn stains can be removed using fine rubbing paste designed for car paintwork. Use cleaning agent recommended by Volvo.
- Polish first with a polish and then wax with liquid or solid wax. Follow the instructions on the packaging carefully. Many preparations contain both polish and wax.

Important

Never polish or wax any matt details on the car. This can destroy the matt effect and give the surface a permanent shine.

Important

Avoid waxing and polishing on plastic and rubber.

When using degreasant on plastic and rubber, only rub with light pressure if it is necessary. Use a soft washing sponge.

Polishing glossy trim mouldings could wear away or damage the glossy surface layer.

Polishing agent that contains abrasive must not be used.

Important

Use cleaning agent recommended by Volvo. Other treatment such as preserving, sealing, protection, lustre sealing or similar could damage the paintwork. Paintwork damage caused by such treatments is not covered by Volvo warranty.

19.2. Wiper blades and washer fluid

19.2.1. Wiper blades and washer fluid

Together with the washer fluid, the wipers aim to improve visibility as well as headlamp pattern.

The washer nozzles are heated* automatically in cold weather to prevent the washer fluid from freezing.

Information indicating that the washer fluid needs topping up appears in the driver display when there is approx. 1 litre (1 qt) of washer fluid remaining.

* Option/accessory.

19.2.2. Setting the wiper blades in service position

In some situations, the windscreen's wiper blades must be set in service position (vertical position), e.g. when they shall be replaced.

Wiper blades in service position.

In order to change, clean or lift the wiper blades (e.g. for scraping off ice from the windscreen) they must be in service position.

> **Important**
>
> Before placing the wiper blades in the service position, make sure that they are not frozen down.

Activating/deactivating service mode

Service mode can be activated/deactivated when the car is stationary and the windscreen wipers are not on. Service mode is activated/deactivated via the centre display:

1. Press ⚙ in the centre display.
2. Then tap on **Controls** and activate/deactivate wiper blade service position.

The wiper blades also exit the service position if:

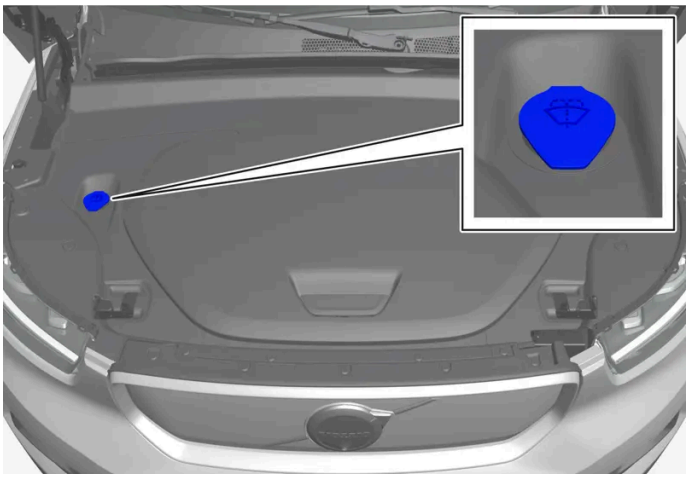
- Windscreen wiping is activated.
- Windscreen washing is activated.
- The rain sensor is activated.
- The car is driven away.

Important

If the wiper arms in service position have been folded up from the windscreen, they must be folded back down onto the windscreen before the activation of wiping, washing or the rain sensor, as well as before driving. This is to avoid scraping the paint on the bonnet.

19.2.3. Topping up washer fluid

Washer fluid is used for cleaning the headlamps as well as the windscreen and rear window. Washer fluid with antifreeze must be used when the temperature is under the freezing point.



Note

When approx. 1 litre (1 qt) of washer fluid remains in the reservoir, the message **Refill washer fluid, level low** appears together with the symbol in the driver display.

When the **Refill washer fluid, level low** message together with the symbol appear in the driver display, it is time to refill washer fluid

1. Open the bonnet with the handle in the passenger compartment and then with the handle under the front edge of the bonnet.
2. Open the washer fluid reservoir cap.

   Washer fluid is filled into the reservoir with the blue cap. The reservoir is used for windscreen washer, rear window washer and headlamp washers*.
3. Top up with washer fluid.
4. Close the washer fluid reservoir cap and then close the bonnet.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Prescribed grade: Washer fluid recommended by Volvo – with frost protection during cold weather and for temperatures below freezing point.

> **Important**
>
> Use Volvo genuine washer fluid or equivalent with a recommended pH of between 6 and 8, in working dilution (e.g. 1:1 with neutral water).

> **Important**
>
> Use washer fluid with antifreeze when the temperature is below freezing to avoid the fluid freezing inside the pump, reservoir and hoses.

Volume:

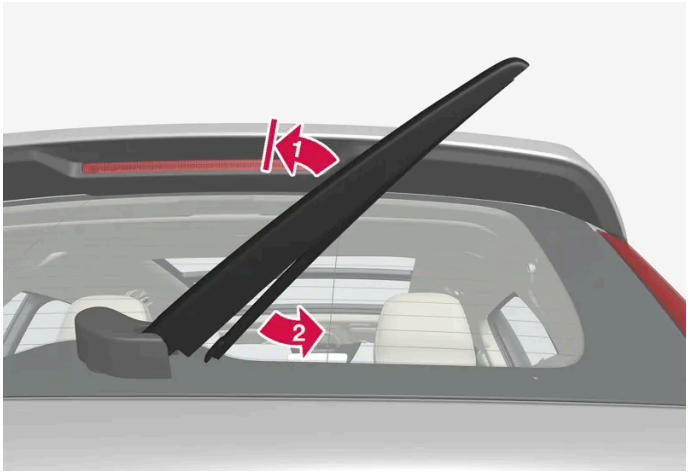
- Cars **with** headlamp washing: 5.5 litres (5.8 qts).
- Cars **without** headlamp washing: 3.5 litres (3.7 qts).

* Option/accessory.

19.2.4. Replacing the wiper blade, rear window

The wiper blades sweep water away from the windscreen and rear window. Together with washer fluid, they aim to clean the windows and ensure visibility while driving. Windscreen and rear window wiper blades can be replaced.

Replacing the wiper blade, rear window



Lift the wiper arm from the window and pull the lower section of the blade to the right.

1 Grip the centre of the wiper arm and lift it from the windscreen to lock position.

> **Note**
>
> There is a lock position at half extension angle that may feel like resistance. This lock prevents the arm from falling back against the windscreen. The wiper arm must be pulled past the lock for wiper blade replacement.

2 Grip the lower part of the blade and pull to the right until the blade loosens from the arm.

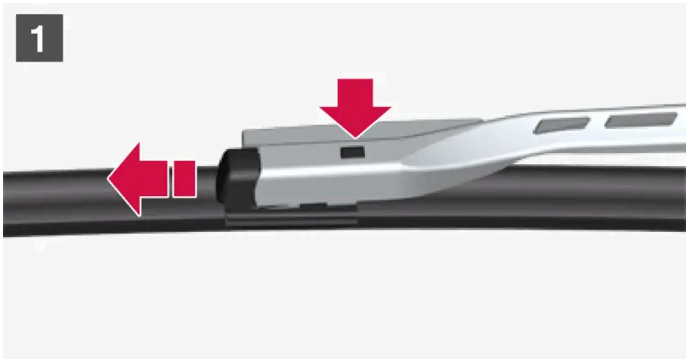
3 Press the new wiper blade into place. You should be able to hear a click. Check that it is firmly installed.

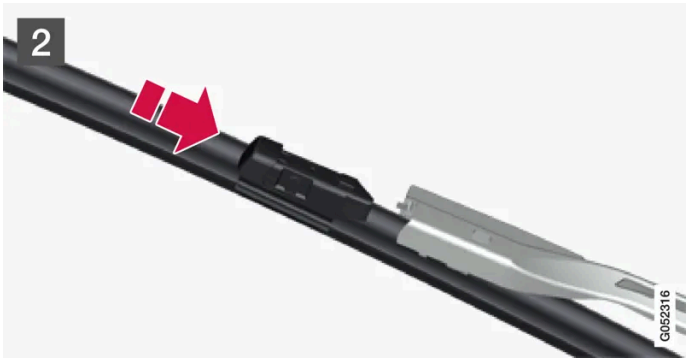
4 Lower the wiper arm.

> **Important**
>
> Check the blades regularly. Neglected maintenance shortens the service life of the wiper blades.

19.2.5. Replacing windscreen wiper blades

The wiper blades sweep water away from the windscreen and rear window. Together with washer fluid, they aim to clean the windows and ensure visibility while driving. Windscreen and rear window wiper blades can be replaced.





1 1
Fold up the wiper arm when it is in service position. Service position is activated/deactivated via the centre display when the car is stationary and the windscreen wipers are not switched on. Press the button located on the wiper blade mounting and pull straight out parallel with the wiper arm.

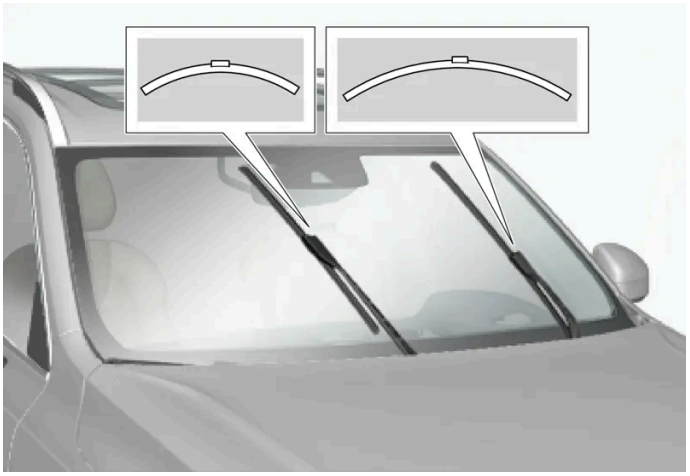
2 2
Slide in the new wiper blade until a "click" is heard.

3 Check that the blade is firmly installed.

4 Fold the wiper arm back towards the windscreen.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

The wiper blades are different lengths



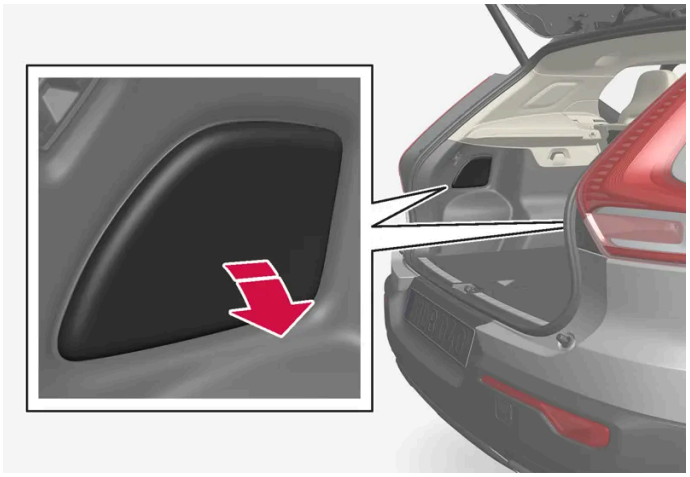
Note

When replacing the wiper blades, note that they have different lengths. The blade on the driver's side is longer than on the passenger side.

19.3. Bulb replacement

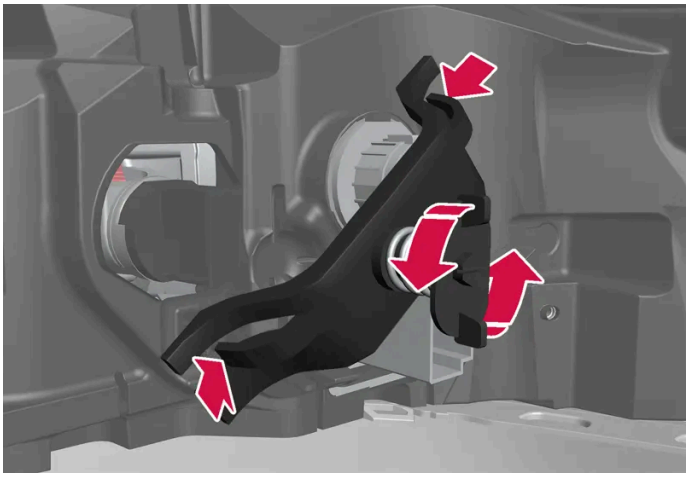
19.3.1. Replacing the rear direction indicator bulb

Bulbs for rear direction indicators are located behind the panel in the side of the cargo area.

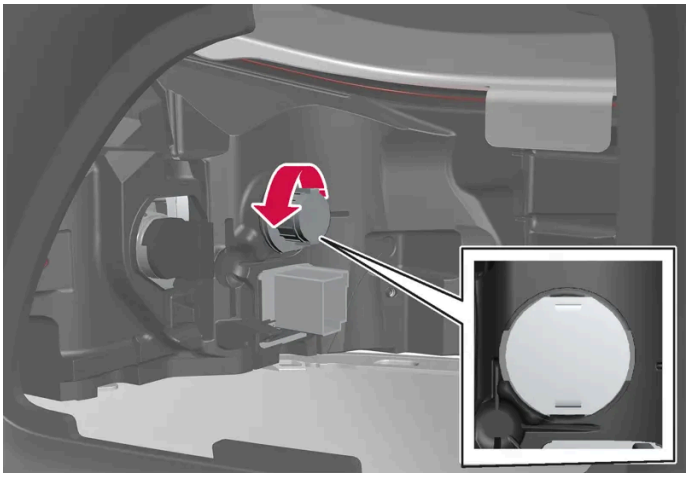


1. Press in the panel hatch at the upper edge to detach it.

2. Move the insulation aside to access the supporting bridge.



3. Unscrew and remove the spring bolt anticlockwise, press the clips into the sides and remove the supporting bridge. It is easiest to allow the screw to remain in the supporting bridge.

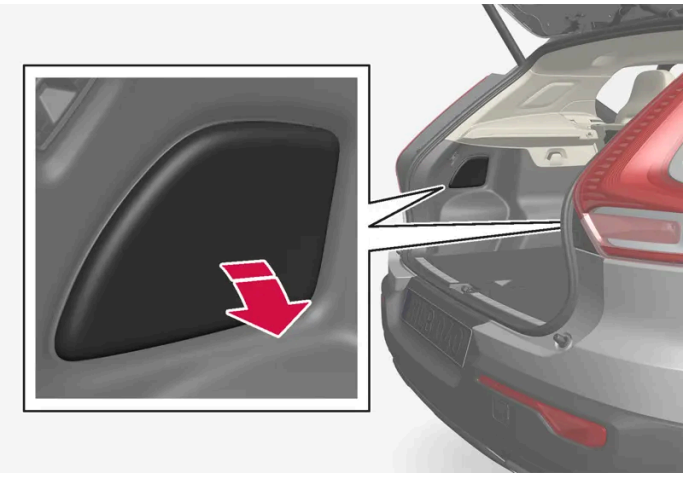


4. Undo the grey bulb holder by turning it anticlockwise and pulling it out.
5. Remove the bulb by pressing it in and turning anticlockwise.
6. Fit a new bulb by pressing it in and turning it clockwise.
7. Attach the bulb holder by turning it clockwise.
8. Fit the supporting bridge with associated spring bolt and make sure that the clips align in the correct position. Tighten the spring bolt until it stops, max. 2 Nm (1.5 ft lbs).
9. Move back the insulation and then hook in the panel and press it back into place.

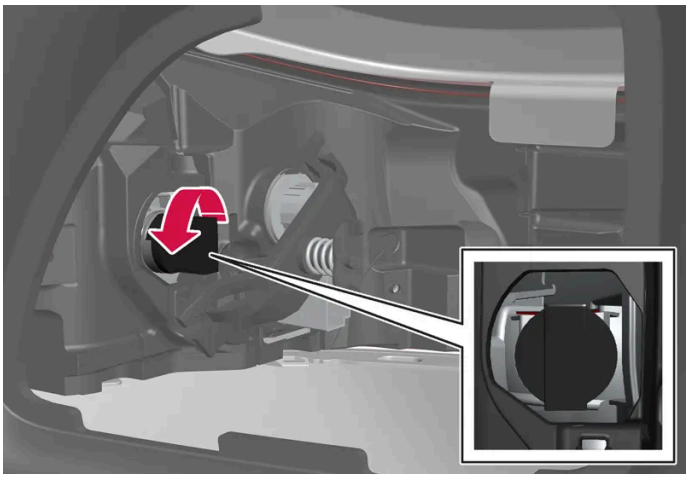
> **Important**
>
> Never touch the glass part of the bulbs with your fingers. Grease from your fingers is vaporised by the heat, coating the reflector and then causing damage.

19.3.2. Changing brake light bulb

Bulbs for brake lights are located behind the panel in the side of the cargo area.



1. Press in the panel hatch at the upper edge to detach it.
2. Move the insulation aside to access the brake light bulb.

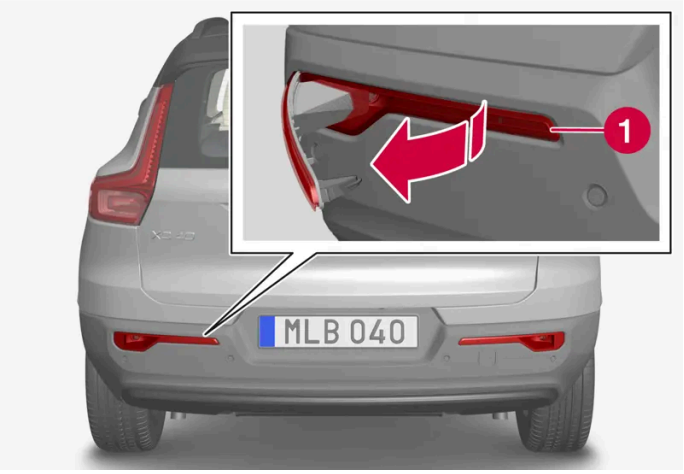


3. Undo the black bulb holder by turning it anticlockwise and pulling it out.
4. Remove the bulb by pressing it in and turning anticlockwise.
5. Fit a new bulb by pressing it in and turning it clockwise.
6. Attach the bulb holder by turning it clockwise.
7. Move back the insulation and then hook in the panel and press it back into place.

> **Important**
>
> Never touch the glass part of the bulbs with your fingers. Grease from your fingers is vaporised by the heat, coating the reflector and then causing damage.

19.3.3. Replacing the rear fog lamp bulb

The rear foglight is fitted in the rear bumper on the driver's side.



The rear fog light is only fitted on the driver's side.

1. Loosen the foglight unit on the driver's side by inserting a flat object, such as a screwdriver, on the bulb kit's narrower short side of the keypad and then prize the foglight unit out.
2. Unplug the connector.
3. Undo the bulb holder by turning it anticlockwise and pulling it out.
4. Remove the bulb by pressing it in and turning anticlockwise.
5. Fit a new bulb by pressing it in and turning it clockwise.
6. Attach the bulb holder by turning it clockwise.
7. Plug in the connector.
8. Insert the hook on the wide part of the foglight unit in the rear bumper and rotate the unit inwards so that the clips engage.

19.3.4. Bulb replacement

Lamp types vary depending on model and equipment level. If a bulb[1] breaks, it can be replaced according to the method described in the Owner's Manual.
Contact a workshop[2] if faults occur in lamps other than bulbs.
If a fault occurs in LED[3] lamps, the entire lamp unit usually must be replaced.

> **Note**
>
> For information about bulbs not covered in this Owner's Manual, contact a Volvo dealer or an authorised Volvo workshop.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Warning

The car must be switched off during bulb replacement.

Important

Never touch the glass part of the bulbs with your fingers. Grease from your fingers is vaporised by the heat, coating the reflector and then causing damage.

Note

If an error message remains after the broken bulb has been replaced then we recommend visiting an authorised Volvo workshop.

Note

Outside lighting such as headlamps and rear lamps may temporarily have condensation on the inside of the lens. This is normal and all exterior lighting is designed to withstand this. Condensation is normally vented out of the lamp housing when the lamp has been switched on for a time.

[1] Some cars have no bulbs.

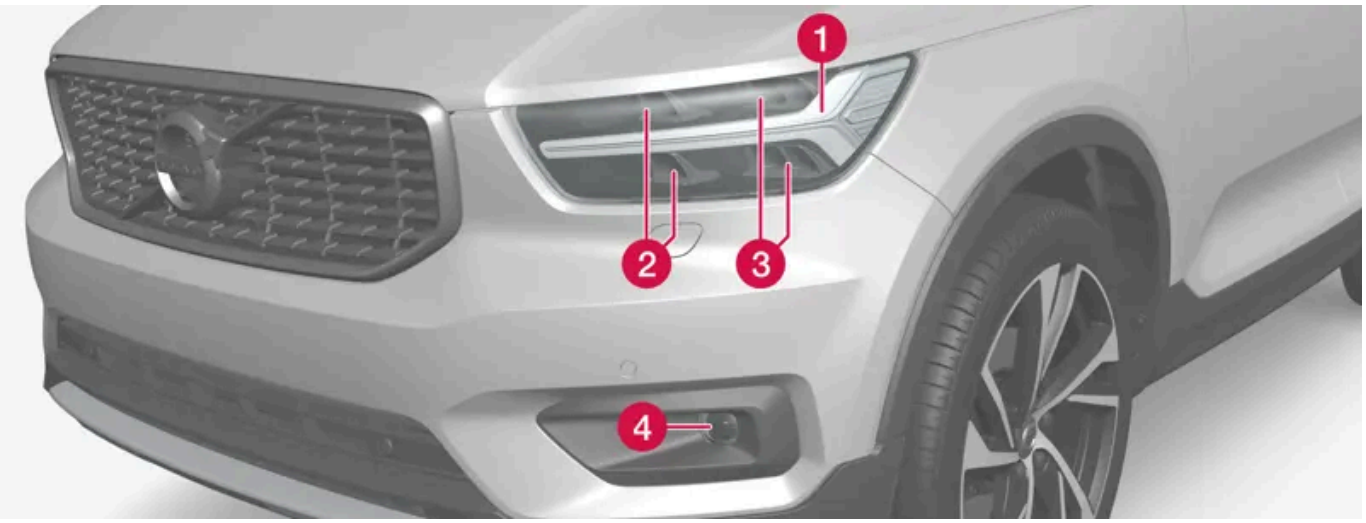
[2] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

[3] LED (Light Emitting Diode)

19.3.5. Exterior lamp positions

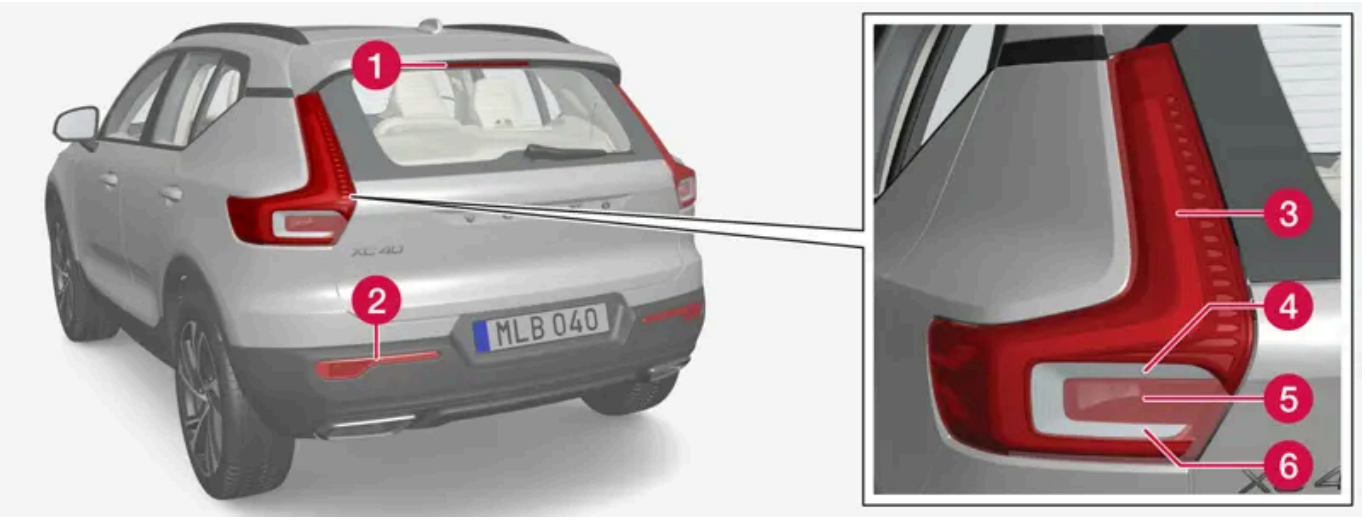
The exterior lighting of the car uses a number of different lamps. An LED[1] type lamp must be replaced by a workshop. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Lamps, front



1. Daytime running lights/position lamps/direction indicators (LED)
2. Main beam (LED)
3. Dipped beam (LED)
4. Front fog lamps/cornering lights* (LED)

Lamps, rear



1. Brake light - central, high-level (LED)
2. Fog lamp
3. Position lamps (LED)
4. Direction indicators
5. Brake lights
6. Reversing lamps (LED)

[1] LED (Light Emitting Diode)

* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

19.3.6. Bulb specifications

Specifications for replaceable bulbs.
Contact a workshop[1] if faults occur in lamps other than bulbs. If a fault occurs in LED[2] lamps, the entire lamp unit usually must be replaced.

Function	W[3]	Type
Rear direction indicators	21	PY21W
Brake lights	21	H21W LL
Rear fog lamp	21	H21W LL

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

[2] LED (Light Emitting Diode)

[3] Watt

19.3.7. Checking trailer lamps*

When connecting a trailer – check that the trailer lamps work before departure.

Checking trailer lamps*

Automatic checking

After a trailer is connected electrically, it is possible to ensure that the trailer lamps are working via an automatic lamp activation. The function helps the driver check that the trailer lamps are working before starting off.

1 When a trailer is connected to the towbar, the **Perform a trailer lamp check?** message is shown in the driver display.

2 Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's O button.

> The lamp check starts.

3 Exit the car to check lamp functionality.

> All trailer lamps start to flash - then the lamps are switched on one at a time.

4 Visually check that all lamps available on the trailer are operational.

5 After a moment, all lamps on the trailer flash again.

> The check is complete.

Rear fog lamp on trailer

When connecting the trailer, the rear fog lamp may not light up on the car. In such cases, the rear fog lamp function switches to the trailer. Upon activation of the rear fog lamp, check therefore that the trailer is equipped with a rear fog lamp to travel safely.

Symbols and messages in the driver display

If one or more of the trailer's direction indicators or brake light bulbs is broken, the driver display shows a symbol and a message. Other lights on the trailer must be checked manually by the driver before setting off.

Symbol	Message
	Right trailer turn indicator malfunction Left trailer turn indicator malfunction
	Trailer brake light malfunction

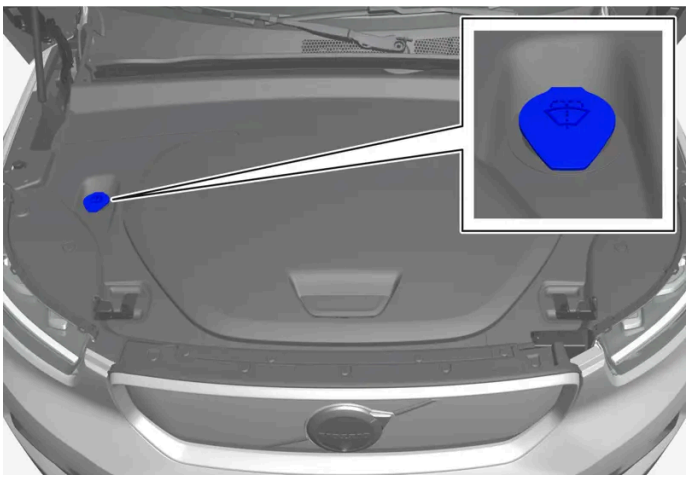
If any lamp for the trailer's direction indicators is broken, the driver display symbol for direction indicators will also flash more quickly than normal.

* Option/accessory.

19.4. Space under the bonnet

19.4.1. Topping up washer fluid

Washer fluid is used for cleaning the headlamps as well as the windscreen and rear window. Washer fluid with antifreeze must be used when the temperature is under the freezing point.



Note

When approx. 1 litre (1 qt) of washer fluid remains in the reservoir, the message **Refill washer fluid, level low** appears together with the symbol in the driver display.

When the **Refill washer fluid, level low** message together with the symbol appear in the driver display, it is time to refill washer fluid

1. Open the bonnet with the handle in the passenger compartment and then with the handle under the front edge of the bonnet.
2. Open the washer fluid reservoir cap.

   Washer fluid is filled into the reservoir with the blue cap. The reservoir is used for windscreen washer, rear window washer and headlamp washers*.
3. Top up with washer fluid.
4. Close the washer fluid reservoir cap and then close the bonnet.

Prescribed grade: Washer fluid recommended by Volvo – with frost protection during cold weather and for temperatures below freezing point.

Important

Use Volvo genuine washer fluid or equivalent with a recommended pH of between 6 and 8, in working dilution (e.g. 1:1 with neutral water).

Important

Use washer fluid with antifreeze when the temperature is below freezing to avoid the fluid freezing inside the pump, reservoir and hoses.

Volume:

- Cars **with** headlamp washing: 5.5 litres (5.8 qts).
- Cars **without** headlamp washing: 3.5 litres (3.7 qts).

* Option/accessory.

19.4.2. Brake fluid – specifications

Brake fluid is the medium in a hydraulic brake system that is used to transfer pressure from e.g. a brake pedal via a master brake cylinder, which in turn acts on the brake callipers.

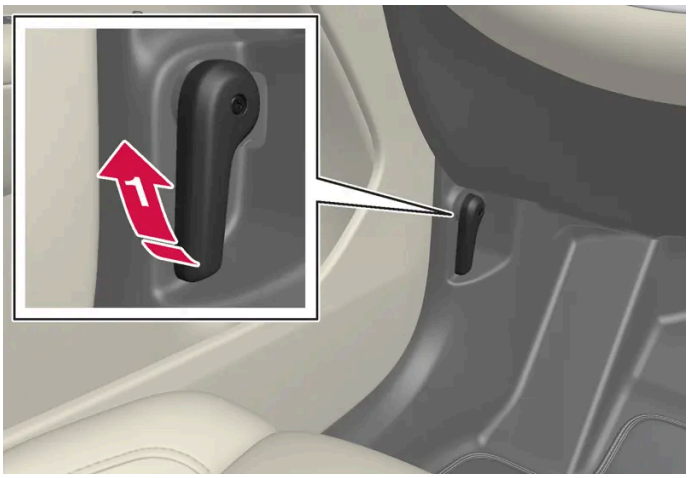
Prescribed grade: Volvo Original or equivalent fluid compliant with a combination of Dot 4, 5.1 and ISO 4925 class 6.

> **Note**
>
> It is recommended that brake fluid is changed or filled by an authorised Volvo workshop.

19.4.3. Opening and closing the bonnet

The bonnet can be opened using the handle in the passenger compartment and a handle under the front edge of the bonnet. It is important to follow the instructions for closing and to check that the bonnet is fully closed if it has been open.

Open the bonnet



1. Pull the handle beside the pedals to release the bonnet from its fully closed position.

2. Move the handle under the bonnet upwards to release the catch and lift the bonnet.

Important

Only loosen the panels around the storage area under the bonnet if the instructions in the owner's manual explicitly state that this is necessary. Contact a workshop in the event of a problem or if maintenance is required – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Warning - bonnet not closed

Open bonnet is indicated by a warning symbol and graphic in the driver display as well as by an acoustic signal.

Note

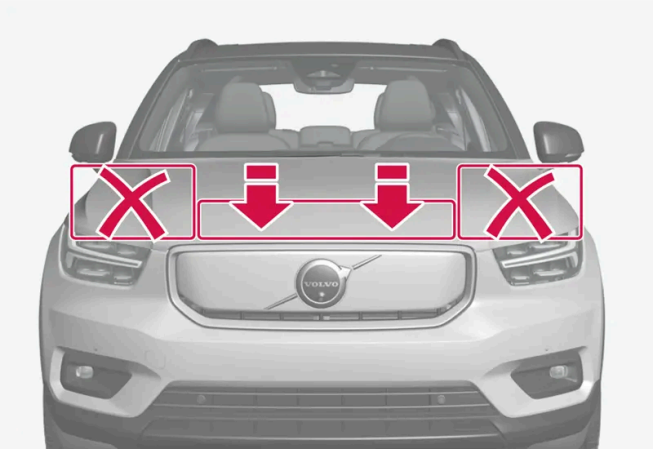
If the car indicates that the bonnet is open despite it being fully closed – open the bonnet and follow the instructions for closing again. Visit a workshop if the problem persists – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Close the bonnet

> **Warning**
>
> Make sure that nothing is in the way of the bonnet closing to avoid crushing damage.

1 Lower the bonnet.



2 When the bonnet has stopped against the bonnet lock – press down on the bonnet with both hands according to the description in the illustration in order to fully close it. Do not load the sides of the bonnet.

> The bonnet must be audibly locked on both sides.

3 Check that the bonnet has been properly locked and that it is not open slightly.

> **Warning**
>
> Never drive with an open bonnet.
>
> Thoroughly check that the bonnet is fully closed after it has been open.
>
> If the car warns or indicates that the bonnet is open, or if something else suggests that it is not fully closed – stop immediately and close it firmly.

19.4.4. Coolant

The car has an advanced coolant system which regulates the temperature of the electric drive and in the passenger compartment. The system is available regardless of whether the car is parked, being charged or driven.

The coolant system is a closed system and all maintenance must be performed by a qualified technician. Contact a workshop [1] as soon as possible if you get a warning message saying a service is needed.

Important

Do not open the lid of the coolant tank, and do not top up any fluid. Doing this may result in damage that is not covered by the warranty.

Warning

Coolant must not be swallowed. It can cause damage to the kidneys and other organs. The product contains, among other things, ethylene glycol, inhibitor and water.

[1] Volvo recommends you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

19.5. Tools and accessories

19.5.1. Jack*

The jack can be used to raise the car, for example, to change to a wheel.

Important

If a jack[1] is included with the car, it is only designed for occasional, short-term use, such as when changing a wheel after a puncture. Only the jack belonging to the specific model is to be used to jack up the car. If the car is to be jacked up more often, or for a longer time than is required just to change a wheel, use of a garage jack is recommended. In this instance, follow the instructions for use that come with the equipment.

When the jack is not in use it should be stored in its storage space under the cargo area floor. Crank the jack down for it to fit.

The jack needs to be cranked together to the correct position in order to have space.

* Option/accessory.

[1] For jack recommendations, contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

19.5.2. Emergency puncture repair kit

The emergency puncture repair kit (TMK[1]) is used to seal a puncture as well as to check and adjust the air pressure in the tyre.
Cars equipped with spare tyre* do not have the emergency puncture repair kit.

The puncture repair kit consists of a compressor and a bottle with sealing fluid. The sealing works as a temporary repair.

Note

The sealing fluid is effective at sealing tyres with tread punctures but has limited ability to seal tyres with sidewall punctures. Do not use the emergency puncture repair kit on tyres displaying larger slits, cracks or similar damage.

> **Note**
>
> The compressor is intended for temporary emergency puncture repair and is approved by Volvo.

Location

The emergency puncture repair kit is located in the foam block under the cargo area floor under the bonnet.

Sealing fluid expiry date

The bottle of sealing fluid must be replaced if the bottle's expiry date has passed (see the decal on the bottle). Treat the old bottle as environmentally hazardous waste.

[1] Temporary Mobility Kit

* Option/accessory.

19.5.3. First aid kit*

The first aid kit contains first aid equipment.

Store the first aid kit in a suitable place in the cargo area.

* Option/accessory.

19.5.4. Warning triangle

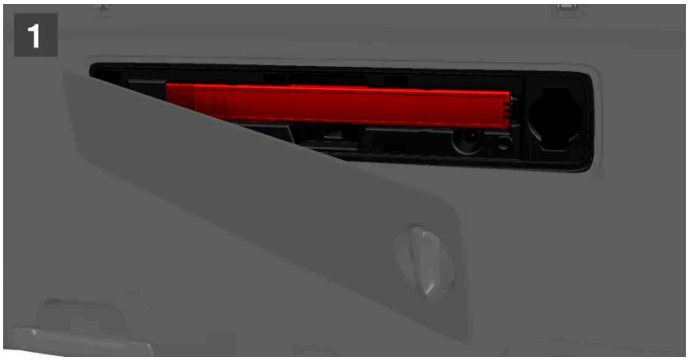
Use the warning triangle to warn other road users if the car is stationary in traffic.

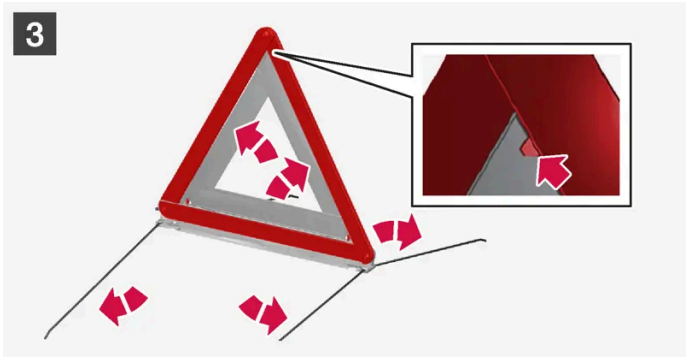
Also activate the hazard warning flashers.

Storage spaces

The warning triangle is located in the compartment on the inside of the tailgate.

Folding up the warning triangle





1 1

Open the hatch by first turning the knob a quarter turn and then pulling the hatch from its brackets in the top and bottom edges.

Press the latch that secures the warning triangle slightly to the right and remove the case.

2 2

Remove the warning triangle from the case, unfold it and put the ends together.

3 3

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Fold out the warning triangle's support legs.

Follow the regulations for the use of a warning triangle. Position the warning triangle in a suitable place with regard to traffic.

Make sure that the warning triangle and case are properly secured in their storage space and that the hatch is fully closed after use.

19.5.5. Tool kit

Tools that can be useful during towing, wheel changes or similar are stored in the car's storage compartments. The jack and wheel bolt wrench are stored in their space in the car's cargo area. There is space for other tools to be stored in the storage compartment under the bonnet.

Examples of tools that may be in the car[1].

1 Jack

2 Tool for removing the plastic caps from the wheel bolts

3 Emergency puncture repair kit[2]

4 Wheel wrench and towing eye

If the car is fitted with a spare wheel*, there is a jack and a wheel bolt wrench instead of emergency puncture repair kit.

[1] For tool recommendations, contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

[2] Temporary Mobility Kit

* Option/accessory.

19.6. Fuses

19.6.1. Fuses and central electrical units

Electrical functions and components are protected by a number of fuses in order to protect the car's electrical system from damage by short circuiting or overloading. The fuses are fitted in the car's various fuse boxes.

Warning

Never replace a fuse with a foreign object or a fuse of higher amperage. This may lead to damage to the electrical system and cause fire.

Contact an authorised Volvo workshop about replacing the fuses not described in the owner's manual.

Warning

Orange-coloured cables must only be handled by qualified personnel.

Warning

Several components in the car work with high-voltage current that could be dangerous in the event of incorrect intervention.

Do not touch anything that is not clearly described in the owner's manual for the car.

If an electrical component or function does not work, it may be because the component's fuse was overloaded, which must be changed. If the same fuse is overloaded repeatedly then there is a fault in the component. Volvo recommends contacting an authorised Volvo workshop for checking.

Location of central electrical units

1. Under the bonnet
2. Under the glovebox

19.6.2. Replacing a fuse

A fuse that has been overloaded needs to be changed in order to restore the function of the electrical component it is protecting.

1. Locate the correct fuse in the fuse lists for the various fuse boxes.
2. Pull out the fuse and check from the side to see whether the curved wire has blown.
3. If this is the case, replace it with a new fuse of the same colour and amperage.

Note

Some fuse boxes may contain special tweezers for a better grip on the fuse.

Warning

Never replace a fuse with a foreign object or a fuse of higher amperage. This may lead to damage to the electrical system and cause fire.

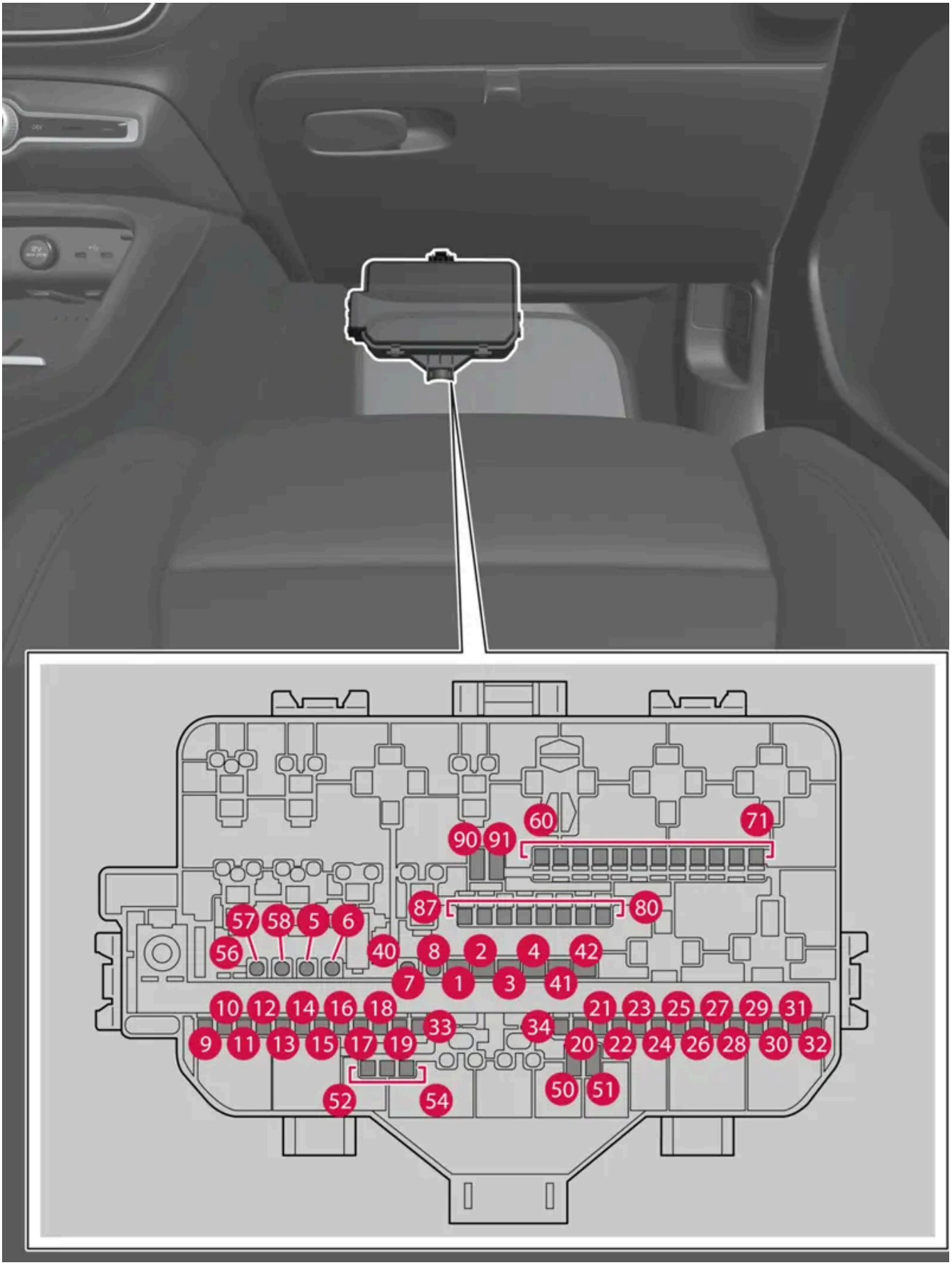
Contact an authorised Volvo workshop about replacing the fuses not described in the owner's manual.

Warning

Contact an authorised Volvo workshop about replacing the fuses not described in the owner's manual.

19.6.3. Fuses under glovebox

The fuses in the fuse box under the glovebox protect components such as electrical sockets, displays and door modules.



The central electrical unit is located behind the floor mat/panel.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

The fuse box under the bonnet also provides space for several spare fuses.

Positions

Fuse locations are shown on the inside of the cover. Functions and components in the fuse table cover several models and engine alternatives. A fuse description can therefore apply to fewer than those in the table, or be completely missing, depending on how the car is equipped.

If a position has multiple table values, it is due to variations in equipment level. In which case, follow the value of the fuse being replaced. In the event of doubt – contact a workshop. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

	Function	Ampere	Type
1	Audio control device (amplifier)	40	MCase (slotted) [1]
2	Electric Module A	40	MCase (slotted) [1]
3	Electric Module B	40	MCase (slotted) [1]
4	Fan, climate control, front	40	MCase (slotted) [1]
5	Power operated tailgate	25	MCase [1]
6	Power seat*, left	20	MCase [1]
7	Power seat*, right	20	MCase [1]
8	–	–	MCase [1]
9	Door module, right rear	20	Micro
10	Door module, left rear	20	Micro
11	Door module, left front	20	Micro
12	Rear lighting	15	Micro
13	Door module, right front	20	Micro
14	Seat heating, rear*	15	Micro
15	Safety module (ASDM) Converter, rear electric motors	5	Micro
16	Calculation module	5	Micro
17	Sun sensor	5	Micro
18	Steering lock	7,5	Micro
19	Control module, climate control	7,5	Micro
20	Interior movement detectors*	5	Micro
21	Driver display	5	Micro
22	Keypad, centre console	5	Micro
23	Steering wheel module	5	Micro
24	Electronic shifting module Parking brake	5	Micro
25	Centre display	5	Micro
26	Control module for online car Control module for Connect	5	Micro
27	Antenna module (TCAM)	5	Micro
28	Relay coils	5	Micro
29	Opening the boot lid/tailgate with foot motion*	5	Micro

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

	Function	Ampere	Type
30	Control module, infotainment	15	Micro
31	Diagnostic port	10	Micro
32	Alcohol lock	5	Micro
33	Lowering, head restraint, left rear	15	Micro
34	Lowering, head restraint, right rear	15	Micro
40	Rear window defroster	30	MCase [1]
41	Seatbelt pretensioner, left-hand side	40	MCase (slotted) [1]
42	Seatbelt pretensioner, right-hand side	40	MCase (slotted) [1]
50	–	–	Micro
51	–	–	Micro
52	Coolant pump	7,5	Micro
53	Steering wheel module, heated steering wheel*	15	Micro
54	–	–	Micro
55	Headlamp washers*	25	MCase [1]
56	Windscreen and rear window washers	25	MCase [1]
57	–	–	MCase [1]
58	–	–	MCase [1]
60	–	–	Micro
61	–	–	Micro
62	–	–	Micro
63	Seatbelt tensioner	5	Micro
64	Blind Spot Information (BLIS)*	5	Micro
65	–	–	Micro
66	–	–	Micro
67	Control module, radar, front	5	Micro
68	–	–	Micro
69	–	–	Micro
70	Prepared fuse, special chassis	5	Micro
71	Collision module (SRS)	5	Micro
80	Windscreen wiper, rear	15	Micro
81	Indicator roof console (SRS) Wake-up, electronic shifting module 360° parking camera*	5	Micro
82	Roof console, panoramic roof*	20	Micro
83	Passenger compartment lighting Dimming, interior rearview mirror Rain and light sensors Control panels, rear doors and cargo area Transponder for road tax	7,5	Micro
84	Wireless charging plate*	5	Micro
85	Front-facing camera	5	Micro
86	Alcohol lock*	5	Micro

	Function	Ampere	Type
87	USB port	5	Micro
90	–	–	Micro
91	–	–	Micro

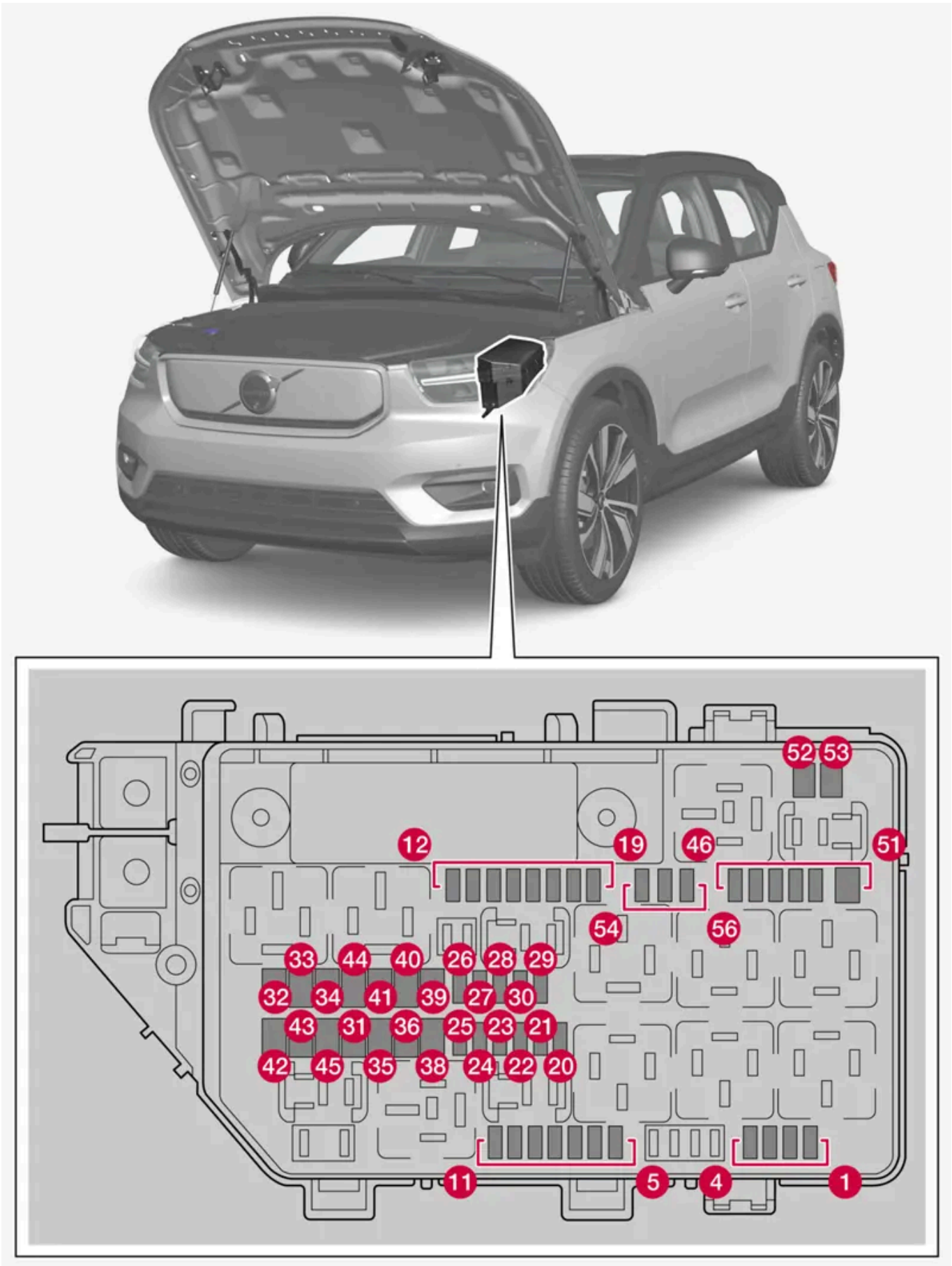
[1] This type of fuse should be replaced by a workshop. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

19.6.4. Fuses under the bonnet

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Fuses under the bonnet protect engine and brake functions, amongst other things.



A number of panels around the storage area need to be loosened for access to fuses under the bonnet.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Special pliers are housed on the inside of the cover to facilitate replacement of tripped fuses.

The fuse box also provides space for several spare fuses.

> **Important**
>
> Only loosen the panels around the storage area under the bonnet if the instructions in the owner's manual explicitly state that this is necessary. Contact a workshop in the event of a problem or if maintenance is required – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Positions

Fuse locations are shown on the inside of the cover. Functions and components in the fuse table cover several models and engine alternatives. A fuse description can therefore apply to fewer than those in the table, or be completely missing, depending on how the car is equipped.

If a position has multiple table values, it is due to variations in equipment level. In which case, follow the value of the fuse being replaced. In the event of doubt – contact a workshop. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

	Function	Ampere	Type
1	Double USB ports, tunnel console, rear*	7,5	Micro
2	12V socket, front	15	Micro
3	–	–	Micro
4	12 V socket cargo area*	15	Micro
5	Engine Control Module (ECM)	10	Micro
6	Valve group engine cooling	15	Micro
7	Battery cooling valve	5	Micro
8	Control module, spoiler damper Control module, radiator damper	10	Micro
9	–	–	Micro
10	–	–	Micro
11	–	–	Micro
12	Headlamp, right	20	Micro
13	Headlamp, left	20	Micro
14	Collision module (SRS)	5	Micro
15	Accelerator pedal sensor	5	Micro
16	Powered when the car's electrical system is switched on: Engine control module, Transmission components, Electric steering servo, Central electronic module, Control module for brake system	5	Micro
17	Module, exterior sound	5	Micro
18	Alcohol lock	5	Micro
19	–	–	Micro
20	Internal relay coils	5	Micro
21	–	–	Micro
22	Brake pedal sensor	5	Micro
23	Calculation unit	5	Micro

	Function	Ampere	Type
24	Control module, high voltage battery	5	Micro
25	–	–	Micro
26	Engine Control Module (ECM)	5	Micro
27	Charging unit	15	Micro
28	Converter, front electric motor	5	Micro
29	Horn (honk)	20	Micro
30	Siren*	5	Micro
31	Windscreen wipers	30	MCase [1]
32	–	–	MCase (slotted) [1]
33	–	–	MCase (slotted) [1]
34	–	–	MCase (slotted) [1]
35	Brake control module	30	MCase [1]
36	–	–	MCase [1]
38	Headlamps	30	MCase [1]
39	–	–	MCase [1]
40	–	–	MCase [1]
41	Towbar control module*	25	MCase [1]
42	Towbar control module*	40	MCase (slotted) [1]
43	–	–	MCase (slotted) [1]
44	–	–	MCase [1]
45	–	–	MCase (slotted) [1]
46	Outer heat exchanger*	5	Micro
47	Control module, AC compressor Control module, high voltage heater Control module, electric expansion valve Monitoring unit	5	Micro
48	Control module, high voltage battery Converter, front and rear electric motor	15	Micro
49	Coolant pump, high voltage battery	20	Micro
50	Coolant pump, electric drive system	20	Micro
51	–	–	MCase [1]
52	Heated windscreen*, right	40	MCase (slotted) [1]
53	Heated windscreen*, left	40	MCase (slotted) [1]
54	–	–	Micro
55	Headlamp, left	20	Micro
56	Headlamp, right	20	Micro

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

* Option/accessory.

[1] This type of fuse should be replaced by a workshop. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

19.7. Battery

19.7.1. Replacing the battery in the key

The battery in the key can be replaced when it has discharged. The service life of the battery depends on how much the key is used. The Key Tag* battery cannot be replaced.

> **Note**
>
> All batteries have a limited service life and must eventually be replaced (does not apply to Key Tag). The service life of the battery varies depending on how often the vehicle/key is used.

The key's battery needs to be replaced when the information symbol is illuminated and the **The car key battery is low. See Owner's Manual for replacement.** message is shown in the driver display.

Another sign that the battery level is low is decreased range for the key.

The battery in the Key tag (Key Tag)* cannot be replaced. When the battery is discharged, a new Key tag can be ordered from an authorised Volvo workshop.

> **Important**
>
> Hand in a discharged Key Tag to an authorised Volvo workshop where it can be deleted from the car's system. The key can still be used to start the car via back-up start when the battery has been discharged.

Opening the key and changing its battery

> **Important**
>
> Avoid touching the contact surfaces of a new battery with your fingers. This impairs the battery's functionality.

Hold the key so that its front with the Volvo logotype is facing up, and with the keyring bracket facing you.

There is a catch on the left of the keyring bracket. If it is on the wrong side then the front and rear have been mixed up when the battery was replaced on an earlier occasion.

1 1

Slide the catch by the keyring bracket to the side, and slide the front shell away from the bracket.

> The shell detaches and can be lifted off.
The shell detaches and can be lifted off.
There is a further catch under the shell to detach the rear.

2 2

Slide the catch that was behind the front shell to the side, and slide the rear shell away from the key ring bracket.

> The shell detaches and can be lifted off.
The shell detaches and can be lifted off.
The battery cover is under the shell.

3 3

Turn the battery cover anticlockwise to OPEN position. Use a screwdriver or a coin, for example.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Lift off the battery cover. If it is difficult to detach, you can prize it upward using a narrow tool.

4 4

The battery (+) side is facing upwards. Loosen the battery by pressing on its edge and then lifting it out.

5 5

Install a new battery with the (+) side up. Avoid touching the key's battery contacts with your fingers.

Position the edge of the battery under the two outer plastic catches.

Then press down on the battery so that it is held in place by the upper plastic catch.

> **Note**
>
> Use batteries with the designation CR2032, 3 V.

> **Note**
>
> Volvo recommends that replacement batteries for the key meet UN Manual of Test and Criteria, Part III, sub-section 38.3. The batteries that are included or the batteries used for replacement by an authorised Volvo workshop will meet the same criterion.

6 6

Refit the battery cover and turn clockwise to CLOSE position.

7 7

Refit the rear shell in reverse order to how it was removed. There is no logotype on the rear shell. Press in the shell until you hear a click, and then slide it the last few millimetres to its original position.

> A further click will indicate that the shell is properly positioned and securely attached.
There must be no gaps remaining.

8 8

Turn the key and refit the front shell in the same way as for the rear.

Warning

Check that the battery is fitted correctly with the correct polarity. If the key shall not been used for a long time, remove the battery to avoid battery leakage and damage. Batteries with damage or leaks may cause corrosive injury on contact with the skin. Therefore, use protective gloves when handling damaged batteries.

- Keep batteries out of the reach of children.
- Do not leave batteries lying around since they can be swallowed by children or pets.
- Batteries must not: be dismantled, short-circuited or thrown into open flames.
- Do not try to charge non-rechargeable batteries. They may explode.
- Check battery operated products for signs of damage on a regular basis.

The key should not be used if anything indicates that the key or its battery has been damaged or has started to leak. Keep defective products out of the reach of children.

Important

Used batteries must be recycled in an environmentally sound manner.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

* Option/accessory.

19.7.2. Using jump starting with another battery

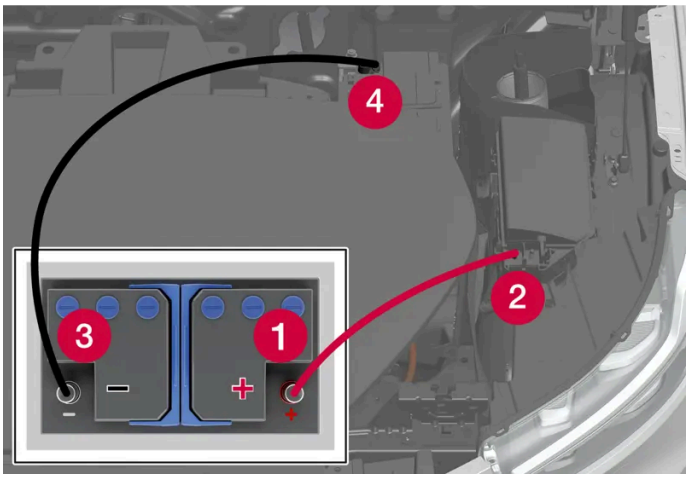
If the car does not start, it may be due to the 12V battery being discharged. It can then be charged with the assistance of another car or an external charger.

Under normal conditions, the 12V battery is charged at the same time as the car is charged, as well as via current transmission from the high voltage battery when the car is not connected for charging.

If the 12V battery is discharged for any reason, jump-starting can still be used. This may be caused by the car not being used for a long time, a temporary fault, or a blown fuse in the car's charging circuit, for example. A discharged 12V battery needs to be charged sufficiently in order to be able to start the car's electrical system. After starting, it is possible to start charging the car using the charging cable, which will be necessary if the high voltage battery is also discharged. If the car is out of reach for charging in such a situation, it may need recovery.

Using jump-starting requires jump leads, which are connected to the charging points for the 12V battery.

> **Important**
>
> The car's charging points are only intended for jump starting the car itself. The charging points are not intended for jump starting another car. Using the charging points for jump starting another car may cause a fuse to blow, which means the charging points will stop working.
>
> If the message **12 V battery fuse failure Service required** is shown in the driver display then a fuse has blown and needs to be changed. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.



Several of the panels around the storage area need to be loosened for access to the charging points under the bonnet.

When jump starting the car, the following steps are recommended to avoid short circuits or other damage:

1 Set the car's electrical system in Passive usage mode.

2 Check that the donor battery has a voltage of 12 V.

3 If the battery is installed in another car – switch off its engine and make sure that the cars do not touch each other.

4 Connect one of the red jump lead's clamps to the donor battery's positive terminal (1).

> **Important**
>
> Handle the jump leads with care. A short circuit may occur if the ends come into contact with surfaces other than the charging points.

5 Open the cover (2) for the positive charging point by pressing on its side. This disengages a hook and you can lift the cover up at the same time. There are two connection points under the cover. Use it closest to the centre of the car.

6 Connect the red jump lead's other clamp onto the car's positive charging point (2).

7 Connect one of the black jump lead's clamps to the donor battery's negative terminal (3).

8 Connect the black jump lead's other clamp onto the car's negative charging point (4).

9 Check that the jump lead clamps are affixed securely so that there are no sparks during the starting attempt.

10 Start the engine of the donor car.

11 Start the car that has the discharged battery by keeping your foot on the brake and selecting gear position D or R.

> **Important**
>
> Do not touch the connections between cable and car during the starting attempt. There is a risk of sparks forming.

> **Note**
>
> Full starting is indicated by means of the driver display's indicator lamps extinguishing and its preset theme illuminating.

12 If the high voltage battery is also discharged, start charging the car with the charging cable.

13 Remove the jump leads in reverse order - first the black and then the red.

Make sure that none of the clamps on the black jump lead come into contact with the positive charging point on the car, the positive terminal on the donor battery, or the clamps on the red jump lead.

> **Note**
>
> A discharged 12 V battery needs to be charged for a period of time to reach a sufficiently high State Of Charge (SoC) in order to power the car's electrical system. In an outside temperature of approx. +15 °C (approx. 60 °F), the battery needs to be charged for at least 30 minutes by the car. In a lower outside temperature, the charging time may increase to 3–4 hours. If possible, it is recommended to use an external battery charger to charge the battery.

Warning

- The 12 V battery can generate oxyhydrogen gas, which is highly explosive. A spark can be formed if a jump lead is connected incorrectly, and this can be enough for the battery to explode.
- The 12 V battery contains sulphuric acid, which can cause serious burns.
- If sulphuric acid comes into contact with eyes, skin or clothing, flush with large quantities of water. If acid splashes into the eyes - seek medical attention immediately.
- Never smoke near the battery.

19.7.3. Batteries and power supply

The car's own power supply is connected to several different batteries and components. These make it possible to use the car's electrical functions.

The car's primary electrical system operates with 12 V voltage and powers electrical equipment.

In addition to the primary electrical system, the car has a high voltage system for electrical propulsion.

Warning

Several components in the car work with high-voltage current that could be dangerous in the event of incorrect intervention. Do not touch anything that is not clearly described in the owner's manual.

Batteries

In order to supply power to the various components, your car is equipped with the following:

- a 12 V battery that powers the car's primary electrical system
- a high voltage battery for electrical propulsion of the car.

19.7.4. Recycling the batteries

Used batteries must be recycled in an environmentally sound manner.

Consult a workshop in the event of uncertainty about how this type of waste should be discarded - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. The high voltage battery must only be handled by authorised workshop personnel.

19.7.5. Symbols on the batteries

There are information and warning symbols on the batteries.

	Use protective goggles.
	Further information in the owner's manual for the car.
	Store the battery out of the reach of children.
	The battery contains corrosive acid.
	Avoid sparks and naked flames.
	Risk of explosion.
	Must be taken for recycling.

19.7.6. 12V battery

The 12 V battery powers the car's primary electrical system, which includes most of the electrical equipment. However, the high voltage battery is used when the car is run on the electric motor.

The battery is dimensioned to power the electrical system and functions that are specific to the car model. Under normal conditions, it is kept charged by the larger high voltage battery.

Handling the battery

- Never disconnect the battery when the car is running.
- Check that the cables to the battery are correctly connected and properly tightened.
- If the battery is held in place by a tensioning strap – make sure that it is always firmly tightened.

> **Important**
>
> If the battery is replaced, make sure you replace it with a battery with the same size, cold starting capacity and type as the original battery (see the decal on the battery). Volvo recommends that you use an authorised Volvo workshop for replacing the battery.

Warning

If the 12V battery is disconnected, the automatic opening and closing function must be reset to work properly. A reset must take place for pinch protection to work.

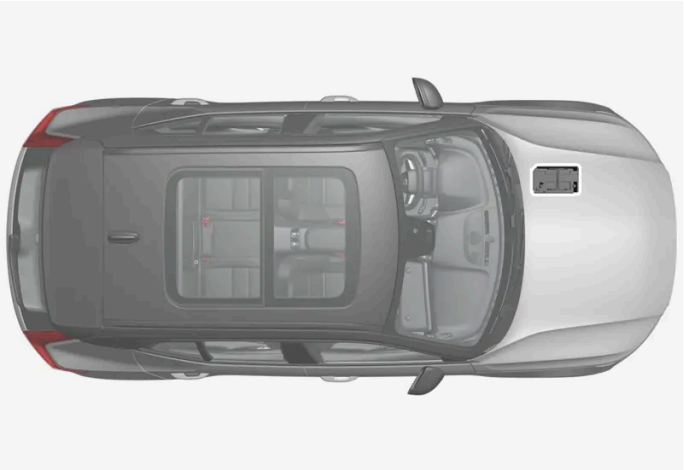
Warning

- The battery can generate oxyhydrogen gas, which is highly explosive. A spark can be formed if a jump lead is connected incorrectly, and this can be enough for the battery to explode.
- The battery contains sulphuric acid, which can cause serious burns.
- If sulphuric acid comes into contact with eyes, skin or clothing, flush with large quantities of water. If acid splashes into the eyes - seek medical attention immediately.
- Never smoke near the battery.

Service life and capacity of the 12 V battery

The service life of the battery is influenced by several factors, including number of discharges and climate conditions. If the car is not charged for a long period of time, the battery's state of charge is reduced due to self-discharge. If the battery is discharged a large number of times, it will negatively affect the service life. A 12 V battery that is kept fully charged has a maximum service life.

Location



12V battery specifications

Battery type	H6 AGM
Voltage (V)	12
Cold start capacity[1] - CCA[2] (A)	760
Size, L×B×H	277.7×174.4×188.5 mm (10.9×6.9×7.4 inches)
Capacity (Ah)	70

[1] According to EN standard.

[2] Cold Cranking Amperes.

19.7.7. High voltage battery

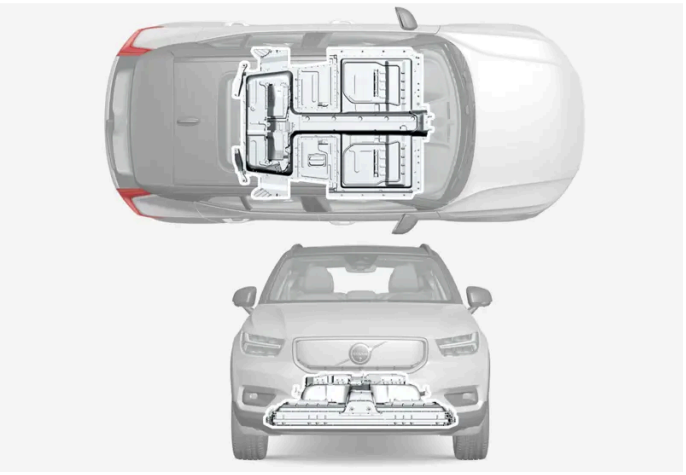
For running on electricity, the car is equipped with a high voltage battery located in the car's chassis. The battery and high voltage system work with a much higher voltage than the car's normal electrical system.

Only authorised workshop personnel are allowed to handle high voltage battery parts.

The car cannot be driven if the high voltage battery is discharged. In order to charge the battery, the car's smaller 12 V battery needs to be sufficiently charged in order to have the capacity to power the car's electrical system and start the charging.

> **Warning**
>
> Replacing the high voltage battery must only be performed by a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Location of the high voltage battery



Service life and capacity of the high voltage battery

The capacity of the high voltage battery diminishes with age and use, which may result in reduced range.

Some recommendations to increase battery service life:

- Leave the charging cable fitted when the car is parked. Primarily in particularly hot or cold climates.
- Avoid driving to a 0% State of Charge (SoC).
- If the State of Charge (SoC) is 0%, the battery should be charged as soon as possible.
- Avoid maximum charging of the battery if this is not needed for the mileage. A recommended charge level is shown in the centre display.

High voltage battery specifications

Type: Lithium-ion

The total amount of energy depends on version [1].

Extended range: 78 kWh

Standard range: 69 kWh

[1] Not all variants of electric motors are available in all markets.

19.8. Service

19.8.1. Servicing the climate control system

The air conditioning system must only be serviced and repaired by an authorised workshop.

Troubleshooting and repair

The air conditioning system contains fluorescent tracing agents. Ultraviolet light is used for leak detection.

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.

The car's climate control system uses a freon-free refrigerant, either R1234yf or R134a depending on market. Information about which refrigerant the car's climate control system uses is printed on a decal located on the inside of the front bonnet.

Warning

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R134a. Service and repair of the system must only be performed by trained and certified technicians.

Warning

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R1234yf. In accordance with SAE J2845 (Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile A/C System), service and repair of the refrigerant system must only be performed by trained and certified technicians in order to ensure the safety of the system.

19.8.2. Volvo service programme

To keep the car as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service programme as specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Volvo recommends engaging an authorised Volvo workshop to perform the service and maintenance work. Volvo workshops have the personnel, special tools and service literature that can provide the highest quality of service.

> **Important**
>
> For the Volvo warranty to apply, check and follow the instructions in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Service and repair

Service the car regularly. Follow Volvo's recommended service intervals.

If inspection and repair are required then only an authorised Volvo workshop may carry out the work.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not carry out any repairs of your own on this vehicle. Electrical cables and/or components that have detached must only be rectified by an authorised workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

19.9. Recommended maintenance for camera units, detector units and radar units

In order that the cameras, parking sensors, and radar units shall function correctly, they must be kept clear of dirt, ice and snow, and be cleaned regularly with water and car shampoo.

- Do not affix any objects, tape or decals in the areas described below.
- Clean camera lenses regularly with lukewarm water and car shampoo - be careful not to scratch the lenses.
- Do not install auxiliary lamps or similar in the grille as this can affect the performance of the front radar unit.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Radar unit locations

Location of front radar unit

Location of rear radar units

Location of the parking sensors

Location of the parking sensors around the car

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Note

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may cause incorrect warning signals, reduced or no function.

Camera location

Location of the camera unit

Important

Maintenance of driver support components must only be performed at a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

19.10. Software updates

The car's software is updated through its connection to the mobile network, which is designated OTA (over-the-air). The notification view shows when a new software update is available. You can choose when to install it after it has been downloaded. Update the software in the car as soon as possible when an update is available.

Download

The download takes place in the background via mobile network[1]. It may take several hours, depending on the size of the update and the speed of the connection.

The following is required in order to download updates:

- the car is connected to the Internet[2].
- approval of the use of online services.

Note

Depending on software version, download may start automatically, or be started via the notification of an available software update.

Installing an update

Once a software update has been downloaded and is ready for installation, this is shown in the notification view and by a message when the car is started. You can choose to install the update immediately, or have a further reminder at a later date.

It is possible to reach the update view via ⚙, **System**, **System details**, **Software update**. Here you can also see which version number applies to the software in the car at present.

Note

The installation of the software update may take up to 90 minutes. During this time, the car will be locked and its functions unavailable. Bear this in mind when scheduling the update.

Do not install new software when the car is connected to rapid charging. The car can be left connected for charging from a normal socket but is not charged during the installation. Depending on charging source, charging can be resumed automatically after completed installation.

During installation:

1. Check that the car has been charged to at least 40%.
2. The notification view shows when an update is ready for installation. Open the notification and follow the instructions in the centre display.
3. Leave the car, close all doors, and lock the car.

> The installation is started. The car must be locked within several minutes otherwise the installation is cancelled.

4. Wait until the installation is finished.

> The installation may take up to 90 minutes. When the installation is finished the car can be used as normal.

Note

- If possible, avoid handling the car, its charging cable and other functions during the installation.
- Do not connect or disconnect the charging cable during installation.
- If you need to enter the car while installation is in progress, you must use the key blade.
- The car's anti-theft alarm is disarmed during installation in order to avoid false alarms.

Always read through what the update contains so that you know how the car and its functions are affected.

If the installation fails, the car's systems are reset to the latest installed version.

> **Note**
>
> It is important to install software updates as soon as possible in order to avoid the risks that may be associated with old software. If you experience problems with the update – contact your Volvo dealer.

Information on contents

Tap on the information symbol in the centre display for more information on the content of the software update.

> **Note**
>
> Functionality after updating may vary depending on market, model, model year and options.

[1] Applies to cars with software 2.9 or later. For cars with older software, the download is only possible when the car is being driven. It can therefore take several drive cycles before the software is downloaded.

[2] Use of the Internet involves data transfer (data traffic), which may involve charges. Volvo meets the cost of data traffic for system updates unless a personal SIM card is installed.

19.11. Brake system maintenance

Check brake system components regularly for wear.

To keep the car as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service intervals as specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet. After replacing brake linings and brake discs, braking effect is only adapted after they have been "worn in" for a few hundred kilometres (miles). Compensate for the reduced braking effect by depressing the brake pedal harder. Volvo recommends only fitting brake linings that are approved for your Volvo.

> **Important**
>
> The wear on the brake system's components must be checked regularly.
>
> Contact a workshop for information about the procedure or engage a workshop to carry out the inspection - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

19.12. Operational disruption

If you experience an operational disruption or deviation from the car's normal function then it may be due to a fault or the specific circumstances of the situation.

Some functions have limitations in particular situations and require that certain conditions are fulfilled in order to work. The driver display and centre display may show messages in order to inform about such a situation.

Find out more about fault-tracing and the limitations of various functions in related articles below.

If the car is not drivable

Activate the hazard warning flashers if the car has broken down or been forced to stop unexpectedly in a trafficked environment. Think about safety. If possible, move the car out of danger from traffic. Put on a reflective vest and then position the warning triangle so that other road users are warned in good time. Call roadside assistance if the cause cannot be remedied at your location.

19.13. Data transfer between car and workshop via Wi-Fi

Volvo's workshops have a specific Wi-Fi network for data transfer between the car and the workshop. The car is connected using the key's buttons, so it is important to take along a key with buttons in the event of a workshop visit.

During a workshop visit, your service technician can perform fault-tracing and update software via the network.

Connection with a key

Press three times on the lock button on the key to connect the car to the workshop's network. That's why it's important to take a key with buttons with you for the workshop visit. Connection is normally handled by the service technician.

When the car is connected to a Wi-Fi network, the symbol appears in the centre display.

It is not possible to use the key to connect to other Wi-Fi networks.

> **Warning**
>
> The car must not be driven when connected to the workshop's networks and systems.

19.14. Raise the car

It is important to use the marked lifting points on the car's chassis when using a jack to raise the car.

The triangles in the plastic cover indicate the locations of the lifting points (marked in red).

Note

Volvo recommends only using the jack that belongs to the car model in question. If a jack is selected other than the one recommended by Volvo, follow the instructions supplied with the equipment.

Important

If a jack[1] is included with the car, it is only designed for occasional, short-term use, such as when changing a wheel after a puncture. Only the jack belonging to the specific model is to be used to jack up the car. If the car is to be jacked up more often, or for a longer time than is required just to change a wheel, use of a garage jack is recommended. In this instance, follow the instructions for use that come with the equipment.

When the jack is not in use it should be stored in its storage space under the cargo area floor. Crank the jack down for it to fit.

Warning

- Apply the parking brake and set the gear selector in Park position (P).
- Chock the wheels standing on the ground using solid wood blocks or large stones.
- Check that the jack is not damaged, that the threads are thoroughly lubricated and that it is free from dirt.
- Check that the jack is resting on a firm, level surface that is not slippery and is not slanted.
- The jack must be correctly attached in the jack's bracket.
- Never position anything between the ground and the jack, or between the jack and the car's jacking point.
- Passengers must leave the car when it is raised on the jack.
- If a wheel must be changed in a trafficked environment, passengers must stand in a safe place.
- Use a jack designed for the car when changing tyres. Use supports to secure the car for all other work.
- Never crawl underneath the car and do not extend any part of your body under the car when it is raised by a jack.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

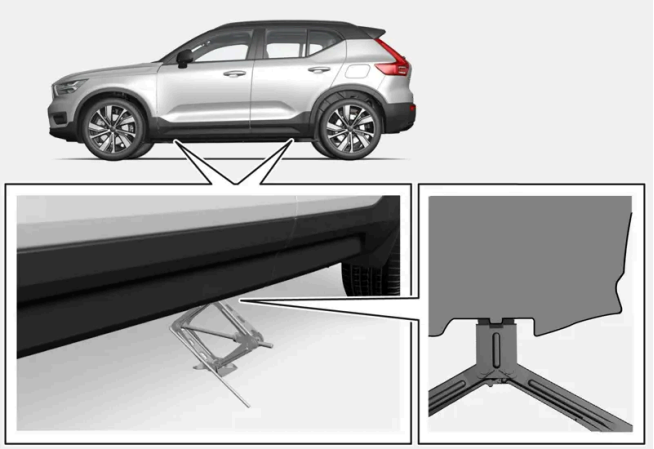
Warning

If the car is raised using a workshop jack, this must be placed beneath one of the four jacking points. Take care to position the workshop jack so that the car cannot slip off. Make sure that the jack plate is fitted with a rubber guard so that the car remains stable and is not damaged. Always use axle stands or similar.

When the jack is not in use it must be stored in its storage space.

Read through all instructions before beginning. Take out the tools needed before jacking up the car.

1. Set up the warning triangle and activate the hazard warning lights if, for example, a tyre is being changed in a trafficked location.
2. Apply the parking brake and engage gear position P.
3. Chock in front of and behind the wheels that remain on the ground. Use, for example, heavy wooden blocks or large stones.
4. Position the jack or the lift arms at the designated spots of the car's undercarriage. The triangle markings in the plastic cover indicate the locations of the jacking/lifting points. There are two jacking points on each side of the car. There is a recess for the jack at each point.

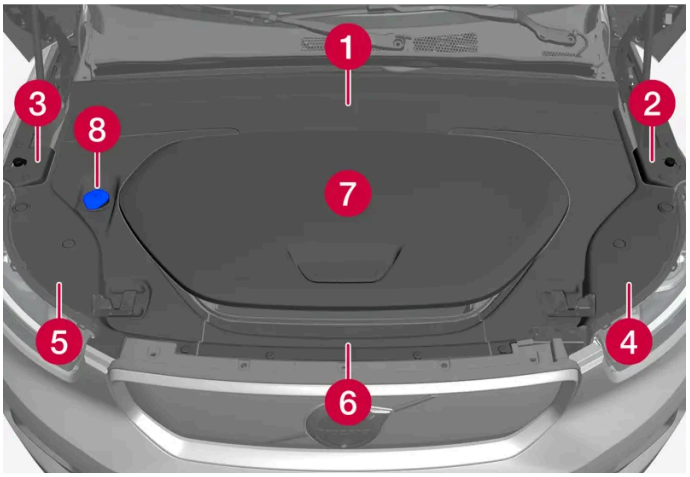


5. Position the jack on level, firm and non-slippery ground under the jacking point that will be used.
6. Crank the jack up until it is correctly positioned and comes into contact with the car's jacking point. Check that the head of the jack (or lifting arms at a workshop) is correctly positioned in the jacking point so that the bump in the centre of the head fits into the jacking point hole, and check that the base of the jack is positioned vertically below the jacking point.
7. Turn the jack so that the crank is as far away from the side of the car as possible, at which point the jack's arms are perpendicular to the direction of the car.
8. Raise the car to the height required to perform the task.

[1] For jack recommendations, contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

19.15. Removing the panels under the bonnet

There is the option to remove a number of protective panels in the space under the bonnet in order to access certain components, e.g. fuses and charging points for jump starting.



Location of different panels and parts under the bonnet.

1. Panel A – provides access to the negative charging point for jump starting.
2. Panel B
3. Panel C
4. Panel D – provides access to the positive charging point for jump starting and fuses under the bonnet.
5. Panel E
6. Panel F
7. Hatch for storage compartment under the bonnet.
8. Cap for filling the washer fluid.

> **Important**
>
> Only loosen the panels around the storage area under the bonnet if the instructions in the owner's manual explicitly state that this is necessary. Contact a workshop in the event of a problem or if maintenance is required – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

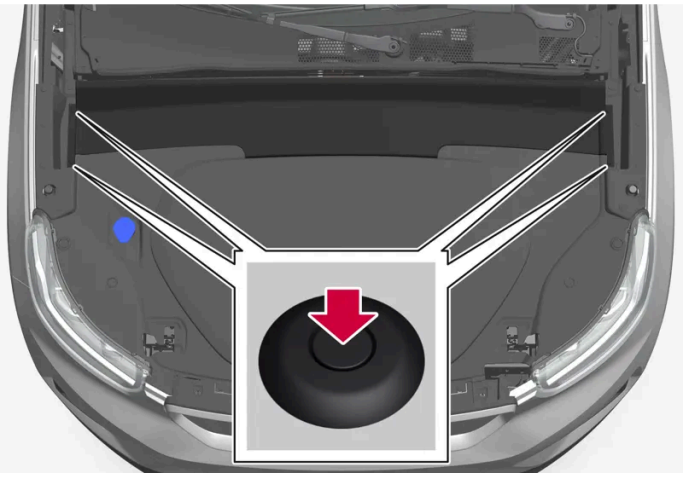
> **Important**
>
> The panels are designed to protect the components behind them – fully reinstall the panels before driving the car.

> **Warning**
>
> Several components in the car work with high-voltage current that could be dangerous in the event of incorrect intervention. Do not touch anything that is not clearly described in the owner's manual.

The protective panels are held in place using plugs. Loosen them by pressing in the locking pin in the centre of the plug, e.g. using a screwdriver or a pen. Once you have pressed in the pin a sufficient distance, you can pull the plug out. Avoid pressing the

pin the whole way through the plug in order to prevent it from falling between components. Pull the locking pin out completely when reattaching the plug to reinstall the panel. Once the plug is positioned in the mounting hole, the locking pin can be pressed into place again, which secures the panel.

A specific sequence should be followed when removing or installing the protective panels due to the way in which they overlap each other. To detach the panels, follow the steps below:



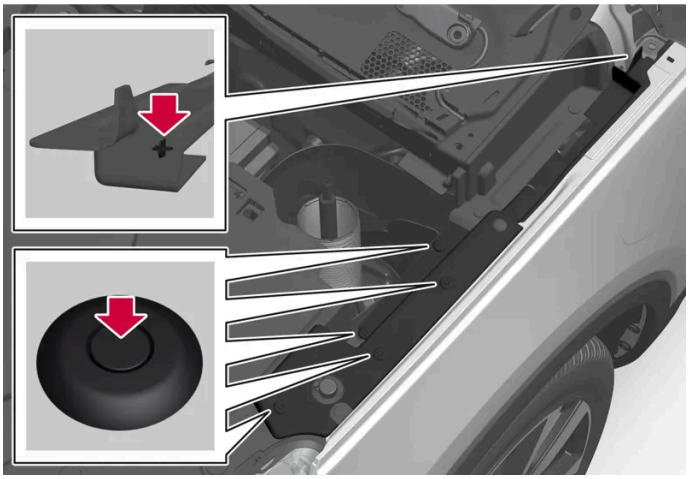
Plug positions for panel A.

Panel A

1. Loosen the 4 marked plugs that attach the panel by pressing in their lock pins a short way.
2. The panels are now held in place by hidden snap fasteners. Carefully lift the panel until they release.

> You can lift the panel away completely. This provides access to the negative charging point and the panels B and C. Panel B must be removed for access to panel D, located under which are the positive charging point and fuses under the bonnet.

To refit the panel, pull the lock pins out fully, and press them in again when the plugs are positioned in their assembly holes. Make sure that the snap fasteners are correctly positioned before pressing the panel into place.



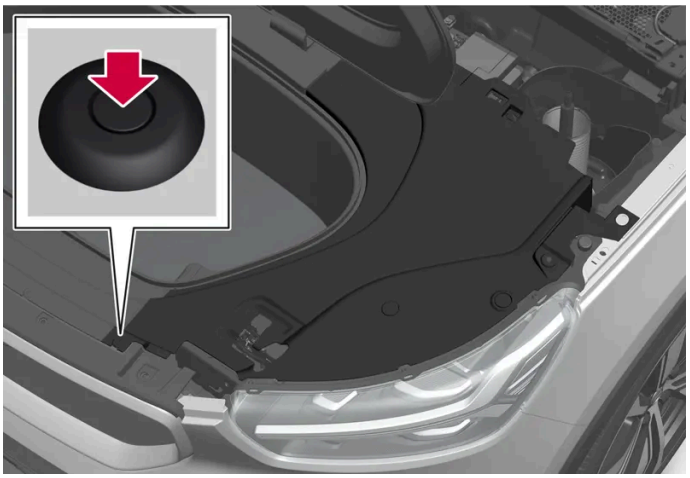
Plug positions for panel B. Panel C is reversed in relation to B.

Panel B/C

1. First, fully remove panel A according to the instructions above.
2. Release the 5 marked plugs.

> The panel is loose and can be lifted away completely. This provides access to the plugs that attach panels D or E, depending on the side. Panel D must be removed for access to the positive charging point and fuses under the bonnet.

To refit the panel, pull the lock pins out fully, and press them in again when the plugs are positioned in their assembly holes. The panel also has a protruding part in the rear end that holds it in place when it has been fitted into its hole.



Plug positions for panel D. Panel E is reversed in relation to D.

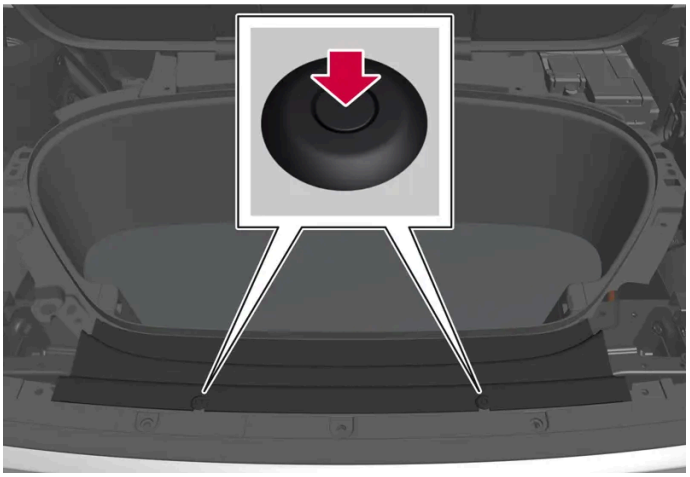
Panel D/E

1. First remove panels A and B/C, depending on the side, and open the hatch for the storage compartment under the bonnet (7).
2. Release the marked plug. To remove panel E, the cap for filling the washer fluid (8) must also be removed.
3. The panels are now held in place by hidden snap fasteners. Carefully lift the panel until they release.

> The panel is loose and can be lifted away completely. Located under panel D are the positive charging point and the fuses under the bonnet.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

To refit the panel, pull the lock pins out fully, and press them in again when the plugs are positioned in their assembly holes. Make sure that the snap fasteners are correctly positioned before pressing the panel into place.



Plug positions for panel F.

Panel F

1. First remove panels A, B, C, D and E.
2. Release the 2 marked plugs.
3. The panels are now held in place by hidden snap fasteners. Carefully lift the panel until they release.

> The panel is loose and can be lifted away completely.

To refit the panel, pull the lock pins out fully, and press them in again when the plugs are positioned in their assembly holes. Make sure that the snap fasteners are correctly positioned before pressing the panel into place.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

20. Specifications

20.1. Dimensions and weights

20.1.1. Towing capacity and towball load

Towing capacity and towball load for driving with a trailer can be read in the tables.

Max. weight braked trailer

> **Note**
>
> Use of vibration dampers on the towbar is recommended for trailers heavier than 1800 kg.

Braked trailer	Recharge Twin	Recharge
Max. weight (kg)	1800	1500
Max. towball load (kg)	100	100

> **Important**
>
> When driving with a trailer, it is permitted to exceed the vehicle's gross vehicle weight (including towball load) by a maximum of 100 kg (220 lbs), provided that speed is limited to 100 km/h (62 mph). National legal requirements for the vehicle combination, such as speed, etc. must be observed.

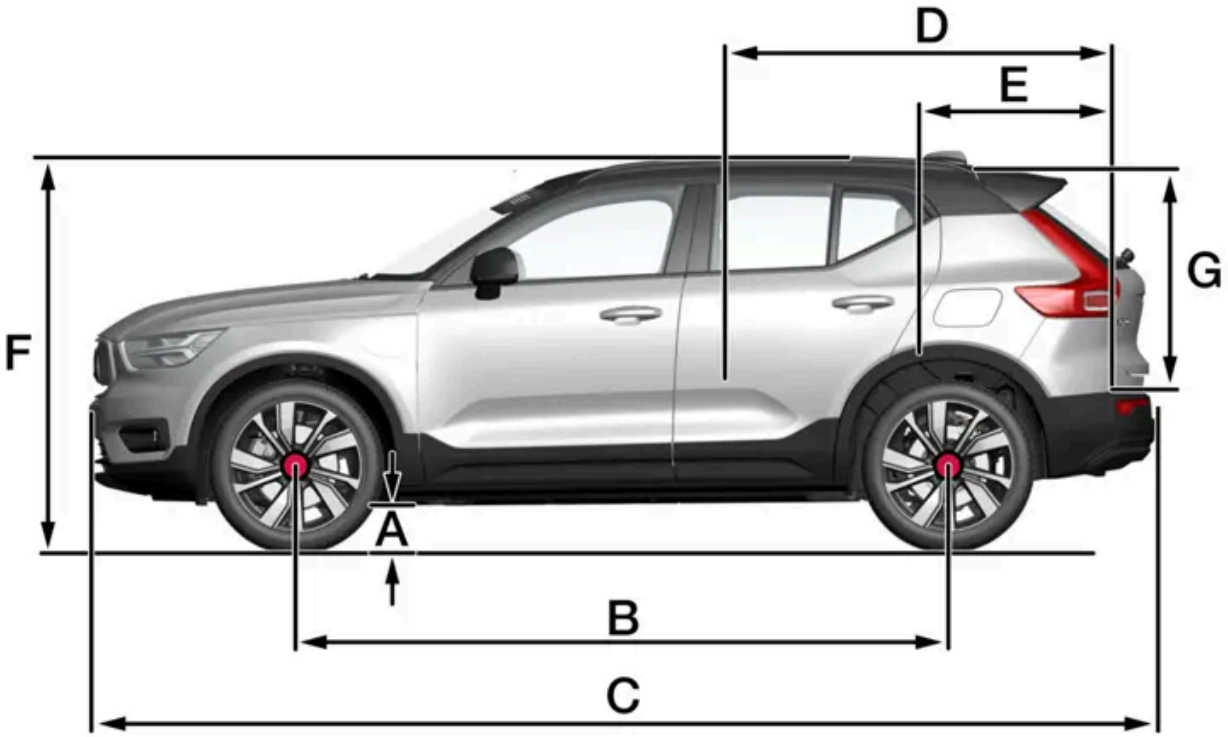
> **Note**
>
> If weight data is missing in the table, it will be updated at a later date.

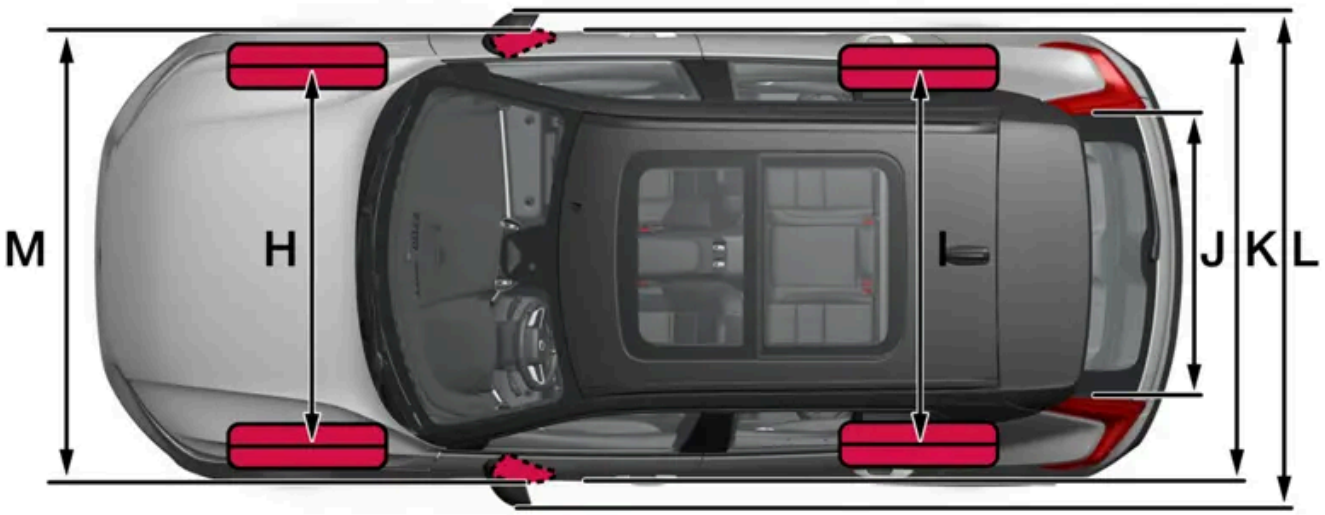
Max. weight unbraked trailer

Unbraked trailer	
Max. weight (kg)	750
Max. towball load (kg)	50

20.1.2. Dimensions

Measurement of car length, height, etc. can be read in the table.





The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

	Dimensions	mm	inches
A	Ground clearance [1]	171	6.7
B	Wheelbase	2702	106.4
C	Length	4425	174.2
D	Load length, floor, folded seat	1670	65.7
E	Load length, floor	887	34.9
F	Height [2]	1651	65,0
G	Load height	733	28.9
H	Front track	1601	63.0
I	Rear track	1615 [3] 1610 [4]	63,6 [3] 63,4 [4]
J	Load width, floor	1059	41.7
K	Width	1873 (1863 [5])	73,7 (73,3 [5])
L	Width including folded-out door mirrors	2034	80,1
M	Width including folded-in door mirrors	1910	75.2

[1] At kerb weight + 1 person. (Varies slightly depending on tyre dimension, chassis option, etc.)

[2] Including roof antenna, for kerb weight.

[3] Applies to 19-inch wheels.

[4] Applies to 20-inch wheels.

[5] Body width.

20.1.3. Weights

Maximum total weight, etc., can be read on a decal in the car.

The kerb weight includes the driver and all oils and fluids.

The weight of passengers and accessories, and towball load (when a trailer is hitched) influence the load capacity and are not included in the kerb weight.

Permitted max. load = Gross vehicle weight - Kerb weight.

Note

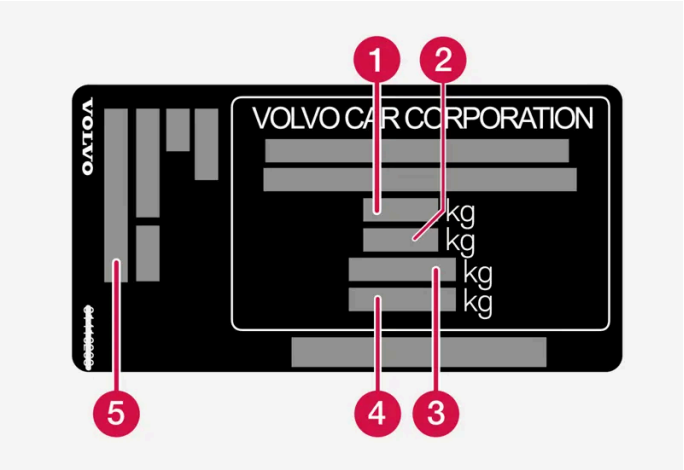
The documented kerb weight applies to cars in the standard version - i.e. a car without extra equipment or accessories. This means that for every accessory added the loading capacity of the car is reduced correspondingly by the weight of the accessory.

Examples of options that reduce load capacity are the different equipment levels, as well as other options such as tow-bar, load holder, space box, audio system, auxiliary lamps, safety grille, carpets, cargo cover, power seats, etc.

Weighing the car is a certain way of ascertaining the kerb weight of your own particular car.

Warning

The car's driving characteristics change depending on how heavily it is loaded and how the load is distributed.



The decal is positioned on the door pillar, and will be visible when the right-hand rear door is opened.

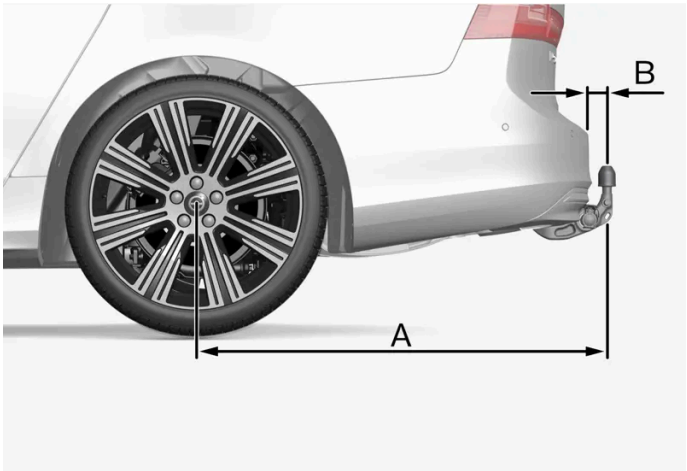
1. Max. gross vehicle weight
2. Max. train weight (car+trailer)
3. Max. front axle load
4. Max. rear axle load
5. Equipment level

Max. load: see registration document.

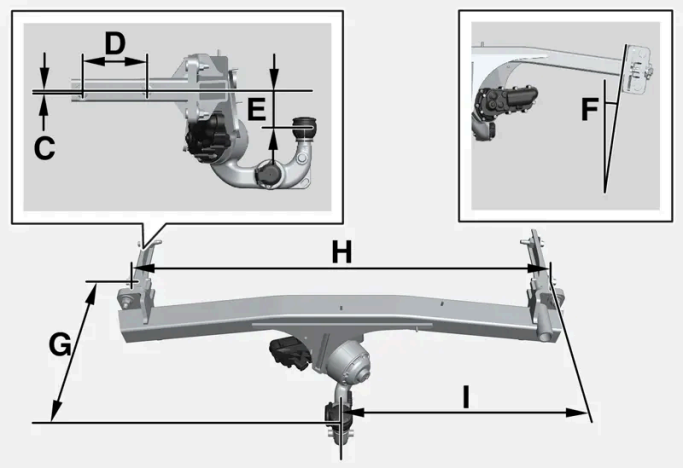
Max. roof load: 75 kg.

20.1.4. Specifications for towbar*

Dimensions and mounting points for towbar.



The illustration is generic and may vary depending on model.



Dimensions, mounting points in mm (inches)	
A	939 (37)
B	72 (2.8)
C	6 (0.24)
D	145 (5.7)
E	88 (3.5)
F	Side beam tilts 8 degrees
G	353 (13.9)
H	1048 (41.3)
I	524 (20.6)

* Option/accessory.

20.2. Specifications for engine

20.2.1. Electric motor specifications

Recharge Twin is powered by two electric drive motors (front and rear), while Recharge is powered by one electric drive motor (front).

Electric drive motor

		Recharge Twin	Recharge
Location in car:		Front and rear	Front
Electric motor type:		Synchronous motor with permanent magnet	Synchronous motor with permanent magnet
Electric motor model:		EAD 3.1	EAD 3.4
Max. power output, per electric motor:	kW	150	170
	hp	204	231
Max. power output, total car:	kW	300	170
	hp	408	231
Max. torque, per electric motor:	Nm	330	330
Max. torque, total car:	Nm	660	330

Note

All variants of electric motors are not available in all markets.

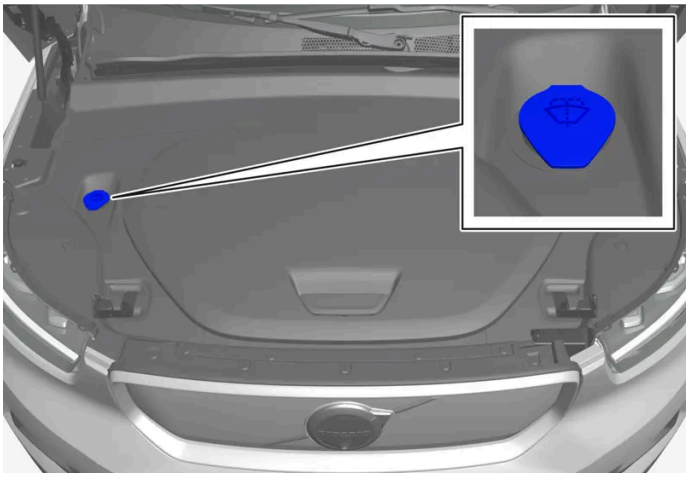
Note

If electric motor data is missing in the table, it will be updated at a later date.

20.3. Specifications for fluids and lubricants

20.3.1. Topping up washer fluid

Washer fluid is used for cleaning the headlamps as well as the windscreen and rear window. Washer fluid with antifreeze must be used when the temperature is under the freezing point.



Note

When approx. 1 litre (1 qt) of washer fluid remains in the reservoir, the message **Refill washer fluid, level low** appears together with the symbol in the driver display.

When the **Refill washer fluid, level low** message together with the symbol appear in the driver display, it is time to refill washer fluid

1. Open the bonnet with the handle in the passenger compartment and then with the handle under the front edge of the bonnet.
2. Open the washer fluid reservoir cap.

   Washer fluid is filled into the reservoir with the blue cap. The reservoir is used for windscreen washer, rear window washer and headlamp washers*.
3. Top up with washer fluid.
4. Close the washer fluid reservoir cap and then close the bonnet.

Prescribed grade: Washer fluid recommended by Volvo – with frost protection during cold weather and for temperatures below freezing point.

Important

Use Volvo genuine washer fluid or equivalent with a recommended pH of between 6 and 8, in working dilution (e.g. 1:1 with neutral water).

> **Important**
>
> Use washer fluid with antifreeze when the temperature is below freezing to avoid the fluid freezing inside the pump, reservoir and hoses.

Volume:

- Cars **with** headlamp washing: 5.5 litres (5.8 qts).
- Cars **without** headlamp washing: 3.5 litres (3.7 qts).

* Option/accessory.

20.3.2. Air conditioning – specifications

The car's climate control system uses a freon-free refrigerant, either R1234yf or R134a, depending on market. Information about which refrigerant the car's climate control system uses is printed on a decal located on the underside of the bonnet.

Refrigerant and compressor oil are used in the air conditioning system. Information is shown below about the label for refrigerant quantity, and the table below shows the prescribed quality and volume for compressor oil.

A/C decal

Decal for R134a

Decal for R1234yf

Symbol explanation R1234yf

Symbol	Meaning
	Caution
	Mobile air conditioning system (MAC)
	Lubricant type
	A trained and certified technician is required in order to service the mobile air conditioning system (MAC)
	Flammable refrigerants

Refrigerant

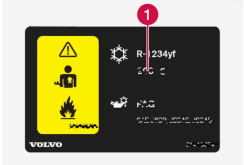
Refrigerant amount is printed on the decal located on the underside of the bonnet.

Cars with R134a refrigerant

1 Refrigerant amount.

> **Warning**
>
> The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R134a. Service and repair of the system must only be performed by trained and certified technicians.

Cars with R1234yf refrigerant



1 Refrigerant amount.

> **Warning**
>
> The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R1234yf. In accordance with SAE J2845 (Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile A/C System), service and repair of the refrigerant system must only be performed by trained and certified technicians in order to ensure the safety of the system.

Compressor oil

Volume	Prescribed grade
110 ml (3.87 fl. oz.)[1] 260 ml (9.15 fl. oz.)[2]	POE RB68

Evaporator[3]

> **Important**
>
> The A/C system's evaporator must never be repaired or replaced with a previously used evaporator. A new evaporator must be certified and labelled in accordance with SAE J2842.

[1] Applies to cars without heating pump.

[2] Applies to cars with heating pump.

[3] Only applies to cars with R1234yf refrigerant

20.3.3. Brake fluid – specifications

Brake fluid is the medium in a hydraulic brake system that is used to transfer pressure from e.g. a brake pedal via a master brake cylinder, which in turn acts on the brake callipers.

Prescribed grade: Volvo Original or equivalent fluid compliant with a combination of Dot 4, 5.1 and ISO 4925 class 6.

> **Note**
>
> It is recommended that brake fluid is changed or filled by an authorised Volvo workshop.

20.4. Specifications for wheels and tyres

20.4.1. Approved tyre pressures

Approved tyre pressures can be found in the table.

> **Note**
>
> All engines, tyres or combinations of these are not always available in all markets.

Tyre size	Speed	Load, 1-3 persons		Max. load		ECO pressure[1]
		Front kPa (psi)[2]	Rear kPa (psi)	Front kPa (psi)	Rear kPa (psi)	Front/rear kPa (psi)
235/50 R19 255/45 R19 235/45 R20 255/40 R20	0-180 km/h (0-112 mph)	280 (41)	280 (41)	280 (41)	280 (41)	280 (41)
Temporary Spare Tyre	max 80 km/h (max 50 mph)	420 (60)	420 (60)	420 (60)	420 (60)	420 (60)

> **Important**
>
> Front wheels must not change place with rear wheels and vice versa.

[1] Economical driving.

[2] In certain countries the "bar" unit is used alongside the SI unit "Pascal": 1 bar = 100 kPa.

20.4.2. Approved wheel and tyre sizes

In certain countries not all approved sizes are indicated by the registration document or other documents. The following table shows all approved combinations of wheel rims and tyres.

Front:	235/50 R19 7,5x19x50,5	235/45 R20 8x20x50.5
Rear:	255/45 R19 8.5x19x56	255/40 R20 9x20x58.5

> **Important**
>
> Front wheels must not change place with rear wheels and vice versa.

20.4.3. Minimum permitted tyre load index and speed rating for tyres

The table below shows minimum permitted load index (LI) and speed rating (SS) for tyres.

Minimum permitted load index (LI) [1]	100
Minimum permitted speed rating (SS) [2]	H

[1] The tyre's load index must be at least equal to or greater than indicated in the table.

[2] The tyre's speed rating must be at least equal to or greater than indicated in the table.

20.5. Bulb specifications

Specifications for replaceable bulbs.
Contact a workshop [1] if faults occur in lamps other than bulbs. If a fault occurs in LED [2] lamps, the entire lamp unit usually must be replaced.

Function	W [3]	Type
Rear direction indicators	21	PY21W
Brake lights	21	H21W LL
Rear fog lamp	21	H21W LL

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

[2] LED (Light Emitting Diode)

[3] Watt

20.6. The car's certified values for range and electric consumption

The car's range and electric consumption depend on several factors. The ability to achieve a long range and low electric consumption varies according to the circumstances and conditions under which the car is being driven.
The certified values for the car's range should not be interpreted as an expected range. The certification values are comparative values that are obtained by means of special drive cycles (see below) and should primarily be used to compare different cars.
The values in the table below are in accordance with WLTP (Worldwide Harmonised Light-Duty Vehicles Test Procedure), which is an international test method for vehicles equivalent to a passenger car designed for laboratory testing.

	Explanation
□range	Certified value for the car's potential range ("up to") in km. The value should not be interpreted as an expected range, and the range is difficult to achieve during normal driving.

	Urban and suburban driving
	Average value over all four drive cycle phases (urban, suburban, extra-urban and motorway driving)
	Certified value for the car's electric consumption (kWh/100km). The value is an average value over all four drive cycle phases (urban, suburban, extra-urban and motorway driving).
	Low value
	High value

Note

If range and electricity consumption data is missing in the table, it will be updated at a later date.

Recharge		597	423	18,7
		571	400	19,7
Recharge Twin		539	418	23.8
		519	400	25.0

The values in the table above for range in electric operation and electric consumption are based on special drive cycles (see below). The car's weight may increase depending on its equipment level. Together with how heavily the car is loaded, this affects and reduces its range in electric operation and increases electric consumption. According to WLTP, each car has unique electric range values, depending on how the car is equipped. In many markets, you can find your car's unique electric range values in the car's registration document.

There are a number of reasons as to why the range (mileage) is shorter and electric consumption is higher than indicated in the table values. Examples of these include:

- If the car is equipped with extra equipment that affects its weight.
- Driving style.
- If the customer chooses wheels other than those mounted as standard on the basic version of the model, this could increase rolling resistance.
- High speed, which causes increased air resistance.
- Road and traffic conditions, weather and the condition of the car.

WLTP standard

As of 1 September 2018, a new standard was introduced for calculating electric range values in the car. The WLTP standard represents the average driving conditions for everyday driving. In comparison with the previous standard (NEDC), WLTP takes into account more varied traffic situations and speeds, but also equipment and weight classes. Optional equipment that affects electric range values is deactivated during testing, e.g. air conditioning, seat heating, etc. The new standard should provide more realistic figures when it comes to range in electric operation. The values are intended to allow comparison between different cars and not to represent your typical range in electric operation.

Drive cycle profiles

A drive cycle simulates actual average driving of the car. The standard is based on four different drive cycle profiles. The four drive cycle profiles are:

- **Urban driving** – slow driving
- **Suburban driving** – average speed driving
- **Extra-urban driving** – fast driving
- **Motorway driving** – very fast driving.

Every drive cycle is determined by different conditions such as speed, time and mileage, for example.

20.7. Type designations

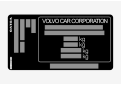
The decals in the car contain information such as chassis number, type designation, colour code, etc.

Label location

The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on market and model.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Knowing the car's type designation, vehicle identification and engine numbers can facilitate contact with a Volvo dealer regarding the car and when ordering spare parts and accessories.



1 Decal for type designation, vehicle identification number, permissible maximum weights and code designation for exterior colour and type approval number. The decal is positioned on the door pillar, and will be visible when the right-hand rear door is opened.

2 Decal for A/C system for cars with refrigerant R1234yf.

2 Decal for A/C system for cars with refrigerant R134a.

3 Decal for the car's identification number - VIN (Vehicle Identification Number). The decal is located on the top left-hand part of the instrument panel and is visible through the windscreen.

Further information on the car is presented in the registration document.

Note

It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and locations in the car. The information that applies to your particular car can be found on the decal on the car.